unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Hebrews

Version 64

[en]

Copyrights and Licensing

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes
Date: 2022-08-03
Version: 64
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Literal Text
Date: 2022-06-28
Version: 37
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text
Date: 2022-06-28
Version: 36
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible
Date: 2022-07-11
Version: 2.1.27
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament
Date: 2022-07-11
Version: 0.27
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy
Date: 2022-06-28
Version: 29
Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Translation Words
Date: 2022-06-28
Version: 32
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links
Date: 2022-08-03
Version: 16
Published by: unfoldingWord

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: "The original work by unfoldingWord is available from unfoldingword.org/utn". You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at unfoldingword.org/contact/.

Table of Contents

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Hebrews

Introduction to Hebrews

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of the Book of Hebrews

Hebrews alternates between exposition and exhortation. To put it another way, the author switches between teaching and warning his audience. The following outline identifies which sections are which.

Introduction: God and his Son (1:1–4)
The Son and the angels (1:5–2:18)

  • Teaching: The Son is greater than the angels (1:5–14)
  • Exhortation: Listen to the message! (2:1–4)
  • Teaching: The Son becomes lower than the angels to help his brothers (2:5–18)

Example of the wilderness generation (3:1–4:13)

  • Exhortation: The Son is greater than Moses (3:1–6)
  • Exhortation: Strive to enter the rest! (3:7–4:11)
  • Exhortation: The power of God's word (4:12–13)

Summary statement (4:14–16)
The Son as high priest (5:1–10:18)

  • Teaching: The Son becomes high priest (5:1–10)
  • Exhortation: Make sure to persevere! (5:11–6:12)
  • Exhortation: God's promise is certain (6:13–20)
  • Teaching: Melchizedek the priest (7:1–10)
  • Teaching: The Son is high priest in the order of Melchizedek (7:11–28)
  • Teaching: The ministry of the Son (8:1–6)
  • Teaching: The new covenant (8:7–13)
  • Teaching: Old and new ministries (9:1–10:18)

Summary statement (10:19–25)
Faith and endurance (10:26–12:29)

  • Exhortation: Endure in the faith! (10:26–39)
  • Exhortation: Examples of faith (11:1–40)
  • Exhortation: Imitate Jesus in rejecting sin and enduring discipline (12:1–17)
  • Exhortation: Mount Sinai and Mount Zion (12:18–29)

Closing (13:1–25)

  • Final commands and exhortations (13:1–19)
  • Benediction and letter closing (13:20–25)

Who wrote the Book of Hebrews?

No one knows who wrote Hebrews. Scholars have suggested several different people who could possibly be the author. Possible authors are Paul, Luke, and Barnabas. The date of writing is also not known. Most scholars think it was written before A.D. 70. Jerusalem was destroyed in A.D. 70, but the writer of this letter spoke about Jerusalem as if it had not yet been destroyed.

What is the Book of Hebrews about?

In the Book of Hebrews, the author shows that Jesus fulfilled Old Testament prophecies. The author did this in order to encourage the Jewish Christians and to explain that Jesus is better than anything that the old covenant had to offer. Jesus is the perfect High Priest. Jesus was also the perfect sacrifice. Animal sacrifices became useless because Jesus' sacrifice was once and for all time. Therefore, Jesus is the one and only way for people to be accepted by God.

How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, "Hebrews." Or they may choose a clearer title, such as "The Letter to the Hebrews" or "A Letter to the Jewish Christians." (See: How to Translate Names)

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

Can readers understand this book without knowing about the sacrifices and the work of the priests required in the Old Testament?

It would be very difficult for readers to understand this book without understanding these matters. Translators might consider explaining some of these Old Testament concepts in notes or in an introduction to this book.

How is the idea of blood used in the Book of Hebrews?

Beginning in Hebrews 9:7, the idea of blood is often used as metonymy to represent the death of any animal that was sacrificed according to God's covenant with Israel. The author also used blood to represent the death of Jesus Christ. Jesus became the perfect sacrifice so that God would forgive people for sinning against him. (See: Metonymy)

Beginning in Hebrews 9:19, the author used the idea of sprinkling as a symbolic action. Old Testament priests sprinkled the blood of the animals sacrificed. This was a symbol of the benefits of the animal's death being applied to the people or to an object. This showed that the people or the object was acceptable to God. (See: Symbolic Action)

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

How are the ideas of "holy" and "sanctify" represented in Hebrews in the ULT?

The scriptures use such words to indicate any one of various ideas. For this reason, it is often difficult for translators to represent them well in their versions. In translating into English, the ULT uses the following principles: * Sometimes the meaning in a passage implies moral holiness. Especially important for understanding the gospel is the fact that God views Christians as sinless because they are united to Jesus Christ. Another related fact is that God is perfect and faultless. A third fact that Christians are to conduct themselves in a blameless, faultless manner in life. In these cases, the ULT uses "holy," "holy God," "holy ones," or "holy people." * Sometimes the meaning indicates a simple reference to Christians without implying any particular role filled by them. In these cases, the ULT uses "believer" or "believers." (See: 6:10; 13:24) * Sometimes the meaning implies the idea of someone or something set apart for God alone. In these cases, the ULT uses "sanctify," "set apart," "dedicated to," or "reserved for." (See: 2:11: 9:13; 10:10, 14, 29; 13:12)

The UST will often be helpful as translators think about how to represent these ideas in their own versions.

How should "we" and "you" be translated?

Throughout the letter, "we" includes the author and the audience unless a note specifies otherwise. Similarly, "you" is always plural unless a note specifies otherwise.

What are the major issues in the text of the Book of Hebrews?

For the following verses, modern versions of the Bible differ from older versions. The ULT text has the modern reading and puts the older reading in a footnote. If a translation of the Bible exists in the general region, translators should consider using the reading found in those versions. If not, translators are advised to follow the modern reading. * "you crowned him with glory and honor" (2:7). Some older versions read, "you crowned him with glory and honor and you have put him over the works of your hands." * "those who did not unite in faith with those who obeyed" (4:2). Some older versions read, "those who heard it without joining faith to it." * "Christ came as a high priest of the good things that have come" (9:11). Some modern versions and older versions read, "Christ came as a high priest of the good things that are to come." * "on those who were prisoners" (10:34). Some older versions read, "of me in my chains." * "They were stoned. They were sawn in two. They were killed with the sword" (11:37). Some older versions read, "They were stoned. They were sawn in two. They were tempted. They were killed with the sword." * "If even an animal touches the mountain, it must be stoned" (12:20). Some older versions read, "If even an animal touches the mountain, it must be stoned or shot with an arrow."

(See: Textual Variants)

Hebrews 1

Hebrews 1 General Notes

Structure and Formatting

Introduction: God and his Son (1:1–4)
The Son and the angels (1:5–2:18)

> • Teaching: The Son is greater than the angels (1:5–14)

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 1:5, 7–13, which are quotations from books of poetry in the Old Testament.

Special Concepts in this Chapter

God speaking Scripture

In this chapter, the author quotes the Old Testament seven times. Each time, he says that God is the one who speaks the words, and God speaks them to or about the Son or the angels. The audience would have recognized that these quotations came from the Old Testament, but the author wished to introduce them as words that God himself said and says. He can do this because he believed that God is the author of the entire Old Testament, since he is the one who spoke through the prophets (see 1:1). In your translation, you should express these quotations as words that God says. If your readers would not recognize that God is speaking quotations from the Old Testament, you could identify the quotations for your readers in footnotes or in some other way.

Old Testament quotations

When the author quotes from the Old Testament, he uses a Greek translation that is sometimes different than the original Hebrew version that most modern translations use for the Old Testament. This is particularly obvious in 1:6, which quotes from the Greek version of Deuteronomy 32:43. In other places, the author may paraphrase or loosely quote the Old Testament. Since the author chose to use these forms of the quotations, you should represent the words the author uses, not the words that may be found in an Old Testament you are familiar with. (See: Quotations and Quote Margins)

The Son and the Father

In this chapter, the author refers to the "Son" and several times speaks of God as a "father." These are important terms for two person of the Trinity: God the Father and God the Son. The author uses these terms partly because the Old Testament texts he quotes use them. Also, "Son" and "Father" refer to two people who are closely related but not the same person, so the words provide good language to speak about two persons of the Trinity. If possible, preserve the father and son language in this chapter, but make sure that your translation does not make it sound like the Son did not exist until a certain time or that the Father at some point physically gave birth to the Son. (See: Translating Son and Father)

Angels

The author mentions "angels" many times in this chapter. In his culture, everyone knew about "angels." They were spiritual beings who could appear in human form. Some people talked about good and evil angels. The author only speaks about the good angels in this chapter. These angels serve and worship God, and they do whatever God tells

them to do. Some scholars think that the author is arguing against people who said that Jesus was an angel. More likely, the author wishes to prove that Jesus the Son is God, and he uses the angels to do that. The author thinks that the angels are between humans and God in power and position. If the Son is above the angels, that means he must be God. (See: angel, archangel)

Important Figures of Speech in this Chapter

Rhetorical questions

The author asks rhetorical questions in 1:5, 13–14. He is not asking these questions because he wants the audience to provide him with information. Rather, he is asking these questions because he wants the audience to think about how they are acting and what they are thinking. The questions encourage them to think along with the author. For ways to translate these questions, look for the notes on each verse that includes these kinds of questions. (See: Rhetorical Question)

Parallelisms

In the Old Testament, good poetry often included two parallel lines that expressed one idea in two different ways. When the author quotes the Old Testament, he often includes this kind of parallelism. Since both lines contribute to the meaning of the idea, it is best to preserve the parallelism. If your readers would find it confusing, however, you could combine the two parallel lines into one idea. See the notes on each instance of parallel lines for translation options. (See: Parallelism)

Inheriting

In 1:2, 4, 14, the author uses language related to "inheriting" or being an "heir." In the author's culture, children often "inherited" property or money when their parents died. In these verses, the author uses the "inheriting" language metaphorically to refer to receiving something from God. In this chapter, the metaphor does not imply that someone must die for the person to "inherit." If possible, preserve this metaphor since it is an important concept in Hebrews. See the notes on each verse for translation options. (See: inherit, inheritance, heir and Metaphor)

Other Possible Translation Difficulties in this Chapter

Descriptions of the Son in 1:3

In 1:3, the author describes the Son as "the brightness of God's glory" and the "exact representation of God's being." Both of these phrases identify the Son as God and as unique. In other words, these phrases are the author's way of saying that the Son is God, but God is not just the Son. Carefully consider how you translate these phrases, and be sure that your translation makes it clear that the Son is God but God is not just the Son. The author uses images and metaphors to express the idea, so consider using similar images and metaphors.

Hebrews 1:1

long ago...at many times and in many ways (ULT)
In the past...at various times and in many different ways (UST)

Here, **In many portions** shows that God did not speak just once. Rather, he spoke often throughout the time called **long ago**. Then, **in many ways** shows that God used various means and people to speak to the **fathers**. The author uses both of these phrases because he wishes to emphasize the variety of times and ways in which God has **spoken**. If your language does not use repetition for emphasis, and if you cannot represent Paul's two phrases well, you could express the idea using one phrase that emphasizes variety. Alternate translation: "Long ago, with great variety" or "Long ago, using multiple methods in different times," (See: Translate Unknowns)

God, having spoken long ago to {our} fathers through the prophets at many times and in many ways (ULT)
In the past God communicated to our ancestors at various times and in many different ways by what he told the prophets to do, say, and write (UST)

Here, **In many portions and in many ways long ago** describes how God "spoke" **to {our} fathers**. If your readers would misunderstand this sentence structure, you could rearrange the phrases so that **In many portions and in many ways long ago** does modify **having spoken**. Alternate translation: "God, having spoken to {our} fathers through the prophets in many portions and in many ways long ago"

long ago (ULT)
In the past (UST)

Here, **long ago** refers to past time. It often identifies events that happened in the distant past and about which stories are told. Use a word or phrase that refers to the distant past. Alternate translation: "in the past days" or "in ancient times" (See: Idiom)

having spoken (ULT)
communicated...what he told (UST)

Here, **having spoken** introduces an action that took place before the actions that take place in the next verse (1:2). Use a form that introduces action that takes place before something else. Alternate translation: "after speaking" (See: Connect — Sequential Time Relationship)

to {our} fathers (ULT)
to our ancestors (UST)

Here, **{our} fathers** refers to the Israelites who were alive before Jesus lived on earth. Not all the audience were descended from these Israelites. However, the author can still refer to the Israelites as their **fathers** because he thinks that all Christians have been included in the family of Abraham, the ancestor of the Israelites. If possible, preserve the family language in your translation. Alternate translation: "our forefathers" or "to the Israelite ancestors" (See: Kinship)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- to...fathers
- prophets

Translation Words - UST

- God
- to our ancestors
- prophets to do, say, and write

Hebrews 1:2

in these last days, has spoken to us through a Son, whom (ULT)
But now when this final age is beginning, God has communicated to us by his own Son...him (UST)

The author uses words and phrases in this clause that make its structure parallel to the previous verse (1:1). He does this to emphasize the contrast between "long ago" and **at {the} last of these days**. If possible, use the same structures in this clause as you did in the last verse. Alternate translation: "has spoken to use through a Son at {the} last of these days. This Son is the one whom" (See: Parallelism)

in these last days (ULT)
But now when this final age is beginning (UST)

Here, **{the} last of these days** refers to the last period in the history of the world, which began when Jesus lived, died, and came alive again. It also means that this last period has been the goal of all the previous events. If your language has a way to refer to the last period in the history of the world, you could use it here. Alternatively, if your language has a way to refer to the end of the world, you could express the idea by stating that the end of the world will happen soon. Alternate translation: "during this time when the end of the world is coming soon" or "in these end times" (See: Idiom)

a Son (ULT)
his own Son (UST)

Here, **Son** is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

heir of all things (ULT)
to possess all things (UST)

Here the author uses the possessive form to indicate that the **heir** receives or inherits **all things**. If your language does not use the possessive form to express that idea, you could use a word or phrase such as "receive" or "inherit." Alternate translation: "the heir who inherits all things" (See: Possession)

he appointed heir of all things (ULT)
God has chosen...to possess all things (UST)

Here the author speaks as if Jesus were child who would receive property that a parent passes on to their child when the parent dies. He speaks in this way to indicate that Jesus is the **Son** who will "inherit" **all things**, which means that he will rule over everything that exists. If your readers would misunderstand this figure of speech, you could use a comparable metaphor or express the idea nonfiguratively. Alternate translation: "he appointed to be the one who will rule over all things" (See: Metaphor)

ULT

2 in these last days, has spoken to us through a Son, whom he appointed heir of all things, through whom also he made the ages;

UST

2 But now when this final age is beginning, God has communicated to us by his own Son. God has chosen him to possess all things. By him God also created the universe.

the ages (ULT)
the universe (UST)

Here, **the ages** refers primarily to all the time periods that together make up the history of the world. However, **ages** can also refer to everything that God created that exists during those time periods. If possible, use a word or phrase that refers to everything that exists during all of time. Alternate translation: "everything that has existed and will exist" (See: Translate Unknowns)

Translation Words - ULT

- last days
- days
- a Son
- he appointed
- heir
- ages

Translation Words - UST

- final age is beginning
- age is beginning
- his own Son
- God has chosen
- to possess
- universe

Hebrews 1:3

Hebrews 1:3

who, being the brightness of {his} glory and exact representation of his being, upholding all things by the word of his power and having made cleansing for sins, sat down at the right hand of the Majesty on high (ULT)
By looking at God's Son, we can see how wonderful God is. He shows exactly what God is truly like. He sustains everything by his powerful commands. After he sacrificed himself to take away people's sins, he rose into heaven and sat down at the highest place of honor, where he rules with God as king (UST)

Here the author includes a long description of who the "Son" is. The phrases **being the brightness of {his} glory and exact representation of his being** and **upholding all the {things} by the word of his power** describe what the "Son" always is and does. The phrase **having made cleansing for sins** refers more specifically to what the "Son" has done and completed before he **sat down at the right hand**. If your readers would misunderstand that the phrase **having made purification for sins** refers to something that happened before **sat down**, while the previous phrases all refer to things that the "Son" always is and does, you could make the relationships clearer. Alternate translation: "who is the brightness of {his} glory and exact representation of his being and who upholds all the {things} by the word of his power. After having made purification for sins, he sat down at the right of the Majesty on high" (See: Information Structure)

the brightness of {his} glory and exact representation of his being (ULT)
By looking at...we can see how wonderful God...He shows exactly what God is truly like...and (UST)

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas behind **brightness**, **glory**, **representation**, and **being**, you could express the ideas by using verbs, adjectives, or adverbs. Alternate translation: "brightly glorious like he is and exactly representing who he is" (See: Abstract Nouns)

the brightness of {his} glory and (ULT)
we can see how wonderful God...and (UST)

Here the author speaks as if the "Son" had the **brightness** that belongs to God's **glory**, which is pictured here like a bright light. The author speaks in this way to emphasize that the Son "shines" with the **glory** that only God has. He means that the "Son" is God and represents God. If your readers would misunderstand this figure of speech, you could use a comparable metaphor or express the idea nonfiguratively. Alternate translation: "the reflection of {his} glory and" or "one who has the glory of God and the" (See: Metaphor)

exact representation of his being (ULT)
By looking at...He shows exactly what God is truly like (UST)

Here, **exact representation** refers to something that perfects shows or matches what something else is like. In this case, the "Son" perfects shows or matches God's **being**, that is, what God is like. The author uses **exact**

representation of his being to show that the "Son" is God along with God the Father but not the same person. You could use a word or phrase that indicates that the "Son" is just like what God the Father is like. Alternate translation: "exactly like what he is like" or "perfectly representing who God is" (See: Translate Unknowns)

upholding…all things (ULT)
He sustains…everything (UST)

Here the author speaks as if the Son were standing underneath **all the {things}** and holding them up so that they did not fall. He speaks in this way to indicate that everything continues to exist only because the Son works to make it continue. If your readers would misunderstand this figure of speech, you could use a comparable metaphor or express the idea nonfiguratively. Alternate translation: "preserving all the {things}" or "supporting all things" (See: Metaphor)

by the word of his power (ULT)
by his powerful commands…he (UST)

Here, **word** refers to speaking "words" or "messages." It does not refer to one word that the Son speaks. If your readers would misunderstand **word**, you could use a word or phrase that refers to how the Son speaks. Alternate translation: "through his powerful speech" or "by how he speaks with power" (See: Metonymy)

by the word of his power (ULT)
by his powerful commands…he (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind **power**, you could express the idea by using an adjective such as "powerful." Alternate translation: "by his powerful word" (See: Abstract Nouns)

having made cleansing for sins (ULT)
After…sacrificed himself to take away people's sins (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind **purification**, you could express the idea by using a verb such as "cleanse" or "purify." Alternate translation: "having cleansed us from our sins" (See: Abstract Nouns)

for sins (ULT)
people's sins (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind **sins**, you could express the idea by using a verb such as "sin." Alternate translation: "for how we have sinned" (See: Abstract Nouns)

sat down at the right hand (ULT)
sat down…highest place of honor (UST)

When someone sits **at {the} right** of God, it symbolizes that person's honor, authority, and ability to rule. If your readers would misunderstand what **sat down at {the} right** means, you could express the idea explicitly. Alternate translation: "he sat down to rule at the right" or "he took the place of honor and authority at the right" (See: Symbolic Action)

at the right hand of the Majesty (ULT)
the highest place of honor...rules with God as king (UST)

Here, **at {the} right** refers to the place next to a person's **right** hand, which would be the "right side." In the author's culture, this side was associated with honor or authority. If your readers would misunderstand **at {the} right**, you could refer to the "right side." Make sure that your readers understand that this side indicates that the Son has honor and authority when he sits there. Alternate translation: "at the right side of the Majesty" or "in the honorable place next to the Majesty" (See: Synecdoche)

of the Majesty (ULT)
the...rules with God as king (UST)

In the author's culture, it was considered reverent to avoid saying God's name. Here the author uses **Majesty** instead of God's name in order to follow this custom and to indicate that God is powerful and glorious. If your readers would misunderstand **Majesty**, you could use a reverent way to refer to God in your culture, especially if it emphasizes how God is powerful and glorious. Alternate translation: "of the great deity" or "of the glorious God" (See: Euphemism)

on high (ULT)
he rose into heaven...at...where he (UST)

Here, **on high** identifies the location of **{the} right of the Majesty**, which is where the Son **sat down**. This location is in heaven. If your readers would misunderstand **on high**, you could clarify that it means that Jesus ascended into heaven, which is where the **right** side is. Alternate translation: "in heaven" or "on high, in heaven" (See: Translate Unknowns)

Translation Words - ULT

- of...glory
- of...power
- cleansing
- for sins
- the right hand
- of...Majesty
- on high

Translation Words - UST

- how wonderful God
- powerful
- to take away
- people's sins
- he rose into heaven...at...where he
- highest place of honor
- rules with God as king

Hebrews 1:4

having become (ULT)
By doing that he demonstrated that he is as (UST)

Here, **having become** could introduce: (1) an explanation of what "sitting at God's right" side (1:3) means. Alternate translation: "thus, he has become" (2) a result that comes from "sitting at God's right hand" (1:3). Alternate translation: "so, he has become" or "therefore, he has become"

having become far superior to the angels just as he has inherited a more excellent name than them (ULT)
By doing that he demonstrated that he is as much greater than the angels as the name that God has given him, 'Son of God,' is greater than theirs (UST)

Here the author uses a comparison that indicates that the difference in "superiority" between the Son and **the angels** is the same as the difference between the Son's **name** and the names of **the angels**. Consider clear ways to indicate such a comparison in your language. Alternate translation: "having become as much superior to the angels as the name that he has inherited is more excellent than theirs"

far superior...to the angels...more excellent (ULT)
much greater...the angels...is greater (UST)

Here, **far superior** and **more excellent** both refer to how Jesus and Jesus's **name** have more authority and honor than the angels and their names. If your readers would misunderstand **far superior** and **more excellent**, you could use words or phrases that indicate this more clearly. Alternate translation: "more honorable than the angels ... more honorable" or "far higher than the angels ... a higher" (See: Translate Unknowns)

more excellent...a...name (ULT)
is greater...as the name...Son of God (UST)

Here the author does not clarify what **name** this is. It could be the title "Son," the title "Lord," the name "Jesus," or God's own special name, "Yahweh." Since the author did not clarify what **name** he is referring to, it is best to refer to a name or title without stating what it is. Alternate translation: "a more excellent title" (See: When to Keep Information Implicit)

he has inherited (ULT)
that God has given him (UST)

Here the author speaks as if Jesus were child who would receive property that a parent passes on to their child when the parent dies. He speaks in this way to indicate that Jesus receives a **name** from God the Father, although this does not mean that God the Father has died. If your readers would misunderstand this figure of speech, you could use a comparable metaphor or express the idea nonfiguratively. Alternate translation: "he has received" or "God has given him" (See: Metaphor)

than them (ULT)
than...theirs (UST)

Here the author omits some words that may be needed in your language to make a complete comparison. He omits these words because he stated them in the first half of the comparison (a **name**). If your language needs these words to make a complete comparison, you could include them here. Alternate translation: "than their names" (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT

- to...angels
- he has inherited
- a...name

Translation Words - UST

- angels
- as the name...Son of God
- that God has given him

Hebrews 1:5

Hebrews 1:5

For (ULT)
In...scriptures...reported that (UST)

Here, **For** introduces the support or basis that proves that the Son is "superior to the angels" (1:4). The supporting statements that **For** introduces can be found in 1:4–14. If your readers would misunderstand **For**, you could use a word or phrase that introduces a support or basis for a claim. Alternate translation: "Here is the proof for that:" (See: Connecting Words and Phrases)

For to which of the angels did he ever say, "You are my son, today I have fathered you"? Or again, "I will be as a father to him, and he will be as a son to me (ULT)
In the scriptures no one ever reported that God said to any angel what he said to his Son: "You are my Son! Today I have declared to all that I am your Father!" And he never said about any angel what he said in another scripture passage about his Son: "I will be his Father, and he will be to me a Son (UST)

The author does not ask these questions because he is looking for information. Rather, he asks them to involve the audience in what he is arguing. The questions assume that the answer to both is "none of them," for God said these words to his own Son. If your readers would misunderstand these questions, you could express the ideas with strong negations. Alternate translation: "For God never said to any of the angels 'You are my son, and I today I have become your father.' And again, 'I will be as a father to him, and he will be as a son to me." (See: Rhetorical Question)

For to which of the angels did he ever say...Or again (ULT)
In the scriptures no one ever reported that God said to any angel what he said to his Son...And he never said about any angel what he said in another scripture passage about his Son (UST)

Here the author quotes from important texts, the Old Testament scriptures. He does not introduce them as quotations but instead introduces them as words that God has spoken to his Son, not to angels. However, the audience would have understood that these were quotations from the Old Testament. The first quotation comes from Psalm 2:7, and the second quotation comes from 2 Samuel 7:14. Since the author introduces these quotations as words that God has said to his Son, not to angels, you should introduce these quotations as words that someone has or has not said. If your readers would not know that the quotations are from the Old Testament, you could include footnotes or use some other form to identify the quotations. The phrase **And again** is a normal form that the author uses to connect a second statement to the first statement. Alternate translation: "For to which of the angels did he ever speak ... And" (See: Quotations and Quote Margins)

ULT

5 For to which of the angels did he ever say, "You are my son, today I have fathered you"? Or again, "I will be as a father to him, and he will be as a son to me"?

UST

5 In the scriptures no one ever reported that God said to any angel what he said to his Son: "You are my Son! Today I have declared to all that I am your Father!" And he never said about any angel what he said in another scripture passage about his Son: "I will be his Father, and he will be to me a Son."

did he ever say…You are my son, today I have fathered you"? Or again, "I will be as a father to him, and he will be as a son to me (ULT) ever…God said to any…what he said to his Son…You are my Son! Today I have declared to all that I am your Father!" And he never said about any angel what he said in another scripture passage about his Son: "I will be his Father, and he will be to me a Son (UST)

If you do not use this form in your language, you could translate the questions as indirect quotes instead of as direct quotes. Alternate translation: "did he ever say that he was his son, today he had fathered him, and again that he would be as a father to him, and that he would be as a son to him?" (See: Direct and Indirect Quotations)

**You are my son, today I have fathered you…I will be as a father to him, and he will be as a son to me (ULT)
You are my Son! Today I have declared to all that…your Father…I am…I will be his Father, and he will be to me a Son (UST)**

In their original contexts, these two quotations referred to the king of Israel, when he began to rule, as one who became God's **son**. Thus, God was his **father**. When the author applies these words not to angels but to Jesus, he identifies the **father** as God the Father and the **son** as God the Son. He does not mean that Jesus becomes **son** at some point or begins to exist at some point. Rather, he means that God the Father declares and reveals Jesus to be God the Son. If your readers would misunderstand how the author uses **father** and **son** language, you could include some words or a footnote that clarifies the meaning. Alternate translation: "You are my son, today I have proclaimed that I am your father … I proclaim that I am his father and that he is my son" (See: Kinship)

**You are my son, today I have fathered you (ULT)
You are my Son! Today I have declared to all that…your Father (UST)**

Here the quotation includes two statements that mean almost the same thing. One statement uses **son** language, and the other uses "father" language. This was considered good poetry in the author's culture. If your readers would misunderstand the parallelism, and if this would not be good poetry in your culture, you could combine the two statements. Alternate translation: "Today I have fathered you, my son" (See: Parallelism)

**You…you (ULT)
You…your (UST)**

Because the quotation is referring to one **son**, **You** and **you** are singular. (See: Forms of 'You' — Singular)

**I will be as a father to him, and he will be as a son to me (ULT)
I am…I will be his Father, and he will be to me a Son (UST)**

Here the quotation includes two statements that mean almost the same thing. One statement uses **father** language, and the other uses **son** language. This was considered good poetry in the author's culture. If your readers would misunderstand the parallelism, and if this would not be good poetry in your culture, you could combine the two statements. Alternate translation: "I will be as a father to him, who is my son" or "he will be as a son to me, his father" (See: Parallelism)

Translation Words - ULT

- of...angels
- have fathered
- a father

Translation Words - UST

- angel
- have declared to all that...Father
- Father

Hebrews 1:6

Hebrews 1:6

But again (ULT)
And…again…when (UST)

Here, **But** introduces a contrast with the previous verse, which talks about what God has not said to angels. In this verse, the author identifies what God has said to angels. If your readers would misunderstand **But**, you could use a word or phrase that would introduce this kind of contrast. Alternate translation: "Again, and in contrast," (See: Connect — Contrast Relationship)

But again…he says (ULT)
And…again…when…he commanded (UST)

Here the author quotes from an important text, the Old Testament. He does not introduce it as a quotation but instead as words that God has spoken to angels about his Son. However, the audience would have understood that this was a quotation from the Old Testament, here from the Greek translation of Deuteronomy 32:43. Since the author introduces this quotation as words that God has said to the angels, you should introduce the quotation as words that someone has said. If your readers would not know that the quotation is from the Old Testament, you could include a footnote or use some other form to identify the quotation. The phrase **But again** was a normal way in the author's culture to introduce another quotation. Alternate translation: "Further … God speaks" (See: Quotations and Quote Margins)

he brings…he says (ULT)
he brings…he commanded (UST)

Here the author uses the present tense to introduce what God says. He may be referring to a past event (if **brings** refers to the incarnation or the ascension of Jesus) or a future event (if **brings** refers to the return of Jesus at the end). The author uses the present tense to focus on what God **says** rather than when he **says** it. Consider what tense would be appropriate for referring primarily to what a person says. Alternate translation: "he brought … he said" (See: Predictive Past)

But again, when he brings the firstborn into the world, he says (ULT)
And again, when he brings his honored Son, his only Son, into the world, he commanded (UST)

Here, **again** could modify: (1) **he says**. In this case, **again** tells the audience that the author is quoting an important text **again**. Alternate translation: "But, when he brings the firstborn into the world, again he says" (2) **he brings**. In this case, **again** tells the audience that the **firstborn** has already been in **the world**, and God is "bringing" him into it **again**. The "bringing" would then refer to how Jesus returns to heaven when he ascends or how he comes back again to earth at the end. Alternate translation: "But, when he again brings the firstborn into the world, he says" (See: Information Structure)

the firstborn (ULT)
his honored Son, his only Son (UST)

Here, **the firstborn** refers to Jesus. The author refers to him as the **firstborn** to emphasize his importance and authority over everyone else. It does not imply that there was a time before Jesus existed or that God gave birth to him at some point. Rather, it implies that Jesus has adopted siblings, who are everyone who believes in him. If your

readers would misunderstand **firstborn**, you could use a comparable metaphor or express the idea nonfiguratively. Alternate translation: "his honored Son" or "his first Son" (See: Metaphor)

into the world (ULT)
into the world (UST)

Here, **the world** could be: (1) the "world that is coming" (see 2:5), which is heaven or the heavenly world. In this case, the verse refers to Jesus's ascension into heaven. Alternate translation: "into the coming world" (2) this world as it currently exists. In this case, the verse refers either to Jesus's incarnation or to his return to earth at the end. Alternate translation: "into our world"

he says, "And let all God's angels worship him (ULT)

If you do not use this form in your language, you could translate the statement as an indirect quote instead of as a direct quote. Alternate translation: "he says that all all {the} angels of God should worship him" (See: Direct and Indirect Quotations)

And let all God's angels worship him (ULT)

Here the quotation uses a third person imperative. If you have third person imperatives in your language, you could use one here. If you do not have third person imperatives, you could express the idea using a word or phrase such as "need to" or "must." Alternate translation: "And all {the} angels of God need to worship him" (See: Imperatives — Other Uses)

Translation Words - ULT

- firstborn
- world
- God's
- angels
- let...worship

Translation Words - UST

- his honored Son, his only Son
- world
- the angels
- of God
- must worship

Hebrews 1:7

Here the author quotes from an important text, the Old Testament. He does not introduce it as a quotation but instead as words that God has spoken about angels. However, the audience would have understood that this was a quotation from the Old Testament, here from the Greek translation of Psalm 104:4. Since the author introduces this quotation as words that God has said about the angels, you should introduce the quotation as words that someone has said. If your readers would not know that the quotation is from the Old Testament, you could include a footnote or use some other form to identify the quotation. The word **And** was a normal way in the author's culture to introduce another quotation. Alternate translation: "On the one hand, with regard to the angels, God speaks," (See: Quotations and Quote Margins)

> **ULT**
>
> **7** And with regard to the angels he says, "He who makes his angels spirits, and his servants flames of fire."
>
> **UST**
>
> **7** And in the scriptures he said about the angels: "God has made his angels to be like winds, and his ministers who serve him to be like flames of fire."

he says, "He who makes his angels spirits, and his servants flames of fire (ULT)
in the scriptures he said…God has made his angels to be like winds, and his ministers who serve him to be like flames of fire (UST)

If you do not use this form in your language, you could translate the statement as an indirect quote instead of as a direct quote. Alternate translation: "he says that he makes his angels spirits, and his servants flames of fire" (See: Direct and Indirect Quotations)

He who makes his angels spirits, and his servants flames of fire (ULT)
the…God has made his angels to be like winds, and his ministers who serve him to be like flames of fire (UST)

Here the quotation includes two statements that mean almost the same thing. This was considered good poetry in the author's culture. If your readers would misunderstand the parallelism, and if this would not be good poetry in your culture, you could combine the two statements. Alternate translation: "The one who makes his servant angels spirits and flames of fire" (See: Parallelism)

He who makes…his…his (ULT)
God has made…his…his (UST)

Here, **The one** and **his** refer to God. If your readers would misunderstand to whom these words refer, you could make the reference explicit. Alternate translation: "God makes his … his" (See: Pronouns — When to Use Them)

He who makes…his…his (ULT)
God has made…his…his (UST)

Here the author has God speaking about himself in the third person. He uses this form because the quotation uses the third person to speak about God, and the author claims that God speaks the quotation. If your readers would misunderstand this form, you could clarify that God is speaking about himself. Alternate translation: "I am the one who makes his angels spirits and his servants flames of fire" (See: First, Second or Third Person)

spirits (ULT)
to be like winds (UST)

Here, the word translated **spirits** could refer to: (1) "winds," since the word could mean either **spirits** or "winds" in the author's culture. Alternate translations: "winds" (2) how God made the angels to be "spiritual" beings. Alternate translation: "spiritual beings"

He who makes his angels spirits, and his servants flames of fire (ULT)
the...God has made his angels to be like winds, and his ministers who serve him to be like flames of fire (UST)

Here the quotation speaks as if God turned **his angels** into **spirits** and into **flames of fire**. It speaks in this way to identify what the angels are like and to show that God made them like that. If your readers would misunderstand this way of speaking, you could use a form that identifies what God made the angels like. Alternate translation: "The one who makes his angels so that they are like spirits, and his servants so that they are like flames of fire" (See: Metaphor)

flames of fire (ULT)
to be like flames of fire (UST)

Here the author uses the possessive form to describe **flames** that are made of **fire**. If your language does not use the possessive form for that idea, you could express the idea with an adjective such as "fiery." Alternate translation: "fiery flames" or "flames made of fire" (See: Possession)

Translation Words - ULT

- angels
- angels (2)
- spirits
- servants
- of fire

Translation Words - UST

- angels
- angels (2)
- to be like winds
- ministers who serve him
- of fire

Hebrews 1:8

Hebrews 1:8

But (ULT)
But in the scriptures, he also said about (UST)

Here, **But on the other hand** introduces a contrast with what God said about the angels in 1:7. The author contrasts the fact that God has created the angels with how the **Son** rules forever. If your readers would misunderstand **But on the other hand**, you could use a word or phrase that introduces this kind of contrast. Alternate translation: "However, on the other hand," (See: Connect — Contrast Relationship)

to...he says...the Son (ULT)
But in the scriptures, he also said about...s Son...God (UST)

Here, the author does not include "he says" because he used these words in the last verse (1:7). If your readers would misunderstand why the author omits these words, you could include them here. Alternate translation: "with regard to the Son, he says" (See: Ellipsis)

to...he says...the Son (ULT)
But in the scriptures, he also said about...s Son...God (UST)

Here and in the next verse, the author quotes from an important text, the Old Testament. He does not introduce it as a quotation but instead as words that God has spoken about his Son. However, the audience would have understood that this was a quotation from the Old Testament, here from Psalm 45:6–7. Since the author introduces this quotation as words that God has said about his Son, you should introduce the quotation as words that someone has said. If your readers would not know that the quotation is from the Old Testament, you could include a footnote or use some other form to identify the quotation. Alternate translation: "with regard to the Son, God speaks" (See: Quotations and Quote Margins)

to...he says...the Son (ULT)
But in the scriptures, he also said about...s Son...God (UST)

Here, **with regard to** could indicate that: (1) God is speaking about the **Son**. Alternate translation: "concerning the Son" (2) God is speaking directly to the **Son**. Alternate translation: "to the Son"

the Son (ULT)
s Son...God (UST)

Son is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

to...he says...the Son...Your throne, O God, {is} forever {and} ever, and the scepter of righteousness {is} the scepter of his kingdom (ULT)
But in the scriptures, he also said about...God's Son: "You who are God will rule forever, and you will reign justly over your kingdom (UST)

If you do not use this form in your language, you could translate the statement as an indirect quote instead of as a direct quote. If you use the following alternate translation, you will need to express the rest of the quote in the next

ULT

⁸ But to the Son {he says}, "Your throne, O God, {is} forever {and} ever, and the scepter of righteousness {is} the scepter of his kingdom.

UST

⁸ But in the scriptures, he also said about God's Son: "You who are God will rule forever, and you will reign justly over your kingdom.

verse as an indirect quote as well. Alternate translation: "to the Son {he says} that he is God and that his throne {is} forever {and} ever, and the scepter of righteousness {is} the scepter of his kingdom." (See: Direct and Indirect Quotations)

Your (ULT)
You (UST)

Here, **Your** refers to one person, the **Son**. Therefore, **Your** is singular here. (See: Forms of 'You' — Singular)

Your throne (ULT)
You who are…will rule (UST)

Here, **throne** figuratively refers to what the person on the **throne** does, which is to rule. If your readers would misunderstand **throne**, you could express the idea by referring to "rule" or "reign." Alternate translation: "Your reign" (See: Metonymy)

O God (ULT)
God (UST)

Here, **O God** directly addresses and names who "you" in the quote is. **O** is an older way to indicate direct address in English. Use a form in your language that indicates direct address. Alternate translation: "God" or "you who are God" (See: Exclamations)

is} forever {and} ever (ULT)
forever (UST)

Here, **forever {and} ever** indicates that something lasts forever or does not come to an end. If your readers would misunderstand this idiom, you could use a comparable idiom or express the idea nonfiguratively. Alternate translation: "lasts forever" or "never ends" (See: Idiom)

the scepter of righteousness {is} the scepter of his kingdom (ULT)
you will reign justly over your kingdom (UST)

Here, **scepter** figuratively refers to how the person who has the **scepter** rules. If your readers would misunderstand **scepter**, you could express the idea by referring to how the person "rules" or "reigns." Alternate translation: "with righteousness {is} how he rules his kingdom" (See: Metonymy)

the scepter…righteousness…of (ULT)
you will reign justly (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind **righteousness**, you could express the idea by using an adjective such as "righteous." Alternate translation: "a righteous scepter" (See: Abstract Nouns)

his (ULT)
your (UST)

Here the author refers to the **Son** in the third person instead of in the second person. He is still referring to the same person. If your readers would misunderstand **his** here, you could continue to use **you** instead. Alternate translation: "your" (See: First, Second or Third Person)

his (ULT)
your (UST)

Most later manuscripts have "your" here instead of **his**. However, the earliest manuscripts have **his**, and later scribes probably changed it to "your" to be consistent with the rest of the quote. Unless there is a good reason not to use **his**, you should follow the ULT here. (See: Textual Variants)

Translation Words - ULT

- Son
- throne
- O God
- is} forever
- and} ever
- scepter
- the scepter (2)
- righteousness...of
- of...kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- God
- s Son...God
- will rule
- forever
- forever
- you will reign
- over (2)
- justly
- kingdom

Hebrews 1:9

Hebrews 1:9

You have loved righteousness and hated lawlessness. Therefore God, your God, has anointed you with the oil of exultation more than your companions (ULT)
You have loved people's righteous deeds and you have hated people's sinful deeds. So God, whom you worship, has caused you to be more joyful than anyone else besides you (UST)

ULT

9 You have loved righteousness and hated lawlessness. Therefore God, your God, has anointed you with the oil of exultation more than your companions."

UST

9 You have loved people's righteous deeds and you have hated people's sinful deeds. So God, whom you worship, has caused you to be more joyful than anyone else besides you."

If you do not use this form in your language, you could translate the sentences as indirect quotes instead of as direct quotes. Make sure that your translation fits with how you expressed the first half of the quote in the previous verse. Alternate translation: "He has loved righteousness and hated lawlessness. Therefore God, his God, has anointed him {with the} oil of exultation more than his companions." (See: Direct and Indirect Quotations)

You have loved...hated...you...your...your (ULT)
You have loved...you have hated...you...you...you (UST)

Here, **You**, **your**, and **you** refer to one person, the Son. Therefore, all forms of **you** in this verse are singular. (See: Forms of 'You' — Singular)

righteousness...lawlessness (ULT)
people's righteous deeds...people's sinful deeds (UST)

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas behind **righteousness** and **lawlessness**, you could express the idea by using an adjective or adverbs. Alternate translation: "what is righteous ... what is lawless" or "what people do righteously ... what people do lawlessly" (See: Abstract Nouns)

has anointed...God, your God (ULT)
has caused...to be...God, whom you worship (UST)

Here the quotation repeats **God** in order to emphasize that **God** is the one who "anoints" and also to identify him as **your God**, which means that he is the **God** whom **you** serve. If your readers would misunderstand why the quotation repeats **God**, you could express the idea by using **God** once and emphasize the phrase in another way. Alternate translation: "the God whom you serve has anointed" (See: Doublet)

has anointed...God, your God (ULT)
has caused...to be...God, whom you worship (UST)

Since **God** is the one speaking this quotation, he refers to himself in the third person here. If your readers would misunderstand that God is speaking about himself, you could use the first person here to clarify that this is not another **God**. Alternate translation: "I, who am your God, have anointed" (See: First, Second or Third Person)

has anointed you…with the oil of exultation (ULT)
has caused you to be…more joyful (UST)

In the author's culture, people were often **anointed** with **oil** when they received special authority or power, including when a person became king. Here the author applies this "anointing" to the Son. In this situation, it figuratively refers to how God has exalted the Son and given him power and authority. The phrase **oil of exultation** refers to how the "anointing" leads to or results in **exultation**. If your readers would misunderstand the anointing language, you could use a comparable metaphor or express the idea nonfiguratively. Alternate translation: "has honored and empowered you so that you exult" (See: Metaphor)

with the oil of exultation (ULT)
more joyful (UST)

Here the quotation uses the possessive form to show that the **oil** leads to **exultation**. If your language does not use the possessive form for that idea, you could express the idea with a word or phrase that indicates result. Alternate translation: "{with the} oil that leads to exultation" (See: Possession)

of exultation (ULT)
more joyful (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind **exultation**, you could express the idea by using a verb such as "exult" or "rejoice." Alternate translation: "that makes you rejoice" or "which causes you to exult" (See: Abstract Nouns)

your companions (ULT)
anyone else besides you (UST)

Here the author does not clarify who the **companions** are. In the context of the quotation, they probably referred to other people in the royal family who did not become king. In the context of Hebrews, they probably refer to those who believe in Jesus. God saves them, but he does not seat them at his right hand like he does with Jesus. However, neither the quotation nor the author of Hebrews state explicitly who the **companions** are, so you should leave their identify unspecified if possible. Alternate translation: "those who are with you" (See: When to Keep Information Implicit)

Translation Words - ULT

- You have loved
- righteousness
- lawlessness
- God
- God (2)
- has anointed
- with the oil
- of exultation
- companions

Translation Words - UST

- You have loved
- people's righteous deeds
- people's sinful deeds

- God
- worship (2)
- has caused…to be
- more joyful
- more joyful
- anyone else besides

Hebrews 1:10

And (ULT)
We also know that his Son is superior to angels because someone wrote (UST)

Here and in the next two verses, the author quotes from an important text, the Old Testament. He uses **And** to indicate that these are more words that God says "with regard to the Son" (see 1:8). The audience would have understood that this was a quotation from the Old Testament, here from Psalm 102:25–27. Since the author introduces this quotation as words that God has said about the Son, you should introduce the quotation as words that someone has said. If your readers would not know that the quotation is from the Old Testament, you could include a footnote or use some other form to identify the quotation. Alternate translation: "God says further," (See: Quotations and Quote Margins)

ULT

10 "And in the beginning, O Lord, you laid the earth's foundation, and the heavens are the work of your hands.

UST

10 We also know that his Son is superior to angels because someone wrote, "Lord, it was you who created the earth in the beginning. You also made the rest of the universe, the stars and everything in the sky.

And in the beginning, O Lord, you laid the earth's foundation, and the heavens are the work of your hands (ULT)
We also know that his Son is superior to angels because someone wrote, "Lord, it was you who created the earth in the beginning. You also made the rest of the universe, the stars and everything in the sky (UST)

If you do not use this form in your language, you could translate the sentence as an indirect quote instead of as a direct quote. If you use the following alternate translation, you will need to express the rest of the quote in the next two verses as indirect quotes as well. Alternate translation: "And further, according to {the} beginnings the Lord founded the earth, and the heavens are {the} works of his hands." (See: Direct and Indirect Quotations)

in the beginning, O Lord, you laid the earth's foundation, and the heavens are the work of your hands (ULT)
Lord, it was you who created the earth in the beginning. You also made the rest of the universe, the stars and everything in the sky (UST)

This part of the quotation includes two statements that mean almost the same thing. One statement uses **earth** language, and the other uses **heavens** language. This was considered good poetry in the author's culture, and **heavens** and **earth** together refer to everything that God made. If your readers would misunderstand the parallelism, and if this would not be good poetry in your culture, you could combine the two statements. Alternate translation: "according to {the} beginnings, O Lord, you founded the earth and the heavens" or "according to {the} beginnings, O Lord, you made everything, both earth and heavens" (See: Parallelism)

you...laid...foundation...your (ULT)
you...who created...You also made the (UST)

Here, **you** and **your** refer to one person, the Son. Therefore, **you** and **your** are singular here. (See: Forms of 'You' — Singular)

in the beginning (ULT)
it was...in the beginning (UST)

Here, **according to {the} beginnings** refers to when all created things first came into being. In other words, the **beginnings** identifies the time when God created the universe. If your readers would misunderstand **according to {the} beginnings**, you could use a word or phrase that refers to when everything first began to exist. Alternate translation: "when everything began to exist" or "at the beginning of the creation" (See: Idiom)

O Lord (ULT)
Lord (UST)

Here, **O Lord** directly addresses and names who **you** in the quote is. **O** is an older way to indicate direct address in English. Use a form in your language that indicates direct address. Alternate translation: "Lord" (See: Exclamations)

laid the earth's foundation (ULT)
who created the earth (UST)

Here the quotation refers to **the earth** as if it were a building that was set on a "foundation." The **Lord** is the one who put **the earth** on its foundation, or **founded** it. The author of the quotations speaks in this way in order to show that the **Lord** is the one who created and sustains **the earth**. If your readers would misunderstand this figure of speech, you could use a comparable metaphor or express the idea nonfiguratively. Alternate translation: "perfectly set up the earth" or "made the earth" (See: Metaphor)

the work of your hands (ULT)
You also made the (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind **works**, you could express the idea by using a verb such as "make" or "do." Alternate translation: "what your hands made" (See: Abstract Nouns)

of your hands (ULT)
You also made the (UST)

Here, **hands** figuratively refer to the power and action that a person has to do **works**. If your readers would misunderstand this figure of speech, you could express the idea nonfiguratively. Alternate translation: "of your power" or "that you powerfully did" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- O Lord
- laid...foundation
- earth's
- heavens
- the work
- of...hands

Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- who created
- earth

• You also made the
• You also made the
• rest of the universe, the stars…everything in…sky

Hebrews 1:11

They will perish, but you will continue and they will all wear out like a garment (ULT) Those things will no longer exist, but you will keep on living forever. They will all wear out as clothing wears out (UST)

If you do not use this form in your language, you could translate the sentence as an indirect quote instead of as a direct quote. If you use the following alternate translation, you will need to express the rest of the quote in the previous and following verses as indirect quotes as well. Alternate translation: "They themselves will perish, but he himself will continue; and they will all wear out like a garment." (See: Direct and Indirect Quotations)

They will perish...all...they will...wear out (ULT) Those things will no longer exist...all...wears out (UST)

Here, **They** and **they** refer to the "earth" and the "heavens" in 1:10, which together refer to everything that God has made. If your readers would misunderstand **They** and **they**, you could clarify what they refer back to. Alternate translation: "Earth and heavens themselves will perish ... they will all wear out" or "Every created thing itself will perish ... every one of them will wear out" (See: Pronouns — When to Use Them)

They will perish, but you will continue (ULT) Those things will no longer exist, but you will keep on living forever (UST)

Here, the words translated **themselves** and **yourself** emphasize the contrast between "them" and "you." Consider using a natural way to emphasize this contrast in your language. Alternate translation: "It is they who will perish, but it is you who will continue" (See: Reflexive Pronouns)

you...will continue (ULT) you...will keep on living forever (UST)

Here, **you yourself** refers to one person, the Son. Therefore, **you yourself** is singular here. (See: Forms of 'You' — Singular)

you...will continue (ULT) you...will keep on living forever (UST)

Here, **continue** is the exact opposite of **perish**. What **continue** means it that **you**, the Son, will never cease to exist or fall apart. If your readers would misunderstand **continue**, you could use a word or phrase that identifies the Son as one who never stops existing and functioning. Alternate translation: "you yourself will never perish" or "you yourself always exist" (See: Translate Unknowns)

they will all wear out like a garment (ULT) all...as clothing wears out (UST)

Here the author of the quotation compares the heavens and earth to a piece of clothing that gets old and eventually becomes useless. By speaking in this way, he illustrates how everything that God has created will eventually fall apart. If your readers would misunderstand this figure of speech, you could use a comparable simile

or express the idea nonfiguratively. Alternate translation: "they will all fall apart like a worn pair of shoes" or "they will eventually come to nothing" (See: Simile)

Translation Words - ULT

- will perish
- like
- a garment

Translation Words - UST

- will no longer exist
- as
- clothing

Hebrews 1:12

And you will roll them up like a cloak, and they will be changed like a garment. But you are the same, and your years will not end (ULT)
You will roll them up like a cloth, as if they were old clothes. Then you will change all that is in the universe for something new, like someone putting on new clothes. But you stay the same, and you live forever (UST)

ULT

12 And you will roll them up like a cloak, and they will be changed like a garment. But you are the same, and your years will not end."

UST

12 You will roll them up like a cloth, as if they were old clothes. Then you will change all that is in the universe for something new, like someone putting on new clothes. But you stay the same, and you live forever!"

If you do not use this form in your language, you could translate the sentence as an indirect quote instead of as a direct quote. If you use the following alternate translation, you will need to express the rest of the quote in the previous two verses as an indirect quote as well. Alternate translation: "And as a cloak he will roll them up, and as a garment they will be changed. But he himself is the same, and his years will not fail." (See: Direct and Indirect Quotations)

you will roll...up...you...are...your (ULT)
will roll...up...you...you...stay...you live forever (UST)

Here, **you**, **yourself**, and **your** refer to one person, the Son. Therefore, all forms of **you** in this verse are singular. (See: Forms of 'You' — Singular)

them...they will be changed (ULT)
them...will change all that is in the universe for something new, like someone putting on new clothes (UST)

Just as in the previous verse, **them** and **they** here refer to the "earth" and the "heavens," which identify everything that God has created. If your readers would misunderstand what **them** and **they** refer to, you could make it explicit. Alternate translation: "the earth and heavens ... they will be changed" or "all created things ... they will be changed" (See: Pronouns — When to Use Them)

And you will roll them up like a cloak, and they will be changed like a garment (ULT)
You will roll them up like a cloth, as if they were old clothes. Then...will change all that is in the universe for something new, like someone putting on new clothes (UST)

Here the quotation includes two statements that mean almost the same thing. One statement uses **cloak** and "rolling" language, and the other uses **garment** and "changing" language. This was considered good poetry in the author's culture. If your readers would misunderstand the parallelism, and if this would not be good poetry in your culture, you could combine the two statements. Alternate translation: "And as a cloak you will change them" or "And as a garment they will be rolled up and changed" (See: Parallelism)

you will roll them up like a cloak, and they will be changed like a garment (ULT)
will roll them up like a cloth, as if they were old clothes. Then…will change all that is in the universe for something new, like someone putting on new clothes (UST)

Here the author continues to compare the heavens and earth to clothing, in this case a **cloak** or a **garment**. Both of these words refer to outer clothing. Both similes describe what a person would do with a dirty or old piece of clothing. They would "change" out of it, and they would **roll** it up to wash it or throw it away. The author of the quotation uses this simile to show that God will remove and replace what he has created as easily as a person changes out of an outer garment. If your readers would misunderstand this figure of speech, you could use a comparable simile or express the idea nonfiguratively. Alternate translation: "as a worn shoe you will throw them in a corner, and as an old shoe they will be taken off" or "you will remove them, and they will be transformed" (See: Simile)

and they will be changed like a garment (ULT)
as…old clothes. Then…will change all that is in the universe for something new, like someone putting on new clothes (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. The author uses the passive form here to focus on **they** who are **changed** rather than the person doing the "changing." If you must state who does the action, the author implies that "the Lord" does it. Alternate translation: "and as a garment you will change them" (See: Active or Passive)

you…are the same, and your years will not end (ULT)
you…you…stay the same, and you live forever (UST)

Here the quotation includes two statements that mean almost the same thing. One statement refers to how the Lord stays **the same**, and the other refers to how his **years will not fail**. This was considered good poetry in the author's culture. If your readers would misunderstand the parallelism, and if this would not be good poetry in your culture, you could combine the two statements. Alternate translation: "you stay alive forever" or "you yourself are always the same" (See: Parallelism)

you…are (ULT)
you…you…stay (UST)

Here, the word translated **yourself** emphasizes the contrast between "they" and "you." Consider using a natural way to emphasize this contrast in your language. Alternate translation: "it is you who are" (See: Reflexive Pronouns)

you…are the same (ULT)
you…you…stay the same (UST)

Here, to be **the same** is the exact opposite of being **changed**. If your readers would misunderstand **are the same**, you could use a word or phrase that describes someone who never changes. Alternate translation: "you yourself never change" or "you yourself stay what you are" (See: Translate Unknowns)

your...years...will not end (ULT)
you live forever (UST)

Here, **your years will not fail** means that a person is alive during every "year." They will never run out of **years**, which means that they are always alive. If your readers would misunderstand this figure of speech, you could use a phrase that indicates that a person never dies or always lives. Alternate translation: "your life will never end" or "you will never run out of years" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- like
- like
- a cloak
- a garment
- years

Translation Words - UST

- like...if they were
- as
- a cloth
- old clothes
- you live forever

Hebrews 1:13

But to which of the angels has he said at any time (ULT)
God has never said to any angel what he said to his Son (UST)

Here the author quotes from an important text, the Old Testament. He does not introduce it as a quotation but instead as words that God has spoken to his Son, not to angels. However, the audience would have understood that this was a quotation from the Old Testament, specifically from Psalm 110:1. Since the author introduces the quotation as words that God has said to his Son, not to angels, you should introduce the quotations as words that someone has or has not said. If your readers would not know that the quotation is from the Old Testament, you could include a footnote or use some other form to identify the quotation. Alternate translation: "But to which of the angels has he ever spoken" (See: Quotations and Quote Margins)

has he said at any time, "Sit at my right hand until I make your enemies a footstool for your feet (ULT)
God has never said...Sit in the most important place next to me and rule with me while I defeat all of your enemies for you to rule over them (UST)

If you do not use this form in your language, you could translate the question as an indirect quote instead of as a direct quote. Alternate translation: "has he ever said that he should sit as his right hand until he makes his enemies a footstool for his feet" (See: Direct and Indirect Quotations)

But to which of the angels has he said at any time, "Sit at my right hand until I make your enemies a footstool for your feet (ULT)
God has never said to any angel what he said to his Son: "Sit in the most important place next to me and rule with me while I defeat all of your enemies for you to rule over them (UST)

The author does not ask this question because he is looking for information. Rather, he asks it to involve the audience in what he is arguing. The question assumes that the answer is "none of them," for God said these words to his own Son. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you could express the idea with a strong negation. See how translated the similar question in 1:5. Alternate translation: "But God has never said to any of the angels, 'Sit at my right hand until I make your enemies a footstool for your feet.'" (See: Rhetorical Question)

has he said at any time (ULT)
God has never said (UST)

Here, **he** refers to God the Father. If your readers would misunderstand **he**, you could make the reference explicit. Alternate translation: "has God ever said" (See: Pronouns — When to Use Them)

Sit...your...your (ULT)
Sit...you...your (UST)

Here, **Sit** and **you** refer to one person, the Son. Therefore, all forms of **you** in this verse are singular. (See: Forms of 'You' — Singular)

Sit at my right hand (ULT)
Sit in...most important place next to me and rule with me (UST)

When someone sits at the **right hand** of God, it symbolizes that person's honor, authority, and ability to rule. If your readers would misunderstand what **Sit at my right hand** means, you could express the idea explicitly. See how you translated the similar words in 1:3. Alternate translation: "Sit to rule at my right hand" or "Take the place of honor and authority at my right hand" (See: Symbolic Action)

at my right hand (ULT)
in...most important place next to me and rule with me (UST)

Here,**at my right hand** refers to the place next to a person's **right hand**, which would be the "right side." In the author's culture, this side was associated with honor or authority. If your readers would misunderstand **at my right hand**, you could refer to the "right side." Make sure that your readers understand that this side indicates that the Son has honor and authority when he sits there. Alternate translation: "at my right side" or "at the honorable place next to me" (See: Synecdoche)

until I make your enemies a footstool for your feet (ULT)
the...while I defeat all of your enemies for you to rule over them (UST)

Here the author of the quotation speaks as if the Son's **enemies** could become a **footstool** on which he puts his **feet**. In the author's culture, something that is under **feet** has been conquered and is powerless and shamed, so the point is that God will conquer and shame all the **enemies** of the Son. If your readers would misunderstand this figure of speech, you could use a comparable metaphor or express the idea nonfiguratively. Alternate translation: "until I make your enemies kneel before you" or "until I conquer and shame your enemies" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- of...angels
- at any time
- right hand
- enemies
- a footstool

Translation Words - UST

- God has never
- angel
- most important place next to...and rule with me
- I defeat all of
- enemies

Hebrews 1:14

Are they not all ministering spirits, being sent for service for the sake of those who are going to inherit salvation (ULT)
The angels are only spirits whom God has sent out to serve and care for believers whom God will soon save completely, as he has promised to do for them (UST)

> **ULT**
>
> **¹⁴** Are they not all ministering spirits, being sent for service for the sake of those who are going to inherit salvation?
>
> **UST**
>
> **¹⁴** The angels are only spirits whom God has sent out to serve and care for believers whom God will soon save completely, as he has promised to do for them.

The author does not ask this question because he is looking for information. Rather, he asks it to involve the audience in what he is arguing. The question assumes that the answer is "yes, they are." If your readers would misunderstand this question, you could express the idea with a strong affirmation. Alternate translation: "What is true is that they are all ministering spirits, being sent for service for the sake of those who are going to inherit salvation." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Are they (ULT)
are (UST)

Here, **they** refers to the "angels" in 1:13. If your readers would misunderstand **they**, you could refer to the "angels" explicitly. Alternate translation: "Are the angels" (See: Pronouns — When to Use Them)

being sent (ULT)
whom God has sent (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. The author uses the passive form here to focus on the angels, who are **sent**, rather than the person doing the "sending." If you must state who does the action, the author implies that "God" does it. Alternate translation: "those whom God sent" (See: Active or Passive)

for service (ULT)
whom God has sent out (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind **service**, you could express the idea by using a verb such as "serve." Alternate translation: "to serve" (See: Abstract Nouns)

to inherit salvation (ULT)
save completely, as he has promised to do for them (UST)

Here the author speaks as if believers were children who would receive property that a parent passes on to their child when the parent dies. He speaks in this way to indicate that believers receive **salvation** from God. If your readers would misunderstand this figure of speech, you could use a comparable metaphor or express the idea nonfiguratively. Alternate translation: "to receive salvation from God" or "to be given salvation by God" (See: Metaphor)

those who are going (ULT)
The...believers whom God will soon (UST)

Alternate translation: "those who are about" or "those who are destined"

to inherit salvation (ULT)
save completely, as he has promised to do for them (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind **salvation**, you could express the idea by using a verb such as "save." In this case, you may need to find another way to express the idea behind **inherit**. Alternate translation: "to be saved as a gift from God" (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- ministering
- service
- spirits
- being sent
- to inherit
- salvation

Translation Words - UST

- spirits
- whom God has sent
- serve and care for
- whom God has sent
- save completely
- as he has promised to do for them

Hebrews 2

Hebrews 2 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The Son and the angels (1:5–2:18)

- Exhortation: Listen to the message! (2:1–4)
- Teaching: The Son becomes lower than the angels to help his brothers (2:5–18)

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 2:6–8, 12–13, which are quotations from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

Angels

In this chapter, the author continues to speak about angels. In 2:2, he refers to a tradition that says that God gave the law to Moses through angels. Then, in 2:5–9, he shows that Jesus, not angels, is the one who rules the "world that is coming." In fact, Jesus came for the sake of humans, not angels (2:16). Again, the author is not attacking angels. Instead, he uses angels, whom everyone knows are powerful and important, to show how much more important Jesus and the salvation he offers are. Translate "angels" the way you did in the previous chapter. (See: angel, archangel)

Jesus as high priest

In 2:17, the author first refers to Jesus as a "priest," here specifically a "high priest." This is an important theme in Hebrews. In much of the rest of the letter, the author argues that Jesus is a high priest who offers a sacrifice in the heavenly sanctuary. The author simply introduces the title "high priest" here, but he will develop the idea later. So, do not include any extra information here, but carefully consider how to translate "high priest" so that it fits with what the author later says about Jesus as a high priest. (See: high priest, chief priests)

Important Figures of Speech in this Chapter

Kinship language

Throughout this chapter, the author uses kinship language to describe those who believe in Jesus. They are God's "sons" or "children" (2:10, 13–14), Jesus' "brothers" (2:11–12, 17), and each is a "descendant of Abraham" (2:16). As God's children, they are Jesus' brothers and part of the family of Abraham, who is Jesus' ancestor. The idea that believers are part of God's family is important in Hebrews and the Bible in general, so if possible preserve this language in your translation. Consider using words that refer to adopted family members. (See: son, children, child, offspring, and brother)

Other Possible Translation Difficulties in this Chapter

Who is the "man" in the quotation from Psalm 8?

In 2:6–8, the author quotes from Psalm 8:4–6. The Psalm refers to "man" and "son of man." In the context of the Psalm itself, these words use the masculine singular form to refer to humans in general. However, Jesus used the phrase "Son of Man" to refer to himself during his earthly ministry. Some scholars argue that the author of Hebrews quotes "son of man" from Psalm 8 because he is using it to refer to Jesus directly. Others argue that the author uses "son of man" and "man" in the Psalm quotation to refer to humans in general but then applies what the Psalm says is true about humans to Jesus, who is the only human who is now "crowned with honor and glory" (2:9). Since the author never refers to Jesus as "Son of Man," this second option is probably correct. Consider how you can translate "man" and "son of man" in the Psalm quotation so that they can apply first to humans in general and then to Jesus in particular.

Hebrews 2:1

Therefore (ULT)
that is...to (UST)

Here the author introduces a result or implication from what he said about the Son and the angels in 1:1–14. Because God now speaks through his Son, who is greater than the angels, the audience needs to **give attention**. If your readers would misunderstand that **Because of this** draws an inference from the previous chapter, you could use a word or phrase that do does draw this inference. Alternate translation: "Because God is speaking through his Son" or "Because of all that" (See: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship)

it is far more necessary for us to give attention (ULT)
So, since...true, we must pay very great attention...we (UST)

Alternate translation: "it is most important for us to give attention" or "we must above all give attention"

it is far more necessary for us to give attention (ULT)
So, since...true, we must pay very great attention...we (UST)

Here, **far more** could modify (1) **necessary**. See the ULT. (2) **give attention**. Alternate translation: "it is necessary for us to give far more attention"

it is far more necessary for us to give attention (ULT)
So, since...true, we must pay very great attention...we (UST)

Here the author does not specify what he is comparing **far more** with. He could be: (1) using the comparative **far more** to emphasize how important it is to **give attention**. In this case, he is not making a comparison at all. Alternate translation: "it is most necessary for us to give attention" (2) comparing how they should **give attention** with how those who receive messages from angels **give attention**. Alternate translation: "it is far more necessary for us than for those who hear angels to give attention" (3) comparing how they should **give attention** with how they are currently giving **attention**. Alternate translation: "it necessary for us to give far more attention that we have been"

to give attention (ULT)
pay...attention (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind **attention**, you could express the idea by using a verb such as "attend" or "focus." Alternate translation: "to attend" (See: Abstract Nouns)

to what we have heard (ULT)
what...have heard about God's Son (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. The author uses the passive form here to focus on what is **heard** rather than focusing on the person doing the "hearing." If you must state who did the action, the author implies that "we" did it. Alternate translation: "to the {things} that we heard" (See: Active or Passive)

so that we might not drift away from it (ULT)
so that we do not gradually stop believing it (UST)

Here the author speaks as if the audience were boats that could **drift away** from where they were moored. In this metaphor, the place where the boats are moored is the good news about Jesus, and "drifting away" from this place refers to slowly failing to believe this good news. The author uses this metaphor to encourage the audience to remain "moored" to the good news by continuing to focus on it and firmly believe it. If your readers would misunderstand this metaphor, you could use a comparable figure of speech or express the idea nonfiguratively. Alternate translation: "so that we might not slide {from them}" or "so that we might not slowly fail to believe" (See: Metaphor)

Hebrews 2:2

Hebrews 2:2

For (ULT)
When (UST)

Here, **For** introduces the reason why "it is far more necessary for us to give attention" to the message (2:1). This reason continues into the next verse (2:3). If your readers would misunderstand **For**, you could use a word or phrase that introduces a reason or basis. Alternate translation: "You can tell that we need to give attention because," (See: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship)

For if the...message (ULT)
When...what they said (UST)

Here the author is speaking as if these things were a hypothetical possibility, but he means that they are actually true. If your language does not state something as a condition if it is certain or true, and if your readers might misunderstand and think that what the author is saying is not certain, then you could express the idea by using a word such as "since" or "because." Alternate translation: "For since the message" (See: Connect — Factual Conditions)

the message spoken through angels (ULT)
When...the angels spoke God's law to the people of Israel, what they said (UST)

In the author's culture, people believed that God gave his law to Moses through angels. Here, **the message spoken through angels** refers to this law that Moses received from God with angels as the messengers. If your readers would not know that this **message** is Moses' law, you could make the idea more explicit. Alternate translation: "the message spoken through angels to Moses" or "Moses' law, which was spoken through angels," (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the message spoken through angels (ULT)
When...the angels spoke God's law to the people of Israel, what they said (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. The author uses the passive form here to focus on what was **spoken** rather than focusing on the person doing the "speaking." If you must state who did the action, the author implies that "God" did it by means of angels. Alternate translation: "the message that God spoke through angels" (See: Active or Passive)

every transgression and disobedience (ULT)
all who...disobeyed him and violated his law (UST)

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas behind **transgression** and **disobedience**, you could express the ideas by using a verbs such as "transgress" and "disobey." Alternate translation: "any person who transgressed and disobeyed" (See: Abstract Nouns)

ULT

2 For if the message spoken through angels became reliable, and every transgression and disobedience received just punishment,

UST

2 When the angels spoke God's law to the people of Israel, what they said was valid. God justly punished all who disobeyed him and violated his law.

transgression and disobedience (ULT)
disobeyed him and violated his law (UST)

Here, **transgression** and **disobedience** mean almost the same thing. The word **transgression** refers to when someone breaks a law or command that they know about. The word **disobedience** refers to when someone hears a law or command and ignores it. The author uses both words to emphasize that any kind of law-breaking was punished. If you do not have words that represent these two ideas, and if your readers would not understand that the author uses the two words to refer to any type of law-breaking, you could express the idea with a single word or phrase. Alternate translation: "misdeed" or "case of law-breaking" (See: Doublet)

received just punishment (ULT)
God justly punished (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind **penalty**, you could express the idea by using a verb such as "punish" or "penalize." Alternate translation: "was justly penalized" (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- angels
- transgression
- disobedience
- received
- just

Translation Words - UST

- the angels
- God justly punished
- God justly punished
- disobeyed him
- violated his law

Hebrews 2:3

how will we escape, having ignored so great a salvation (ULT)
We will certainly not escape God. He will certainly punish those who ignore such an important message about how he saves us (UST)

The author does not ask this question because he is looking for information. Rather, he asks it to involve the audience in what he is arguing. The question assumes that the answer is "we will not." If your readers would misunderstand this question, you could express the idea with a strong negation. Alternate translation: "we will definitely not escape, having neglected so great a salvation." (See: Rhetorical Question)

will we escape (ULT)
We will certainly not escape God. He will certainly punish (UST)

Here the author implies that **we** will not **escape** what those under the law experienced when they broke that law: a "just penalty" (2:2). So, he does not include what **we escape** because he stated it in the last verse. If your readers would misunderstand what **we escape** from, you could express the idea explicitly. Alternate translation: "will we escape the penalty" or "will we escape just punishment" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

will we escape, having ignored so great a salvation (ULT)
We will certainly not escape God. He will certainly punish…those who ignore such an important message about how he saves us (UST)

Here, **having neglected** introduces a hypothetical possibility. The author is not claiming that he or his audience have **neglected** or will "neglect" the **salvation**. Instead, he is asking the question about what we would happen if he or his audience did "neglect" the **salvation**. If your readers would misunderstand that **having neglected** introduces a possibility, you could use a form that does introduce a possibility. Alternate translation: "will we escape if we neglect so great a salvation" (See: Connect — Hypothetical Conditions)

having ignored (ULT)
those who ignore (UST)

Here, **neglected** refers to ignoring or failing to pay attention to something. If your readers would misunderstand **neglected**, you could use a word or phrase that expresses the idea more clearly. Alternate translation: "pay no attention to" or "consider unimportant" (See: Translate Unknowns)

so great…a salvation? This (ULT)
such an important message…about how he saves us…who (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind **salvation**, you could express the idea by using a verb such as "save." Alternate translation: "the amazing way in which God saves us? This {way in which God saves us}" (See: Abstract Nouns)

so great…a salvation? This (ULT)
such an important message…about how he saves us…who (UST)

Here, **salvation** figuratively refers to the "message" about **salvation**. The author makes this clear in the second half of the verse, when he refers to how the **salvation** is **spoken**. If your readers would misunderstand **salvation**, you could express the idea by referring to a "message" or "proclamation" about **salvation**. Alternate translation: "the proclamation about so great a salvation? Which {proclamation about salvation}" (See: Metonymy)

first having been received to be spoken by the Lord (ULT)
It was the Lord Jesus…first told us about this (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. The author uses the passive form here to focus on what was **chosen** and **spoken** rather than focusing on the person doing the "choosing" and "speaking." If you must state who did the action, the author implies that "God" did the "choosing" and **the Lord** did the "speaking." Alternate translation: "God having chosen the Lord to speak it first" (See: Active or Passive)

first having been received to be spoken (ULT)
first told us about this (UST)

Here, **first having been chosen** identifies that something was the **first** or began some process. If your readers would misunderstand this phrase, you could use a word or phrase that identifies that something begins a process or was the **first**. Alternate translation: "first spoken" or "which had its beginning when it was spoken" (See: Idiom)

was confirmed to us by those who heard it (ULT)
It was…Lord Jesus…and the disciples who heard him have assured us that he did so (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. The author uses the passive form here to focus on what was **confirmed** rather than focusing on the people doing the "confirming." Alternate translation: "those who heard confirmed to us" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- a salvation
- having been received
- Lord
- was confirmed

Translation Words - UST

- about how he saves us
- It was…Lord Jesus
- told us about this
- have assured us that he did so

Hebrews 2:4

Hebrews 2:4

by signs...and wonders and various miracles, and by the distributions of the Holy Spirit (ULT)
also...that prove these things are true...also... by giving believers power to do mighty deeds...that prove these things are true...And the Holy Spirit also gives many gifts...to distribute them (UST)

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas behind **signs**, **wonders**, **miracles**, and **distributions**, you could express the ideas by using verbal phrases. Alternate translation: "by enabling people to do amazing and wonderful things, to act powerfully in various ways, and to be empowered by the Holy Spirit" (See: Abstract Nouns)

ULT

4 God also testifying to it by signs and wonders and various miracles, and by the distributions of the Holy Spirit according to his will.

UST

4 God also confirmed to us that this message was true by giving believers power to do mighty deeds that prove these things are true. And the Holy Spirit also gives many gifts just as he desires to distribute them.

by signs...and wonders...various miracles, and (ULT)
also...that prove these things are true...also...by giving believers power to do mighty deeds...that prove these things are true...also gives many gifts (UST)

Here the author uses three similar words to describe supernatural acts that God empowers his people to do. The word **signs** emphasizes that these acts reveal something, **wonders** emphasizes that these acts are amazing or unusual, and **miracles** emphasizes that these acts are powerful. The author uses these three words to show that God uses lots of things to "testify" to the truth of the message about salvation. If your language does not have different words that emphasize these three aspects of the supernatural acts, you could combine two or all three of these words into one word or phrase and emphasize the variety of testimony in another way. Alternate translation: "by many and various miracles" or "by many signs and various miracles" (See: Doublet)

by the distributions of the Holy Spirit (ULT)
the Holy Spirit...to distribute them (UST)

Here, **distributions** refers to specific ways in which the **Holy Spirit** empowers people. Sometimes these specific ways are referred to as "gifts." If your readers would misunderstand **distributions**, you could use a word or phrase that refers to how people receive specific "gifts" or "empowerings" from the **Holy Spirit**. Alternate translation: "gifts from the Holy Spirit" or "specific empowerings of the Holy Spirit" (See: Translate Unknowns)

according to his will (ULT)
just as he desires (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind **will**, you could express the idea by using a verb such as "want" or "chose." Alternate translation: "in just the way he wanted to do it" (See: Abstract Nouns)

his (ULT)
he desires (UST)

Here, **his** could refer to: (1) **God**. Alternate translation: "God's" (2) **the Holy Spirit**. Alternate translation: "the Spirit's" or "his own" (See: Pronouns — When to Use Them)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- testifying to it
- by signs
- wonders
- miracles
- of the Holy Spirit
- his...will

Translation Words - UST

- God
- also...that prove these things are true
- also...that prove these things are true
- confirmed to us that this message was true
- by giving believers power to do mighty deeds
- the Holy Spirit
- he desires

Hebrews 2:5

For (ULT)

Here, **For** primarily introduces a new topic into the discussion. However, it may also indicate that what the author says about this new topic supports or gives a basis for an earlier claim. If this is so, **For** could introduce support for the claim in 2:1 about the need to "give attention," or it could introduce support for the arguments in 1:5–14 about how the Son is superior to the angels. If your readers would misunderstand **For**, you could use a word or phrase that introduces a new section, or you could leave it untranslated. Alternate translation: "Indeed," (See: Connecting Words and Phrases)

> **ULT**
>
> **5** For {it was} not to angels that {God} subjected the world that is coming, about which we are speaking.
>
> **UST**
>
> **5** God has not put the angels in charge of the new world he will make. That is the new world about which we are speaking.

the world that is coming (ULT)
the new world he will make...the (UST)

Here, **world** is the same word that is translated "world" in 1:6, and the author probably has the same **world** in mind here. He specifies that it is **coming**, which means that humans on earth do not yet experience this **world** but will experience it some day, when Jesus comes back. If your readers would misunderstand **the world that is coming**, express the idea in the same way you did in 1:6 and include the idea that humans will someday experience this **world**. Alternate translation: "the new world that God will give us" (See: Translate Unknowns)

we are speaking (ULT)
we are speaking (UST)

Here, **we** refers to the author, who is one who "speaks." However, the author assumed that the audience was involved in the conversation by "hearing" what he "spoke," so he uses **we**. If your readers would misunderstand that **we** refers to both sides of a conversation, you could refer to just the speaker by using a pronoun such as "I." Alternate translation: "I am speaking" or "I am telling you" (See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We')

Translation Words - ULT

- to angels
- that {God} subjected
- world

Translation Words - UST

- God has...put...in charge of
- the angels
- new world

Hebrews 2:6

has...testified...someone...somewhere...saying (ULT)
solemnly...Someone...spoke to God about this somewhere in the scriptures, saying (UST)

Here and in the next two verses, the author quotes from an important text, the Old Testament. He intentionally uses vague words to introduce the quotation, and he does not identify who wrote the words or where they could be found. The quotation comes from Psalm 8:4–6. Since the author intentionally avoids giving information about where the quotation comes from, you should not include such information in your translation. If your readers would not know where the quote comes from, you could include the reference in a footnote. Alternate translation: "you can read these words in the Scriptures:" (See: Quotations and Quote Margins)

ULT

6 Instead, someone has somewhere testified, saying, "What is man, that you remember him or a son of man, that you care for him?

UST

6 Someone solemnly spoke to God about this somewhere in the scriptures, saying, "No human being is worthy enough for you to think about him! No human is worthy enough for you to care for him!

saying, "What is man, that you remember him or a son of man, that you care for him (ULT)
spoke to God about this...in the scriptures, saying, "No human being is worthy enough for you to think about him! No human is worthy enough for you to care for him (UST)

If you do not use this form in your language, you could translate the sentence as an indirect quote instead of as a direct quote. If you use the following alternate translation, you will need to express the rest of the quote in the next two verses as an indirect quote as well. Alternate translation: "asking about what man is that you remember, or a son of man, that you watch over him." (See: Direct and Indirect Quotations)

What is man, that you remember him or a son of man, that you care for him (ULT)
No human being is worthy enough for you to think about him! No human is worthy enough for you to care for him (UST)

The author does not include this question because he is looking for information. Rather, he includes it to involve the audience in what he is arguing. The question assumes that the answer is "nothing," for nothing about **man** or a **son of man** is significant enough for God to **remember** or **watch over** him. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you could express the idea with a strong negation. Alternate translation: "Man has nothing that should make you remember him, and a son of man has nothing that should make you watch over him." (See: Rhetorical Question)

What is man, that you remember him or a son of man, that you care for him (ULT)
No human being is worthy enough for you to think about him! No human is worthy enough for you to care for him (UST)

Here, the quotation includes two questions that mean almost the same thing. This was considered good poetry in the author's culture. If your readers would misunderstand the parallelism, and if this would not be good poetry in

your culture, you could combine the two statements. Alternate translation: "What is man, that you care about him" or "What is a son of man that you remember him" (See: Parallelism)

man…him…a son of man…him (ULT)
human being…him…human…him (UST)

The quotation refers to **man** and **son of man**, which are both singular and masculine. The author could intend these words primarily to identify: (1) humans in general. While he goes on to identify Jesus as the only human who currently fulfills these words (see 2:9), he intends the words first of all to refer to humans in general. Alternate translation: "a human … him or her … a child of a human … him or her" (2) Jesus, who calls himself a **son of man**. In this case, you should preserve the singular and masculine language. Alternate translation: "Man … him … the Son of Man … him" (See: When Masculine Words Include Women)

you remember…you care for (ULT)
worthy enough…think about…care for (UST)

Since the author of the quotation is speaking to God, **you** in this verse is singular. (See: Forms of 'You' — Singular)

a son of man (ULT)
human (UST)

In the culture of the quotation's author, **son of man** was a way to refer to a person who was descended from other humans. In other words, it is another way to say **man** or "human." Jesus used this phrase to refer to himself during his earthly life, so it is possible that the author of Hebrews intended **son of man** to refer to Jesus directly. However, the author never uses **son of man** to refer to Jesus anywhere else. If your readers would misunderstand **son of man**, you could: (1) use a word or phrase that refers to humans in general. Alternate translation: "a human being" (2) use the same phrase that Jesus used to refer to himself. Alternate translation: "the Son of Man" (See: Idiom)

a son of man (ULT)
human (UST)

Here, the author does not include "what is" because he used these words in the first part of the sentence. If your readers would misunderstand why the author omits these words, you could include them here. Alternate translation: "what is a son of man" (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT

- has…testified
- a son

Translation Words - UST

- solemnly
- human

Hebrews 2:7

Hebrews 2:7

You made him a little lower than the angels; you crowned him with glory and honor (ULT)
You created humans a little less important than the angels, Yet you have greatly honored them, as people honor kings (UST)

If you do not use this form in your language, you could translate these clauses as indirect quotes instead of as direct quotes. Make sure that your translation fits with how you expressed the first part of the quote in the previous verse. Alternate translation: "You have made him a little lower than {the} angels; you have crowned him with glory and honor" (See: Direct and Indirect Quotations)

You made him a little lower…you crowned (ULT)
You created humans a little less important…you have…as people honor kings (UST)

Since the author of the quotation is speaking to God, **you** in this verse is singular. (See: Forms of 'You' — Singular)

him…him (ULT)
humans…them (UST)

Just as in 2:6, **him** could primarily refer to: (1) humans in general. Alternate translation: "him or her … him or her" (2) Jesus. Alternate translation: "Him … Him" (See: When Masculine Words Include Women)

You made him a little lower than the angels (ULT)
You created humans a little less important than the angels (UST)

Here the quotation refers to how humans are **lower than {the} angels**. While he may have believed that this was true in terms of spatial placement, since **angels** live in heaven "above" and humans live on earth "below," the point is primarily about status and power. Being **lower** means that humans have less status and power than angels. If your readers would misunderstand **lower than {the} angels**, you could use a comparable idiom or a phrase that describes how humans have less status and power than **angels**. Alternate translation: "You have given him a little less status than {the} angels" or "You have made him a little less important than {the} angels" (See: Metaphor)

a little (ULT)
a little…important (UST)

Here, **a little** could refer primarily to place or to time. The author eventually applies the phrase to how Jesus was lower than the angels for **a little** time (see 2:9). However, the quotation itself suggests that humans have a place that is **a little** lower. If that is true, then the author later uses **a little** to refer to time in a play on words. You could express **a little** so that it refers to: (1) place. Alternate translation: "a little bit" (2) time. Alternate translation: "for a little while" (See: Idiom)

you crowned him with glory and honor (ULT)
Yet you have greatly honored them, as people honor kings (UST)

Here the quotation refers to the **glory** and **honor** that God gave to humans as if they were together a crown placed on the head of a king to signify his power and authority. If your readers would misunderstand **crowned**, you could use a comparable metaphor or express the idea nonfiguratively. Alternate translation: "you gave him great glory and honor" (See: Metaphor)

with glory and honor (ULT)
Yet...greatly honored (UST)

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas behind **glory** and **honor**, you could express the ideas by using adjectives such as "glorious" and "honorable," or you could use verbal phrases. Alternate translation: "so that he is glorious and honorable" (See: Abstract Nouns)

with glory and honor (ULT)
Yet...greatly honored (UST)

Here, **glory** and **honor** mean almost the same thing. The quotation uses both words to emphasize how much **glory and honor** God gave to humans. If your readers would misunderstand why the quotation uses two very similar words, or if you do not have two words that express this particular meaning, you could use one word or phrase here. Alternate translation: "with glory" or "with glorious honor" (See: Doublet)

honor (ULT)
Yet...greatly honored (UST)

After **honor**, many ancient manuscripts add the clause "and you have put him over the works of your hands." This clause is in the Psalm that the author quotes from (see Psalm 8:6). However, most likely the author did not include this clause because it was not important to the point he is making. Later, scribes probably added the clause because they knew that it was in the Psalm. If possible, do not include the clause here. (See: Textual Variants)

Translation Words - ULT

- the angels
- you crowned
- with glory
- honor

Translation Words - UST

- the angels
- Yet...greatly honored
- Yet...greatly honored
- you have...as people honor kings

Hebrews 2:8

Hebrews 2:8

You subjected everything under his feet (ULT)
You have put everything under their control."
Mankind will rule over (UST)

If you do not use this form in your language, you could translate the clause as an indirect quote instead of as a direct quote. If you use the following alternate translation, you will need to express the rest of the quote in the previous two verses as an indirect quote as well. Alternate translation: "You have subjected all {things} under his feet." (See: Direct and Indirect Quotations)

You subjected (ULT)
You have put...their control (UST)

Since the author of the quotation is speaking to God, here **you** is singular. (See: Forms of 'You' — Singular)

You subjected everything under his feet (ULT)
You have put everything under their control." Mankind will rule over (UST)

Here the author of the quotation speaks as if **all {things}** could be under the **feet** of humans. In the author's culture, something that is under feet has been conquered and is controlled by the person whose feet it is under. The point is that **all {things}** are conquered and controlled by humans. If your readers would misunderstand this figure of speech, you could use a comparable metaphor or express the idea nonfiguratively. Alternate translation: "You made him control all {things}" or "You gave him authority over {all things}" (See: Metaphor)

his...to him...to him (ULT)
Mankind...from him...mankind (UST)

Just as in 2:6–7, **his** and **him** could primarily refer to: (1) humans in general. Alternate translation: "his or her ... to him or her ... to him or her" (2) Jesus. Alternate translation: "His ... to Him ... to Him" (See: When Masculine Words Include Women)

For in subjecting all things (ULT)

Here, **For in** introduces a restatement of part of the quote. The author restates this portion of the quote (**subjecting all the things**) so that he can comment on it. If your readers would misunderstand that **For in** introduces a restatement of part of the quote, you could use a form that makes this clear. Alternate translation: "By using the phrase 'subjecting all the things'" or "For with the words 'subjecting all the things'" (See: Quotations and Quote Margins)

he left (ULT)
will be left out (UST)

Here, **he** refers to God. If your readers would misunderstand to whom *he* refers, you could make it explicit. Alternate translation: "God left"

ULT

8 You subjected everything under his feet." For in subjecting all things, he left nothing not subjected to him. But now we do not yet see all things subjected to him.

UST

8 You have put everything under their control." Mankind will rule over everything. That means that nothing will be left out from him ruling it. But now, at this present time, we do not see mankind ruling over everything.

he left nothing not subjected to him (ULT)
means that nothing will be left out from him...ruling (UST)

This double negative **nothing not** means that there are no exceptions to how all things will be **subjected** to **him**. If your readers would misunderstand the double negative, you could use a form that only includes one negative. Alternate translation: "he did not omit anything that could be subjected to him" (See: Double Negatives)

nothing...not subjected...everything...all things...subjected (ULT)
means that nothing...ruling...everything...everything...over (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. The author uses the passive form here to focus on what is **subjected** rather than focusing on the person doing the "subjecting." If you must state who did the action, the author implies that "God" did it. Alternate translation: "nothing that God did not subject ... God subjecting all the {things}" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- You subjected
- subjecting
- subjected

Translation Words - UST

- You have put...their control
- ruling it
- over

Hebrews 2:9

who was made...who was made...somewhat less than the angels (ULT)
who appeared...as a little less important than the angels (UST)

Here the author refers to how Jesus was **lower than the angels**. While he may have believed that this was true in terms of spatial placement, since angels live in heaven "above" and Jesus lived on earth "below," the point is primarily about status and power. Being **lower** means that **Jesus** had less status and power than the **angels**. If your readers would misunderstand **lower than the angels**, you could use a comparable idiom or a phrase that describes how **Jesus** had less status and power than **angels** during his incarnate life. See how you translated this clause in 2:7. Alternate translation: "who had a little less status than the angels" or "who was a little less important than the angels" (See: Metaphor)

somewhat less...who was made (ULT)
a little...important...as...less (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. The author uses the passive form here to focus on **Jesus**, who **was made**, rather than focusing on the person doing the "making." If you must state who did the action, the author implies that "God" did it. Alternate translation: "whom God made a little lower" (See: Active or Passive)

somewhat less (ULT)
a little...important (UST)

Here, **a little** could refer primarily to place or to time. Here, it is likely that the author uses the phrase to show that Jesus was lower than the angels for **a little** time. However, the phrase in the quotation in 2:7 suggested that humans have a place that is **a little** lower. If that is true, then the author here uses **a little** to refer to time in a play on words. He uses the same phrase that referred to place in the quotation, but he uses it to refer to time. You could express **a little** so that it refers to: (1) time. Alternate translation: "for a little while" (2) place. Alternate translation: "a little bit" (See: Idiom)

crowned with glory and honor (ULT)
and...God has made him the most important of all. He has made Jesus king over everything (UST)

Here the quotation refers to the **glory** and **honor** that God gave to **Jesus** as if they were together a crown placed on the head of a king to signify his power and authority. If your readers would misunderstand **crowned**, you could use a comparable metaphor or express the idea nonfiguratively. See how you translated this phrase in 2:7. Alternate translation: "given great glory and honor" (See: Metaphor)

crowned (ULT)
He has made Jesus king over everything (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. The author uses the passive form here to focus on **Jesus**, who is **crowned**, rather than focusing on the person doing the "crowning." If you must state who did the action, the author implies that "God" did it. Alternate translation: "whom God crowned" (See: Active or Passive)

with glory and honor (ULT)
and...God has made him the most important of all. He has made Jesus king over everything (UST)

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas behind **glory** and **honor**, you could express the ideas by using adjectives such as "glorious" and "honorable," or you could use verbal phrases. Alternate translation: "so that he is glorious and honorable" (See: Abstract Nouns)

because of {his} suffering of death (ULT)
in this life...Because he suffered...died (UST)

Here the author uses the possessive form to refer to **suffering** that is the experience of **death**. If your readers would misunderstand that Jesus "suffers," or experiences, **death**, you could express the idea in a more natural way. Alternate translation: "because he suffered death" or "because he experienced death" (See: Possession)

his} suffering of death (ULT)
in this life...he suffered...died (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind **death**, you could express the idea by using a verb such as "die." Alternate translation: "the fact that he died" or "{his} suffering that led to him dying" (See: Abstract Nouns)

by God's grace (ULT)
God was so kind to us (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind **grace**, you could express the idea by using an adjective such as "kind" or "gracious." Alternate translation: "by God's kind action" or "by how God acts kindly" (See: Abstract Nouns)

he might taste death (ULT)
because Jesus died...that this happened (UST)

Here the author speaks as if **death** were food that people could **taste**. He speaks in this way to show that Jesus experienced death as much as a person who eats food truly experiences that food. If your readers would misunderstand this figure of speech, you could use a comparable metaphor or express the idea nonfiguratively. Alternate translation: "he might experience death" or "he participate in death (See: Metaphor)

he might taste death (ULT)
because Jesus died...that this happened (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind **death**, you could express the idea by using a verb such as "die." Alternate translation: "he might taste what dying is like" or "he might die" (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- the angels
- crowned
- with glory
- honor
- suffering
- of death
- death (2)
- God's
- by...grace

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- the angels
- he suffered
- died
- because Jesus died (2)
- God has made him the most important of all
- He has made Jesus king over everything
- He has made Jesus king over everything
- God
- was so kind to us

Hebrews 2:10

For (ULT)
Since (UST)

Here, **For** introduces an explanation of how and why Jesus "tastes of death on behalf of everyone." If your readers would misunderstand **For**, you could use a phrase that introduces an explanation, or you could leave it untranslated. Alternate translation: "Now" or "Here is why that happened:" (See: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship)

it was proper (ULT)
it was proper (UST)

Here, **it was proper** identifies that something is appropriate or correct for a specific situation. If your readers would misunderstand **it was proper**, you could use a word or phrase that refers to correct or appropriate behavior. Alternate translation: "it was fitting" (See: Translate Unknowns)

for him (ULT)
him (UST)

Here, **him** refers to God the Father, who is the one who "perfects" the **founding leader**, who is Jesus. If your readers would misunderstand to whom **him** refers, you could make it explicit. Alternate translation: "for God the Father" (See: Pronouns — When to Use Them)

having brought many sons into glory, to perfect the author of their salvation through sufferings (ULT)
that he brought many children to share his glory. By means of his suffering God showed that the one who saved them was perfect (UST)

Here, **having brought many sons into glory** could refer to: (1) what the **founding leader**, Jesus, does. Alternate translation: "to perfect through sufferings the one who has brought many sons into glory, who is the founding leader of their salvation" (2) what God the Father does. Alternate translation: "who has brought many sons into glory, to perfect the founding leader of their salvation through sufferings" (See: Information Structure)

having brought many sons into glory (ULT)
that he brought many children to share his glory (UST)

Here, **having brought** emphasizes the beginning of the process more than its completion. The point is that the "bringing" of "many sons into glory" has begun. If your readers would misunderstand what **having brought** emphasizes, you could make it clearer that it emphasizes the beginning of the "bringing." Alternate translation: "having started bringing many sons into glory"

having brought many sons into glory (ULT)
that he brought many children to share his glory (UST)

Here the author speaks of **glory** as if it were a place into which the **sons** could be **brought**. The author speaks in this way to identify **glory** as a goal toward which those who believe are aiming. If your readers would

ULT

10 For it was proper for him, for whom all things {exist} and through whom all things {exist}, having brought many sons into glory, to perfect the author of their salvation through sufferings.

UST

10 Since by him all things exist and all things are for him, it was proper that he brought many children to share his glory. By means of his suffering God showed that the one who saved them was perfect.

misunderstand that **glory** is the goal toward which believers are being taken, you could use a comparable metaphor or express the idea nonfiguratively. Alternate translation: "having given glory to many sons" or "having oriented many sons toward glory" (See: Metaphor)

many sons (ULT)
many children (UST)

Here, **many sons** refers to all those who believe in Jesus, who are **many**. The phrase includes both males and females, and it does not exclude anyone who believes. If your readers would misunderstand **many sons**, you could use a word or phrase that identifies everyone who believes, both males and females. Alternate translation: "the many sons and daughters" (See: When Masculine Words Include Women)

many sons (ULT)
many children (UST)

Here, **sons** refers to everyone who believes. Just as Jesus is a **son** of God the Father (see 1:2), those who believe in him are also **sons** of God. While they are not **sons** eternally, like Jesus is, they are adopted as **sons** when they believe. This is an important idea in Hebrews, so preserve the language of kinship if possible. If your readers would misunderstand **sons**, you could express the idea by using an analogy. Alternate translation: "having brought believers, who are like God's sons," (See: Kinship)

into glory (ULT)
to share his glory (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind **glory**, you could express the idea by using an adjective such as "glorious." Alternate translation: "into a glorious place" or "into glorious salvation" (See: Abstract Nouns)

the author of their salvation (ULT)
that he brought…the one who saved them (UST)

Here the author uses the possessive form to speak of Jesus, the **founding leader**, who establishes and leads his people to **salvation**. If your readers would misunderstand this form, you could use a verbal phrase that refers to what Jesus does as **founding leader**. Alternate translation: "the one who leads them to salvation" or "their leader, who establishes their salvation," (See: Possession)

of their salvation through sufferings (ULT)
By means of his suffering…the one…who saved them (UST)

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas behind **salvation** and **sufferings**, you could express the ideas by using verbs such as "save" and "suffer." Alternate translation: "who saves them through what he suffered" (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- sons
- glory
- to perfect
- author
- of…salvation

• sufferings

Translation Words - UST

• children
• share his glory
• suffering
• God showed that...was perfect
• the one
• who saved

Hebrews 2:11

For (ULT)
for (UST)

Here, **For** introduces an explanation of how believers can be called "sons" (see 2:10) and of why Jesus suffered in order to save these "sons." If your readers would misunderstand **For**, you could use a word or phrase that does introduce an explanation, or you could leave it untranslated. Alternate translation: "Everyone who believes is a son, because" or "He saved them through sufferings because" (See: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship)

the one...who sanctifies and those who are being sanctified (ULT)
Jesus, the one who...sets his people apart... God, and...those same people whom God declares as good before him...the (UST)

Here, **the one who sanctifies** is Jesus, and **those who are being sanctified** are believers. If your readers would misunderstand to whom these phrases refer, you could make it explicit. Alternate translation: "the one who sanctifies, Jesus, and we who are being sanctified" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

those who are being sanctified (ULT)
those same people whom God declares as good before him...the (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. The author uses the passive form here to focus on those who are **being sanctified** rather than focusing on the person doing the "sanctifying." If you must state who does the action, the author implies that "Jesus" does it. Alternate translation: "those whom Jesus is sanctifying" or "those whom he is sanctifying" (See: Active or Passive)

are} all from one (ULT)
are all from...same source, God himself (UST)

Here, **one** could refer to: (1) God the Father, who is the source of all humans and also of God the Son. Alternate translation: "all have one source, God himself" or "all have the same Father" (2) type or common origin. Alternate translation: "all have one common origin" or "{are} all humans together" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

he is not ashamed (ULT)
is not embarrassed (UST)

Here, **he** refers back to the **the one who sanctifies**, who is Jesus. If your readers would misunderstand to whom **he** refers, you could make it explicit. Alternate translation: "Jesus is not ashamed" (See: Pronouns — When to Use Them)

ULT

11 For both the one who sanctifies and those who are being sanctified {are} all from one. For this reason, he is not ashamed to call them brothers,

UST

11 Jesus, the one who sets his people apart for God, and also those same people whom God declares as good before him, are all from the same source, God himself. So Jesus is not embarrassed to proclaim them to be his own brothers and sisters.

he is not ashamed (ULT)
is not embarrassed (UST)

Here the author uses a figure of speech that expresses a strong positive meaning by using a negative word together with a word that is the opposite of the intended meaning. If this is confusing in your language, you can express the meaning positively. Alternate translation: "he is proud" (See: Litotes)

he is not ashamed…to call (ULT)
is not embarrassed…to proclaim (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. The author uses the passive form here to focus on the person who is **ashamed** rather than focusing on the person doing the "shaming." Alternate translation: "he does not feel shame when he calls" or "he does not worry when others shame him for calling" (See: Active or Passive)

brothers (ULT)
to be his own brothers and sisters (UST)

Although **brothers** is masculine, the author is using it to refer to all believers, both men and women. If your readers would misunderstand **brothers**, you could use a non-gendered word or refer to both genders. Alternate translation: "brothers and sisters" (See: When Masculine Words Include Women)

to call them brothers (ULT)
to proclaim them to be his own brothers and sisters (UST)

In 2:10, believers are called **sons** of God; here believers are called **brothers** of Jesus. Both **sons** and **brothers** refer to everyone who believes, and the terms identify how believers are part of God's family. This is an important idea in Hebrews, so preserve the language of kinship if possible. If your readers would misunderstand **brothers**, you could express the idea by using an analogy. Alternate translation: "to refer to them as people who are like brothers" (See: Kinship)

Translation Words - ULT

- who sanctifies
- who are being sanctified
- he is…ashamed
- to call
- brothers

Translation Words - UST

- sets his people apart…God
- those same people whom God declares as good before him
- is…embarrassed
- to proclaim
- to be his own brothers and sisters

Hebrews 2:12

saying (ULT)
The psalmist wrote that the Messiah said to God (UST)

Here the author quotes from an important text, the Old Testament. He does not introduce it as a quotation but instead as words that Jesus the Son has spoken to God about his **brothers**. However, the audience would have understood that this was a quotation from the Old Testament, here from Psalm 22:22. Since the author introduces this quotation as words that the Son has spoken to God, you should introduce the quotation as words that someone has said. If your readers would not know that the quotation is from the Old Testament, you could include a footnote or use some other form to identify the quotation. Alternate translation: "as you can see when he says," (See: Quotations and Quote Margins)

saying, "I will proclaim your name to my brothers, I will praise you in the midst of the assembly (ULT)
The psalmist wrote that the Messiah said to God, "I will proclaim to my brothers how awesome you are. I will sing praise to you in the middle of the assembly of believers (UST)

If you do not use this form in your language, you could translate the sentence as an indirect quote instead of as a direct quote. Alternate translation: "saying that he will proclaim your name to his brothers; he will sing to you in {the} midst of {the} assembly." (See: Direct and Indirect Quotations)

I will proclaim your name to my brothers, I will praise you in the midst of the assembly (ULT)
I will proclaim to my brothers how awesome you are. I will sing praise to you in the middle of the assembly of believers (UST)

Here, the quotation includes two statements that mean almost the same thing. This was considered good poetry in the author's culture. If your readers would misunderstand the parallelism, and if this would not be good poetry in your culture, you could combine the two statements. The author of Hebrews particularly focuses on the word **brothers**, so be sure to include that phrase in your translation. Alternate translation: "I will sing praise to you in the midst of my brothers" (See: Parallelism)

your...you (ULT)
you are...to you (UST)

Since the author of the quotation is speaking to God, here **you** is singular. (See: Forms of 'You' — Singular)

your name (ULT)
how awesome you are (UST)

Here, **name** figuratively refers to what the person who has that **name** is like. If your readers would misunderstand **name**, you could express the idea by referring to what the person is like. Alternate translation: "who you are" (See: Metonymy)

to my brothers (ULT)
my brothers (UST)

Although **brothers** is masculine, the author of the quotation is using it to refer to all those who worship God, both men and women. If your readers would misunderstand **brothers**, you could use a non-gendered word or refer to both genders. Alternate translation: "to my brothers and sisters" (See: When Masculine Words Include Women)

to my brothers (ULT)
my brothers (UST)

Just as in 2:11, the author refers to believers as **brothers** of Jesus, which identifies believers as part of God's family. This is an important idea in Hebrews, so preserve the language of kinship if possible. See how you translated **brothers** in 2:11. Alternate translation: "to the people who are like my brothers" (See: Kinship)

of the assembly (ULT)
assembly of believers (UST)

Here, the audience would know that the **assembly** was a gathering to worship God. If your readers would not make this inference, you could express the idea explicitly. Alternate translation: "of {the} gathering to glorify God" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

in the midst of the assembly (ULT)
in the middle of the assembly of believers (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind **assembly**, you could express the idea by using a verb such as "assemble" or "gather together." Alternate translation: "in the middle of the people who assemble together" (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- I will proclaim
- name
- to...brothers
- of the assembly

Translation Words - UST

- I will proclaim to
- brothers
- how awesome
- assembly of believers

Hebrews 2:13

Hebrews 2:13

And again (ULT)
And a prophet wrote in another scripture passage what the Messiah said about God (UST)

Here the author quotes from an important text, the Old Testament. He does not introduce them as quotations but instead as words that Jesus the Son has spoken. However, the audience would have understood that these are quotations from the Old Testament. The first quotation comes from Isaiah 8:17, and the second quotation comes from Isaiah 8:18. Since the author introduces these quotation as words that the Son has spoken, you should introduce the quotations as words that someone has said. If your readers would not know that the quotations are from the Old Testament, you could include a footnote or use some other form to identify the quotations. Alternate translation: "And again he says ... And again he says," (See: Quotations and Quote Margins)

If you do not use this form in your language, you could translate the sentences as indirect quotes instead of as direct quotes. Alternate translation: "And again he says that he will trust him. And again he says that people should behold him and the little children whom God gave him." (See: Direct and Indirect Quotations)

him (ULT)
him (UST)

Here, **him** refers to God the Father. If you readers would misunderstand to whom **him** refers, you could make it explicit. Alternate translation: "God" (See: Pronouns — When to Use Them)

Behold, {here am} I (ULT)
I...are here (UST)

Here, **Behold** draws attention to **I and the little children**. It asks the audience to pay special attention to what follows. If your readers would misunderstand **Behold**, you could use a word or phrase that draws attention to what follows. Alternate translation: "Pay attention to me" (See: Exclamations)

the children (ULT)
the children (UST)

Here, **little children** refers to everyone who believes. Just as Jesus is a "son" of God the Father (see 1:2), those who believe in him are also **children** of God (see also 2:10). Being **little children** who belong to God means that believers are part of God's family and siblings of Jesus. This is an important idea in Hebrews, so preserve the language of kinship if possible. If your readers would misunderstand **little children**, you could express the idea by using an analogy. Alternate translation: "the people who are like God's little children" (See: Kinship)

Translation Words - ULT

- trust
- children
- God

Translation Words - UST

- trust
- children
- God

Hebrews 2:14

Hebrews 2:14

Therefore (ULT)
So (UST)

Here the author draws an inference from how Jesus has many "brothers," who are also God's **little children** (see 2:11–13. The word **therefore** also introduces a new development in the argument, since the author now begins to talk about what Jesus has done for those who believe. If your readers would misunderstand **Therefore**, you could use a word or phrase that introduces an inference or a development in the argument. Alternate translation: "In light of that" or "So then" (See: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship)

the children (ULT)
his children...The (UST)

Here, **little children** refers back to the phrase as it appears in the quotation in the previous verse (see 2:13). See how you translated it there. Alternate translation: "the people who are like God's little children" (See: Kinship)

share in...shared in (ULT)
those whom God calls...became a human being just like (UST)

Here, **share in** and **shared in** refer to having things in common. The phrases do not mean that all humans and Jesus all have a piece of **flesh and blood**. Rather, they mean that all humans and Jesus are people who are **flesh and blood**. If your readers would misunderstand **share in** and **shared in**, you could use a word or phrase that refers to some characteristic that people have in common. Alternate translation: "have in common … participated in" or "are characterized by … chose to be characterized by" (See: Idiom)

flesh and blood (ULT)
are all human beings (UST)

This phrase expresses a single idea by using two words connected with **and**. The words **flesh** and **blood** together identify what it means to be human, which includes eventually dying. If it would be more natural in your language, you could express this meaning with an equivalent phrase that does not use **and**. Alternate translation: "humanity" or "what it means to be human" (See: Hendiadys)

the same (ULT)
them...the (UST)

Here, **the same {things}** refers back to **flesh and blood**. If your readers would not make this connection, you could make it explicit. Alternate translation: "the same flesh and blood" (See: Pronouns — When to Use Them)

through death (ULT)
by his dying (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind **death**, you could express the idea by using a verb such as "die." Alternate translation: "when he died," (See: Abstract Nouns)

ULT

14 Therefore, since the children share in flesh and blood, he likewise also shared in the same, so that through death he might abolish the one who has the power of death, that is, the devil,

UST

14 So since those whom God calls his children are all human beings, Jesus also became a human being just like them. The devil has the power to cause people to be afraid to die. So that by his dying, Jesus was able to defeat death and make the devil powerless.

who has the power of death (ULT)
devil…has…power to cause people…to be afraid to die (UST)

Here the author uses the possessive form to describe **power** that: (1) is based on **death**. In other words, the **power** comes from the fact that people experience **death**, which can be used to control them. In this case, the **power of death** partly comes from the "fear of death" (see 2:15). Alternate translation: "who uses death to have power" (2) controls **death**. In this case, the **devil** has **power** over **death** because he tempts people to sin, which leads to death, or because he controls how people die. Alternate translation: "who has power over death" (See: Possession)

who has the power of death (ULT)
devil…has…power to cause people…to be afraid to die (UST)

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas behind **power** and **death**, you could express the ideas by using verbs such as "control" and "die" or in another natural way. Be sure that your translation fits with the choice you made about how **power** and **death** relate (see the previous note). Alternate translation: "who makes use of how people die to act powerfully " (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- children
- flesh
- blood
- death
- of death (2)
- he might abolish
- power
- devil

Translation Words - UST

- his children
- are all human beings
- are all human beings
- devil…power to cause people
- dying
- to be afraid to die (2)
- Jesus was able to defeat death…make…powerless
- devil

Hebrews 2:15

Hebrews 2:15

might free those, as many as all {their} lives were held in slavery by the fear of death (ULT) to free all of us who, all our lives, could not rid ourselves of a fear of dying (UST)

Here the author speaks as if the **fear of death** were something that could hold people in **slavery**. Taking away this **fear** is thus "releasing" those people from **slavery**. The author speaks in this way to emphasize how controlling and powerful the **fear of death** and how Jesus completely takes away the power that this **fear** had. If your readers would misunderstand this figure of speech, you could use a comparable metaphor or express the idea nonfiguratively. Alternate translation: "might free those {people}, as many as in fear of death, throughout all {their} lives, were held tightly" or "might help those {people}, as many as continually lived in fear of death throughout all {their} lives" (See: Metaphor)

might free those, as many as all {their} lives were held in slavery by the fear of death (ULT)
to free all of us who, all our lives, could not rid ourselves of a fear of dying (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand the order of these clauses, you could arrange them in a more natural way. Alternate translation: "might release as many as were held in slavery in fear of death throughout all {their} lives" (See: Information Structure)

the fear of death (ULT)
a fear of dying (UST)

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas behind **fear** and **death**, you could express the ideas by using verbs such as "fear" and "die" or in another natural way. Alternate translation: "by how they fear to die" (See: Abstract Nouns)

all {their} lives...by (ULT)
to...all our lives (UST)

Here, **throughout all {their} lives** refers to the entire time period when a person is alive. Use a natural form in your language to refer to the span of a person's life. Alternate translation: "during their lifetime" (See: Idiom)

were held in slavery (ULT)
lives...could not rid ourselves of (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. The author uses the passive form here to focus on those who are **held in slavery** rather than focusing on the person doing the "holding." If you must state who did the action, you could use a vague or indefinite subject, or you could state that the "devil" did it. Alternate translation: "someone held in slavery" or "the devil held in slavery" (See: Active or Passive)

held in...slavery (ULT)
lives...could not rid ourselves of (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind **slavery**, you could express the idea by using a verb such as "enslaved." Alternate translation: "enslaved" (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- might free
- lives
- slavery
- the fear
- of death

Translation Words - UST

- free
- lives
- could not rid ourselves of
- a fear of
- dying

Hebrews 2:16

Hebrews 2:16

For (ULT)
For it is not (UST)

Here, **For** introduces an explanation of why the Son shared in "flesh and blood" and died. He did this because he **takes hold of** humans, not angels. If your readers would misunderstand **For**, you could use a word or phrase that introduces an explanation. Alternate translation: "He did those things because" (See: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship)

of course (ULT)
For it is not (UST)

Here, **of course** identifies the claim as something that everyone knows to be true. In other words, the author does not think that the claim needs to be proved. If your readers would misunderstand **of course**, you could use a word or phrase that identifies a claim that does not need proof. Alternate translation: "obviously" or "it is clear that" (See: Idiom)

it is} not...angels he is concerned with, but {it is} the descendant of Abraham he is concerned with (ULT)
For it is not...angels that he has come to help. No, it is us who trust God as Abraham did whom he wants to help (UST)

If your language would not put the negative statement before the positive statement, you could reverse them. Alternate translation: "he takes hold of the descendant of Abraham. He does not take hold of angels." (See: Information Structure)

it is} not...he is concerned with...he is concerned with (ULT)
For it is not...that he has come to help...whom he wants to help (UST)

Here, to **take of hold** someone could refer to: (1) how someone **takes** someone by the hand or the shoulder and leads them where they need to go. In other words, someone who **takes hold of** someone else is helping or taking care of them. Alternate translation: "he does not assist … he assists" (2) how someone **takes** someone else's specific nature or kind. In other words, Jesus took the nature of **the descendant of Abraham**, not the nature of the **angels**. Alternate translation: "he does not take the nature of … he takes the nature of" (See: Translate Unknowns)

the descendant (ULT)
who trust God as...did (UST)

Here, **descendant** is a singular noun that refers to a group of "descendants." If your language does not use singular nouns in that way, you can use a different expression. Alternate translation: "the descendants" or "the group of descendants" (See: Collective Nouns)

ULT

16 For of course {it is} not angels he is concerned with, but {it is} the descendant of Abraham he is concerned with.

UST

16 For it is not angels that he has come to help. No, it is us who trust God as Abraham did whom he wants to help.

---

the descendant of Abraham (ULT)
who trust God as Abraham did (UST)

Here, the **descendant of Abraham** refers to those who are descended from **Abraham**, which are the Israelites or Jews. However, the author applies a promise made to **Abraham** to his audience, whether they were Jews or not (see 6:13–20). Because of this, he thinks that each person who believes in Jesus receives the promise is a **descendant of Abraham**. In your translation, make it clear that **descendant** is not just about physical descendants but rather about who belongs in Abraham's family, whether they were born in that family or not. Alternate translation: "the spiritual descendant of Abraham" or "each one whom God considers a descendant of Abraham" (See: Kinship)

of Abraham (ULT)
Abraham (UST)

Abraham is the name of a man. He was the man from whom all the Israelites and Jews came from. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- angels
- the descendant
- of Abraham

Translation Words - UST

- angels
- who trust God as…did
- Abraham

Hebrews 2:17

So (ULT)
So (UST)

Here, **from which** introduces an inference or conclusion based on what the author has argued, particularly what he wrote in 2:16. Because Jesus focuses on "the descendants of Abraham," he is **obligated to become like** them. If your readers would misunderstand **from which**, you could use a word or phrase that introduces an inference or conclusion. Alternate translation: "so you can see that" (See: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship)

he was obligated (ULT)
God had to (UST)

Here the author does not mean that someone **obligated** or made Jesus **become like {his} brothers**. Rather, he means that "becoming like his brothers" was the correct or necessary way to accomplish the goal of making **atonement**. If your readers would misunderstand **he was obligated**, you could use a word or phrase that refers to a necessity. Alternate translation: "it was necessary for him" (See: Translate Unknowns)

his} brothers (ULT)
his human "brothers (UST)

Although **brothers** is masculine, the author is using it to refer to all those who believe in Jesus, both men and women. If your readers would misunderstand **brothers**, you could use a non-gendered word or refer to both genders. Alternate translation: "{his} brothers and sisters" (See: When Masculine Words Include Women)

his} brothers (ULT)
his human "brothers (UST)

Here the author refers to believers as **brothers** of Jesus, which identifies believers as part of God's family. This is an important idea in Hebrews, so preserve the language of kinship if possible. See how you translated **brothers** in 2:11–12. Alternate translation: "the people who are like his brothers" (See: Kinship)

concerning the things of God (ULT)
the...for God (UST)

Here **the {things} pertaining to God** identifies Jesus as a **high priest** who serves **God** and who acts as a **high priest** in God's presence. If your readers would misunderstand **the {things} pertaining to God**, you could use a word or phrase that makes this clear. Alternate translation: "before God" or "{concerning} God and his presence" (See: Translate Unknowns)

to make propitiation for the sins of the people (ULT)
could make a way for God to forgive the people's sins (UST)

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas behind **atonement** and **sins**, you could express the ideas by using verbs such as "atone" and "sin." Alternate translation: "in order to atone for how the people sinned" (See: Abstract Nouns)

ULT

17 So he was obligated to become like {his} brothers in all ways, so that he would be a merciful and faithful high priest concerning the things of God to make propitiation for the sins of the people.

UST

17 So God had to make Jesus to be exactly like us, like his human "brothers." He became a high priest who acts mercifully to the people and who acts faithfully for God, so he could make a way for God to forgive the people's sins.

Translation Words - ULT

- to become like
- brothers
- merciful
- faithful
- a...high priest
- of God
- make propitiation for
- sins
- of...people

Translation Words - UST

- his human...brothers
- people's
- sins
- He became
- a high priest who
- mercifully to...people
- who acts faithfully
- God
- could make a way for God...forgive

Hebrews 2:18

For (ULT)
because (UST)

Here, **For** introduces an explanation of how Jesus functions as "a merciful and faithful high priest." If your readers would misunderstand **For**, you could use a word or phrase that introduces an explanation. Alternate translation: "He can be merciful and faithful because," (See: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship)

himself (ULT)
he himself (UST)

Here, **himself** emphasizes Jesus to set up the comparison with everyone else who is **tempted**. If your readers would misunderstand **himself**, you could use a word or phrase that emphasizes **he**, that is, Jesus. Alternate translation: "is one who" (See: Reflexive Pronouns)

having been tempted...who are tempted (ULT)
and was tempted...are tempted to sin (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. The author uses the passive form here to focus on those who are **tempted** rather than focusing on the person or thing doing the "tempting." If you must state who did the action, you could use a vague or indefinite subject, since many things "tempt" people. Alternate translation: "things having tempted him ... whom things tempt" or "having experienced temptation ... who experience temptation" (See: Active or Passive)

he himself suffered, having been tempted (ULT)
he himself suffered and was tempted (UST)

Here, **having been tempted** could identify: (1) the situation in which Jesus **suffered**. Alternate translation: "he himself had suffered when he was tempted" (2) what resulted from the "suffering." Alternate translation: "he was tempted when he suffered"

Translation Words - ULT

- he...suffered
- having been tempted
- who are tempted

Translation Words - UST

- and was tempted
- are tempted to sin
- suffered

Hebrews 3

Hebrews 3 General Notes

Structure and Formatting

Example of the wilderness generation (3:1–4:13)

> • Exhortation: The Son is greater than Moses (3:1–6)
> • Exhortation: Strive to enter the rest! (3:7–4:11)

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 3:7b–11, 15, which are quotations from the Old Testament.

Special Concepts in this Chapter

"Today"

The quotation from Psalm 95 includes the word "today." The author mentions "today" again in 3:13, 15. In both of these verses, he refers to how we always call the current day "today." So, anything that happens during the time we call "today" must happen every day, since every day is "today." In this way, the author shows that the quotation from Psalm 95 applies to his audience every day. In these verses, translate "today" with a word or phrase that someone would use for the current day. (See: day)

Rest

The quotation from Psalm 95 includes the word "rest." In the context of the Psalm, this "rest" probably refers to the land that God promised to give to the Israelites. However, scholars debate what the author of Hebrews means when he uses the word "rest." This is important because the author speaks much more about "rest" in chapter 4. There are two major options for what "rest" could mean: (1) "rest" could refer to how people rest, that is, to the state or experiencing of "resting." (2) "rest" could refer to the place where people rest. For the author of Hebrews, this place of "rest" is either in heaven or on a renewed earth. Before you choose how to translate "rest," consider reading Hebrews 4:1–11 so that you can decide what the author means when he uses "rest." (See: rest, rested, restless)

Important Figures of Speech in this Chapter

The "house" in 3:1–6

In 3:1–6, the author refers to a "house." In the author's culture, "house" could refer to a building that people live in, or it could refer to a "household" or a group of related people. In these verses, the author uses both meanings of "house." In 3:2, 5–6, "house" refers to a group of related people, God's people. In 3:3–4, "house" refers to a building that people live in. In these verses, the author uses a "house" (the building) as an example to explain more about the "house" (the people). If you do not have a word that could mean both "building" and "people," you may need to express "house" with two different words. If so, you will need to make sure that your readers know that the author is comparing a building to people, especially in 3:3–4. (See: house, household)

Rhetorical questions

The author asks several questions in this chapter (see 3:16–18). He is not asking these questions because he wants the audience to provide him with information. Rather, he is asking these questions because he wants the audience to think about the quotation from Psalm 95. In 3:16–17, the second question in each verse answers the first question. In 3:18, the second half of the question answers the first half of the question. For ways to translate these questions, see the notes on 3:16–18. (See: Rhetorical Question)

Other Possible Translation Difficulties in this Chapter

The quotation from Psalm 95

David wrote Psalm 95 many years after the events that the Psalm refers to. You can read the story about these events in Num 14:1–38 (see also the related story in Exodus 17:1–7). In these stories, the Israelites complain and disobey God, and God punishes them. David refers back to these stories to encourage the Israelites whom he ruled to act differently. He wanted them to listen to and obey God. The author of Hebrews quotes what David wrote for a similar reason. He wants to encourage his audience to listen to and obey God, and he shows that what David wrote still applies to his audience. Consider reading the Old Testament stories and Psalm 95 before translating this chapter. See the notes for places where the author refers directly to Psalm 95 or to the Old Testament stories. (See: Quotations and Quote Margins)

What does "for 40 years" modify?

In 3:10, "for 40 years" tells how long the Israelites saw God's works. However, in 3:17, it refers to the time during which God "was upset" with the Israelites. This is not a contradiction, because the author knew that the Israelites saw God's works and that God was upset with them during the same period of "40 years." There is no need to harmonize these two verses.

Hebrews 3:1

Hebrews 3:1

Therefore (ULT)
So (UST)

Here, **Therefore** introduces an inference from what the author has said about Jesus in 2:5–18. If your readers would misunderstand **Therefore**, you could use a word or phrase that clearly introduces an inference. Alternate translation: "As a result of all that" or "Because of those things" (See: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship)

brothers (ULT)
My fellow believers (UST)

Although **brothers** is masculine, the author is using it to refer to all believers, both men and women. If your readers would misunderstand **brothers**, you could use a non-gendered word or refer to both genders. Alternate translation: "brothers and sisters" (See: When Masculine Words Include Women)

partakers of a heavenly calling (ULT)
and has chosen you to belong to himself...together (UST)

Here the author uses the possessive form to indicate that believers "share" a **heavenly calling**. Believers could "share" this **calling** with: (1) other believers. Alternate translation: "who share together in a heavenly calling" (2) Jesus. Alternate translation: "share with Jesus a heavenly calling" (See: Possession)

partakers of a heavenly calling (ULT)
and has chosen you to belong to himself...together (UST)

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas behind **sharers** and **calling**, you could express the ideas by using verbs such as "share" and "call." Alternate translation: "those who share how God has called us in a heavenly way" (See: Abstract Nouns)

of a heavenly calling (ULT)
and has chosen you to belong to himself (UST)

Here, **heavenly** could indicate that the **calling** (1) comes from "heaven" (see how God's voice comes from heaven in 12:25–26). Alternate translation: "of a calling from heaven" (2) directs us toward "heaven." Alternate translation: "of a calling to heaven" or "of a calling to enter heaven"

the apostle (ULT)
He is God's apostle (UST)

Here, **apostle** refers to someone who has been sent. In this passage, it does not refer to any of the twelve "apostles." If your readers would misunderstand **apostle**, you could use a descriptive phrase instead of the word you normally use for the twelve "apostles." Alternate translation: "the sent one" or "the ambassador" (See: Translate Unknowns)

ULT

1 Therefore, holy brothers, partakers of a heavenly calling, consider carefully the apostle and high priest of our confession, Jesus,

UST

1 My fellow believers, God has set you apart and has chosen you to belong to himself. So consider Jesus. He is God's apostle to us and is also the high priest whom we say we believe in together.

the apostle and high priest of our confession (ULT)
He is God's apostle to us and is also the high priest whom we say we believe in (UST)

Here the author uses the possessive form to speak about the **apostle** and the **high priest** who is the main content of **our confession**. If your readers would misunderstand this form, you could express the idea in a more natural way. Alternate translation: "the apostle and high priest whom we confess" (See: Possession)

of our confession (ULT)
the...whom we say we believe in (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind **confession**, you could express the idea by using a verb such as "confess" or "believe." Alternate translation: "whom we confess" or "in whom we believe" (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- holy
- brothers
- of a...calling
- heavenly
- apostle
- high priest
- of...confession
- Jesus

Translation Words - UST

- My fellow believers
- God has set you apart
- and has chosen you to belong
- to himself
- Jesus
- He is God's apostle
- to us...is also...high priest
- whom...say we believe in

Hebrews 3:2

Hebrews 3:2

to the one who appointed (ULT)
who appointed (UST)

Here, **the one who appointed** is God the Father. If your readers would not know who **the one who appointed** is, you could make it explicit. Alternate translation: "to God, who appointed" (See: Pronouns — When to Use Them)

Moses (ULT)
Moses faithfully served (UST)

Moses is the name of a man. God had him lead the Israelites when he delivered them from being slaves in the land of Egypt. (See: How to Translate Names)

as also Moses {was} in his house (ULT)
just like Moses faithfully served all of God's people, whom we call God's house (UST)

Here the author uses words that are very similar to the Greek translation of Numbers 12:7. It is possible that he is thinking of that verse or directly referencing it. However, he does not introduce the words as a quotation or indicate that he is referring to another text. So, you should not include any quotation information in your translation. If you wish to refer to Numbers 12:7, you could do so with a footnote. (See: When to Keep Information Implicit)

in his house (ULT)
all of God's people, whom we call God's house (UST)

Here, **house** figuratively refers to a group of people, here the Israelites. If your readers would misunderstand **house**, you could use a comparable metaphor or express the idea nonfiguratively. Alternate translation: "among God's tribe" or "in his clan" (See: Metaphor)

his (ULT)
God's (UST)

Here, **his** refers to God. If your readers would misunderstand **his**, you could make the idea explicit. Alternate translation: "God's" (See: Pronouns — When to Use Them)

his house (ULT)
all of God's people, whom we call...God's...house (UST)

Instead of **his house**, many ancient manuscripts have the phrase "all his house." This phrase is in the Old Testament story about **Moses** (see Numbers 12:7). So, it is possible that scribes added "all" to **his house** because they knew this passage. Unless there is a good reason to use "all his house," you should use **his house**. (See: Textual Variants)

Translation Words - ULT

- faithful

ULT

2 being faithful to the one who appointed him, as also Moses {was} in his house.

UST

2 He faithfully served God, who appointed him, just like Moses faithfully served all of God's people, whom we call God's house.

• who appointed
• Moses
• as...was
• house

Translation Words - UST

• He faithfully served God
• appointed
• just
• Moses faithfully served
• all of God's people, whom we call...house

Hebrews 3:3

he (ULT)

he...has been considered worthy (ULT)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God has considered Jesus" (See: Active or Passive)

of greater...glory (ULT)

Moses (ULT)

greater honor than (ULT)

the house...it (ULT)

Translation Words - ULT

- has been considered worthy
- glory
- Moses
- honor
- house

Translation Words - UST

- glory, glorious, glorify
- honor
- worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless
- Moses
- house, household

ULT

3 For he has been considered worthy of greater glory than Moses, just as much greater honor than the house has the one who built it.

UST

3-4 Now just as every house is made by someone, God made everything. So God has considered that Jesus is worthy for people to honor him more than they honor Moses, just as the one who builds a house deserves for people to honor him more than they should honor the house.

Hebrews 3:4

the one...who built everything (ULT)

God's acts of creating the world are spoken of as if he had **built** a house. (See: Metaphor)

every...house is built by someone (ULT)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "every house has someone who built it" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- house
- is} God

Translation Words - UST

- God
- house, household

Hebrews 3:5

Hebrews 3:5

Moses {was} faithful as a servant in his entire house (ULT)
Moses...very faithfully served God as he helped all of God's people, just as a servant faithfully serves his master (UST)

Here, just as in 3:2, the author uses words that are very similar to the Greek translation of Numbers 12:7. It is possible that he is thinking of that verse or directly referencing it. However, he does not introduce the words as a quotation or indicate that he is referring to another text. So, you should not include any quotation information in your translation. If you wish to refer to Numbers 12:7, you could do so with a footnote. (See: When to Keep Information Implicit)

Moses (ULT)
Moses (UST)

Moses is the name of a man. God had him lead the Israelites when he delivered them from being slaves in the land of Egypt. (See: How to Translate Names)

in his entire house (ULT)
as he helped all of God's people (UST)

Here, **house** figuratively refers to a group of people, here the Israelites. See how you translated **house** in Hebrews 3:2. Alternate translation: "among God's entire tribe" or "in his entire clan" (See: Metaphor)

his (ULT)
God's people (UST)

Here, **his** refers to God. If your readers would misunderstand **his**, you could make the idea explicit. Alternate translation: "God's" (See: Pronouns — When to Use Them)

for a testimony of what (ULT)
So Moses testified about what Jesus would say in the future (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind **testimony**, you could express the idea by using a verb such as "testify" or "proclaim." Alternate translation: "to testify to the things that" (See: Abstract Nouns)

of what will be spoken of in the future (ULT)
what Jesus would say in the future (UST)

Here the author does not clarify what exactly is **spoken**. He may be referring to what God the Father said about the Son in chapter 1, or he could be referring in general to the good news about Jesus. If your readers need to know what is **spoken**, you could make it more explicit. Alternate translation: "of the good news that would be spoken in the future" or "of the things that would be spoken about Jesus in the future" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

will be spoken of in the future (ULT)
what Jesus would say in the future (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. The author uses the passive form here to focus on the words that are **spoken** rather than focusing on the person doing the "speaking." If you must state who did the action, the author implies that "God" did it. Alternate translation: "God would speak in the future" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- was} faithful
- as
- a servant
- house
- a testimony

Translation Words - UST

- Moses
- faithfully served God
- God's people
- just as
- a servant faithfully serves his master
- So Moses testified

Hebrews 3:6

Hebrews 3:6

Christ...as a Son (ULT)
the Messiah...is the Son (UST)

Here the author omits some words that may be needed in your language to make a complete thought. He omits these words because he stated them in the previous verse ("was faithful"). If your language needs these words to make a complete thought, you could include them here. Alternate translation: "Christ was faithful as a Son" (See: Ellipsis)

a Son (ULT)
Son (UST)

Son is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. See how you translated this word in 1:2. (See: Translating Son and Father)

over his house (ULT)
rules over God's people (UST)

Here, **over his house** contrasts with how Moses was "in his entire house" (see 3:5). The phrase **over his house** indicates that the **Son** rules or is in charge of the **house**. If your readers would misunderstand the implications of **over his house**, you could make them explicit. Alternate translation: "in charge of his house" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

over his house—whose house we are (ULT)
who rules over God's people. And we are the people he rules (UST)

Here, **house** figuratively refers to a group of people, here God's people. See how you translated house in 3:2. Alternate translation: "over his clan (whose clan we are" (See: Metaphor)

his...whose (ULT)
who...God's (UST)

Here, **his* and **whose** refer to God. If your readers would misunderstand **his** and **whose**, you could make the idea explicit. Alternate translation: "God's ... whose" (See: Pronouns — When to Use Them)

house...whose house we are if we hold fast to the confidence and the boasting of {our} hope (ULT)
people...who...And we are the people he rules if we continue to courageously believe in the Messiah and confidently expect God to do all that he has promised to do for us (UST)

This sentence transitions from what the author has said about God's **house**, Jesus, and Moses to an exhortation to continue to **hold fast**. The ULT has connected the sentence to the preceding information but put it in parentheses to indicate that it is slightly disconnected. Consider a natural way to include a transition sentence in your language. Alternate translation: "house. We are his house if we hold fast to the confidence and the boasting of {our} hope."

if (ULT)
if (UST)

Here the author uses the conditional form to show that "holding fast" leads to being God's **house**. If the conditional form does not indicate a cause and effect relationship like this in your language, you could express the **if** statement in a way that does show the relationship. Alternate translation: "given that" (See: Connect — Hypothetical Conditions)

we hold fast to (ULT)
God to do all that he has promised to do for us (UST)

Here, **hold fast** refers to continuing to firmly believe or trust something, particularly something that one has been told. If your readers would misunderstand **hold fast**, you could use a word or phrase that refers to continuing to believe or trust. Alternate translation: "we tightly grasp" or "we remain in" (See: Translate Unknowns)

we hold fast to the confidence and the boasting of {our} hope (ULT)
we continue to courageously believe in the Messiah and confidently expect God to do all that he has promised to do for us (UST)

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas behind **confidence**, **boasting**, and **hope**, you could express ideas by using a verbs and adjectives or in another natural way. Alternate translation: "we keep being confident and proud about what we hope for" or "we continue to boldly await and speak joyfully about the things that we expect" (See: Abstract Nouns)

the confidence and the boasting of {our} hope (ULT)
we continue to courageously believe in the Messiah and confidently expect (UST)

Here the author uses the possessive form to describe **confidence** and **boasting** about or concerning **{our} hope**. If your readers would misunderstand that form, you could use a more natural construction. Alternate translation: "the confidence and the boasting concerning {our} hope" (See: Possession)

Translation Words - ULT

- Christ
- as
- a Son
- house
- house
- confidence
- boasting
- of...hope

Translation Words - UST

- the Messiah
- is the
- Son
- people
- the people he rules

- we continue to courageously believe in
- confidently
- expect

Hebrews 3:7

Hebrews 3:7

Therefore (ULT)
So then (UST)

Here, **Therefore** introduces an exhortation that is based on the claim from the previous verse that we are his "house" as long as "we hold fast" (see 3:6). If your readers would misunderstand **Therefore**, you could use a word or phrase that introduces an exhortation that is based on a previous statement. Alternate translation: "So then" (See: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship)

ULT

7 Therefore, just as the Holy Spirit says: "Today, if you hear his voice,

UST

7 So then, it is just as when the Holy Spirit caused the psalmist to write these words in the scriptures to the Israelites: "Now, when you hear God speak to you,

just as the Holy Spirit says (ULT)
it is just as when the Holy Spirit caused the psalmist to write these words in the scriptures to the Israelites (UST)

Here and in the next four verses, the author quotes from an important text, the Old Testament. The audience would have understood that this was a quotation from the Old Testament, here from Psalm 95:7b–11, which refers to a story that can be found in Numbers 14:1–38. See the chapter introduction for more information about this story. Since the author introduces this quotation as words that the **Holy Spirit says**, you should introduce the quotation as words that someone has said. If your readers would not know that the quotation is from the Old Testament, you could include a footnote or use some other form to identify the quotation. Alternate translation: "as says the Holy Spirit" (See: Quotations and Quote Margins)

just as the Holy Spirit says: "Today, if you hear his voice (ULT)
it is just as when the Holy Spirit caused the psalmist to write these words in the scriptures to the Israelites: "Now, when you hear God speak to you (UST)

If you do not use this form in your language, you could translate the clause as an indirect quote instead of as a direct quote. If you use the following alternate translation, you will need to express the rest of the quote in the next four verses as an indirect quote as well. Alternate translation: "you should do just what the Holy Spirit says: that today, if you hear his voice" (See: Direct and Indirect Quotations)

Today (ULT)
Now (UST)

Here, **today** refers to the period of time between when the sun rises and when it rises again. Even more specifically, it identifies that this period of time is the current one. If your readers would misunderstand **Today**, you could use a word or phrase that refers clearly to that current time period. Alternate translation: "Right now" or "At this time" (See: Translate Unknowns)

if (ULT)
when (UST)

Here the author is speaking as if "hearing his voice" were a hypothetical possibility, but he means that it is actually true. If your language does not state something as a condition if it is certain or true, and if your readers might misunderstand and think that what the author is saying is not certain, then you could express the idea by using a word such as "when." Alternate translation: "whenever" (See: Connect — Factual Conditions)

his (ULT)
God (UST)

Here, **his** refers to God. If your readers would misunderstand *his*, you could make the idea explicit. Alternate translation: "God's" (See: Pronouns — When to Use Them)

Translation Words - ULT

- just as
- Holy Spirit
- voice

Translation Words - UST

- it is just as when
- Holy Spirit
- speak to you

Hebrews 3:8

Hebrews 3:8

do not harden your hearts as in the rebellion, in the day of testing in the wilderness (ULT) Do not stubbornly disobey him, as your ancestors rebelled against him when he tested them in the wilderness (UST)

If you do not use this form in your language, you could translate this verse as an indirect quote instead of as a direct quote. If you use the following alternate translation, you will need to express the rest of the quote in the surrounding verses as an indirect quote as well. Alternate translation: "you should not harden your hearts as in the provocation, during the day of testing in the wilderness" (See: Direct and Indirect Quotations)

do not harden your hearts (ULT) Do not stubbornly disobey him...your ancestors (UST)

When someone "hardens their heart," it means that they being stubborn and refusing to listen or respond to someone else. If you have a figurative or idiomatic way to refer to this behavior, you could use it here. If you do not have a figurative way to refer to this behavior, you could express the idea nonfiguratively. Alternate translation: "do not be stubborn" or "do not be headstrong" (See: Idiom)

as in the rebellion, in the day of testing in the wilderness (ULT) as...rebelled against him when he tested them in the wilderness (UST)

While the quotation primarily refers to the story about how the Israelites did not enter the land that God promised them (see Numbers 14:1–38), there is another story that the author of the quotation may be referring to. In Exodus 17:1–7, the Israelites are thirsty while they are in the **wilderness**, and they "provoke" and "test" God by complaining. God provides water for them, and Moses names one of the places where they were "Testing" (see Exodus 17:7). It is quite possible that the author of the quotation is thinking about this story. If your readers would misunderstand what the author is referring to here, you could include some extra information or use a footnote to refer to the stories. Alternate translation: "as when the Israelite ancestors provoked God during the day in which they tested him in the wilderness" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

in the rebellion (ULT) as...rebelled against him (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind **provocation**, you could express the idea by using a verb such as "provoke." Alternate translation: "when God was provoked" (See: Abstract Nouns)

the day of testing (ULT) when he tested them (UST)

Here the author uses the possessive form to identify a **day** on which **testing** occurred. If your readers would misunderstand that form, you could express the idea in a more natural way. Alternate translation: "the day when they tested God" (See: Possession)

Translation Words - ULT

- do...harden
- hearts
- as
- rebellion
- day
- of testing
- wilderness

Translation Words - UST

- stubbornly disobey him
- stubbornly disobey him
- as
- rebelled against him
- when he tested them
- when he tested them
- wilderness

Hebrews 3:9

where your fathers tested {me} by testing {me}, and they saw my works (ULT)
There your ancestors repeatedly tested me to see whether I would be patient with them, even though they saw all the amazing things I did (UST)

If you do not use this form in your language, you could translate this verse as an indirect quote instead of as a direct quote. If you use the following alternate translation, you will need to express the rest of the quote in the surrounding verses as an indirect quote as well. Alternate translation: "where your fathers tested {him} by examination, and they saw his works" (See: Direct and Indirect Quotations)

your fathers (ULT)
your ancestors (UST)

Here, **your fathers** refers to the Israelites who were alive before Jesus lived on earth. The audience of the original quotation were Israelites who descended from these people. Use a word or phrase that refers to ancestors. Alternate translation: "your forefathers" (See: Kinship)

your fathers (ULT)
your ancestors (UST)

Although **fathers** is masculine, it refers to any ancestors, both male and female. If your readers would misunderstand **fathers**, you could use a non-gendered word or refer to both genders. Alternate translation: "your fathers and mothers" (See: When Masculine Words Include Women)

where your fathers tested {me…my (ULT)
There your ancestors repeatedly…I (UST)

Beginning in this verse, God speaks directly using first person pronouns. In the previous two verses, the author of the quotation refers to God in the third person. If your readers would misunderstand this change, you could use the same person for the pronouns throughout the quotation, or you could indicate that God is speaking directly here. Alternate translation: "where, as God says, your fathers tested {me} … my" (See: First, Second or Third Person)

tested {me…by testing {me (ULT)
repeatedly…tested me to see whether I would be patient with them (UST)

Here, **tested** and **examination** refer to basically the same thing. The word **tested** refers to the act of "testing," while **examination** refers to the "test" itself. The author of the quotation uses both words to emphasize how the **fathers** "examined" God. If your readers would misunderstand why the author includes both words, and if using both words is not emphatic in your language, you could express the idea with one word or phrase. Alternate translation: "examined {me}" (See: Doublet)

by testing {me (ULT)
tested me to see whether I would be patient with them (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind **examination**, you could express the idea by using a verb such as "examine." Alternate translation: "by examining me" (See: Abstract Nouns)

my works (ULT)
all the amazing things I did (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind **works**, you could express the idea by using a verb such as "perform" or "do." Alternate translation: "what I performed" or "what I did" (See: Abstract Nouns)

and they saw my works (ULT)
even though they saw all the amazing things I did (UST)

Here, **they saw my works** could refer to: (1) how the **fathers tested** God even though they **saw** the amazing **works** that God did to rescue them and bring them through the wilderness. Alternate translation: "even though they saw my powerful deeds" (2) how God acted to punish the **fathers** for how they **tested** him. Alternate translation: "and they saw how I punished them" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- fathers
- tested {me
- testing {me
- works

Translation Words - UST

- ancestors
- repeatedly
- tested me...see whether I would be patient with them
- all...amazing things...did

Hebrews 3:10

Hebrews 3:10

If you do not use this form in your language, you could translate this verse as an indirect quote instead of as a direct quote. If you use the following alternate translation, you will need to express the rest of the quote in the surrounding verses as an indirect quote as well. Alternate translation: "for 40 years. Therefore, he was upset with that generation, and he said, 'They are always going astray in {their} hearts, and they have not known my ways.'" (See: Direct and Indirect Quotations)

for 40 years (ULT)
forty years (UST)

Here, **for 40 years** goes with the end of the previous verse and tells how long "they saw my works" (3:9). You could include these words at the end of verse 9, or you could include them here in verse 10 and show with punctuation that they belong with the previous sentence. (See: Information Structure)

I was displeased with (ULT)
I was angry (UST)

Here, **I was upset** indicates that God was properly angry or displeased with the Israelites. If your readers would misunderstand **I was upset**, you could use a word or phrase that refers to proper or appropriate anger and displeasure. Alternate translation: "I was displeased" (See: Translate Unknowns)

Therefore I was displeased with...I said (ULT)
For...I was angry...I said about them (UST)

Just as in 3:9, God speaks directly using first person pronouns. However, in 3:7–8, the author of the quotation refers to God in the third person. Use the same translation strategy that you used in 3:9. Alternate translation: "Therefore, as God says, I was upset … I said" (See: First, Second or Third Person)

I said, 'They are always being led astray in {their} hearts and they have not known my ways (ULT)

If the direct quotation inside a direct quotation would be confusing in your language, you could translate the second direct quotation as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "I said that they are always going astray in {their} hearts, and they have not known my ways." (See: Quotes within Quotes)

They are always being led astray in {their} hearts and they have not known my ways (ULT)

Here the quotation includes two statements that mean almost the same thing. This was considered good poetry in the author's culture. If your readers would misunderstand the parallelism, and if this would not be good poetry in your culture, you could combine the two statements. Alternate translation: "They are always going astray from my ways in their hearts" or "Their hearts have never know my ways" (See: Parallelism)

They are always being led astray (ULT)
They are never faithful to me (UST)

Here the author of the quotation speaks as if the Israelites were traveling down the wrong road. He speaks in this way to indicate that they were not following God properly. Someone who is **going astray** does not want to do what is right. If your readers would misunderstand this figure of speech, you could use a comparable metaphor or express the idea nonfiguratively. Alternate translation: "They are not following me" or "They are happy to disobey me" (See: Metaphor)

in {their} hearts (ULT)
They are never faithful to me (UST)

In the author's culture, **hearts** are the places where humans think and plan. If your readers would misunderstand **hearts**, you could refer to the place where humans think in your culture or express the idea nonfiguratively. Alternate translation: "in {their} minds" or "in what they plan" (See: Metonymy)

my ways (ULT)
how I wanted them to conduct their lives (UST)

Here, God speaks as if he has **ways** or paths on which he walks. When the audience does not know these **ways**, that means that they do not know what God wants or values. If your readers would misunderstand this figure of speech, you could use a comparable metaphor or express the idea nonfiguratively. Alternate translation: "how I want them to conduct their lives" or "what I value" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- years
- generation
- They are...being led astray
- in...hearts
- have...known

Translation Words - UST

- years
- people
- They are never faithful to me
- They are never faithful to me
- They do...understand

Hebrews 3:11

As (ULT)
So then (UST)

Here, **As** could introduce: (1) a result from what the ancestors did. Alternate translation: "So" or "Therefore," (2) a reason why the people will not **enter into my rest**. If you choose this option, you may need to include some implied information about how the ancestors did not **enter** the **rest**. Alternate translation: "They did not enter the land that I had promised, just as"

As I swore in my wrath, 'If they will enter into my rest (ULT)
So then I was angry with them. I solemnly declared, 'They will not enter the land of Canaan where I would let them rest (UST)

If you do not use this form in your language, you could translate this verse as an indirect quote instead of as a direct quote. If you use the following alternate translation, you will need to express the rest of the quote in previous verses as an indirect quote as well. Alternate translation: "for 40 years. Therefore, he was upset with that generation, and he said, 'They are always going astray in {their} hearts, and they have not known my ways.'" "As he swore in his wrath, 'If they will enter into my rest … !'" (See: Direct and Indirect Quotations)

in my wrath (ULT)
I was angry with them (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind **wrath**, you could express the idea by using an adjective such as "wrathful" or "angry." Alternate translation: "as I was wrathful" or "angrily" (See: Abstract Nouns)

I swore in my wrath, 'If they will enter into my rest (ULT)
I was angry with them. I solemnly declared, 'They will not enter the land of Canaan where I would let them rest (UST)

If the direct quotation inside a direct quotation would be confusing in your language, you could translate the second direct quotation as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "I swore in my wrath that they would never enter into my rest … !" (See: Quotes within Quotes)

If they will enter into my rest (ULT)
They will not enter the land of Canaan where I would let them rest (UST)

Here God uses **If** to introduce a statement that he knows will not be true. What the form means is that **they** will definitely not **enter into my rest**. If your readers would misunderstand this form, you could express the idea with a strong negation. Alternate translation: "They will never enter into my rest!" (See: Connect — Contrary to Fact Conditions)

they will enter into my rest (ULT)
They will…enter the land of Canaan where I would let them rest (UST)

Here, **rest** could refer to: (1) the state of "resting." Alternate translation: "they will participate in the way that I rest" or "they will rest with me" (2) the place where people rest, particularly the land that God promised to give to his

people. Alternate translation: "they will enter into my resting place" or "they will enter into the land of rest" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

my…rest (ULT)
land of Canaan where I would let them rest (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind **rest**, you could express the idea by using a verb such as "rest." Make sure that your translation fits with the option you chose in the previous verse. Alternate translation: "the way that I rest" (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- As
- I swore
- wrath
- rest

Translation Words - UST

- So then
- was angry
- I solemnly declared
- land of Canaan where…rest

Hebrews 3:12

Be careful (ULT)
So...be careful (UST)

Alternate translation: "Be careful"

brothers (ULT)
fellow believers (UST)

Although **brothers** is masculine, the author is using it to refer to all believers, both men and women. If your readers would misunderstand **brothers**, you could use a non-gendered word or refer to both genders. Alternate translation: "brothers and sisters" (See: When Masculine Words Include Women)

in any of you an evil heart of unbelief (ULT)
that none of...you develop evil thinking...stop obeying the (UST)

In the author's culture, the **heart** is the place where humans think and plan. If your readers would misunderstand **heart**, you could refer to the place where humans think in your culture or express the idea nonfiguratively. See how you translated "hearts" in 3:10. Alternate translation: "in any of you a wicked mind of unbelief" or "wicked thinking of unbelief in any of you" (See: Metonymy)

an evil heart of unbelief (ULT)
develop evil thinking...stop obeying the (UST)

Here the author uses the possessive form to describe a **heart** that is characterized by **unbelief**. If your readers would misunderstand that form, you could express the idea in a more natural way. Alternate translation: "a wicked heart that does not believe" or "a wicked and unbelieving heart" (See: Possession)

of unbelief (ULT)
stop obeying the (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind **unbelief**, you could express the idea by using a verb such as "disbelieve" or an adjective such as "unbelieving." Alternate translation: "that disbelieves" (See: Abstract Nouns)

in falling away (ULT)
that would lead you to...stop obeying the (UST)

Here, **in the falling away** refers to something that happens at the same time as having **a wicked heart of unbelief**. If your readers would misunderstand **in the falling away**, you could use a form that introduces simultaneous action. Alternate translation: "while you fall away" or "which falls away" (See: Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship)

in falling away from (ULT)
that would lead you to…stop obeying the (UST)

Here the author speaks of rejecting or failing to follow God as if the person "fell away" from where God is. If your readers would misunderstand this figure of speech, you could use a comparable metaphor or express the idea nonfiguratively. Alternate translation: "in the turning away from" or "in rejecting" (See: Metaphor)

the living God (ULT)
only God who actually lives (UST)

Here, **the living God** identifies God as the one who "lives" and possibly as the one who gives "life." The primary point is that God actually "lives," unlike idols and other things that people call "god." If your readers would misunderstand **the living God**, you could use a word or phrase that emphasizes that God really "lives." Alternate translation: "the God who lives" or "the true God" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- brothers
- evil
- an…heart
- of unbelief
- living
- the…God

Translation Words - UST

- fellow believers
- develop…thinking
- evil
- stop obeying the
- only…actually lives
- God who

Hebrews 3:13

as long as it is called "today (ULT)
while you still have the opportunity (UST)

Here the author refers to **today** in such a way that the audience would know that he was referring to how the quotation used the word **today** (see 3:7). Use a form in your language that shows that the author is referring back to the quotation. Alternate translation: "as long as it is called 'today,' as the psalmist wrote," (See: Quotations and Quote Margins)

as long as it is called "today (ULT)
while you still have the opportunity (UST)

Here the author speaks about a time that we call **today**. We call every day **today**, so this phrase means that we should **exhort one another** all the time. However, since the author uses **today** because the author of the quotation uses it, make sure that you use the same words that you used to translate **today** in 3:7. Alternate translation: "as long as we live in the time that we call 'this day'" (See: Idiom)

no one among you will be hardened by the deceitfulness of sin (ULT)
If not...someone among you could behave stubbornly and lead others to sin (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. The author uses the passive form here to focus on those who are **hardened** rather than focusing on what does the "hardening." Alternate translation: "{the} deceitfulness of sin hardens no one among you" (See: Active or Passive)

will be hardened...by the deceitfulness of sin (ULT)
could behave stubbornly...and lead...to sin (UST)

Here the author speaks of becoming stubborn or unwilling to obey or trust in God as if the person were **hardened**. If your readers would misunderstand this figure of speech, you could use a comparable metaphor or express the idea nonfiguratively. Alternate translation: "becomes stubborn because of {the} deceitfulness of sin" or "stops trusting God because of {the} deceitfulness of sin" (See: Metaphor)

by the deceitfulness of sin (ULT)
and lead...to sin (UST)

Here the author uses the possessive form to characterize **sin** as something that has **deceitfulness**. If your readers would misunderstand that **sin** "deceives," you could express the idea more naturally. Alternate translation: "by sin deceiving you" or "by the way that sin deceives" (See: Possession)

by the deceitfulness of sin (ULT)
and lead...to sin (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind **deceitfulness**, you could express the idea by using a verb such as "deceive" or an adjective such as "deceitful." Alternate translation: "by how sin deceives" or "by deceitful sin" (See: Abstract Nouns)

ULT

13 Instead, encourage one another every day, as long as it is called "today," so that no one among you will be hardened by the deceitfulness of sin.

UST

13 Instead, each of you must encourage each other every day, while you still have the opportunity. If not someone among you could behave stubbornly and lead others to sin.

Translation Words - ULT

- encourage
- day
- is called
- will be hardened
- by the deceitfulness
- of sin

Translation Words - UST

- encourage
- day
- you still have
- could behave stubbornly
- and lead
- to sin

Hebrews 3:14

For (ULT)
We are now joined to (UST)

Here, **For** introduces a reason why the audience should "exhort one another" (see 3:13). If your readers would misunderstand **For**, you could use a word or phrase that introduces a reason for an exhortation. Alternate translation: "You should do that because" (See: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship)

partakers...we have become...of Christ (ULT)
We are now joined to...the Messiah...from... time (UST)

Here the author uses the possessive form to indicate that believers "share" **Christ**. See how you translated **sharers** in 3:1. More specifically, **sharers of Christ** could mean that believers: (1) "share" the promise and the blessings together with **Christ**. Alternate translation: "we have with Christ shared the blessings" (2) "share" or participate in **Christ** himself. Alternate translation: "we have shared in Christ" or "we have participated in Christ" (See: Possession)

if (ULT)
if we (UST)

Here the author uses the conditional form to show that "holding firm" leads to being **sharers of Christ**. If the conditional form does not indicate a cause and effect relationship like this in your language, you could express the **if** statement in a way that does show the relationship. Alternate translation: "given that" (See: Connect — Hypothetical Conditions)

we firmly hold to (ULT)
seriously and...we...trusted in him to (UST)

Here, **hold firm** refers to continuing to firmly believe or trust something, particularly something that one has been told. If your readers would misunderstand **hold firm**, you could use a word or phrase that refers to continuing to believe or trust. See how you expressed the similar idea in 3:6. Alternate translation: "we tightly grasp" or "we remain in" (See: Translate Unknowns)

the beginning of {our} confidence (ULT)
confidently trust in him...the...first...the (UST)

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas behind **beginning** and **confidence**, you could express the ideas by using verbs such as "began" and "trust." Alternate translation: "from the time when we first believed in him" (See: Abstract Nouns)

until the end (ULT)
continue to...time when we die (UST)

Here, **the end** could be: (1) a polite way of referring to when a person dies. Alternate translation: "until our lives end" (2) the **end** of the world, when Jesus comes back. Alternate translation: "until Jesus comes back" (See: Euphemism)

ULT

14 For we have become partakers of Christ if we firmly hold to the beginning of {our} confidence until the end.

UST

14 We are now joined to the Messiah if we continue to seriously and confidently trust in him, from the time we first trusted in him to the time when we die.

Translation Words - ULT

- of Christ
- of...confidence

Translation Words - UST

- Messiah
- confidently trust in him

Hebrews 3:15

About this it has been said (ULT)
The psalmist wrote in...scripture that (UST)

This verse could: (1) conclude the exhortations in 3:12–14 by stating when the audience should follow these exhortations. If you use the following alternate translation, you may need to add a period before it. Alternate translation: "Do these things while it is said" (2) introduce what will be discussed in 3:16–19. If you use the following alternate translation, you may need to add a period before it. Alternate translation: "Hear again what is said:" (See: Information Structure)

ULT
15 About this it has been said, "Today, if you hear his voice, do not harden your hearts, as in the rebellion."

UST
15 The psalmist wrote in the scripture that God said, "Now, when you hear me speaking to you, do not stubbornly disobey me. Your ancestors did that when they rebelled against me."

it has been said (ULT)
psalmist wrote...scripture that (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. The author uses the passive form here to focus on what is **said** rather than focusing on the person doing the "saying." If you must state who did the action, the author implies that the "Holy Spirit" did it (see 3:7. Alternate translation: "during the time when the Holy Spirit speaks" (See: Active or Passive)

About this it has been said (ULT)
The psalmist wrote in...scripture that (UST)

Here the author uses **it is said** to requote a part of the quotation that he introduced earlier (see especially 3:7b–8a). If your readers would misunderstand that the author is requoting the previous quotation to focus on a specific portion of it, you could use a word or phrase that introduces something that has already been quoted. Alternate translation: "while the words I have already quoted are said" (See: Quotations and Quote Margins)

About this it has been said, "Today, if you hear his voice, do not harden your hearts, as in the rebellion (ULT)
The psalmist wrote in the scripture that God said, "Now, when you hear me speaking to you, do not stubbornly disobey me. Your ancestors did that when they rebelled against me (UST)

If you do not use this form in your language, you could translate the clause as an indirect quote instead of as a direct quote. Alternate translation: "while it is said that today, if you hear his voice, you should not harden your hearts as in the rebellion" (See: Direct and Indirect Quotations)

About this...Today, if you hear his voice, do not harden your hearts, as...rebellion (ULT)
The...in the...God said, "Now, when you hear me speaking to you, do not stubbornly disobey me. Your ancestors did that...they rebelled against me (UST)

Since the author repeats here the same words that he quoted in 3:7b–8a, you should translate these words in exactly the same way as you did in those verses.

Translation Words - ULT

- voice
- do...harden
- hearts
- as
- rebellion

Translation Words - UST

- said...me speaking to you
- do...stubbornly disobey me
- do...stubbornly disobey me
- did that
- they rebelled against me

Hebrews 3:16

Hebrews 3:16

For (ULT)
For (UST)

Here, **For** introduces 3:16–19, which further explain the quotation. If your readers would misunderstand **For**, you could use a word or phrase that introduces an explanation. Alternate translation: "In the quotation," (See: Connecting Words and Phrases)

which ones...who heard rebelled? {Was it} not all those who came out from Egypt through Moses (ULT)
remember who it was...who rebelled against God, even though they heard him speak to them. It was certainly all of God's people who Moses led out of Egypt (UST)

The author does not ask these questions because he is looking for information. Rather, he asks them to involve the audience in what he is arguing. The second question gives the answer to the first question: "it was those who came out from Egypt through Moses." If your readers would misunderstand these questions, you could express the idea by using a form that identifies those **who heard** and **provoked** with **all those who came out from Egypt through Moses**. Alternate translation: "you know who they are who heard and provoked {him}. It was all those who came out from Egypt through Moses." or "which ones who heard provoked {him}? It was all those who came out from Egypt through Moses." (See: Rhetorical Question)

who heard...who came out (ULT)
who...even though they heard him speak to them...led (UST)

Here, **who heard** and **who came out** introduce phrases that distinguish or identify the people that the author is speaking about. Use a form in your language identifies, not one that simply describes. Alternate translation: "that heard ... that came out" (See: Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding)

who heard rebelled (ULT)
who rebelled against God, even though they heard him speak to them (UST)

The author uses **heard** and **provoked** to refer back to the words that the quotation used. See how you translated "hear his voice" in 3:7 and "provocation" in 3:8. Alternate translation: "who heard his voice participated in the provocation"

those who came out (ULT)
of God's people who...led (UST)

Here, **came out** refers to leaving a country or area. Use a word for this kind of movement in your language. Alternate translation: "those who went out" (See: Go and Come)

from Egypt (ULT)
out of Egypt (UST)

Egypt is the name of a country in northern Africa. The Israelites were slaves in this country until they **came out from** it. (See: How to Translate Names)

through Moses (ULT)
Moses (UST)

Moses is the name of a man. God had him lead the Israelites when he delivered them from being slaves in the land of Egypt. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- rebelled
- Egypt
- Moses

Translation Words - UST

- rebelled against God
- Moses
- Egypt

Hebrews 3:17

with whom...was he angry for 40 years? {Was it} not with those who sinned, whose dead bodies fell in the wilderness (ULT) remember who it was...with whom God was disgusted for forty years. Certainly it was God's people who sinned, and their dead bodies lay there in the desert (UST)

The author does not ask these questions because he is looking for information. Rather, he asks them to involve the audience in what he is arguing. The second question gives the answer to the first question: "it was those who sinned, whose corpses fell in the wilderness." If your readers would misunderstand these questions, you could express the idea by using a form that identifies those **with whom he was upset** with **those who sinned**. Alternate translation: "you know who they are with whom he was upset for 40 years. It was with those who sinned, whose corpses fell in the wilderness." or "with whom was he upset for 40 years? It was with those who sinned, whose corpses fell in the wilderness." (See: Rhetorical Question)

was he angry for 40 years (ULT)
with whom God was disgusted for forty years (UST)

The author uses **was he upset** and **for 40 years** to refer back to the words that the quotation used. See how you translated "I was upset" and "for 40 years" in 3:10. Alternate translation: "was he displeased for those 40 years"

whose dead bodies fell in the wilderness (ULT)
who...and their dead bodies lay there in the desert (UST)

The author uses these words because he found them in Numbers 14:29, where God tells Moses what is going to happen to **those who sinned**. The phrase **corpses fell** refers to people dying. If your readers would misunderstand this figure of speech, you could express the idea with a word or phrase that refers to people dying. Alternate translation: "who fell down dead in the wilderness" or "who were buried in the wilderness" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- years
- who sinned
- dead bodies
- wilderness

Translation Words - UST

- years
- sinned
- and their dead bodies
- desert

Hebrews 3:18

to whom...did he swear that they would not enter into his rest, if not to those who disobeyed (ULT)
remember...whom...about...God solemnly declared, "They will not enter the land where I would let them rest." It was certainly those Israelites who disobeyed God (UST)

The author does not ask this question because he is looking for information. Rather, he asks it to involve the audience in what he is arguing. The second half of the question gives the answer to the first half: "it was those who disobeyed." If your readers would misunderstand this question, you could express the idea by using a form that identifies those **who disobeyed** with "those to whom he swore." Alternate translation: "you know who they are to whom he swore that they would not enter into his rest. It was to those who disobeyed." or "to whom did he swear that they would not enter into his rest? It was to those who disobeyed." (See: Rhetorical Question)

did he swear that they would not enter into his rest (ULT)
about...God solemnly declared, "They will not enter the land where I would let them rest...God (UST)

The author uses **they would not enter into his rest** to refer back to the words that the quotation used. See how you translated "If they will enter into my rest" in 3:11. Alternate translation: "did he swear, 'they will never enter into my rest,'"

Translation Words - ULT

- did he swear that
- rest
- who disobeyed

Translation Words - UST

- God solemnly declared
- land where I would let them rest
- who disobeyed

Hebrews 3:19

Hebrews 3:19

And (ULT)
From that example (UST)

Here, **And** introduces a summary or conclusion for the argument, especially for what the author has said in 3:16–18. If your readers would misunderstand **And**, you could use a word or phrase that introduces a summary or conclusion. Alternate translation: "Therefore," (See: Connecting Words and Phrases)

we see that they were not able to enter because of unbelief (ULT)
we know that it was because they did not trust in God. So they were unable to enter the land where God would allow them to rest (UST)

If your language would naturally put the reason before the result, you could rearrange the sentence. The author puts **because of unbelief** last in order to emphasize it, so use a form that emphasizes this phrase. Alternate translation: "we that it was because of unbelief that they were not able to enter" (See: Information Structure)

we see (ULT)
we know (UST)

Here the author uses **we see** figuratively to refer to knowing or understanding something. If your readers would misunderstand this figure of speech, you could express the idea nonfiguratively. Alternate translation: "we learn" or "we know" (See: Metaphor)

to enter (ULT)
to enter the land where God would allow them to rest (UST)

Here the author uses **enter** to refer back to the words that the quotation used. Translate **enter** the same way that you did in 3:11. If your readers would misunderstand that **enter** refers back to this quotation, you could make the reference more explicit. Alternate translation: "to enter into God's rest" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

because of unbelief (ULT)
it was because they did not trust in God. So (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind **unbelief**, you could express the idea by using a verbal phrase such as "did not believe" or an adjective such as "unbelieving." Alternate translation: "because they were unbelieving" or "because they refused to believe" (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

   • unbelief

Translation Words - UST

   • it was because they did not trust in God

Hebrews 4

Hebrews 4 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Example of the wilderness generation (3:1–4:13)

- Exhortation: Strive to enter the rest! (3:7–4:11)
- Exhortation: The power of God's word (4:12–13)

Summary statement (4:14–16)

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 4:3-4, 7, which are words from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

God's rest

The word **rest** seems to refer to at least two things in this chapter. It refers to a place or time when God will allow his people to rest from their work (Hebrews 4:3), and it refers to God resting on the seventh day (Hebrews 4:4).

Hebrews 4:1

Hebrews 4:1

Therefore (ULT)
then (UST)

Here, **Therefore** introduces an exhortation that is based on everything that the author has said about the Israelite ancestors in 3:7–19. If your readers would misunderstand **Therefore**, you could use a word or phrase that introduces an exhortation that is based on what has been said. Alternate translation: "Because what I have just said is true" (See: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship)

let us be afraid...lest while there remains (ULT)
We are afraid...still exists...lest (UST)

lest while there remains a promise of entering into his rest (ULT)
God's promise that we may enter his place of rest still exists...lest (UST)

Alternate translation: "lest while a promise to enter into his rest is still valid" or "lest while God still offers a promise to enter into his rest"

lest while there remains a promise (ULT)
God's promise...still exists...lest (UST)

of entering into his rest (ULT)
that we may enter his place of rest (UST)

Here and throughout this chapter, **rest** could refer to: (1) the state of "resting." Alternate translation: "to participate in the way that God rests" or "to rest with him" (2) the place where people rest, particularly the land that God promised to give to his people. Alternate translation: "to enter into God's resting place" or "to enter into the land of rest" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

his rest (ULT)
his place of rest (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind **rest**, you could express the idea by using a verb such as "rest." Make sure that your translation fits with the option you chose in the previous note for what **rest** means. Alternate translation: "the way that God rests" (See: Abstract Nouns)

might seem...to have failed to attain it (ULT)
seem...to fail to enter his place of rest (UST)

Translation Words - ULT

- let us be afraid
- a promise
- rest

ULT

1 Therefore, let us be afraid lest while there remains a promise of entering into his rest, any of you might seem to have failed to attain it.

UST

1 God's promise that we may enter his place of rest still exists. We are afraid then lest some among you seem to fail to enter his place of rest.

Translation Words - UST

- God's promise
- place of rest
- We are afraid

Hebrews 4:2

For we also are having good news proclaimed {to us} just as to them also (ULT)
Indeed, we have heard the good news about... just as they did (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "For we also heard the good news just as they did" (See: Active or Passive)

just as to them also (ULT)
just as they did (UST)

Here, **them** refers to the Hebrews' ancestors who were alive during the time of Moses.

But the message of the hearing did not benefit them, not having been united with faith in those who heard it (ULT)
God's promises...But that message did not benefit them because they did not go along with those who believed God, listened and obeyed (UST)

The author is talking about a second group of people **who heard the message** but who did not believe it. You can state this in positive form. Alternate translation: "But that message benefited only those who believed and obeyed it" (See: Double Negatives)

Translation Words - ULT

- having good news proclaimed {to us
- did...benefit
- with faith

Translation Words - UST

- we have heard the good news about
- did...benefit them
- believed God

Hebrews 4:3

Hebrews 4:3

This quotation is from a psalm.

we...enter...who have believed...into rest (ULT)
Oh yes, we do enter...Oh yes, we do enter...that rest, as do those who have believed...of (UST)

The peace and security provided by God are spoken of as if they were **rest** that he can give, and as if they were a place to which people could go. Alternate translation: "we who have believed will enter the place of rest" or "we who have believed will experience God's blessings of rest" (See: Metaphor)

just as he said (ULT)
But those who do not believe do not enter, as he has said...land where...would let them (UST)

Alternate translation: "just as God said"

As I swore in my wrath (ULT)
Because I was angry with the people...Israel, I solemnly declared (UST)

Alternate translation: "As I swore when I was very angry"

They will never enter into my rest (ULT)
They will not enter the...I...rest (UST)

The peace and security provided by God are spoken of as if they were **rest** that he can give, and as if they were a place to which people could go. Alternate translation: "They will never enter the place of rest" or "They will never experience my blessings of rest" (See: Metaphor)

his} works...were finished (ULT)
his plans for a place of resting...the...had been finished (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "he finished creating" or "he finished his works of creation" (See: Active or Passive)

from the foundation of the world (ULT)
from...time he created the world (UST)

The author speaks of the **world** as if it were a building set on a **foundation**. Alternate translation: "at the beginning of the world" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- who have believed

ULT

3 For we who have believed enter into rest, just as he said, "As I swore in my wrath, They will never enter into my rest." Even so, {his} works were finished from the foundation of the world.

UST

3 Oh yes, we do enter that rest, as do those who have believed. But those who do not believe do not enter, as he has said, "Because I was angry with the people of Israel, I solemnly declared, 'They will not enter the land where I would let them rest.'" God said this even though his plans for a place of resting had been finished from the time he created the world.

- rest
- rest
- the world
- just as
- As
- I swore
- wrath
- works
- the foundation of the world
- the foundation of

Translation Words - UST

- that rest…of
- rest
- have believed
- his plans for a place of resting
- he created the world
- he created
- the world
- But those who do not believe do not enter…land where…would let them
- Because
- was angry
- I solemnly declared

Hebrews 4:4

the seventh {day (ULT)
the seventh day (UST)

The word **seventh** is the ordinal number for "seven." (See: Ordinal Numbers)

This quotation is from Moses' writings.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- rested
- day
- works

Translation Words - UST

- day
- God
- Then…rested
- work of creating

ULT

4 For he has somewhere spoken thus about the seventh {day}: "And God rested on the seventh day from all his works."

UST

4 What the scriptures say about the seventh day shows that this is true. God spent six days creating the world and then rested. "Then, on the seventh day, God rested from his work of creating everything."

Hebrews 4:5

They will never enter into my rest (ULT)
They will not enter the land where I would let them rest (UST)

This quotation is from the same psalm as the quotation in verse 3.

They will never enter into my rest (ULT)
They will not enter the land where I would let them rest (UST)

The peace and security provided by God are spoken of as if they were **rest** that he can give, and as if they were a place to which people could go. Alternate translation: "God still allows some people to enter his place of rest" or "God still allows some people to experience his blessings of rest" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

   • rest

Translation Words - UST

   • land where…would let them rest

Hebrews 4:6

it remains for some to enter into it (ULT) some people still enter God's rest (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God still allows some people to enter his place of rest" or "God still allows some people to experience his blessings of rest" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- who...had the good news proclaimed to them
- their} disobedience

Translation Words - UST

- God promise that they would rest
- they refused to believe God

ULT

6 Therefore, because it remains for some to enter into it, and those who previously had the good news proclaimed to them did not go in, because of {their} disobedience.

UST

6 So then, it is clear that some people still enter God's rest. But the Israelites who first heard God promise that they would rest—they did not enter that place of resting, because they refused to believe God.

Hebrews 4:7

General Information:

Here we find out that this quotation from the Psalms was written by David (Hebrews 3:7-8).

if you hear his voice (ULT)
the Israelites rebelled against God…the desert, he…you understand what God is saying to (UST)

God's commands to Israel are spoken of as if he had given them in an audible **voice**. See how you translated this in Hebrews 3:7. Alternate translation: "if you hear God speaking" (See: Metaphor)

your hearts (ULT)
you…do…stubbornly disobey him (UST)

Here, **hearts** is a metonym for a person's mind. See how you translated this in Hebrews 3:8. (See: Metonymy)

do not harden your hearts (ULT)
you, do not stubbornly disobey him (UST)

The phrase **harden your hearts** is a metaphor for being stubborn. See how you translated this in Hebrews 3:8. Alternate translation: "do not be stubborn" or "do not refuse to listen" (See: Metaphor)

ULT

7 He has again set a certain day calling it "Today," speaking through David after so much time, just as it had been said, "Today if you hear his voice, do not harden your hearts."

UST

7 But God set another time when we may enter that place of resting. That time is now! We know that is true because much later than when the Israelites rebelled against God in the desert, he caused King David to write what I have already quoted, "Right now, when you understand what God is saying to you, do not stubbornly disobey him."

Translation Words - ULT

- He has…set
- a…day
- David
- time
- just as
- voice
- do…harden
- hearts

Translation Words - UST

- set…in
- time when we may enter that place of resting
- time
- We know that is true because
- King David
- what God is saying to
- do…stubbornly disobey him
- do…stubbornly disobey him

Hebrews 4:8

if...Joshua had given them rest (ULT) If...Joshua had led the Israelites to enter the only place of resting God would give them (UST)

The peace and security provided by God are spoken of as if they were **rest** that **Joshua** could give. Alternate translation: "if Joshua had brought the Israelites to the place where God would give them rest" or "if the Israelites during the time of Joshua had experienced God's blessings of rest" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- Joshua
- had given...rest
- day

Translation Words - UST

- Joshua
- had led the Israelites to enter the only place of resting God would give
- day of rest. But he did give them another promise of rest

ULT

8 For if Joshua had given them rest, he would not have spoken about another day after this.

UST

8 If Joshua had led the Israelites to enter the only place of resting God would give them, then much later God would not have spoken again about another day of rest. But he did give them another promise of rest.

Hebrews 4:9

there remains a Sabbath rest for the people of God (ULT)
there remains a time when God's people will rest eternally (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "there is still a Sabbath rest that God has reserved for his people" (See: Active or Passive)

a Sabbath rest (ULT)
a time when...will rest eternally (UST)

Eternal peace and security are spoken of as if they were the **Sabbath** day, the Jewish day of worship and **rest** from working. Alternate translation: "an eternal rest" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- a Sabbath rest
- for...people
- for...people of God
- of God

Translation Words - UST

- a time when...will rest eternally
- God's...people
- God's
- people

> **ULT**
>
> **9** Therefore there remains a Sabbath rest for the people of God.
>
> **UST**
>
> **9** So, just as God rested on the seventh day after he finished creating everything, there remains a time when God's people will rest eternally.

Hebrews 4:10

the one...who has entered into his rest (ULT) Whoever...enters God's place of resting (UST)

The peace and security provided by God are spoken of as if they are a place to enter. Alternate translation: "the person who enters into God's place of rest" or "the person who experiences God's blessings of rest" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- rest
- has...rested
- works
- just as...did
- God

Translation Words - UST

- place of resting
- has...ceased
- work
- just as
- God

Hebrews 4:11

let us be eager...to enter into that rest (ULT)
we eagerly...enter into that rest of God (UST)

The peace and security provided by God are spoken of as if they were a place **to enter**. Alternate translation: "we should also do everything we can to rest with God where he is" (See: Metaphor)

one might fall into the same kind of disobedience (ULT)
there be...one among us who fails to believe as the others failed to believe (UST)

Here, **disobedience** is spoken of as if it were a hole that a person could physically **fall into** by accident. (See: Metaphor)

into the same...might fall...kind of disobedience (ULT)
among...as...who fails to believe...the others failed to believe (UST)

You can reword this passage to express the abstract noun **disobedience** with the verb "disobey." Alternate translation: "will disobey in the same way as they did" (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- rest
- of disobedience

Translation Words - UST

- rest of God
- who fails to believe

Hebrews 4:12

is living…the Word of God (ULT)
are alive…God's words (UST)

Here, **the Word of God** refers to anything that God has communicated to humanity, whether through speech or through written messages. Alternate translation: "the words of God are living"

is living…and active (ULT)
are alive…and powerful (UST)

This speaks about God's word as if it were alive. It means when God speaks, it is powerful and effective. (See: Personification)

sharper than any two-edged sword (ULT)
they are able to cut sharper than any two-edged sword (UST)

A **two-edged sword** can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts. (See: Metaphor)

two-edged sword (ULT)
two-edged sword (UST)

a **sword** with a blade that is sharp on both edges

and piercing to the dividing of soul and spirit, of both joints and marrow (ULT)

This continues speaking about God's word as if it were a sword. Here the sword is so sharp that it can cut through and divide parts of the human that are very difficult or even impossible to divide. This means that there is nothing inside us that we can hide from God. (See: Metaphor)

and…of soul…spirit (ULT)
and…our soul…our spirit (UST)

The **soul** and the **spirit** are two different but closely related nonphysical parts of a human. The **soul** is what causes a person to be alive. The **spirit** is the part of a person that causes him to be able to know and believe in God.

and…of both joints…marrow (ULT)
and…God's words cut deeply, down through the joints into the marrow within the bones (UST)

The **joints** are what hold bones together. The **marrow** is the center part of the bone.

ULT

12 For the Word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword, and piercing to the dividing of soul and spirit, of both joints and marrow, and able to judge the thoughts and intentions of the heart.

UST

12 God's words are alive and powerful, and they are able to cut sharper than any two-edged sword—cutting so deep that it can separate out the difference between our soul and our spirit. God's words cut deeply, down through the joints into the marrow within the bones. God's words are like a judge, deciding what thoughts are good or what thoughts are bad, and his words show the motives hidden deep within each of our hearts.

able to judge (ULT)
a judge, deciding (UST)

This speaks about God's word as if it were a person who could decide whether a person's thoughts were right or wrong. Alternate translation: "exposes" (See: Personification)

the thoughts and intentions of the heart (ULT)
what thoughts are good or what thoughts are bad...his words show the motives hidden deep within each of our hearts (UST)

Here, **heart** here is a metonym for "inner self." Alternate translation: "what a person is thinking and intends to do" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- Word of God
- is living
- sword
- of soul
- spirit
- able to judge
- of the heart

Translation Words - UST

- God's...words
- are alive
- sword
- our soul
- our spirit
- a judge, deciding
- hearts

Hebrews 4:13

nothing created is hidden before God (ULT)
Nothing is hidden from him...him (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "nothing that God has created can hide from him" (See: Active or Passive)

everything...is} bare and laid open (ULT)
Everything...we do...God knows everything about everyone...is completely open to...and (UST)

This speaks about all things as if they were a person standing **bare**, or a container that is **open**. Alternate translation: "everything is completely exposed" (See: Metaphor)

is} bare and laid open (ULT)
God knows everything about everyone...is completely open to...and (UST)

The two words **bare** and **open** mean basically the same thing and emphasize that nothing is hidden from God. (See: Doublet)

to the eyes of him to whom we {must give} account (ULT)
he sees everything...We must all appear before God...we must tell him how we have lived our lives (UST)

God is spoken of as if he had **eyes**. Alternate translation: "to God, who will judge how we have lived" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- created

Translation Words - UST

- Nothing is

ULT

13 And nothing created is hidden before God. Instead, everything {is} bare and laid open to the eyes of him to whom we {must give} account.

UST

13 God knows everything about everyone. Nothing is hidden from him. Everything is completely open to him and he sees everything we do. We must all appear before God and we must tell him how we have lived our lives.

Hebrews 4:14

who has passed through the heavens (ULT)
who ascended through the heavens (UST)

Alternate translation: "who has entered where God is"

the Son of God (ULT)
God's Son (UST)

Son of God is an important title for Jesus. (See: Translating Son and Father)

let us firmly hold to {our} profession (ULT)
So let us courageously say openly that we trust Jesus the Messiah (UST)

> **ULT**
>
> **14** Therefore, having a great high priest who has passed through the heavens, Jesus the Son of God, let us firmly hold to {our} profession.
>
> **UST**
>
> **14** So we have a great high priest who ascended through the heavens. He is Jesus, God's Son. So let us courageously say openly that we trust Jesus the Messiah.

Belief and trust are spoken of as if they were objects that a person could grasp **firmly**. Alternate translation: "let us continue to believe confidently in him" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- a...high priest
- heavens
- Jesus
- Son of God
- to...profession

Translation Words - UST

- high priest
- heavens
- He is Jesus
- God's...Son
- that we trust Jesus...Messiah

Hebrews 4:15

not…we do…have a high priest who is not able to sympathize with our weaknesses, but being tempted (ULT)
high priest…indeed…Our…high priest…can… indeed…have mercy on us and encourage us, we who tend to sin easily, because Satan also tempted him to sin…but (UST)

This double negative **not … not** means that, in fact, Jesus does feel sympathy with people. Alternate translation: "we have a high priest who can feel sympathy when we are weak, and who was tempted" (See: Double Negatives)

being tempted…in all ways according to {our} likeness (ULT)
because Satan also tempted him to sin…in every way that he tempts us to sin (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "who has endured temptation in every way that we have" or "whom the devil has tempted in every way that he tempts us, yet" (See: Active or Passive)

without sin (ULT)
he did not sin (UST)

Alternate translation: "but he did not sin"

Translation Words - ULT

- a high priest
- being tempted
- sin

Translation Words - UST

- high priest…indeed
- because Satan also tempted him to sin
- he did…sin

> ### ULT
>
> **15** For we do not have a high priest who is not able to sympathize with our weaknesses, but being tempted in all ways according to {our} likeness without sin.
>
> ### UST
>
> **15** Our high priest can indeed have mercy on us and encourage us, we who tend to sin easily, because Satan also tempted him to sin in every way that he tempts us to sin—but he did not sin.

Hebrews 4:16

to the throne (ULT)
to…Messiah, who rules from heaven (UST)

Here, **the throne** refers to God ruling as king. Alternate translation: "to where our gracious God is sitting on his throne" (See: Metonymy)

we may receive mercy and find grace for timely help (ULT)
and…he might kindly help us and have mercy on us when we need him to do so (UST)

Here, **mercy** and **grace** are spoken of as if they were objects that can be given or can be found. Alternate translation: "God may be merciful and gracious and help us in time of need" (See: Metaphor)

ULT

16 Let us then approach with confidence to the throne of grace, so that we may receive mercy and find grace for timely help.
4:2 [1]

UST

16 So let us come boldly to the Messiah, who rules from heaven and does for us what we do not deserve, so that he might kindly help us and have mercy on us when we need him to do so.

Translation Words - ULT

- confidence
- to…throne
- of grace
- grace
- we may receive
- mercy
- timely

Translation Words - UST

- boldly
- Messiah…rules from heaven
- does for us what we do not deserve
- he might kindly
- and have mercy on us
- and have mercy on us
- when

Hebrews 5

Hebrews 5 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter is a continuation of the teaching of the previous chapter.

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 5:5-6.

Special concepts in this chapter

High priest

Only a high priest could offer sacrifices so that God could forgive sins, so Jesus had to be a high priest. The law of Moses commanded that the high priest be from the tribe of Levi, but Jesus was from the tribe of Judah. God made him a priest like the priest Melchizedek, who lived at the time of Abraham, before there was a tribe of Levi.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Milk and solid food

The writer speaks of Christians who are only able to understand simple things about Jesus as if they were babies, who drink only milk and cannot eat solid food. (See: Metaphor)

Hebrews 5:1

Connecting Statement:

The writer describes the sinfulness of the Old Testament priests, then he shows that Christ has a better kind of priesthood, not based on Aaron's priesthood but on the priesthood of Melchizedek.

having been chosen from among men (ULT)
God chooses…from the people (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "whom God chooses from among the people" (See: Active or Passive)

is appointed (ULT)
he selects (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God appoints" (See: Active or Passive)

men on the behalf of…is appointed (ULT)
he selects…the people…for (UST)

Alternate translation: "is appointed to represent the people"

Translation Words - ULT

- high priest
- is appointed
- God
- gifts
- sacrifices
- sins

Translation Words - UST

- high priest
- he selects
- God
- people…gifts
- sacrifice animals to him
- the people's sins

ULT

1 For every high priest having been chosen from among men on the behalf of men is appointed in the things concerning God, so that he may offer gifts and sacrifices for sins;

UST

1 In the case of every high priest God chooses, he selects a man from the people. This man must serve God for the people; he must give God gifts and sacrifice animals to him for the people's sins.

Hebrews 5:2

who are being deceived (ULT)
with those who sin against him (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "whom others have deceived" or "who believe what is false" (See: Active or Passive)

who are being deceived (ULT)
with those who sin against him (UST)

Alternate translation: "who believe false things and so behave badly"

is subject to weakness (ULT)
is weak with sin (UST)

The high priest's own **weakness** is spoken of as if it were another person who rules over him. Alternate translation: "is spiritually weak" or "is controlled by his weakness" (See: Metaphor)

weakness (ULT)
is weak with sin (UST)

the desire to sin

ULT

2 being able to deal gently with those who are ignorant and who are being deceived, because he also is subject to weakness.

UST

2 A high priest can be gentle with those who know little about God and with those who sin against him. This is because the high priest himself is weak with sin.

Translation Words - ULT

- who are ignorant
- who are being deceived

Translation Words - UST

- know little about God
- with those who sin against him

Hebrews 5:3

he is obligated (ULT)
must (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God also requires him" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- just as
- people
- sins

Translation Words - UST

- because
- he sins
- people do

Hebrews 5:4

takes {this} honor (ULT)
no one can...honor...himself...deciding to
become...the...high priest (UST)

Here, **honor** is spoken of as if it were an object that a person could grasp in his hands. (See: Metaphor)

takes {this} honor (ULT)
no one can...honor...himself...deciding to
become...the...high priest (UST)

The **honor** or praise and respect that people gave to the high priest stand for his task. (See: Metonymy)

> **ULT**
>
> **4** And no one takes {this} honor for himself, but {only} when called by God, just as also Aaron {was}.
>
> **UST**
>
> **4** But no one can honor himself by deciding to become the high priest. Instead, God chose each man to become a high priest, as he chose Aaron to be the first high priest.

when called by God, just as also Aaron {was (ULT)
by...God chose each man to become a high priest, as he chose Aaron to be the first high priest (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God called him, just as he called Aaron" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- this} honor
- when called
- God
- Aaron {was

Translation Words - UST

- honor
- God
- chose each man to become a high priest
- Aaron to be...first high priest

Hebrews 5:5

You are my Son; today I have become your Father (ULT)
appointed him...You are my son! Today I have declared that I am your father (UST)

This quotation is from the Psalms in the Old Testament.

Christ...speaking to him {said (ULT)
the...by saying to him what the psalmist wrote in the scriptures (UST)

Alternate translation: "God said to him"

You are my Son; today I have become your Father (ULT)
appointed him...You are my son! Today I have declared that I am your father (UST)

These two clauses mean essentially the same thing. See how you translated this in Hebrews 1:5. (See: Parallelism)

Son (ULT)
son (UST)

Son is important title that describe the relationship between Jesus and God the Father. (See: Translating Son and Father)

Translation Words - ULT

- Christ
- did...honor
- high priest
- Son

Translation Words - UST

- Messiah
- honor
- high priest
- son

ULT

5 In the same way also, Christ did not honor himself to become high priest. Instead, the one speaking to him {said}, "You are my Son; today I have become your Father."

UST

5 Similarly, the Messiah also did not honor himself by becoming high priest. Instead, God the Father appointed him by saying to him what the psalmist wrote in the scriptures: "You are my son! Today I have declared that I am your father!"

Hebrews 5:6

General Information:

This prophecy is from a Psalm of David.

also...he...says (ULT)
also...he...said to the Messiah when the psalmist wrote...scripture passage (UST)

You can state clearly to whom God is speaking. Alternate translation: "he also says to Christ" (See: Ellipsis)

in another {place (ULT)
in another (UST)

Alternate translation: "in another place in the scriptures"

after the order of Melchizedek (ULT)
in the way that Melchizedek was a priest (UST)

Here, **the order of Melchizedek** rules and practices that **Melchizedek** followed and the authority he had as a priest of God. Alternate translation: "in the same way that Melchizedek was a priest"

> **ULT**
>
> **6** {It is} just as he also says in another {place}, "You {are} a priest forever after the order of Melchizedek."
>
> **UST**
>
> **6** It is just as he also said to the Messiah when the psalmist wrote in another scripture passage: "You are a priest eternally in the way that Melchizedek was a priest."

Translation Words - ULT

- It is} just as
- a priest
- forever
- of Melchizedek

Translation Words - UST

- It is just as
- are a priest
- eternally
- Melchizedek was a priest

Hebrews 5:7

during the days of his flesh (ULT)
In…the days when the Messiah was living here in the world, he (UST)

Here, **the days** stands for a period of time, and **flesh** stands for Jesus' earthly life. Alternate translation: "while he lived on earth" (See: Metonymy)

prayers…and requests (ULT)
prayed to God…and…He asked God (UST)

Both **prayers** and **requests** mean basically the same thing. (See: Doublet)

the one who is able to save him from death (ULT)
him…who could save him from dying (UST)

This could mean: (1) God was **able to save** Christ so that he would not die. Alternate translation: "to save him from dying" (2) God was **able to save** Christ after Christ's death by making him alive again. If possible, translate this in a way that allows both interpretations.

was heard (ULT)
God listened to him (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God heard him" (See: Active or Passive)

> ### ULT
>
> **7** He, during the days of his flesh, offered up both prayers and requests with loud cries and tears to the one who is able to save him from death and was heard because of {his} godly life.
>
> ### UST
>
> **7** In the days when the Messiah was living here in the world, he prayed to God and cried out loudly to him in tears. He asked God, who could save him from dying. He prayed and God listened to him, because the Messiah honored him and obeyed him.

Translation Words - ULT

- days
- of…flesh
- prayers
- to save
- death

Translation Words - UST

- days when
- Messiah was living here in the world
- prayed to God
- save
- dying

Hebrews 5:8

a son (ULT)
God's own son (UST)

Here, **son** is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

Translation Words - ULT

- a son
- obedience
- he suffered

Translation Words - UST

- God's own son
- to obey God
- he suffered

ULT

8 Even though being a son, he learned obedience from what he suffered.

UST

8 Although the Messiah is God's own son, he learned to obey God by what he suffered

Hebrews 5:9

Connecting Statement:

In verse 11 the writer begins his third warning. He warns these believers that they are still not mature and encourages them to learn God's word so they can understand right from wrong.

having been made perfect (ULT)
By accomplishing (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God made him perfect" (See: Active or Passive)

Here, **made perfect** means being made mature, able to honor God in all aspects of life.

he became, for all those who obey him, the source of eternal salvation (ULT)
everything that God wanted him to do, he has now become fully able to save eternally all who obey him (UST)

You can state the abstract noun **salvation** as a verb. Alternate translation: "now he saves all who obey him and causes them to live forever" (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- having been made perfect
- who obey
- eternal
- of...salvation

Translation Words - UST

- By accomplishing
- to save
- eternally
- obey

ULT

9 And having been made perfect, he became, for all those who obey him, the source of eternal salvation,

UST

9 By accomplishing everything that God wanted him to do, he has now become fully able to save eternally all who obey him.

Hebrews 5:10

having been designated by God (ULT)
God has designated him (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God designated him" or "God appointed him" (See: Active or Passive)

according to the order of Melchizedek (ULT)
in the way that Melchizedek was a high priest (UST)

ULT

10 having been designated by God {as} high priest according to the order of Melchizedek.

UST

10 God has designated him to be our high priest in the way that Melchizedek was a high priest.

Here, **the order of Melchizedek** means that Christ as a priest has things in common with Melchizedek as a priest. Alternate translation: "to be the sort of high priest that Melchizedek was"

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- as} high priest
- of Melchizedek

Translation Words - UST

- God has designated him
- to be our high priest
- Melchizedek was a high priest

Hebrews 5:11

the message to us (ULT)
I want to tell you...the (UST)

Here, the plural pronoun **us** includes both the author and the people to whom he is writing. (See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We')

you have become dull in hearing (ULT)
the...you find it so difficult to understand (UST)

The ability to understand and obey is spoken of as if it were the ability to listen. And the ability to listen is spoken of as if it were a metal tool that becomes **dull** with use. Alternate translation: "you have trouble understanding it" (See: Metaphor)

ULT

11 Concerning him the message to us {is} great, but hard to say since you have become dull in hearing.

UST

11 I want to tell you much about the many ways in which the Messiah resembles Melchizedek. This is hard for me to explain to you because you find it so difficult to understand.

Hebrews 5:12

of the basic principles (ULT)
elementary truths...the...the...starting from...
beginning (UST)

Here, **principles** means a guideline or standard for making decisions. Alternate translation: "of the basic truths"

you have come to have need of milk (ULT)
You need those basic truths like...babies
need...milk (UST)

Teaching about God that is easy to understand is spoken of as if it were **milk**, the only food that infants can take. Alternate translation: "you have become like babies and can drink only milk" (See: Metaphor)

of milk, not solid food (ULT)
like...milk. You are not ready to learn more
difficult things, things that are like...solid food
that mature people need (UST)

ULT

12 For even though by this time you ought to be teachers, you again have need of one to teach you some of the basic principles of the oracles of God, and you have come to have need of milk, not solid food!

UST

12 You became the Messiahians long ago. So by now you should be teaching God's truths to others. But you still need someone to teach you again the elementary truths of the words of God from the scriptures, starting from the beginning. You need those basic truths like babies need milk. You are not ready to learn more difficult things, things that are like the solid food that mature people need.

Teaching about God that is difficult to understand is spoken of as if it were **solid food**, suitable for adults. Alternate translation: "of milk instead of solid food that adults can eat" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- time
- teachers
- to teach
- of God

Translation Words - UST

- now
- teaching God's truths to others
- to teach
- God

Hebrews 5:13

who takes...milk (ULT)
still learning these basic truths...need milk (UST)

Here, **takes** stands for "drinks." Alternate translation: "who drinks milk" (See: Metonymy)

because he is a little child (ULT)
For they are just like babies who (UST)

Spiritual maturity is compared with the kind of food that a growing **child** eats. Solid food is not for a tiny baby, and that is a figure describing a young Christian who only learns simple truths; but later, more solid food is given to the little child, just as when a person matures he can learn about matters that are more difficult. (See: Metaphor)

> **ULT**
>
> **13** For anyone who takes milk {is} inexperienced with the message of righteousness, because he is a little child.
>
> **UST**
>
> **13** Remember that those who are still learning these basic truths do not understand what God says about becoming righteous. For they are just like babies who need milk!

Translation Words - ULT

- of righteousness
- a little child

Translation Words - UST

- becoming righteous
- just like babies who

Hebrews 5:14

who by practice have trained {their} senses for distinguishing both of good and of evil (ULT)
the more difficult spiritual truth...is for people who are adults. They can tell the difference between what is good and what is evil, because they have trained themselves by learning what is right and what is wrong (UST)

People trained to understand something are spoken of as if their ability to understand had been **trained**. Alternate translation: "who are mature and can distinguish between good and evil" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- for the mature
- distinguishing
- of good
- of evil

Translation Words - UST

- for people who know God better
- learning
- what is right
- what is wrong

Hebrews 6

Hebrews 6 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Abrahamic Covenant

In the covenant that God made with Abraham, God promised to make Abraham's descendants into a great nation. He also promised to protect Abraham's descendants and to give them land of their own. (See: covenant)

Hebrews 6:1

Connecting Statement:

The writer continues with what immature Hebrew believers need to do to become mature Christians. He reminds them of the foundational teachings.

having left the beginning of the message of Christ, let us go forward to maturity (ULT)

This speaks about the basic teachings as if they were the beginning of a journey and the mature teachings as if they were the end of a journey. Alternate translation: "let us stop only discussing what we first learned and start understanding more mature teachings as well" (See: Metaphor)

not laying again the foundation (ULT)

Basic teachings are spoken of as if they were a building whose construction begins by laying a **foundation**. Alternate translation: "let us not repeat the basic teachings" (See: Metaphor)

dead works (ULT)

Sinful deeds are spoken of as if they belonged to the world of the **dead**. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- of Christ
- maturity
- the foundation
- of repentance
- dead
- works
- of faith
- God

Translation Words - UST

- Christ, Messiah
- faith
- God
- repent, repentance
- work, works, deeds
- die, dead, deadly, death
- found, founder, foundation
- perfect, complete

ULT

1 So then, having left the beginning of the message of Christ, let us go forward to maturity, not laying again the foundation of repentance from dead works and of faith in God,

UST

1-3 So, we must not keep discussing what we first learned about the Messiah, things that all believers must learn at first. Some of these things are how to stop doing sinful deeds, those that lead to death, and how to start trusting in God. There are also important things we teach: various kinds of baptism, why we often pray while putting our hands on each other; and also about how God will raise us all from the dead and judge everyone in a way that will last forever. Indeed, we will discuss these things again later, if God gives us the chance to do it. But now we must discuss things that are harder to understand; these are things that will help us to trust in the Messiah in all times, no matter what happens.

Hebrews 6:2

teaching about baptisms, and laying on of hands, and resurrection of the dead, and eternal judgment (ULT)

The writer continues from the previous verse speaking about basic teachings as if they were a building whose construction begins by laying a foundation. Alternate translation: "nor the basic teaching about baptisms, and laying on of hands, and resurrection of the dead, and eternal judgment" (See: Metaphor)

laying on...of hands (ULT)

The practice of **laying on of hands** was done to set someone apart for special service or position.

Translation Words - ULT

- teaching
- of hands
- resurrection
- of the dead
- eternal
- judgment

Translation Words - UST

- eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever
- judge, judgment
- resurrection
- die, dead, deadly, death
- hand
- teach, teaching, untaught

Hebrews 6:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• God

Translation Words - UST

• God

ULT

3 And this we will do if God permits.

UST

1-3 So, we must not keep discussing what we first learned about the Messiah, things that all believers must learn at first. Some of these things are how to stop doing sinful deeds, those that lead to death, and how to start trusting in God. There are also important things we teach: various kinds of baptism, why we often pray while putting our hands on each other; and also about how God will raise us all from the dead and judge everyone in a way that will last forever. Indeed, we will discuss these things again later, if God gives us the chance to do it. But now we must discuss things that are harder to understand; these are things that will help us to trust in the Messiah in all times, no matter what happens.

Hebrews 6:4

for those who were once enlightened (ULT)
they once had God's light (UST)

Understanding is spoken of as if it were illumination. Alternate translation: "those who once understood the message about Christ" (See: Metaphor)

having tasted...the heavenly gift (ULT)
and had experienced...the...good things given by God (UST)

Experiencing salvation is spoken of as if it were tasting food. Alternate translation: "who experienced God's saving power" (See: Metaphor)

having become sharers of the Holy Spirit (ULT)
shared in the Holy Spirit (UST)

The **Holy Spirit**, who comes to believers, is spoken of as if he were an object that people could share. Alternate translation: "who received the Holy Spirit" (See: Metaphor)

ULT

4 For {it is} impossible for those who were once enlightened and having tasted the heavenly gift, and having become sharers of the Holy Spirit,

UST

4 For it is impossible to persuade some people to turn away from their sinful behavior For although they once had God's light and had experienced the good things given by God and shared in the Holy Spirit,

Translation Words - ULT

- heavenly
- gift
- of the Holy Spirit

Translation Words - UST

- good things given
- by God
- the Holy Spirit

Hebrews 6:5

who have tasted the good word of God (ULT) They experienced for themselves the goodness of God's word (UST)

Learning God's message is spoken of as if it were tasting food. Alternate translation: "who learned God's good message" (See: Metaphor)

the powers...of the age to come (ULT) the spiritual powers of...age to come (UST)

> **ULT**
>
> **5** and who have tasted the good word of God and the powers of the age to come,
>
> **UST**
>
> **5** They experienced for themselves the goodness of God's word and the spiritual powers of the age to come.

This means the power of God when his kingdom is fully present in all the world. In this sense, **the powers** refer to God himself, who holds all power. Alternate translation: "learned how God will work powerfully in the future" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- good
- the...word of God
- the powers
- of the age

Translation Words - UST

- the goodness of
- God's word
- the spiritual powers of
- age

Hebrews 6:6

to restore them again to repentance (ULT)
no one will be able to persuade them to stop sinning and to trust in him again (UST)

Alternate translation: "it is impossible to bring them back to repent again"

while crucifying the Son of God for themselves (ULT)
That is because it is as though these people have nailed the Son of God to his cross again (UST)

When people turn away from God, it is as though they crucify Jesus again. Alternate translation: "it is like they crucify for themselves the very Son of God again" (See: Metaphor)

the Son of God (ULT)
the Son of God (UST)

Son of God is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

Translation Words - ULT

- repentance
- while crucifying
- Son of God

Translation Words - UST

- stop sinning and to trust in him
- That is because it is as though...have nailed...to his cross again
- Son of God

> **ULT**
>
> **6** but having fallen away—to restore them again to repentance while crucifying the Son of God for themselves and publicly shaming him.
>
> **UST**
>
> **6** But now, if these people reject the Messiah, no one will be able to persuade them to stop sinning and to trust in him again! That is because it is as though these people have nailed the Son of God to his cross again! They are causing people to despise the Messiah in front of others.

Hebrews 6:7

land...that has drunk the...rain (ULT)
land...on which rain has frequently fallen...on which rain has frequently fallen (UST)

Farmland that benefits from much **rain** is spoken of as if it were a person who drinks in the rainwater. Alternate translation: "the land that absorbs the rain" (See: Personification)

produces plants (ULT)
plants grow (UST)

Farmland that **produces** crops is spoken of as if it gives birth to them. Alternate translation: "that produces plants" (See: Personification)

receives a blessing from God (ULT)
God has blessed...the good use of (UST)

Rain and crops are seen as proof that **God** has helped the farmland. The farmland is spoken of as if it were a person who could receive God's **blessing**. (See: Personification)

a blessing from God (ULT)
God has blessed...the (UST)

Here, **blessing** means help from God, not spoken words.

Translation Words - ULT

- a blessing
- God

Translation Words - UST

- God
- has blessed

ULT

7 For land that has drunk the rain that often comes upon it and produces plants useful to those for whom it was also cultivated receives a blessing from God;

UST

7 Think about this: God has blessed land on which rain has frequently fallen and on which plants grow for the good use of the farmers who cultivate the soil.

Hebrews 6:8

close to a curse (ULT)
farmer will curse (UST)

This speaks of **a curse** as if it were a place to which a person could draw near. Alternate translation: "is in danger of God cursing it" (See: Metaphor)

the end of which {is} for burning (ULT)
It has become land that the…whose plants he will burn away (UST)

The farmer will burn all the worthless things in the field.

Translation Words - ULT

- thorns
- a curse

Translation Words - UST

- thorns
- farmer…curse

ULT

8 but bearing thorns and thistles, {it is} worthless and close to a curse, the end of which {is} for burning.

UST

8 But what will happen to people who do not obey God is like what happens to land on which only thorns and thistles grow. Such land is worthless. It has become land that the farmer will curse and whose plants he will burn away.

Hebrews 6:9

we are convinced (ULT)
You can see...I am certain (UST)

Even though the author uses the plural pronoun **we**, he is most likely referring only to himself. Alternate translation: "I am convinced" or "I am certain" (See: Pronouns)

of things better (ULT)
At the same time...you are doing better than that (UST)

Here, **better things** means they are doing better than those who have rejected God, disobeyed him, and now can no longer repent so that God will forgive them (Hebrews 6:4-6). Alternate translation: "that you are doing better things than what I have mentioned"

accompanying salvation (ULT)
You are doing the things that show...that God is saving you (UST)

You can state the abstract noun **salvation** as a verb. Alternate translation: "things that concern God saving you" (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- beloved ones
- we are convinced
- salvation

Translation Words - UST

- You can see...I am certain
- dear friends, not to reject the Messiah
- that God is saving you

ULT

9 But concerning you, beloved ones, we are convinced of things better and accompanying salvation, even if we speak thus.

UST

9 You can see that I am warning you, dear friends, not to reject the Messiah. At the same time, I am certain that you are doing better than that. You are doing the things that show that God is saving you, even though we speak like this.

Hebrews 6:10

For God {is} not unjust, to forget (ULT)
Since God always acts justly, he will not overlook (UST)

This double negative **not unjust** can mean that God in his justice will remember what good things his people have done. Alternate translation: "For God is just and therefore will certainly remember" (See: Double Negatives)

for his name (ULT)
for him (UST)

God's **name** is a metonym that stands for God himself. Alternate translation: "for him" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- is...unjust
- work
- love
- name
- having served
- serving them
- saints

Translation Words - UST

- Since God always acts justly, he will not overlook
- Since God always acts justly, he will not overlook
- all you have done
- him
- how you have loved
- helped
- how you are still helping them
- your fellow believers

Hebrews 6:11

we long for (ULT)
We greatly desire (UST)

Even though the author uses the plural pronoun **we**, he is most likely referring only to himself. Alternate translation: "I greatly desire" (See: Pronouns)

diligence (ULT)
continue (UST)

careful, hard work

to the end (ULT)
very end of...lives (UST)

> **ULT**
>
> **11** And we long for each of you to show the same diligence toward the assurance of {your} hope to the end
>
> **UST**
>
> **11** We greatly desire that each of you continue to show the same effort you are showing now, so that to the very end of your lives, you will be sure you will receive all that God promised to give you.

You can state explicitly the implicit meaning of **the end**. Alternate translation: "to the end of your lives" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the...toward...assurance of {your} hope (ULT)
the...so that to...you will be sure you will receive all that God promised to give you (UST)

Alternate translation: "in order to have complete certainty that you will receive what God has promised you"

Translation Words - ULT

- of...hope

Translation Words - UST

- you will receive all that God promised to give you

Hebrews 6:12

imitators (ULT)
to do what other believers have done (UST)

An "imitator" is someone who copies the behavior of someone else.

who...inherit the promises (ULT)
are receiving what God promised them (UST)

Receiving what God has promised believers is spoken of as if it were inheriting property and wealth from a family member. Alternate translation: "who ... receive what God promised them" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- imitators
- faith
- patience
- who...inherit
- promises

Translation Words - UST

- to do what other believers have done
- are receiving
- what God promised them
- they trusted in him
- were patient

ULT

12 so that you might not become lazy, but imitators of those who by faith and patience inherit the promises.

UST

12 I do not want you to be lazy. Instead, I want you to do what other believers have done, those who are receiving what God promised them, because they trusted in him and were patient.

Hebrews 6:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- having made a promise
- to Abraham
- to swear
- swore

Translation Words - UST

- God
- promised to do great things
- Abraham
- whom he could ask to force himself to do those things
- he asked

ULT

13 For God, having made a promise to Abraham, swore by himself, since he had no one greater by {whom} to swear,

UST

13 When God promised to do great things for Abraham, there was no one greater than himself whom he could ask to force himself to do those things. So he asked himself.

Hebrews 6:14

saying (ULT)
Then he said to Abraham (UST)

God said

I will certainly increase you (ULT)
I will certainly greatly increase the number of your descendants (UST)

Here, **increase** stands for giving descendants. Alternate translation: "I will give you many descendants" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- I will...certainly bless
- I will...certainly bless
- I will certainly increase
- I will certainly increase

Translation Words - UST

- I will...bless
- I will...bless
- I will certainly greatly increase the number of...descendants
- I will certainly greatly increase the number of...descendants

ULT

14 saying, "I will most certainly bless you, and I will certainly increase you."

UST

14 Then he said to Abraham, "I will certainly bless you and I will certainly greatly increase the number of your descendants."

Hebrews 6:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• promise

Translation Words - UST

• God did for him what he had promised

ULT

15 And in this way, having patiently waited, he obtained the promise.

UST

15 So after Abraham patiently waited for God to do what he promised, God did for him what he had promised.

Hebrews 6:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- swear
- oath

Translation Words - UST

- promise something
- what they promise

ULT

16 For men swear by someone greater, and the oath {is} for confirmation of the end of each of their disputes.

UST

16 Keep in mind that when people promise something, they ask a more important person to punish them if they do not do what they promise. This is how all such disputes are settled.

Hebrews 6:17

to the heirs of the promise (ULT)
to us who would receive what he had promised (UST)

The people to whom God has made promises are spoken of as if they were to inherit property and wealth from a family member. Alternate translation: "to those who would receive what he promised" (See: Metaphor)

the...the unchangeable quality...of...his... purpose (ULT)
what he had promised that he would not change...what...he...had planned to do (UST)

Alternate translation: "that his purpose would never change" or "that he would always do what he said he would do"

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- to...heirs
- of...promise
- with an oath

Translation Words - UST

- God
- to us who would receive
- what he had promised
- what he promised

ULT

17 When God, wanting even more to show to the heirs of the promise the unchangeable quality of his purpose, he guaranteed it with an oath

UST

17 So when God wanted to demonstrate very clearly to us who would receive what he had promised that he would not change what he had planned to do, he said that he would declare himself guilty if he did not do what he promised.

Hebrews 6:18

who have fled for refuge (ULT)
we have fled to him (UST)

Believers who trust in God for him to protect them are spoken of as if they were running to a safe place. Alternate translation: "we, who have trusted him" (See: Metaphor)

we, who have fled for refuge, might have a strong encouragement to hold firmly to the hope set before us (ULT)
to strongly encourage us...That is why we have fled to him...we might continue confidently to expect to receive what he promised us (UST)

> **ULT**
>
> **18** so that by two unchangeable things —in which {it is} impossible for God to lie—we, who have fled for refuge, might have a strong encouragement to hold firmly to the hope set before us;
>
> **UST**
>
> **18** He did that to strongly encourage us, because he has done two things that cannot change: He promised to help us, and would declare himself guilty if he did not. Now, God cannot lie. That is why we have fled to him in order that we might continue confidently to expect to receive what he promised us.

Trust in God is spoken of as if **encouragement** were an object that could be presented to a person and that person could **hold** on to it. Alternate translation: "we who have fled for refuge will continue to trust in God just has he encouraged us to do" (See: Metaphor)

set before us (ULT)
to receive (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "that God has placed before us" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- strong
- a...encouragement
- to...hope

Translation Words - UST

- strongly
- to...encourage us
- Now, God
- what he promised us

Hebrews 6:19

Connecting Statement:

Having finished his third warning and encouragement to the believers, the writer of Hebrews continues his comparison of Jesus as priest to Melchizedek as priest.

as an anchor...of the soul, both reliable and steadfast (ULT)
It is as if we were a ship...anchor...is holding us firmly in one place. The one we confidently expect to hold us...As well, this is why (UST)

Just as **an anchor** keeps a boat from drifting in the water, Jesus keeps us secure in God's presence. Alternate translation: "that causes us to live securely in God's presence" (See: Metaphor)

an anchor...of the soul, both reliable and steadfast (ULT)
anchor...is holding us firmly in one place. The one we confidently expect to hold us...As well, this is why (UST)

Here the words **reliable** and **steadfast** mean basically the same thing and emphasize the complete reliability of the anchor. Alternate translation: "an anchor for the soul that is completely reliable" (See: Doublet)

which...and entering into the inner place {behind} the curtain (ULT)
Yes, we confidently expect to receive what God has promised to do for us...is Jesus...he is just like the high priests who go behind the curtain into the innermost part of the temple, where God is present (UST)

Here, **which** refers back to our "hope" in the previous verse. This hope is spoken of as if it were a person who could go into the most holy place of the temple. (See: Personification)

the inner place {behind (ULT)
the...the innermost part of...temple (UST)

The **inner place** was the most holy place in the temple. It was thought to be the place where God was most intensely present among his people. In this passage, this place stands for heaven and God's throne room. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- as
- of...soul
- curtain

Translation Words - UST

- It is as if we were a ship

- us
- behind…curtain…the…where God is present

Hebrews 6:20

according to the order of Melchizedek (ULT) in the way that Melchizedek was (UST)

The **order of Melchizedek** means that Christ as a priest has things in common with **Melchizedek** as a priest. Alternate translation: "in the same way that Melchizedek was a priest"

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- a high priest
- forever
- of Melchizedek

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- a high priest
- forever
- Melchizedek was

ULT

20 where Jesus, a forerunner on our behalf, has entered in, having become a high priest forever according to the order of Melchizedek.

UST

20 Jesus went into God's presence ahead of us to allow us to enter in that same place with God, too. Jesus has become a high priest forever, in the way that Melchizedek was a high priest.

Hebrews 7

Hebrews 7 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 7:17, 21, which are words from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

High priest

Only a high priest could offer sacrifices so that God could forgive sins, so Jesus had to be a high priest. The law of Moses commanded that the high priest be from the tribe of Levi, but Jesus was from the tribe of Judah. God made him a priest like the priest Melchizedek, who lived at the time of Abraham, before there was a tribe of Levi.

Hebrews 7:1

Connecting Statement:

The writer of Hebrews continues his comparison of Jesus as priest to Melchizedek as priest.

of Salem (ULT)
city of Salem (UST)

Salem was the name of a city during the time of Abraham. (See: How to Translate Names)

Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings (ULT)
Abraham...his men who were returning home from defeating the armies of the four kings (UST)

This is refers to when **Abraham** and his men went and defeated the armies of four kings in order to rescue his nephew, Lot, and his family. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- Melchizedek
- king
- of...kings
- priest
- of God
- Most High
- Abraham
- returning
- slaughter
- blessed

Translation Words - UST

- Melchizedek
- king of
- four kings
- Melchizedek blessed
- and was also a priest
- of God
- who rules...universe
- Abraham
- his men who were returning home
- defeating...armies

ULT

1 For this Melchizedek, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him,

UST

1 Now I will say more about this man Melchizedek. He was the king of the city of Salem and was also a priest of God, who rules the universe. He met Abraham and his men who were returning home from defeating the armies of the four kings. Melchizedek blessed Abraham.

Hebrews 7:2

to whom (ULT)
Then…gave to him (UST)

Alternate translation: "and it was to Melchizedek"

king of righteousness…king…of peace (ULT)
king who rules righteously…king…peacefully (UST)

Alternate translation: "righteous king … peaceful king"

Translation Words - ULT

- Abraham
- a tenth
- king
- king (2)
- king (3)
- of righteousness
- of peace

Translation Words - UST

- Abraham
- one tenth
- king
- his name…means "the king (2)
- who rules (3)
- who rules righteously
- peacefully

ULT

2 to whom also Abraham gave a tenth of everything, first indeed translated as "king of righteousness," and then also "king of Salem," that is, "king of peace,"

UST

2 Then Abraham gave to him one tenth of all the things he took after winning the battle. Now Melchizedek's name means first, "king who rules righteously," and, since Salem means "peace," his name also means "the king who rules peacefully."

Hebrews 7:3

He is without father, without mother, without ancestors, with neither beginning of days nor end of life

It is possible to think from this passage that Melchizedek was neither born nor did he die. However, it is likely that all the writer means is that the Scriptures provide no information about Melchizedek's ancestry, birth, or death.

Translation Words - ULT

- of days
- of life
- Son of God
- a priest

Translation Words - UST

- nor do the scriptures tell us when he was born or when he died
- nor do the scriptures tell us when he was born or when he died
- a priest
- Son of God

ULT

3 without father, without mother, without genealogy, having neither beginning of days nor end of life, but resembling the Son of God, he remains a priest forever.

UST

3 The scriptures provide us with no record of Melchizedek's father, mother, or ancestors; nor do the scriptures tell us when he was born or when he died. It is as if he continues to be a priest forever. In this way, he is a little like the Son of God.

Hebrews 7:4

Connecting Statement:

The writer states that the priesthood of Melchizedek is better than Aaron's priesthood and then reminds them that the priesthood of Aaron did not make anything perfect.

this one {was (ULT)
this man Melchizedek was from the fact (UST)

Alternate translation: "Melchizedek was"

Translation Words - ULT

- patriarch
- Abraham
- a tenth

Translation Words - UST

- Abraham
- our famous ancestor
- a tenth

ULT

4 But see how great this one {was}, to whom the patriarch Abraham gave a tenth from the plunder.

UST

4 You can realize how great this man Melchizedek was from the fact that Abraham, our famous ancestor, gave him a tenth of the best things he took from the battle with the kings.

Hebrews 7:5

those indeed from the sons of Levi who receive the priesthood (ULT)
the descendants of Abraham's great-grandson Levi...were priests, should take tithes (UST)

The author says this because not all of Levi's **sons** became priests. Alternate translation: "the descendants of Levi who became priests" (See: Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding)

from the people (ULT)
who...God's people (UST)

Alternate translation: "from the people of Israel"

from their brothers (ULT)
those people...fellow descendants (UST)

Here, **brothers** means they are all related to each other through Abraham. Alternate translation: "from their relatives"

they have come from the loins of Abraham (ULT)
from...who were their relatives...were...of Abraham (UST)

The phrase **from the loins of Abraham** is a way of saying that they were descendants of Abraham. Alternate translation: "they, too, are descendants of Abraham" (See: Metaphor)

ULT

5 And those indeed from the sons of Levi who receive the priesthood have a command according to the law to collect tithes from the people, that is, from their brothers, even though they have come from the loins of Abraham.

UST

5 According to the laws God gave Moses, the descendants of Abraham's great-grandson Levi, who were priests, should take tithes from God's people who were their relatives, that is even though those people also were fellow descendants of Abraham.

Translation Words - ULT

- sons
- of Levi
- of Abraham
- who receive
- priesthood
- a command
- law
- to collect tithes
- from...people
- from...brothers
- loins

Translation Words - UST

- laws God gave Moses
- descendants of Abraham's great-grandson
- Abraham
- Levi
- were priests
- should take tithes
- should take tithes

- should take tithes
- God's people
- fellow descendants
- were...of

Hebrews 7:6

Melchizedek...whose descent was not traced from them (ULT)
this man Melchizedek, who...was not among the descendants of Levi (UST)

Alternate translation: "the one who was not a descendant of Levi"

the one having the promises (ULT)
the man to whom God promised many descendants (UST)

The things that God promised to do for Abraham are spoken of as if they were objects that he could possess. Alternate translation: "the one to whom God had spoken his promises" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- received tithes
- from Abraham
- blessed
- promises

Translation Words - UST

- received a tenth of everything from
- Abraham
- He...blessed Abraham
- the man to whom God promised many descendants

ULT

6 But Melchizedek, whose descent was not traced from them, received tithes from Abraham, and blessed the one having the promises.

UST

6 But this man Melchizedek, who was not among the descendants of Levi, received a tenth of everything from Abraham. He also blessed Abraham, the man to whom God promised many descendants.

Hebrews 7:7

the lesser is blessed by the greater (ULT)
the more important people bless the less
important people, just as Melchizedek blessed
Abraham. So we know that Melchizedek was
greater than Abraham (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "the more important person blesses the less important person" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- is blessed

Translation Words - UST

- bless…just as Melchizedek blessed Abraham. So we know that Melchizedek was greater than Abraham

> **ULT**
>
> **7** But without any argument, the lesser is blessed by the greater.
>
> **UST**
>
> **7** Now everyone knows that the more important people bless the less important people, just as Melchizedek blessed Abraham. So we know that Melchizedek was greater than Abraham.

Hebrews 7:8

in this case…in that case (ULT)
In the case of the priests who are descendants of Levi, they are all…in the case of Melchizedek (UST)

These phrases are used to compare the Levite priests with Melchizedek. Your language may have a way to emphasize that the author is making a comparison.

it is testified that he lives on (ULT)
it is as if God testified that Melchizedek keeps on living, since scripture does not speak about him dying (UST)

It is never explicitly written in scripture that Melchizedek dies. The author of Hebrews speaks of this absence of information about Melchizedek's death in scripture as if it were a positive statement that he is still alive. (See: Metaphor)

it is testified that he lives on (ULT)
it is as if God testified that Melchizedek keeps on living, since scripture does not speak about him dying (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "scripture shows that he lives on" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- mortal
- receive
- tithes
- it is testified
- he lives on

Translation Words - UST

- will die one day
- they received tithes
- who received a tenth of everything from Abraham
- it is as if God testified
- Melchizedek keeps on living, since scripture does not speak about him dying

Hebrews 7:9

Levi, the one receiving tithes, also paid tithes through Abraham (ULT)
Levi himself, and all the priests descended from him—those who received tithes from the people—paid tithes to Melchizedek because their ancestor Abraham paid tithes to him. When Abraham paid tithes to Melchizedek... that Melchizedek was greater than Abraham (UST)

Since **Levi** had not been born yet, the author speaks of him as still being in Abraham's body when Abraham met Melchizedek. In this way, the author argues that Levi **paid tithes** to Melchizedek through **Abraham**. (See: Metaphor)

ULT

9 And, so to speak, Levi, the one receiving tithes, also paid tithes through Abraham,

UST

9 And it was as though Levi himself, and all the priests descended from him—those who received tithes from the people—paid tithes to Melchizedek because their ancestor Abraham paid tithes to him. When Abraham paid tithes to Melchizedek it was as though they acknowledged that Melchizedek was greater than Abraham.

Translation Words - ULT

- Levi
- receiving
- tithes
- paid tithes
- Abraham

Translation Words - UST

- Levi himself, and all the priests descended from him...tithes...paid
- received...from the people
- tithes...paid...Abraham...to Melchizedek
- tithes
- to Melchizedek...their ancestor...to him. When Abraham paid tithes

Hebrews 7:10

**still…he was…in the loins of {his} father (ULT)
still…This is true…were…in Abraham's body
(UST)**

Since Levi had not been born yet, the author speaks of him as still
being in Abraham's body. In this way, the author argues that Levi
paid tithes to Melchizedek through Abraham. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- loins
- of…father
- Melchizedek

Translation Words - UST

- Abraham's
- body
- Melchizedek

ULT

10 because he was still in the loins of
{his} father when Melchizedek met
Abraham.

UST

10 This is true because we can say that
Levi and his descendants were still in
Abraham's body when Melchizedek met
Abraham.

Hebrews 7:11

Now

Here, **So** is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

what further need {was there} for another priest to arise according to the order of Melchizedek, and to not be called according to the order of Aaron (ULT)
the...Aaron and...Those priests who came after Aaron would have been adequate. In that case, no other priest like Melchizedek would have been necessary (UST)

This question emphasizes that it was unexpected that priests come after **the order of Melchizedek**. Alternate translation: "no one would have needed another priest, one who was like Melchizedek and not like Aaron, to arise." (See: Rhetorical Question)

to arise (ULT)
other...Melchizedek (UST)

Alternate translation: "to come" or "to appear"

according to the order of Melchizedek (ULT)
the...other...like Melchizedek (UST)

This means that Christ as a priest has things in common with **Melchizedek** as a priest. Alternate translation: "in the same way that Melchizedek was a priest"

to not be called according to the order of Aaron (ULT)
Aaron...Those...who came after Aaron...no (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "not be after the manner of Aaron" or "who is not a priest like Aaron" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- perfection
- Levitical
- priesthood
- priest
- people
- received the law
- to arise
- of Melchizedek
- of Aaron

ULT

11 So if perfection was through the Levitical priesthood (for under it the people received the law), what further need {was there} for another priest to arise according to the order of Melchizedek, and to not be called according to the order of Aaron?

UST

11 God gave the law to his people at the same time he gave regulations about the priests. So if the priests who were descended from Aaron and his ancestor Levi could have provided a way for God to forgive people for disobeying those laws. Those priests who came after Aaron would have been adequate. In that case, no other priest like Melchizedek would have been necessary.

Translation Words - UST

- God gave...law to his people
- people
- other...Melchizedek
- other...Melchizedek
- priests who...descended from...his ancestor Levi
- priests who...descended from...his ancestor Levi
- priest
- Aaron
- could have provided...to forgive...for disobeying those laws

Hebrews 7:12

For when the priesthood is changed, of necessity a change of the law also happens (ULT)
But we know those priests were not adequate, because a new type of priest like Melchizedek has come. And since God has appointed a new type of priest, he also had to change the law (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "For when God changed the priesthood, he also had to change the law" (See: Active or Passive)

ULT

12 For when the priesthood is changed, of necessity a change of the law also happens.

UST

12 But we know those priests were not adequate, because a new type of priest like Melchizedek has come. And since God has appointed a new type of priest, he also had to change the law.

Translation Words - ULT

- priesthood
- of the law

Translation Words - UST

- a new type…priest
- law

Hebrews 7:13

whom (ULT)
Jesus, the one about whom (UST)

Here, **whom** refers to Jesus.

about whom...these things are spoken (ULT)
Jesus, the one about whom...I am saying these things (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "about whom I am speaking" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- tribe
- altar

Translation Words - UST

- the tribe of Judah
- as priest

Hebrews 7:14

For (ULT)
For (UST)

For is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

our Lord is risen from Judah (ULT)
our Lord descended from Judah (UST)

The words **our Lord** refer to Jesus.

from Judah (ULT)
from Judah (UST)

Alternate translation: "from the tribe of Judah"

Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- Judah
- a tribe
- Moses
- priests

Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- Judah
- but Moses
- priests
- tribe

ULT

14 For {it is} clear that our Lord is risen from Judah, a tribe toward which Moses said nothing concerning priests.

UST

14 For it is clear that our Lord descended from Judah, but Moses never spoke about priests coming from that tribe.

Hebrews 7:15

General Information:

This quote comes from a psalm of King David.

this is even more clear (ULT)
Furthermore, we know that...it is even more obvious that (UST)

Alternate translation: "we can understand even more clearly"

if...another priest arises (ULT)
since...another priest has appeared (UST)

Alternate translation: "if another priest comes"

according to the likeness of Melchizedek (ULT)
the priests descended from Levi were inadequate...who is like Melchizedek (UST)

This means that Christ as a priest has things in common with **Melchizedek** as a priest. Alternate translation: "in the same way that Melchizedek was a priest"

Translation Words - ULT

- priest
- arises
- likeness
- of Melchizedek

Translation Words - UST

- priest
- has appeared
- who is like
- Melchizedek

ULT

15 And this is even more clear, if another priest arises according to the likeness of Melchizedek,

UST

15 Furthermore, we know that the priests descended from Levi were inadequate, since it is even more obvious that another priest has appeared who is like Melchizedek.

Hebrews 7:16

who...not according to a law...became {a priest (ULT)
This priest is Jesus; he...a priest, but not because he fulfilled what God's law...became (UST)

Alternate translation: "his becoming priest was not based on a law"

a law of fleshly command (ULT)
God's law required about being a descendant of Levi (UST)

The idea of human descent is spoken of as if it had only to do with the flesh of one's body. Alternate translation: "the law of human descent" or "the law about priests' descendants becoming priests" (See: Metonymy)

ULT

16 who became {a priest}, not according to a law of fleshly command, but according to the power of an indestructible life.

UST

16 This priest is Jesus; he became a priest, but not because he fulfilled what God's law required about being a descendant of Levi. Instead, he has the kind of power that came from a life that nothing can destroy.

Translation Words - ULT

- a law
- fleshly
- of...command
- the power
- of an...life

Translation Words - UST

- God's law
- required
- about being a descendant of Levi
- a life that
- nothing can

Hebrews 7:17

For he is testified to (ULT)
We know this since God confirmed it in... scripture passage (UST)

This speaks about scripture as if it were a person who could witness about something. Alternate translation: "For God witnesses about him through the scriptures" or "For this is what was written about him in the scripture" (See: Personification)

according to the order of Melchizedek (ULT)
the...just as Melchizedek was a priest (UST)

There were two groups of priests. One was made up of the descendants of Levi. The other was made up of **Melchizedek** and Jesus Christ. Alternate translation: "according to the line of Melchizedek" or "according to the priesthood of Melchizedek"

> ### ULT
>
> **17** For he is testified to: "You are a priest forever according to the order of Melchizedek."
>
> ### UST
>
> **17** We know this since God confirmed it in the scripture passage in which he said to his Son, "You are a priest eternally, just as Melchizedek was a priest."

Translation Words - ULT

- he is testified to
- a priest
- forever
- of Melchizedek

Translation Words - UST

- God confirmed it in...scripture passage
- a priest
- eternally
- Melchizedek

Hebrews 7:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• of the...commandment

Translation Words - UST

• what he...commanded about...priests

ULT

18 For on the one hand, annulment of the former commandment happens because it {is} weak and useless

UST

18 God withdrew what he had first commanded about the priests because those priests are unable to make sinful people holy.

Hebrews 7:19

nothing...the law made...perfect (ULT)
No one...was able to become good by obeying the laws (UST)

Here, **the law** is spoken of as if it were a person who could act. Alternate translation: "no one could become perfect by obeying the law" (See: Personification)

is} the introduction...of a better hope (ULT)
that God gave Moses...God gave us a better reason to have confidence in him (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God has introduced a better hope" or "God has given us reason for a more confident hope" (See: Active or Passive)

through which we come near to God (ULT)
the...because he makes it possible for us to come near to him (UST)

Worshiping God and having his favor are spoken of as to **come near** to him. Alternate translation: "and because of this hope we approach God" or "and because of this hope we worship God" (See: Metaphor)

ULT

19 (for the law made nothing perfect), and on the other hand {is} the introduction of a better hope, through which we come near to God.

UST

19 No one was able to become good by obeying the laws that God gave Moses. On the other hand, God gave us a better reason to have confidence in him, because he makes it possible for us to come near to him.

Translation Words - ULT

- law
- made...perfect
- of a...hope
- to God

Translation Words - UST

- was able to become good by obeying
- laws
- reason to have confidence in him
- to...him

Hebrews 7:20

General Information:

This quote comes from the same psalm of David as Hebrews 7:17.

And by as much as not without an oath (ULT) Furthermore, when God appointed the Messiah as a priest, he made certain of it when he solemnly declared it (UST)

You can state this clearly who made this **oath**. Alternate translation: "And God did not choose this new priest without swearing an oath!" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

The double negative **not without** emphasizes that Jesus became a priest through an oath. Alternate translation: "And it was because God swore an oath that the Lord became the new priest!" (See: Double Negatives)

Translation Words - ULT

- an oath
- an oath (2)
- priests

Translation Words - UST

- he…when he solemnly declared it
- a declaration (2)
- priests

ULT

20 And by as much as not without an oath,—for they without an oath are become priests,

UST

20 Furthermore, when God appointed the Messiah as a priest, he made certain of it when he solemnly declared it. The men from the tribe of Levi become priests without such a declaration.

Hebrews 7:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- an oath-taking
- has sworn
- The Lord
- will...change his mind
- a priest
- forever

Translation Words - UST

- appointed...be a priest
- has solemnly declared
- The Lord
- he will...change his mind
- a priest
- forever

ULT

21 but he with an oath-taking, through God saying to him, "The Lord has sworn and will not change his mind: 'You {are} a priest forever'"—

UST

21 But when he appointed the Messiah to be a priest, it was by these words that the psalmist wrote in scripture: "The Lord has solemnly declared and he will not change his mind, 'You will be a priest forever!'"

Hebrews 7:22

Connecting Statement:

The writer then assures these Jewish believers that Christ has the better priesthood because he lives forever and the priests that descended from Aaron all died.

has become the guarantee of a better covenant (ULT)
guarantees that the new covenant will be better than the old one (UST)

Alternate translation: "has told us that we can be sure that there will be a better covenant"

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- of a…covenant

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- the new covenant

Hebrews 7:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- priests
- death

Translation Words - UST

- they would always die
- priests

ULT

23 And they, on the one hand, who became priests are many, since death prevents them from continuing,

UST

23 And formerly, priests could not keep serving as priests because they would always die. So there were many priests to take the place of the ones who died.

Hebrews 7:24

he has a permanent priesthood (ULT)
will continue to be a high priest forever (UST)

A priest's work is spoken of as if it were an object that Jesus possesses. This can be worded to avoid the abstract noun **priesthood**. Alternate translation: "he is a priest permanently" (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- forever
- a…priesthood

Translation Words - UST

- eternally
- a high priest

ULT

24 but Jesus, on the other hand, since he remains forever, he has a permanent priesthood.

UST

24 But because Jesus lives eternally, he will continue to be a high priest forever.

Hebrews 7:25

Therefore (ULT)
So (UST)

You can make explicit what **Therefore** implies. Alternate translation: "Because Christ is our high priest who lives forever," (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

those who approach God through him (ULT)
those who come...God, since he (UST)

Alternate translation: "those who come to God because of what Jesus has done"

Translation Words - ULT

- to save
- God
- living
- to intercede

Translation Words - UST

- save
- God
- lives
- to plead with God

ULT

25 Therefore he is also able to save completely those who approach God through him, always living to intercede for them.

UST

25 So Jesus can completely and eternally save those who come to God, since he lives forever to plead with God to forgive them and keep them safe.

Hebrews 7:26

having become higher than the heavens (ULT) has now taken him up to the highest heaven (UST)

The author speaks of possessing more honor and power than anyone else as if it were position that is up above all things. Alternate translation: "God has given him more honor and power than anyone else" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- a high priest
- holy
- innocent
- sinners
- heavens

Translation Words - UST

- high priest that
- He was holy
- he did no wrong
- living among sinners
- heaven

ULT

26 For such a high priest is indeed suitable for us: holy, innocent, pure, separated from sinners, and having become higher than the heavens;

UST

26 Jesus is the kind of high priest that we need. He was holy, he did no wrong, and he was innocent. God has now separated him from living among sinners, and has now taken him up to the highest heaven.

Hebrews 7:27

his} own...he did...himself (ULT)
their own...the...exactly what he did...himself (UST)

Here, **his own** refers to the Levitical priests. The second **he** and the word **himself** refer to Christ.

Translation Words - ULT

- day
- even as
- high priests
- sacrifices
- sins
- of...people

Translation Words - UST

- Jewish high priests
- day
- as well as year by year
- to cover
- sins
- people

ULT

27 who does not have each day the need, even as the high priests, to offer up sacrifices, first for {his} own sins, and then for the sins of the people, for he did this, having offered himself once for all.

UST

27 The Jewish high priests need to sacrifice animals day by day as well as year by year. They do this, firstly, to cover their own sins, and then to cover the sins of other people. But because Jesus never sinned, he does not need to do that. The only thing he needed to do to save people was to sacrifice himself once, and that is exactly what he did!

Hebrews 7:28

Hebrews 7:28

the law…appoints {as} high priests men having weaknesses (ULT)
the…in…law…priests, who were appointed… sinned like all humans sin (UST)

Here, **the law** is a metonym for the men who appointed the **high priests** according to the law of Moses. The focus is not on the men who did this, but on the fact that they did this according to the law. Alternate translation: "according to the law, men appoint as high priests men who have weaknesses" or "for according to the law, men who have weaknesses are appointed as high priests" (See: Metonymy)

men…having weaknesses (ULT)
humans sin…were…sinned like all (UST)

Alternate translation: "men who are spiritually weak" or "men who are weak against sin"

the word…of the oath, which {came} after the law, a Son (ULT)
as commanded…God…the…solemnly declared after he had given his laws to Moses that he would appoint his Son…Now his Son, who is God the (UST)

Here, **the word of the oath** represents God who made the oath. Alternate translation: "God appointed a Son by his oath, which he made after he gave the law" or "after he had given the law, God swore an oath and appointed his Son" (See: Metonymy)

a Son (ULT)
that he would appoint his Son (UST)

Son is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

made perfect (ULT)
Son, Jesus…the only perfect high priest (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "who has completely obeyed God and become mature" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- law
- law
- appoints
- as} high priests
- of…oath
- a Son
- made perfect
- forever

Translation Words - UST

- priests, who
- appointed
- in…law
- his laws to Moses
- solemnly declared
- that he would appoint his Son
- Son, Jesus…the only perfect high priest
- is forever

Hebrews 8

Hebrews 8 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The author finishes describing how and why Jesus is the most important high priest. Then he begins to speak about how the new covenant is better to the covenant God made with Moses. (See: covenant)

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 8:8-12, which are words from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

New covenant

The author tells how Jesus has established a new covenant that is better than the covenant that God established with the Israelites. (See: covenant)

Hebrews 8:1

Connecting Statement:

The writer, having shown that Christ's priesthood is better than the earthly priesthood, shows that the earthly priesthood was a pattern of heavenly things. Christ has a superior ministry, a superior covenant.

Now (ULT)
that (UST)

Now does not mean "at this moment," but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

We have a high priest (ULT)
we have a high priest (UST)

The author is including the readers here, so the word **We** is inclusive. (See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We')

has sat down at the right hand of the throne of the Majesty (ULT)
has sat down to rule as the king (UST)

To sit at the **right hand** of God is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. See how you translated a similar phrase in Hebrews 1:3. Alternate translation: "sat down at the place of honor and authority beside the throne of the Majesty" (See: Symbolic Action)

Translation Words - ULT

- a high priest
- the right hand
- of...throne
- of...Majesty
- heavens

Translation Words - UST

- a high priest
- to rule
- as the king
- as the king
- heaven

ULT

1 Now the point of the things being said {is} this: We have a high priest who has sat down at the right hand of the throne of the Majesty in the heavens,

UST

1 The most important part of everything that I have written is that we have a high priest who has sat down to rule as the king in heaven.

Hebrews 8:2

the true tabernacle that the Lord, not a man, set up

People built the earthly **tabernacle** out of animal skins fastened to a wooden framework, and they set it up in the manner of a tent. Here, **true tabernacle** means the heavenly tabernacle that God created.

Translation Words - ULT

- a servant
- of…holy {place
- true
- tabernacle
- Lord

Translation Words - UST

- He serves
- in…sanctuary
- in…true place of worship in heaven
- That is…true sacred tent
- Lord

ULT

2 a servant of the holy {place} and the true tabernacle that the Lord, not a man, set up.

UST

2 He serves in the sanctuary, that is, in the true place of worship in heaven. That is the true sacred tent, for the Lord set it up, not Moses.

Hebrews 8:3

For every high priest...is appointed (ULT)
every high priest...for...a...God appoints (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "For God appoints every priest" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- high priest
- is appointed
- gifts
- sacrifices

Translation Words - UST

- God appoints
- high priest...a
- gifts
- sacrifices...people's sins

ULT

3 For every high priest is appointed to offer both gifts and sacrifices. Therefore {it is} necessary also for this one to have something that he might offer.

UST

3 God appoints every high priest to offer gifts and sacrifices for the people's sins. So since the Messiah became a high priest, he also had to offer something.

Hebrews 8:4

Now (ULT)
Now if (UST)

Now does not mean "at this moment," but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

according to the law (ULT)
according to the law (UST)

Alternate translation: "as God requires in the law"

Translation Words - ULT

- earth
- a priest
- gifts
- the law

Translation Words - UST

- earth
- a priest at all
- gifts
- the law

ULT

[4] Now if he were on earth, he would not be a priest at all, since there are those who offer the gifts according to the law;

UST

[4] Now if Christ were on earth, he would not be a priest at all, since there are those who offer the gifts according to the law.

Hebrews 8:5

who serve a copy and shadow of the heavenly things (ULT)
priests in Jerusalem perform rituals that are only a copy of what the Messiah does in heaven (UST)

The words **copy** and **shadow** are metaphors meaning that something is not the real thing but it is similar to the real thing. Alternate translation: "who serve what is a vague image of the heavenly things" or "who serve what is only similar to the heavenly things" (See: Metaphor)

a copy and shadow...of the heavenly things (ULT)
only a copy of what...the Messiah does in heaven (UST)

The words **copy** and **shadow** have similar meanings and emphasize that the priesthood and the earthly temple were only images of Christ, the true high priest, and the heavenly temple. (See: Doublet)

just as Moses was warned by God when he was about (ULT)
This is...when Moses was about to...God told him (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "just as God warned Moses when Moses was about" (See: Active or Passive)

when he was about to complete the tabernacle (ULT)
was about to set up the sacred tent (UST)

Moses did not construct the **tabernacle** himself. He ordered the people to construct it. Alternate translation: "when he was about to command the people to construct the tabernacle" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

See that (ULT)
Be sure that you (UST)

Alternate translation: "Make sure that"

the pattern (ULT)
The...what I (UST)

Alternate translation: "the design"

ULT

5 who serve a copy and shadow of the heavenly things, just as Moses was warned by God when he was about to complete the tabernacle, for he says, "See that you make everything according to the pattern that was shown to you on the mountain."

UST

5 The priests in Jerusalem perform rituals that are only a copy of what the Messiah does in heaven. This is because when Moses was about to set up the sacred tent, God told him, "Be sure that you make everything according to what I showed you on Mount Sinai!"

that was shown to you (ULT)
what I…you (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "that I showed you" (See: Active or Passive)

on the mountain (ULT)
on Mount Sinai (UST)

You can make explicit that the **mountain** refers to Mount Sinai. Alternate translation: "on Mount Sinai" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- serve
- shadow
- of…heavenly things
- just as
- Moses
- tabernacle

Translation Words - UST

- rituals that are
- only a copy of what
- Messiah does in heaven
- This is
- when Moses
- sacred tent

Hebrews 8:6

Connecting Statement:

This section begins to show that the new covenant is better than the old covenant with Israel and Judah.

he has received (ULT)
the Messiah serves...toward his people (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God has given Christ" (See: Active or Passive)

better...the mediator of a...covenant (ULT)
is better...the...that he has agreed to...is (UST)

This means Christ caused a **better covenant** between God and humans to exist.

which is enacted on better promises (ULT)
made of promises that God has given...than the laws that God gave Moses (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "which God made based on better promises" or "in which God promised better things when he made this covenant" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- a...ministry
- the mediator
- of a...covenant
- promises

Translation Words - UST

- the Messiah serves...toward his people
- that he has agreed to
- the...is
- promises that God has given

ULT

6 But now he has received a much better ministry, just as he is also the mediator of a better covenant, which is enacted on better promises.

UST

6 But now the Messiah serves in a much better way than the Jewish priests do. In the same way, the agreement that he has agreed to toward his people is made of promises that God has given and so is better than the laws that God gave Moses.

Hebrews 8:7

first {covenant...for a second (ULT)
the first covenant...second covenant (UST)

The words **first** and **second** are ordinal numbers. Alternate translation: "old covenant ... for a new covenant" (See: Ordinal Numbers)

was faultless (ULT)
was defective (UST)

Alternate translation: "had been perfect"

Translation Words - ULT

- faultless
- would have been sought

Translation Words - UST

- God needed
- defective

ULT

7 For if that first {covenant} was faultless, no place would have been sought for a second.

UST

7 God needed to establish this second covenant, because the first covenant was defective.

Hebrews 8:8

General Information:

In this quotation the prophet Jeremiah foretold of a new covenant that God would make.

with them (ULT)
the Israelites (UST)

Alternate translation: "with the people of Israel"

Behold (ULT)
Listen (UST)

Alternate translation: "Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

the house of Israel and with the house of Judah (ULT)
the people of Israel and the people of Judah (UST)

The people of **Israel** and **Judah** are spoken of as if they were houses. Alternate translation: "the people of Israel and with the people of Judah" (See: Metaphor)

ULT

8 For finding fault with them, he says, "Behold, the days are coming—says the Lord— when I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel and with the house of Judah;

UST

8 Because God declared that the Israelites were guilty of not obeying the first covenant, he wanted a new covenant. This is what a prophet wrote about that: "The Lord says, 'Listen! There will soon be a time when I will fulfill a new covenant toward the people of Israel and the people of Judah.

Translation Words - ULT

- the days
- the Lord
- a...covenant
- house
- house (2)
- of Israel
- of Judah

Translation Words - UST

- The Lord
- a...covenant
- the...people
- people...the (2)
- of Israel
- of Judah
- There will...be a time when

Hebrews 8:9

when I took them by their hand to lead them out of the land of Egypt (ULT)
That...I led them out of Egypt like a father leads his young child (UST)

This metaphor represents God's great love and concern as if he were holding their hands in order to physically **lead them out** of **Egypt**. Alternate translation: "when I led them out of Egypt like a father leads his young child" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- covenant
- covenant
- with...fathers
- the day
- by...hand
- of Egypt
- the Lord

Translation Words - UST

- agreement
- agreement
- ancestors
- when
- Egypt
- like a father
- the Lord

ULT

9 not according to the covenant that I made with their fathers on the day when I took them by their hand to lead them out of the land of Egypt, because they did not continue in my covenant, and I disregarded them— says the Lord.

UST

9 That agreement will not be like the agreement I made with their ancestors when I led them out of Egypt like a father leads his young child. They did not continue to obey, so I let them alone,' says the Lord.

Hebrews 8:10

General Information:

This is a quotation from the prophet Jeremiah.

with the house of Israel (ULT)
Israelites (UST)

The people of **Israel** are spoken of as if they were a **house**. Alternate translation: "the people of Israel" (See: Metaphor)

after those days (ULT)
after the first agreement has ended (UST)

Alternate translation: "after that time"

I will put my laws into their minds (ULT)
the...I will enable them to understand my laws...their (UST)

God's **laws** are spoken of as if they were objects that could be placed somewhere. People's ability to think is spoken of as if it were a place. Alternate translation: "I will enable them to understand my laws" (See: Metaphor)

I will write them on their hearts (ULT)
with...I will enable them...truly obey them (UST)

Here, **hearts** is a metonym for a person's inner being. (See: Metonymy)

I will write them on their hearts (ULT)
with...I will enable them...truly obey them (UST)

The phrase **write them on their hearts** is a metaphor for enabling people to obey the law. Alternate translation: "I will also put them in their hearts" or "I will enable them to obey my law" (See: Metaphor)

into...I will be their...God (ULT)
to...I will be...God (UST)

Alternate translation: "I will be the God they worship"

into...they will be my...people (ULT)
to...they will be my...people (UST)

Alternate translation: "they will be the people for whom I care"

Translation Words - ULT

- covenant
- with...house
- people

- of Israel
- days
- the Lord
- laws
- minds
- hearts
- God
- my people

Translation Words - UST

- agreement
- Israelites
- people
- Israelites
- after the first agreement has ended
- the Lord
- understand
- laws
- truly
- God
- my people

Hebrews 8:11

General Information:

This continues the quotation from the prophet Jeremiah.

they will certainly not teach each one his fellow citizen, and each one his brother, saying, 'Know the Lord (ULT)
No one will need to teach a fellow citizen or tell his fellow kinsmen...acknowledge that the Lord is God...the...the (UST)

You can state this direct quotation as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "they will not need to teach their neighbors or brothers to know me" (See: Direct and Indirect Quotations)

fellow citizen...brother (ULT)
citizen...the...kinsmen...the (UST)

Both **fellow citizen** and **brother** mean the same thing and refer to fellow Israelites. (See: Doublet)

Know the Lord...they will all know me (ULT)
acknowledge that...Lord...the...all my people will acknowledge me (UST)

Know here stands for acknowledging God. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- they will...teach
- fellow citizen
- brother
- Know
- they will...know
- Lord

Translation Words - UST

- to teach
- citizen
- kinsmen
- acknowledge
- will acknowledge
- Lord

ULT

[11] And they will certainly not teach each one his fellow citizen, and each one his brother, saying, 'Know the Lord,' for they will all know me, from the least of them to the greatest.

UST

[11] No one will need to teach a fellow citizen or tell his fellow kinsmen, 'You acknowledge that the Lord is God,' because all my people will acknowledge me. Everyone among my people, from the least important to the most important, will know me.

Hebrews 8:12

toward their evil deeds (ULT)
them...the wicked things they have done (UST)

Here, **evil deeds** stands for the people who committed these evil deeds. Alternate translation: "to those who did evil deeds" (See: Metonymy)

their sins I will certainly not remember any longer (ULT)
I will no longer consider...they are guilty for... their...sins (UST)

Here, **remember** stands for "think about." (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- merciful
- toward...evil deeds
- sins

Translation Words - UST

- mercifully forgive
- wicked things
- they are guilty for...sins

ULT

12 For I will be merciful toward their evil deeds, and their sins I will certainly not remember any longer."

UST

12 I will mercifully forgive them for the wicked things they have done. I will no longer consider that they are guilty for their sins."

Hebrews 8:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

13 By saying, "new," he has made the first obsolete, and what has been made obsolete and the disappearance of what grows old {is} near.

UST

13 Since God said that he was making a new agreement, we know that he considered that the first agreement was old and no longer in use, decaying and that it would soon disappear.

Hebrews 9

Hebrews 9 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter describes how Jesus is better than the temple and all its laws and rules. This chapter will be difficult to understand if the first five books of the Old Testament have not yet been translated.

Special concepts in this chapter

Will

A will is a legal document that describes what will happen to a person's property after he dies.

Blood

In the Old Testament, God had commanded the Israelites to offer sacrifices so that he would forgive their sins. Before they could offer these sacrifices, they had to kill animals and then offer not only the animal's body but also its blood. Shedding blood is a metaphor for killing an animal or person. Jesus offered his life, his blood, as a sacrifice when he allowed men to kill him. The writer of the Book of Hebrews is saying in this chapter that this sacrifice is better than the sacrifices of the Old Testament. (See: Metaphor and covenant)

Return of Christ

Jesus will return to finish the work that he began when he died so that God would forgive his people's sins. He will finish saving those people who are waiting for him. (See: save, saved, safe, salvation)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

First covenant

This refers to the covenant that God made with Moses. However, before he made this covenant, God had made a covenant with Abraham. But this was the first covenant that God had made with the people of Israel. You may decide to translate "the first covenant" as "the earlier covenant."

Hebrews 9:1

Connecting Statement:

The writer makes clear to these Jewish believers that the laws and the tabernacle of the old covenant were only pictures of the better, new covenant.

Now (ULT)
According to the (UST)

Now marks a new part of the teaching.

the first {covenant (ULT)
According to the...first agreement (UST)

See how you translated **first covenant** in Hebrews 8:7.

had...regulations (ULT)
According to the...God made rules for how the people of Israel should (UST)

Alternate translation: "had detailed instructions" or "had rules"

Translation Words - ULT

- regulations
- for worship
- earthly
- an...holy...place

Translation Words - UST

- God made rules for how the people of Israel should
- worship...to
- he told them...make a place
- to...worship him

ULT

1 Now indeed the first {covenant} had regulations for worship and an earthly holy {place}.

UST

1 According to the first agreement God made rules for how the people of Israel should worship, and he told them to make a place to worship him.

Hebrews 9:2

For (ULT)
The sanctuary that the Israelites set up (UST)

The author is continuing the discussion from Hebrews 8:7.

a tabernacle...was prepared (ULT)
was...sacred tent...The sanctuary that the Israelites set up (UST)

A **tabernacle** was constructed and made ready for use. If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "the Israelites prepared a tabernacle" (See: Active or Passive)

the lampstand, the table, and the bread of the presence

These objects are all accompanied by the definite article **the**, because these are specific things that the author assumes that his readers already know about.

the presentation of the bread (ULT)
the...the bread on display before God (UST)

You can reworded the abstract noun **presentation** to express it with the verb "display" or "present." Alternate translation: "the bread on display before God" or "the bread the priests presented to God" (See: Abstract Nouns)

> **ULT**
>
> **2** For a tabernacle was prepared, the first {tent}, in which {were} both the lampstand and the table, and the presentation of the bread, which is called the holy {place}.
>
> **UST**
>
> **2** The sanctuary that the Israelites set up was the sacred tent. In its outer room there were the lampstand and the table on which they put the bread on display before God. That room was called the holy place.

Translation Words - ULT

- a tabernacle
- lampstand
- of...bread
- is called
- the holy {place

Translation Words - UST

- was...sacred tent
- lampstand
- bread
- was called
- the holy place

Hebrews 9:3

behind...the second curtain (ULT)
Behind...the curtain...another (UST)

The first curtain was the outer wall of the tabernacle, so the **second curtain** was the curtain between the "holy place" and the "most holy place."

second (ULT)
another (UST)

The word **second** is the ordinal word for number two. (See: Ordinal Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- curtain
- was} a tent
- is called
- the Holy
- of Holies

Translation Words - UST

- curtain
- on one side...there was...room
- very holy place
- of the holy place
- That was called

Hebrews 9:4

Hebrews 9:4

in which {was (ULT)
In it was the (UST)

Alternate translation: "inside the ark of the covenant was"

the rod of Aaron that had budded (ULT)
the…Aaron's walking stick that had budded to prove that he was God's true priest…the (UST)

This was the **rod** that **Aaron** had when God proved to the people of Israel that he had chosen Aaron as his priest by making Aaron's rod bud. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the…had budded (ULT)
the…that had budded to prove that he was God's true priest (UST)

Alternate translation: "from which leaves and flowers had grown"

of the covenant…the tablets (ULT)
Agreement Chest…the stone tablets on which God had written (UST)

Here, **tablets** are flat pieces of stone that had writing on them. This refers to the stone tablets on which the ten commandments were written.

Translation Words - ULT

- golden
- with gold
- golden
- a…altar for incense
- ark
- of…covenant
- of…covenant (2)
- manna
- rod
- of Aaron

Translation Words - UST

- an altar…for burning incense
- gold
- covered with…gold
- golden
- Aaron's
- walking stick
- Agreement Chest
- Ten Commandments (2)
- Agreement Chest

- pieces of...food they called manna

Hebrews 9:5

glorious cherubim are overshadowing the atonement lid (ULT)
the...were figures of winged creatures... symbolized God's glory. Their wings overshadowed the sacred chest's lid where the high priest sprinkled the blood to atone for the sins of the people (UST)

When the Israelites were making the ark of the covenant, God commanded them to carve two **cherubim** facing each other, with their wings touching, over the **atonement lid** of the ark of the covenant. Here they are spoken of as providing shade for the ark of the covenant. Alternate translation: "glorious cherubim covered the atonement lid with their wings"

cherubim (ULT)
the...were figures of winged creatures (UST)

Here, **cherubim** refers to the carved figures of two cherubim. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- glorious
- cherubim
- atonement lid

Translation Words - UST

- the...were figures of winged creatures
- symbolized God's glory
- sacred chest's lid where the high priest sprinkled the blood to atone for the sins of the people

---

ULT

5 And above it, glorious cherubim are overshadowing the atonement lid, about which it is not now {the time} to speak in detail.

UST

5 On top of the chest were figures of winged creatures that symbolized God's glory. Their wings overshadowed the sacred chest's lid where the high priest sprinkled the blood to atone for the sins of the people. I cannot now write about these things in detail.

Hebrews 9:6

**these things...when...are thus prepared (ULT)
these things...they have arranged...in this way
(UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "after the priests prepared these things" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- priests
- tent
- services

Translation Words - UST

- Jewish priests
- the tent
- their tasks

ULT

6 And when these things are thus prepared, the priests always enter into the first tent, performing {their} services;

UST

6 After they have arranged all these things in this way, the Jewish priests habitually go into the outer room of the tent to do their tasks.

Hebrews 9:7

enters}, {and} not without blood (ULT)
He always takes the blood (UST)

You can state the double negative **not without** in positive form. Alternate translation: "enters, and he always brings blood" (See: Double Negatives)

blood (ULT)
the blood (UST)

This is the **blood** of the bull and goat that the high priest had to sacrifice on the Day of Atonement.

Translation Words - ULT

- a year
- high priest
- blood
- of...people

Translation Words - UST

- high priest goes
- year
- the blood
- that...other Israelites have committed...the...sins

ULT

7 but into the second {tent}, only once a year the high priest {enters}, {and} not without blood that he offers for himself and for the unintentional sins of the people.

UST

7 But into the inner room only the high priest goes once a year. He always takes the blood of animals that they have slaughtered. He offers the blood to God for his own sins and for the sins that the other Israelites have committed. This includes the sins they committed but they did not know they were committing sins.

Hebrews 9:8

**into the holy {place (ULT)
to enter…inner room, the…the…presence of God while…Jews (UST)**

Here, **the holy place** could refer to: (1) the inner room of the tabernacle on earth. (2) God's presence in heaven.

**while the first tabernacle still has a place (ULT)
while…outer room still existed. In a similar way, he did not reveal the way for ordinary people…the…offered sacrifices…old way (UST)**

This could mean: (1) the outer room of the **tabernacle** was still standing. (2) the earthly **tabernacle** and the sacrificial system still existed. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- Holy Spirit
- into…holy {place
- is…visible
- tabernacle

Translation Words - UST

- Holy Spirit…the…very holy place
- God did…reveal
- to enter…inner room, the…the…presence of God while…Jews
- room

Hebrews 9:9

which {is} a symbol (ULT)
This was a symbol (UST)

Alternate translation: "and this first tabernacle is a picture"

for the present time

Alternate translation: "for now"

are offered (ULT)
offered in...sacred tent (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "that the priests now offer" (See: Active or Passive)

not being able according to conscience to perfect the worshiper (ULT)
the...cannot make a person always know right from wrong...always do right from our hearts...in a way that he pleases God (UST)

The writer speaks of a person's **conscience** as if it were an object that could be made better and better until it was without fault. A person's conscience is his knowledge of right and wrong. It is also his awareness of whether or not he has done wrong. If he knows he has done wrong, we say that he feels guilty. Alternate translation: "are not able to make the worshiper free from guilt" (See: Metaphor)

the worshiper (ULT)
the...a way that he pleases God (UST)

The writer appears to refer to only one **worshiper**, but he means all those who came to worship God at the tabernacle. (See: Generic Noun Phrases)

Translation Words - ULT

- time
- gifts
- sacrifices
- conscience
- to perfect
- worshiper

Translation Words - UST

- time
- gifts
- and sacrifices
- make a person always know right from wrong
- always do right from our hearts
- a way that he pleases God

Hebrews 9:10

until the time of reformation (ULT)
only until the time when God...a new
agreement for us, by which he would restore
everything in the right way (UST)

Alternate translation: "until God created the new order"

Translation Words - ULT

- regulations
- of the body
- the time

Translation Words - UST

- all those rules were about...that applied
- physical things
- the time when God

ULT

10 only concerning food and drink and various washings, regulations of the body, imposed until the time of reformation.

UST

10 Those rules about what to eat and drink, and about what to wash—all those rules were about physical things that applied only until the time when God would make a new agreement for us, by which he would restore everything in the right way.

Hebrews 9:11

Hebrews 9:11

Connecting Statement:

Having described the service of the tabernacle under God's law, the writer makes clear that Christ's service under the new covenant is better because it is sealed with his blood. It is better also because Christ has entered the true "tabernacle," that is, God's own presence in heaven, instead of entering, as other high priests, into the earthly tabernacle, which was only an imperfect copy.

the...of...good things (ULT)
the...good things that we have now (UST)

Here, **good things** does not refer to material things. It means the good things that God promised in his new covenant.

the greater and more perfect tabernacle (ULT)
the sacred tent...is...the tent...greater and completely perfect (UST)

This refers to the heavenly tent or **tabernacle**, which is more important and more perfect than the earthly tabernacle.

not made by human hands (ULT)
But it...unlike...Moses set up here on earth (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "that humans hands did not make" (See: Active or Passive)

made by human hands (ULT)
Moses set up here on earth (UST)

Here, **hands** refers to the whole person. Alternate translation: "humans" (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- Christ
- a high priest
- of...good things
- more perfect
- tabernacle
- of...creation

Translation Words - UST

- the Messiah
- as our high priest
- good things that we have now
- the tent
- completely perfect

ULT

11 But Christ, having come as a high priest of the good things that have come, through the greater and more perfect tabernacle not made by human hands, that is not of this creation; [1]

UST

11 But when the Messiah came as our high priest, he brought the good things that we have now. Then he went into God's presence in heaven, which is like the sacred tent. But it is unlike the tent Moses set up here on earth, meaning it is greater and completely perfect. It was not made by human effort.

• made by human effort

Hebrews 9:12

holy {place (ULT)
very holy place (UST)

God's presence in heaven is spoken of as if it were the **holy place**, the innermost room in the tabernacle. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- the blood
- blood (2)
- calves
- holy {place
- eternal
- redemption

Translation Words - UST

- blood
- blood (2)
- calves' blood
- very holy place
- he paid the price for our sins forever
- he paid the price for our sins forever

ULT

[12] and not by the blood of goats and calves, but by {his} own blood, he entered into the holy {place} once for all, having obtained eternal redemption.

UST

[12] When a high priest goes into the inner room in the tent each year, he takes goats' blood and calves' blood to offer as a sacrifice. But the Messiah did not do that. It was as though he went into that very holy place only once because he gave his own blood on the cross, just one time. By doing that, he paid the price for our sins forever.

Hebrews 9:13

the sprinkling of a heifer's ashes on those who have become unclean (ULT)
The priests sprinkle on people...ashes of a red heifer that they have completely burned. By performing that ritual, they then say that God will now (UST)

The priest would throw small amounts of the **ashes** on the **unclean** people.

for the cleansing of {their} flesh (ULT)
the...that the people should worship him (UST)

Here, **flesh** refers to the entire body. Alternate translation: "for the cleansing of their bodies" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- blood
- of goats
- ashes
- sanctify them
- cleansing
- of...flesh

Translation Words - UST

- goats
- blood
- ashes of
- accept
- people
- should worship him

ULT

13 For if the blood of goats and bulls and the sprinkling of a heifer's ashes on those who have become unclean sanctify them for the cleansing of {their} flesh,

UST

13 The priests sprinkle on people goats' blood and bulls' blood and the water that has been filtered through the ashes of a red heifer that they have completely burned. By performing that ritual, they then say that God will now accept that the people should worship him.

Hebrews 9:14

how much more will the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself without blemish to God, cleanse yourconscience from dead works to serve the living God (ULT)
Since this is true, much more is accomplished by the blood of Messiah! Through the eternal Spirit he offered himself as a perfect sacrifice to God. His blood will purify our inner criticisms from useless rituals, so that we may serve the living God (UST)

ULT

14 how much more will the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself without blemish to God, cleanse your [2] conscience from dead works to serve the living God!

UST

14 Since this is true, much more is accomplished by the blood of Messiah! Through the eternal Spirit he offered himself as a perfect sacrifice to God. His blood will purify our inner criticisms from useless rituals, so that we may serve the living God.

The author uses this exclamation to emphasize that Christ's sacrifice was the most powerful. Alternate translation: "then certainly Christ's blood will cleanse our conscience even more from dead works to serve the living God! Because, through the eternal Spirit, he offered himself without blemish to God!" (See: Exclamations)

the blood of Christ (ULT)
the blood…Messiah (UST)

The **blood** of Christ refers to his death. (See: Metonymy)

without blemish (ULT)
perfect (UST)

A **blemish** is a small sin or moral fault spoken of here as if it were a small, unusual spot or defect on Christ's body. (See: Metaphor)

yourconscience (ULT)
our inner criticisms (UST)

Here, **conscience** refers to a person's feeling of guilt. Believers no longer have to feel guilty for the sins they have committed because Jesus sacrificed himself and has forgiven them. (See: Metonymy)

will…cleanse (ULT)
His blood will purify (UST)

Here, **cleanse** stands for the action of relieving our consciences from guilt for the sins we have committed. (See: Metaphor)

dead works (ULT)
useless rituals (UST)

Sinful deeds are spoken of as if they belonged to the world of the **dead**. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- blood
- of Christ
- serve
- living
- eternal
- the...Spirit
- without blemish
- to God
- the...God (2)
- will...cleanse
- conscience
- dead
- works

Translation Words - UST

- blood
- the...Messiah
- we may serve
- living
- eternal
- Spirit
- perfect
- to God
- God (2)
- His blood will purify
- inner criticisms
- useless
- rituals

Hebrews 9:15

for this reason (ULT)
Because...Messiah offered himself to God (UST)

Alternate translation: "as a result" or "because of this"

he is the mediator of a new covenant (ULT)
is able...a new agreement from God. Through (UST)

Here being a **mediator** means Christ caused the **new covenant** between God and humans to exist.

the first covenant (ULT)
the...first agreement (UST)

See how you translated **first covenant** in Hebrews 8:7.

for redemption of those under the first covenant from their transgressions (ULT)
to...he paid the price to set people free from the sins they committed under the first agreement (UST)

Here, **their transgressions** is a metonym for: (1) the guilt of their transgressions. Alternate translation: "to take away the guilt of those who were under the first covenant" (2) the punishment for their transgressions. Alternate translation: "to take away the punishment for the transgressions of those who were under the first covenant" (See: Metonymy)

those who are called (ULT)
called to be his children (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "those whom God has chosen to be his children" (See: Active or Passive)

of the eternal inheritance (ULT)
an inheritance that will last forever (UST)

Receiving what God has promised believers is spoken of as if it were inheriting property and wealth from a family member. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- the mediator
- of a...covenant
- covenant
- eternal
- of...inheritance

> **ULT**
>
> **15** And for this reason, he is the mediator of a new covenant, so that, a death having taken place for redemption of those under the first covenant from their transgressions, those who are called might receive the promise of the eternal inheritance.
>
> **UST**
>
> **15** Because Messiah offered himself to God, he is able to bring about a new agreement from God. Through his death he paid the price to set people free from the sins they committed under the first agreement. He did this so that those who are called to be his children can be guaranteed an inheritance that will last forever.

- a death
- redemption
- from their transgressions
- who are called
- might receive
- promise

Translation Words - UST

- is able...Through
- a...agreement from God
- agreement
- called to be his children
- an inheritance
- that will last forever
- his death
- he paid the price to set people free from...they committed
- sins
- He did this so that those who are...can be guaranteed
- He did this so that those who are...can be guaranteed

Hebrews 9:16

there is} a necessity for the death of the one who made it to be proven (ULT)
someone must prove that the one who made it has died (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "someone must prove that the person who made the will has died"

Translation Words - ULT

- there is} a covenant
- the death

Translation Words - UST

- A covenant is like a will
- has died

ULT

16 For where {there is} a covenant, {there is} a necessity for the death of the one who made it to be proven.

UST

16 A covenant is like a will. In the case of a will, in order to put its provisions into effect, someone must prove that the one who made it has died.

Hebrews 9:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- a covenant
- a death
- it...has force
- is alive

Translation Words - UST

- A will
- only when the one who makes the will has died
- it is...in effect
- is still alive

ULT

17 For a covenant {is} valid on the basis of a death, because it never has force when the one who made it is alive.

UST

17 A will goes into effect only when the one who makes the will has died. Otherwise, it is not in effect when the one who made it is still alive.

Hebrews 9:18

So not even the first {covenant} was established without blood (ULT)
And so God put the first covenant into effect only by means of animals' blood that flowed when the priests sacrificed them (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "So God did not even establish the first covenant without blood" (See: Active or Passive)

So not even the first {covenant} was established without blood (ULT)
And so God put the first covenant into effect only by means of animals' blood that flowed when the priests sacrificed them (UST)

You can state the double negative **not even … without** in positive form. Alternate translation: "So God established even the first covenant with blood" (See: Double Negatives)

first {covenant (ULT)
first covenant (UST)

See how you translated **first covenant** in Hebrews 8:7.

blood (ULT)
animals' blood that flowed when the priests sacrificed them (UST)

The death of animals sacrificed to God is spoken of as if it were nothing but **blood**. Alternate translation: "the death of animals sacrificed to God" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- was established
- blood

Translation Words - UST

- God put…into effect
- animals' blood that flowed when the priests sacrificed them

Hebrews 9:19

having taken the blood of the calves and the goats, with water and red wool and hyssop, he sprinkled both the scroll itself and all the people (ULT)
After...all the...he took calves' and goats' blood mixed with water. He dipped into this blood scarlet wool that he tied around a sprig of hyssop. Then he sprinkled with some of the blood the scroll itself containing God's laws. Then he sprinkled more of that blood on...the people (UST)

The priest dipped the **hyssop** in the **blood** and the **water** and then shook the hyssop so drops of blood and water would fall on the scroll and on the **people**. Sprinkling was a symbolic action done by the priests by which they applied the benefits of the covenant to people and to objects. Here the scroll and the people's acceptability to God are renewed. (See: Symbolic Action)

ULT

19 For every command according to the law had been spoken by Moses to all the people, having taken the blood of the calves and the goats, with water and red wool and hyssop, he sprinkled both the scroll itself and all the people,

UST

19 After Moses had declared to all the Israelites everything that God commanded in the laws that God gave him, he took calves' and goats' blood mixed with water. He dipped into this blood scarlet wool that he tied around a sprig of hyssop. Then he sprinkled with some of the blood the scroll itself containing God's laws. Then he sprinkled more of that blood on all the people.

hyssop (ULT)
a sprig of hyssop (UST)

Hyssop was a woody shrub with flowers in summer, used in ceremonial sprinkling.

Translation Words - ULT

- command
- law...by Moses
- to...people
- people
- blood
- of...calves
- goats
- water

Translation Words - UST

- Moses...laws that God gave him
- Israelites
- people
- that God commanded
- calves
- goats
- blood
- mixed with water

Hebrews 9:20

the blood of the covenant (ULT)
the blood...the covenant that (UST)

Here, **blood** refers to the death of the animals sacrificed to carry out the covenant's requirements. Alternate translation: "the death of the animals that brings into effect the covenant" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- blood
- of...covenant
- God
- has commanded

Translation Words - UST

- blood
- covenant that
- God
- commanded that

ULT

20 saying, "This {is} the blood of the covenant that God has commanded for you."

UST

20 He said to them, "This is the blood that brings into effect the covenant that God commanded that you obey."

Hebrews 9:21

he sprinkled (ULT)
he sprinkled (UST)

Alternate translation: "Moses sprinkled"

he sprinkled (ULT)
he sprinkled (UST)

Sprinkling was a symbolic action done by the priests by which they applied the benefits of the covenant to people and to objects. See how you translated this in Hebrews 9:19. (See: Symbolic Action)

on all the containers of the service (ULT)
on every object that they used in working there (UST)

A container is an object that can hold things. Here it may refer to any kind of utensil or tool. Alternate translation: "all the utensils used in the service"

the blood (ULT)
that blood (UST)

Here the animal **blood** refers to the animal's death. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- in the same manner
- blood
- on...tabernacle
- of...service

Translation Words - UST

- Likewise
- blood
- on...sacred tent
- used in working there

Hebrews 9:22

almost everything is cleansed with blood (ULT)
sprinkling blood that they cleansed almost everything...in (UST)

Making something acceptable to God is spoken of as if it were cleansing that thing. Alternate translation: "almost everything is made acceptable to God by being cleansed with blood" (See: Metaphor)

almost everything is cleansed with blood (ULT)
sprinkling blood that they cleansed almost everything...in (UST)

ULT

22 And according to the law, almost everything is cleansed with blood, and without the shedding of blood there is no forgiveness.

UST

22 It was by sprinkling blood that they cleansed almost everything. That was what was stated in God's laws. If blood does not flow when they sacrifice an animal, God does not forgive the sins of those people.

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "the priests use blood to cleanse almost everything" (See: Active or Passive)

without the shedding of blood there is no forgiveness (ULT)
If blood does not flow...when they sacrifice an animal, God does not forgive... sins of those people (UST)

Here, **shedding of blood** refers to something dying as a sacrifice to God. Alternate translation: "without the death of something, there is no forgiveness" (See: Metonymy)

without the shedding of blood there is no forgiveness (ULT)
If blood does not flow...when they sacrifice an animal, God does not forgive... sins of those people (UST)

This double negative can mean that all forgiveness comes through the shedding of blood. Alternate translation: "forgiveness only comes when something dies as a sacrifice" or "God only forgives when something dies as a sacrifice" (See: Double Negatives)

forgiveness (ULT)
forgive...sins of those people (UST)

You can state explicitly the implied meaning. Alternate translation: "forgiveness of the sins of the people" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- law
- is cleansed
- blood
- forgiveness

Translation Words - UST

- sprinkling blood
- that they cleansed
- God's laws
- forgive…sins of those people

Hebrews 9:23

Connecting Statement:

The writer emphasizes that Christ (now in heaven interceding for us) had to die only once for sins and that he will return to earth a second time.

it is} a necessary...for...on the one hand...the copies of the things in the heavens to be cleansed with these (ULT)
it was necessary for...the priests to cleanse the things that symbolized what the Messiah does in heaven...has to cleanse (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "the priests must use these animal sacrifices to cleanse what are copies of things that are in heaven" (See: Active or Passive)

but on the other hand, the heavenly things themselves, with much better sacrifices than these (ULT)
by animal sacrifices...But God...the things in heaven by means of much better sacrifices than those (UST)

That is, the **sacrifices** to cleanse the **heavenly things** are better than the sacrifices used to cleanse the earthly copies. If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "as for the heavenly things themselves, God had to cleanse them with much better sacrifices" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- heavens
- heavenly things
- to be cleansed
- with...sacrifices

Translation Words - UST

- heaven
- things in heaven
- has to cleanse
- sacrifices

ULT

23 Therefore {it is} a necessary on the one hand for the copies of the things in the heavens to be cleansed with these, but on the other hand, the heavenly things themselves, with much better sacrifices than these.

UST

23 So by animal sacrifices it was necessary for the priests to cleanse the things that symbolized what the Messiah does in heaven. But God has to cleanse the things in heaven by means of much better sacrifices than those.

Hebrews 9:24

made with hands...a holy {place (ULT)
humans made...very holy place (UST)

Here, **with hands** means "by humans." Alternate translation: "the most holy place made by humans" (See: Synecdoche)

made with hands...a holy {place (ULT)
humans made...very holy place (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "the most holy place, which humans made" (See: Active or Passive)

of the true one (ULT)
the true very holy place (UST)

Alternate translation: "of the true most holy place"

Translation Words - ULT

- Christ
- a holy {place
- of...true one
- heaven
- of God

Translation Words - UST

- The Messiah
- very holy place
- true very holy place
- he entered heaven
- God's

ULT

24 For Christ did not enter into a holy {place} made with hands, a copy of the true one—but into heaven itself, to appear now in the presence of God for us.

UST

24 The Messiah did not enter the very holy place that humans made, which only represented the true very holy place. Instead, he entered heaven itself, in order to now be in God's presence to represent us.

Hebrews 9:25

And not (ULT)
not (UST)

Alternate translation: "And he did not enter heaven"

with the blood of another (ULT)
taking blood that is...his own...not...to (UST)

This means with the **blood** of an animal victim, not with his own blood.

Translation Words - ULT

- even as
- high priest
- holy {place
- year
- the blood

Translation Words - UST

- high priest
- very holy place
- every year
- taking blood
- as a sacrifice...like that

ULT

25 And not in order to offer himself many times, even as the high priest enters into the holy {place} each year with the blood of another;

UST

25 The high priest enters the very holy place once every year, taking blood that is not his own, to offer it as a sacrifice. But when the Messiah entered heaven, it was not in order to offer himself repeatedly like that.

Hebrews 9:26

since (ULT)
since (UST)

Alternate translation: "since if he had to offer himself often,"

for the annulment of sin through the sacrifice of himself (ULT)
to…the…so that by sacrificing himself, God will forgive all our sins and will not condemn us any more (UST)

Doing away with **sin** represents having God forgive it. Alternate translation: "to cause God to forgive sins by sacrificing himself" or "to sacrifice himself so that God can forgive sin" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- to suffer
- the foundation of the world
- the foundation
- of the world
- he has appeared
- of…ages
- of sin
- sacrifice

Translation Words - UST

- suffer and shed his blood
- the time when God created the world
- the time when God created
- the world
- age
- Messiah has appeared
- sacrificing
- sins and will not condemn us any more

ULT

26 since it is necessary for him to suffer many times from the foundation of the world. But now he has appeared once at the end of the ages for the annulment of sin through the sacrifice of himself.

UST

26 If that were so, he would have needed to suffer and shed his blood repeatedly since the time when God created the world. But instead, in this final age, the Messiah has appeared once so that by sacrificing himself, God will forgive all our sins and will not condemn us any more because we have sinned.

Hebrews 9:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- to die
- the judgment

Translation Words - UST

- die
- God will judge them for their sins

Hebrews 9:28

Christ, having been offered once (ULT)
when the Messiah died, he offered...once (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "Christ offered himself once" (See: Active or Passive)

to...the...bear...sins (ULT)
up himself...the...to be a sacrifice, he accepted the punishment...the place of (UST)

The act of making us innocent rather than guilty for our sins is spoken of as if our **sins** were physical objects that Christ could carry away from us. Alternate translation: "so that God would forgive the sins" (See: Metaphor)

the...sins (ULT)
the...to be a sacrifice, he accepted the punishment...the place of (UST)

Here, **sins** mean the guilt that people have before God because of the sins they committed. (See: Metonymy)

ULT

28 so also, Christ, having been offered once to bear the sins of many, will appear a second time apart from sin, for salvation to those who are eagerly waiting for him.
9:11 [1]
9:14 [2] instead of .

UST

28 Likewise, when the Messiah died, he offered up himself once to be a sacrifice, he accepted the punishment in the place of the many people who were his. He will come to earth a second time, not in order to sacrifice himself again for those who have sinned, but in order to save us who wait for him and expect him to come.

Translation Words - ULT

- Christ
- sins
- sin (2)
- salvation

Translation Words - UST

- when...Messiah
- to be a sacrifice, he accepted the punishment...the place of
- for those...have sinned (2)
- save us

Hebrews 10

Hebrews 10 General Notes

Structure and formatting

In this chapter, the writer finishes describing how Jesus' sacrifice was better than the sacrifices offered in the Temple. (See: law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God)

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 10:5-7, 15-17, 37-38, which are words from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

God's judgment and reward

Holy living is important for Christians. God will hold people accountable for how they lived their Christian life. Even though there will not be eternal condemnation for Christians, ungodly actions do and will have consequences. In addition, faithful living will be rewarded. (See: holy, holiness, unholy, sacred, godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness and faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy and reward, prize, deserve)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"For it is impossible for the blood of bulls and goats to take away sins"

The sacrifices themselves had no redeeming power. They were effective because they were a display of faith, which was credited to the person offering the sacrifice. It was ultimately the sacrifice of Jesus which then makes these sacrifices "take away sins." (See: redeem, redeemer, redemption and faith)

"The covenant that I will make"

It is unclear whether this prophecy was being fulfilled as the author was writing or whether it was to occur later. The translator should try to avoid making a claim about the time this covenant begins. (See: prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess and covenant)

Hebrews 10:1

Connecting Statement:

The writer shows the weakness of the law and its sacrifices, why God gave the law, and the perfection of the new priesthood and Christ's sacrifice.

a shadow…the law, having…of the good things that are coming (ULT)
a shadow…The…the good things that God will give us later…law…of (UST)

This speaks about **the law** as if it were a **shadow**. The author means the law is not the **good things** that God had promised. It only hints at the good things that God is going to do. (See: Metaphor)

the…not the very image of…things (ULT)
law does not show very well the…that…The… is like…something…else (UST)

Alternate translation: "not the real things themselves"

Translation Words - ULT

- law
- a shadow
- of…good things
- to make perfect
- with…sacrifices
- year

Translation Words - UST

- good things
- law
- a shadow
- sacrifices
- year
- become perfect

ULT

1 For the law, having a shadow of the good things that are coming—not the very image of those things—is never able to make perfect those who approach with the same sacrifices that they continually bring every year.

UST

1 The law does not show very well the good things that God will give us later. The law is like a shadow of something else. If people come to worship God by offering the same kinds of sacrifices every year, they can never become perfect.

Hebrews 10:2

would they not have ceased being offered, because no one would still have consciousness of sins, those who worship having been cleansed once for all (ULT) the...who brought these sacrifices, they would not feel that they were still guilty. So they would certainly have stopped offering those sacrifices! Those who worship would have been clean from their sin once and for all. Their thoughts toward themselves would have been at peace (UST)

The author uses a question to state that the sacrifices were limited in their power. Alternate translation: "they would have ceased being offered because no one would still have consciousness of sins, those who worship having been cleansed once for all." (See: Rhetorical Question)

would they not have ceased being offered (ULT)
they would certainly have stopped offering those sacrifices (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "they would have ceased offering those sacrifices" (See: Active or Passive)

those who worship having been cleansed once for all (ULT)
who brought these sacrifices...Those who worship would have been clean... once and for all (UST)

Here **having been cleansed** represents no longer being guilty of sin. Alternate translation: "those who worship no longer being guilty of sin" (See: Metaphor)

those who worship having been cleansed once for all (ULT)
who brought these sacrifices...Those who worship would have been clean... once and for all (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "the sacrifices would have taken away their sin" or "God would have made them no longer guilty of sin" (See: Active or Passive)

no one would still have consciousness of sins (ULT)
the...they would not feel that they were still guilty...from their sin...Their thoughts toward themselves would have been at peace (UST)

Alternate translation: "they would no longer think that they are guilty of sin" or "would know that they are no longer guilty of sin"

Translation Words - ULT

- consciousness
- of sins
- who worship
- having been cleansed

Translation Words - UST

- who brought these sacrifices
- would have been clean
- from their sin
- Their thoughts toward themselves would have been at peace

Hebrews 10:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

> • of sins
> • year

Translation Words - UST

> • year
> • for their sins

ULT

3 But with those sacrifices {there is} a reminder of sins every year.

UST

3 But rather, the fact that they offer those sacrifices each year reminds them that they are still guilty for their sins.

Hebrews 10:4

For {it is} impossible for the blood of bulls and goats to take away sins (ULT)
So we know that even if we offer animals such as bulls or goats to God, even if he sees their blood flow, that will not stop us from being guilty (UST)

Here, **sins** are spoken of as if they were objects that animal **blood** could sweep away as it flowed. Alternate translation: "For it is impossible for the blood of bulls and goats to cause God to forgive sins" (See: Metaphor)

the blood of bulls and goats (ULT)
such as bulls or goats...even if he sees their blood flow (UST)

Here, **blood** refers to these animals dying as sacrifices to God. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- the blood
- goats
- sins

Translation Words - UST

- goats
- even if he sees their blood flow
- stop us from being guilty

ULT

[4] For {it is} impossible for the blood of bulls and goats to take away sins.

UST

[4] So we know that even if we offer animals such as bulls or goats to God, even if he sees their blood flow, that will not stop us from being guilty.

Hebrews 10:5

General Information:

Christ's words when he was on earth were foretold in this quotation from a psalm of David.

you did not desire (ULT)
not...that you have wanted (UST)

Here, **you** is singular and refers to God. (See: Forms of You)

Translation Words - ULT

- world
- Sacrifice
- offering
- a body
- you prepared

Translation Words - UST

- world
- It is...sacrifices
- offerings
- you have prepared
- a body to offer

ULT

5 Therefore, entering into the world, he says, "Sacrifice and offering you did not desire, but a body you prepared for me;

UST

5 That is why, as the Messiah was coming into the world, he said to his Father, "It is not sacrifices and offerings that you have wanted, but you have prepared for me a body to offer.

Hebrews 10:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- whole burnt offerings
- sin {offerings
- in...you did...take pleasure

Translation Words - UST

- Animals...completely burn up when people offer them to you
- pleased you...please you
- neither do other sacrifices

ULT

6 in whole burnt offerings and concerning sin {offerings} you did not take pleasure.

UST

6 Animals that completely burn up when people offer them to you, these animals have not pleased you, and neither do other sacrifices please you.

Hebrews 10:7

Then I said (ULT)
Because of this, I said (UST)

Here, **I** refers to Christ.

Translation Words - ULT

- as} it is written
- of a scroll
- your...will
- O God

Translation Words - UST

- My God
- what you want me to do
- just as they have written
- in...scriptures

ULT

7 Then I said, 'Behold, I have come— {as} it is written about me in a section of a scroll— to do your will, O God.'"

UST

7 Because of this, I said, 'My God, listen! I have come here in order to do what you want me to do, just as they have written about me in the scriptures.'"

Hebrews 10:8

General Information:

Though changing the wording slightly, the author repeats these quotations from a psalm of David for emphasis.

Sacrifices...offerings (ULT)
It is...sacrifices...offerings (UST)

See how you translated the words **Sacrifices** and **offerings** in Hebrews 10:5.

whole burnt offerings...sin offerings (ULT)
animals...the priests have completely burned up...for those who have sinned (UST)

See how you translated **whole burnt offerings** and **sin offerings** in Hebrews 10:6.

which...are offered (ULT)
even though those things were...offered (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "that priests offer" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- Sacrifices
- offerings
- whole burnt offerings
- sin offerings
- did you take pleasure in them
- the law

Translation Words - UST

- It is...sacrifices
- offerings
- animals...the priests have completely burned up
- those who have sinned
- They have...pleased you
- the laws that God gave Moses

ULT

8 When he says above, "Sacrifices and offerings and whole burnt offerings and sin offerings you did not desire, nor did you take pleasure in them" (which are offered according to the law),

UST

8 First the Messiah said, "It is not sacrifices and offerings and animals that the priests have completely burned up and other offerings to atone for those who have sinned that you have really wanted. They have not pleased you." He said that even though those things were offered according to the laws that God gave Moses!

Hebrews 10:9

Behold (ULT)
Listen (UST)

Alternate translation: "Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I
am about to tell you"

**He takes away the first {practice} in order to
establish the second {practice (ULT)**
**Thus God took away the first way of
sacrificing for sin in order to establish the
second way by sacrificing the Messiah (UST)**

Stopping the **first practice** is spoken of as if it were an object that
could be taken away. Starting the **second practice** is spoken of as
establishing that practice. Alternate translation: "He stops people
atoning for sins the first way in order to atone for sins the second way" (See: Metaphor)

the first {practice...the second {practice (ULT)
**took away the first way of sacrificing for sin...the second way by sacrificing
the Messiah (UST)**

The words **first** and **second** are ordinal numbers. Alternate translation: "the old practice ... the new practice" (See:
Ordinal Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- your...will

Translation Words - UST

- what...you...want me to do

ULT

⁹ then he said, "Behold, I have come to
do your will." He takes away the first
{practice} in order to establish the
second {practice}.

UST

⁹ Then, concerning his offering himself
as a sacrifice to atone for people's sin,
he said, "Listen! I have come here to do
what you want me to do!" Thus God
took away the first way of sacrificing for
sin in order to establish the second way
by sacrificing the Messiah.

Hebrews 10:10

we are sanctified (ULT)
God set us apart for himself (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God has sanctified us" or "God has dedicated us to himself" (See: Active or Passive)

through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ (ULT)
Jesus the Messiah...This happened when Jesus the Messiah offered his own body...as a sacrifice (UST)

> ### ULT
>
> **10** By that will, we are sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.
>
> ### UST
>
> **10** Because Jesus the Messiah did what God wanted him to do, God set us apart for himself. This happened when Jesus the Messiah offered his own body once as a sacrifice that he will never need to repeat.

The abstract noun **offering** can be expressed with the verb "offer" or "sacrifice." Alternate translation: "because Jesus Christ offered his body as a sacrifice" or "because Jesus Christ sacrificed his body" (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- sanctified
- offering
- of...body
- of Jesus
- Christ

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- the Messiah
- God set...apart for himself
- offered...as a sacrifice
- his own body

Hebrews 10:11

never are able to take away sins (ULT)
could never remove the guilt for anyone's sins (UST)

This speaks of **sins** as if they are objects that a person can **take away**. Alternate translation: "can never cause God to forgive sins" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- priest
- day
- ministering
- sacrifices
- sins

Translation Words - UST

- priest
- daily
- in front of the altar, he performs rituals
- sacrifices
- for anyone's sins

ULT

11 And indeed every priest stands every day ministering, and repeatedly offering the same sacrifices that never are able to take away sins.

UST

11 As every priest stands daily in front of the altar, he performs rituals and offers the same kind of sacrifices that could never remove the guilt for anyone's sins.

Hebrews 10:12

**sat down at the right hand of God (ULT)
After that, he sat down to rule beside God in...
place of highest honor (UST)**

To sit at the **right hand of God** is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. See how you translated a similar phrase in Hebrews 1:3. Alternate translation: "he sat down at the place of honor and authority beside God" (See: Symbolic Action)

Translation Words - ULT

- sacrifice
- sins
- the right hand
- of God

Translation Words - UST

- a sacrifice...that...enough
- sins
- to rule beside...place of highest honor
- God

ULT

12 But he, having offered for all time one sacrifice for sins, sat down at the right hand of God;

UST

12 But the Messiah offered a sacrifice for sins that will be enough forever, and he offered it only one time! After that, he sat down to rule beside God in the place of highest honor.

Hebrews 10:13

until his enemies might be made a footstool for his feet (ULT)
God to completely defeat all his enemies (UST)

The humiliation of Christ's **enemies** is spoken of as if they were made a place for him to rest **his feet**. Alternate translation: "until God humiliates Christ's enemies and they become like a stool for his feet" (See: Metaphor)

until his enemies might be made a footstool for his feet (ULT)
God to completely defeat all his enemies (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "until God makes Christ's enemies like a stool for his feet" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- enemies
- a footstool

Translation Words - UST

- defeat all
- enemies

Hebrews 10:14

those who are being sanctified (ULT)
those in whom God has worked his cleansing and purity (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "those whom God is sanctifying" or "those whom God has dedicated to himself" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- offering
- he has perfected
- who are being sanctified

Translation Words - UST

- offering...as the sacrifice
- he perfected
- in whom God has worked his cleansing and purity

ULT

14 For by one offering he has perfected forever those who are being sanctified.

UST

14 By offering himself once as the sacrifice, he perfected forever those in whom God has worked his cleansing and purity.

Hebrews 10:15

General Information:

This is a quotation from the prophet Jeremiah in the Old Testament.

Translation Words - ULT

- Holy Spirit
- testifies

Translation Words - UST

- Holy Spirit
- confirms...that is true

ULT

15 And the Holy Spirit also testifies to us, for after saying,

UST

15 The Holy Spirit also confirms to us that that is true. First he says:

Hebrews 10:16

with them (ULT)
on behalf of my people (UST)

Alternate translation: "with my people"

after those days (ULT)
When...time of the first...has finished...
agreement on behalf of them (UST)

Alternate translation: "when the time of the first covenant with my people has finished"

putting my laws in their hearts (ULT)
them...my laws...I will cause...to obey (UST)

Here, **hearts** is a metonym for a person's inner being. (See: Metonymy)

putting my laws in their hearts (ULT)
them...my laws...I will cause...to obey (UST)

The phrase **put them in their hearts** is a metaphor for enabling people to obey the law. Alternate translation: "I will enable them to obey my laws" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- covenant
- days
- the Lord
- laws
- hearts
- minds

Translation Words - UST

- time of...has finished
- agreement...a new
- the Lord
- understand
- laws
- obey

Hebrews 10:17

General Information:

This continues the quotation from the prophet Jeremiah in the Old Testament.

Their sins and lawless deeds I will remember no longer."

This is the second part of the Holy Spirit's testimony (Hebrews 10:15-16).

Their sins and their lawless deeds (ULT)
them for their sins, and...having sinned (UST)

The words **sins** and **lawless deeds** mean basically the same thing. Together they emphasize how bad the sin is. Alternate translation: "The things they did that were forbidden and how they broke the law" (See: Doublet)

Translation Words - ULT

- sins
- lawless deeds

Translation Words - UST

- sins
- for...having sinned

Hebrews 10:18

Now (ULT)
that (UST)

Now is used to draw attention to the important point that follows. It does not mean "at this moment."

where...there is} forgiveness for these (ULT)
When God...has forgiven someone's sins... person (UST)

You can reword this to express the abstract noun **forgiveness** with the verb "forgive." Alternate translation: "when God has forgiven these things" (See: Abstract Nouns)

there is} no longer sacrifice for sin (ULT)
does not need to make any more offerings to make up for his sin (UST)

You can reword this to express the abstract noun **sacrifice** with the verb "make offerings." Alternate translation: "people no longer need to make offerings for sin" (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- there is} forgiveness
- sacrifice
- sin

Translation Words - UST

- has forgiven someone's sins
- offerings
- to make up...his sin

Hebrews 10:19

Connecting Statement:

Having made it clear that there is only one sacrifice for sin, the writer continues with the picture of the most holy place in the temple, where only the high priest could enter each year with the blood of the sacrifice for sins. He reminds the believers that they now worship God in his presence as if they were standing in the most holy place.

brothers (ULT)
my fellow believers (UST)

Here, **brothers** refers to all believers in Christ whether male or female. Alternate translation: "brothers and sisters" or "fellow believers" (See: Metaphor)

the holy {place (ULT)
very holy place...the (UST)

Here, **the holy place** refers to the presence of God, not the most holy place in the old tabernacle. (See: Metaphor)

by the blood of Jesus (ULT)
what Jesus accomplished when his own blood flowed for us (UST)

Here, **blood of Jesus** refers to the death of Jesus. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- brothers
- confidence
- holy {place
- blood
- of Jesus

Translation Words - UST

- my fellow believers
- what Jesus accomplished when his own
- blood flowed for us
- we can confidently go
- very holy place

ULT

19 Therefore, brothers, having confidence to enter the holy {place} by the blood of Jesus,

UST

19 So, my fellow believers, because we trust in what Jesus accomplished when his own blood flowed for us, we can confidently go into God's very presence that was symbolized by the very holy place in the sacred tent.

Hebrews 10:20

a new and living way (ULT)
to go into God's presence...a new way...we can live forever (UST)

This could mean: (1) the **new way** to God that Jesus has provided results in believers **living** forever. (2) Jesus is alive, and he is the **way** believers enter into the presence of God.

through the curtain (ULT)
by making...This new way (UST)

The **curtain** in the earthly temple represented the separation between people and God's true presence. (See: Metaphor)

his flesh (ULT)
Jesus, who died for us (UST)

Here, **flesh** stands for the body of Jesus, and his body stands for his sacrificial death. Alternate translation: "by means of his death" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- has established
- living
- curtain
- flesh

Translation Words - UST

- He has enabled
- we can live forever
- This new way
- Jesus, who died for us

ULT

20 which has established for us a new and living way through the curtain, that is, his flesh,

UST

20 He has enabled us to go into God's presence by making a new way in which we can live forever. This new way is Jesus, who died for us.

Hebrews 10:21

**and a great priest over the house of God (ULT)
The Messiah is a great priest who rules over us, we who are God's people (UST)**

This must be translated in such a way as to make it clear that Jesus is this **great priest**.

**over the house (ULT)
who rules over us, we who are…people (UST)**

Alternate translation: "in charge of the house"

**the house of God (ULT)
us, we who are God's people (UST)**

This speaks about God's people as if they were a literal **house** for him. Alternate translation: "all the people of God" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- a…priest
- house
- house of God
- of God

Translation Words - UST

- priest
- us, we who are…people
- us, we who are…God's…people
- God's

ULT

21 and a great priest over the house of God,

UST

21 The Messiah is a great priest who rules over us, we who are God's people.

Hebrews 10:22

let us approach (ULT)
So we must approach God (UST)

Here, **approach** stands for worshiping God, as a priest would go up to God's altar to sacrifice animals to him. (See: Metonymy)

with true hearts (ULT)
sincerely...It is he who has made our thinking clear...in (UST)

Here, **true hearts** stands for the genuine will and motivation of the believers. Alternate translation: "with sincerity" or "with sincerely" (See: Metonymy)

in full assurance of faith (ULT)
by confidently trusting in Jesus (UST)

Alternate translation: "and with a confident faith" or "and trusting completely in Jesus"

our} hearts having been sprinkled clean (ULT)
It is as if he sprinkled his own blood over our thinking...purified our desires, and as if he (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "as if had he made our hearts clean with his blood" (See: Active or Passive)

our} hearts having been sprinkled clean (ULT)
It is as if he sprinkled his own blood over our thinking...purified our desires, and as if he (UST)

Here, **hearts** is a metonym for the conscience, the awareness of right and wrong. (See: Metonymy)

our} hearts having been sprinkled clean (ULT)
It is as if he sprinkled his own blood over our thinking...purified our desires, and as if he (UST)

Being made **clean** is a metaphor for being forgiven and being given the status of righteousness. (See: Metaphor)

having been sprinkled clean (ULT)
It is as if he sprinkled his own blood over...purified...as if he (UST)

Sprinkling was a symbolic action done by the priests by which they applied the benefits of the covenant to people and to objects. See how you translated this in Hebrews 9:19. (See: Symbolic Action)

ULT

22 let us approach with true hearts in full assurance of faith, {our} hearts having been sprinkled clean from an evil conscience and {our} bodies having been washed with pure water.

UST

22 So we must approach God sincerely by confidently trusting in Jesus. It is he who has made our thinking clear after having sinned. It is as if he sprinkled his own blood over our thinking and purified our desires, and as if he had washed our bodies in pure water.

our} bodies having been washed with pure water (ULT)
had washed our bodies...pure water (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "as if he had washed our bodies in pure water" (See: Active or Passive)

our} bodies having been washed with pure water (ULT)
had washed our bodies...pure water (UST)

This **washing** stands for the believer being made acceptable to God. (See: Metaphor)

our} bodies having been washed with pure water (ULT)
had washed our bodies...pure water (UST)

If the translator understands this phrase as referring to Christian baptism, then **water** is literal, not figurative. But if **water** is taken as literal, then **pure** is figurative, standing for the spiritual purity that baptism is said here to accomplish. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- true
- hearts
- hearts (2)
- of faith
- evil
- an...conscience
- bodies
- pure
- with...water

Translation Words - UST

- sincerely
- trusting
- It is he who has made our thinking clear
- our thinking...our desires, and (2)
- having sinned
- having sinned
- our bodies
- pure
- water

Hebrews 10:23

Let us hold tightly the confession of {our} hope (ULT)
We must unwaveringly keep stating what we believe...we must...expect him to do these things (UST)

Here, **hold tightly** is a metaphor that refers to a person determining to do something and refusing to stop. (See: Metaphor)

Let us hold tightly the confession of {our} hope (ULT)
We must unwaveringly keep stating what we believe...we must...expect him to do these things (UST)

You can translate the abstract nouns **confession** and **hope** as verbs. Alternate translation: "Let us be determined to continue confessing the things that we confidently expect from God" (See: Abstract Nouns)

without wavering (ULT)
confidently (UST)

Being uncertain about something is spoken of as if he were **wavering** or leaning from side to side. Alternate translation: "without being unsure" or "without doubting" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- confession
- of...hope
- who has promised
- is} faithful

Translation Words - UST

- stating what we believe
- God faithfully does
- all...promised to do
- we must...expect him to do these things

Hebrews 10:24

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- love
- good
- deeds

Translation Words - UST

- love
- good
- deeds

ULT

24 And let us consider one another, to stimulate love and good deeds,

UST

24 And let us think how each of us can best encourage each other to love one another and to do good deeds.

Hebrews 10:25

not abandoning our own meeting together (ULT)
We must not cease assembling ourselves to worship the Lord (UST)

You can make explicit that the people met to worship. Alternate translation: "let us not stop coming together to worship" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

as you see the day approaching (ULT)
since we know that the time that the Lord will return is near (UST)

Here, **the day** refers to when Jesus will return. (See: Metonymy)

as you see the day approaching (ULT)
since we know that the time that the Lord will return is near (UST)

A future time is spoken of as if it were an object coming closer to the speaker. Alternate translation: "as you know that Christ will return soon" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- just as {is
- encouraging
- day

Translation Words - UST

- as
- each one of us must encourage the others
- time that the Lord will return

> **ULT**
>
> **25** not abandoning our own meeting together, just as {is} the habit of some, but encouraging, and even more as you see the day approaching.
>
> **UST**
>
> **25** We must not cease assembling ourselves to worship the Lord, as some people have done. Instead, each one of us must encourage the others. Let us do that all the more since we know that the time that the Lord will return is near.

Hebrews 10:26

Connecting Statement:

The writer now gives his fourth warning.

if…deliberately…we…keep on sinning (ULT)
If we deliberately and habitually…sin…we (UST)

Alternate translation: "if we know we are sinning but we do it again and again"

after we receive the knowledge of the truth (ULT)
after…have learned the true experience (UST)

Here, **knowledge of the truth** is spoken of as if it were an object that could be given by one person to another. Alternate translation: "after we have learned the truth" (See: Metaphor)

of the truth (ULT)
true experience (UST)

This refers to the **truth** about God. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

a sacrifice for sins no longer remains (ULT)
about the Messiah, no other sacrifice will help us (UST)

No one is able to give a new **sacrifice** because Christ's sacrifice is the only one that works. Alternate translation: "no one can offer a sacrifice for which God will forgive our sins" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

for sins…a sacrifice (ULT)
about the Messiah…will help us…sacrifice (UST)

Here, **sacrifice for sins** stands for "an effective way to sacrifice animals to take away sins"

Translation Words - ULT

- keep on sinning
- sins
- we receive
- knowledge
- of…truth
- a sacrifice

Translation Words - UST

- sin

> **ULT**
>
> **26** For if we deliberately keep on sinning after we receive the knowledge of the truth, a sacrifice for sins no longer remains,
>
> **UST**
>
> **26** If we deliberately and habitually sin after we have learned the true experience about the Messiah, no other sacrifice will help us.

- will help us
- have learned
- true experience
- true experience
- sacrifice

Hebrews 10:27

of judgment (ULT)
God will judge us (UST)

Here, **judgment**, refers to when God will judge. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

of fiery zeal being about to consume the enemies (ULT)
will righteously punish all his enemies in a furious fire (UST)

<div>

ULT

27 but a certain fearful expectation of judgment, and of fiery zeal being about to consume the enemies.

UST

27 Instead, we must fearfully expect that God will judge us, and then he will righteously punish all his enemies in a furious fire.

</div>

God's **zeal** is spoken of as if it were fire that would burn up his **enemies**. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- of judgment
- fiery
- of...zeal
- to consume
- enemies

Translation Words - UST

- God will judge us
- righteously punish
- all his enemies
- in a...fire
- furious

Hebrews 10:28

two or three witnesses (ULT)
at least two or three people testified against him (UST)

It is implied that this means "of at least two or three witness." (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- who has rejected
- the law of Moses
- dies
- mercy
- witnesses

Translation Words - UST

- rejected
- the laws that God gave Moses
- had to die
- mercy
- testified against him

ULT

28 Anyone who has rejected the law of Moses dies without mercy at {the testimony of} two or three witnesses.

UST

28 Everyone who rejected the laws that God gave Moses had to die without mercy when at least two or three people testified against him.

Hebrews 10:29

How much worse punishment do you think will deserve the one who has trampled underfoot the Son of God, and has considered the blood of the covenant—by which he was sanctified—{as} profane, and has insulted the Spirit of grace (ULT)
That is severe punishment. But the Messiah is God's Son, and he is also God. If anyone rejects the agreement that he has made and despises the blood that flowed from him—if that person rejects the blood in exchange for which God forgave him—if that person rejects the Spirit of God, who acted so kindly toward him—then God will punish him very, very severely (UST)

ULT

29 How much worse punishment do you think will deserve the one who has trampled underfoot the Son of God, and has considered the blood of the covenant—by which he was sanctified—{as} profane, and has insulted the Spirit of grace!

UST

29 That is severe punishment. But the Messiah is God's Son, and he is also God. If anyone rejects the agreement that he has made and despises the blood that flowed from him—if that person rejects the blood in exchange for which God forgave him—if that person rejects the Spirit of God, who acted so kindly toward him—then God will punish him very, very severely.

The author is emphasizing the greatness of the **punishment** for those who reject Christ. Alternate translation: "This was severe punishment. But the punishment will be even greater for anyone who has trampled underfoot the Son of God, and has considered the blood of the covenant—by which he was sanctified—{as} profane, and has insulted the Spirit of grace!" (See: Exclamations)

who has trampled underfoot the Son of God (ULT)
But...Messiah is God's Son...If anyone rejects the (UST)

Disregarding Christ and scorning him are spoken of as if someone had walked on him. Alternate translation: "has rejected the Son of God" (See: Metaphor)

the Son of God (ULT)
But...Messiah is God's Son...the (UST)

Son of God is an important title for Jesus. (See: Translating Son and Father)

has considered the blood of the covenant...as} profane (ULT)
agreement that he has made...despises the...if that person rejects the blood (UST)

This shows how the person has trampled the Son of God. Alternate translation: "treated the blood of the covenant … as unholy"

the blood of the covenant (ULT)
agreement that he has made...the...if that person rejects the blood (UST)

Here, **blood** stands for Christ's death, by which God established the new **covenant**. (See: Metonymy)

**the blood of the covenant…as} profane…by which he was sanctified (ULT)
agreement that he has made…despises the…if that person rejects the
blood…blood that flowed from him…in exchange for which God forgave him
(UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "the blood
by which God sanctified him as profane" (See: Active or Passive)

**the…the…Spirit…of grace (ULT)
the…the…Spirit of God…acted so kindly toward him (UST)**

Alternate translation: "the Spirit of God, who provides grace"

Translation Words - ULT

- punishment
- Son of God
- blood
- of…covenant
- he was sanctified
- Spirit
- of grace

Translation Words - UST

- God's Son
- agreement that he has made
- if that person rejects…blood
- exchange for which God forgave him
- Spirit of God
- acted so kindly toward him
- then God will punish him

Hebrews 10:30

we know (ULT)
we know (UST)

The word **we** here refers to the writer and all believers. These two quotations come from the law that Moses gave in the Old Testament. (See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We')

Vengeance {is} mine; I will pay back…the one…The Lord will judge his…people (ULT) right and power to give people what they deserve for having sinned belongs to me. I will punish them as they deserve…The…The Lord will judge his…people (UST)

These two quotations come from the law that Moses gave in the Old Testament.

Vengeance {is} mine (ULT)
right and power to give people what they deserve for having sinned belongs to me…will punish them (UST)

Vengeance is spoken of as if it were an object that belongs to God, who has the right to do as he wishes with what he owns. God has the right to take vengeance on his enemies. (See: Metaphor)

I will pay back (ULT)
I…as they deserve (UST)

God taking vengeance is spoken of as if he were paying back the harmful things that someone has done to others. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- we know
- Vengeance
- The Lord
- will judge
- people

Translation Words - UST

- we know
- will punish them
- The Lord
- will judge
- people

ULT

30 For we know the one who said, "Vengeance {is} mine; I will pay back." And again, "The Lord will judge his people."

UST

30 We can be sure of this, since we know that God said, "The right and power to give people what they deserve for having sinned belongs to me. I will punish them as they deserve." And Moses wrote, "The Lord will judge his people."

Hebrews 10:31

to fall into the hands (ULT)
the...seizes and punishes you (UST)

Receiving God's full punishment is spoken of as if the person were **to fall** into God's **hands**. Alternate translation: "to receive the full punishment" (See: Metaphor)

to fall into the hands (ULT)
the...seizes and punishes you (UST)

Here, **hands** refers to God's power to judge. Alternate translation: "into the judgment" (See: Metonymy)

> **ULT**
>
> **31** {It is} a fearful thing to fall into the hands of the living God!
>
> **UST**
>
> **31** It will be a terrible thing if the all-powerful God who really lives seizes and punishes you!

Translation Words - ULT

- It is} a fearful thing
- the hands
- of the...God
- living

Translation Words - UST

- It will be a terrible thing
- if...all-powerful God
- who really lives
- seizes and punishes you

Hebrews 10:32

the former days (ULT)
the earlier times...the (UST)

Alternate translation: "the time in the past"

having been enlightened (ULT)
you first understood...truth about the Messiah (UST)

Learning the truth is spoken of as if God shined a light on the person. Alternate translation: "after you had learned the truth about Christ" (See: Metaphor)

having been enlightened (ULT)
you first understood...truth about the Messiah (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "after God had shown you the truth about Christ" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- days
- you endured
- of suffering

Translation Words - UST

- times
- You endured
- you suffered, you continued to trust God

Hebrews 10:33

being publicly exposed to both ridicule and persecution (ULT)
people insulted you in public; at other times they made you suffer (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "people ridiculed you both by insulting and by persecuting you in public" (See: Active or Passive)

partners of those...having become (ULT)
At other times...with other believers...you suffered...in their hardships (UST)

Alternate translation: "you joined those"

Translation Words - ULT

- being publicly exposed
- to...ridicule
- persecution

Translation Words - UST

- people insulted you
- in public
- they made you suffer

Hebrews 10:34

a better and everlasting possession (ULT) forever, possessions that are much better than those that they took from you (UST)

God's eternal blessings are spoken of as a **possession**. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- you…showed compassion
- to…prisoners
- you accepted
- joy
- of…possessions
- a…possession
- knowing

Translation Words - UST

- You not only were kind to
- were in prison because they believed in
- but you…accepted it…when unbelievers
- joyfully
- possessions
- possessions that are much
- You accepted it because you…knew very well that

ULT

34 For you also showed compassion to the prisoners, and you accepted with joy the seizure of your possessions, knowing yourselves to have a better and everlasting possession. [1]

UST

34 You not only were kind to those who were in prison because they believed in the Messiah, but you also accepted it joyfully when unbelievers took away your possessions. You accepted it because you yourselves knew very well that you had possessions in heaven forever, possessions that are much better than those that they took from you!

Hebrews 10:35

General Information:

In 10:37 is a quotation from the prophet Isaiah in the Old Testament.

So do not throw away your confidence, which has a great reward (ULT)
So do not become discouraged when they cause you to suffer, because if you continue to trust in God, he will greatly reward you (UST)

ULT

35 So do not throw away your confidence, which has a great reward.

UST

35 So do not become discouraged when they cause you to suffer, because if you continue to trust in God, he will greatly reward you.

A person no longer having **confidence** is spoken of as if the person were to **throw away** his confidence, like a person would discard something worthless. Alternate translation: "do not stop being confident, because you will receive a great reward for being confident" (See: Metaphor)

So do not throw away your confidence, which has a great reward (ULT)
So do not become discouraged when they cause you to suffer, because if you continue to trust in God, he will greatly reward you (UST)

You can translate the abstract noun **confidence** with the adjective "confident" or the adverb "confidently." Alternate translation: "do not stop confidently trusting in God, who will reward you greatly" (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- confidence
- a...reward

Translation Words - UST

- because if...continue to trust in God
- reward you

Hebrews 10:36

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- of endurance
- will of God
- of God
- you might receive
- promise

Translation Words - UST

- patiently continue to trust in him
- what...God...wants you to do
- God
- he will give you
- what he has promised

ULT

36 For you have need of endurance so that, having done the will of God, you might receive the promise.

UST

36 You must patiently continue to trust in him in order that, because of your doing what God wants you to do, he will give you what he has promised.

Hebrews 10:37

For in a very little {while (ULT)
A prophet wrote in the scriptures that God said about the Messiah: "In just a short time (UST)

You can make explicit who is speaking. Alternate translation: "As God said in the scriptures, 'For in a very little while" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

in a very little while

Alternate translation: "very soon"

ULT

37 "For in a very little {while}, the one who is coming will come and will not delay.

UST

37 A prophet wrote in the scriptures that God said about the Messiah: "In just a short time the one I promised would come will surely come; he will not delay coming.

Hebrews 10:38

General Information:

In 10:38 the author quotes from the prophet Habakkuk, which directly follows the quotation from the prophet Isaiah in 10:37.

righteous one…my…righteous one…if he would shrink back…with him (ULT)
those who belong to…me, who act righteously…If they are cowards…stop trusting in me…I will…be pleased with them (UST)

> **ULT**
>
> **38** But my righteous one will live by faith, and if he would shrink back, my soul is not pleased with him."
>
> **UST**
>
> **38** But those who belong to me, who act righteously, will continue to live trusting in me. If they are cowards and stop trusting in me, I will not be pleased with them.

Here, **my righteous one**, **he**, and **him** refer to any of God's people in general. Alternate translation: "my faithful people … If any one of them shrinks … with that person" or "my faithful people … If they shrink … with them" (See: Generic Noun Phrases)

righteous one…my…soul (ULT)
those who belong to…me…I will…be pleased with them (UST)

Here, both occurrences of **my** refer to God.

Translation Words - ULT

- righteous one
- will live
- faith
- soul
- is…pleased

Translation Words - UST

- who act righteously
- will continue to live
- trusting…me
- I will…be pleased with them
- I will…be pleased with them

Hebrews 10:39

**of shrinking back to destruction (ULT)
people who are cowards and cause God to destroy us (UST)**

A person who loses courage and faith are spoken of as if he were stepping back in fear from something. And **destruction** is spoken of as if it were a destination. Alternate translation: "who stop trusting God, which will cause him to destroy us" (See: Metaphor)

**to the preservation of the soul (ULT)
so that he will save us forever (UST)**

Living eternally with God is spoken of as if it were keeping one's **soul**.
Alternate translation: "so that his soul will live with God forever" (See: Metaphor)

**to the preservation of the soul (ULT)
so that he will save us forever (UST)**

Here, **soul** refers to the whole person. Alternate translation: "so that he will live with God forever" (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- of faith
- of the soul

Translation Words - UST

- we are people who trust in him
- us

ULT

39 But we are not of shrinking back to destruction, but of faith to the preservation of the soul.
10:34 [1]

UST

39 But we are not people who are cowards and cause God to destroy us. Instead, we are people who trust in him, so that he will save us forever.

Hebrews 11

Hebrews 11 General Notes

Structure

The writer begins this chapter by telling what faith is. Then he gives many examples of people who had faith and how they lived.

Important concepts in this chapter

Faith

In both the old and new covenants, God required faith. Some people with faith performed miracles and were very powerful. Other people with faith suffered greatly.

Hebrews 11:1

Connecting Statement:

The author tells three things about faith in this brief introduction.

Now (ULT)
and (UST)

Now is used here to mark a break in the main teaching. Here the author starts to explain the meaning of "faith."

is...faith...assurance {of things} being hoped for (ULT)
is when people trust God...Faith...they are sure they will receive the things they confidently expect him to give them (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "when we have faith, we are sure of the things we hope for" or "faith is what allows a person to confidently expect certain things"

of things} being hoped for (ULT)
they confidently expect him to give them (UST)

Here **things being hoped for** refers specifically to the sure promises of God, especially the certainty that all believers in Jesus will live with God forever in heaven.

proof of things not being seen (ULT)
Faith is when people are certain they will see those things happen, though, for now, those things cannot be seen (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "proof of what we still have not seen" or "proof of what still have not happened" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- faith
- of things} being hoped for

Translation Words - UST

- Faith
- they confidently expect him to give them

Hebrews 11:2

For by this (ULT)
Because...trusted in God (UST)

Alternate translation: "Because they were certain about events that had not happened"

the elders were approved (ULT)
our ancestors...he approved of them (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God approved of our ancestors because they had faith" (See: Active or Passive)

the elders (ULT)
our ancestors (UST)

The author is speaking to the Hebrews about their Hebrew ancestors. Alternate translation: "our ancestors" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Hebrews 11:3

the ages to have been prepared by the command of God (ULT)
God formed...universe by commanding that it exist (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "that God created the universe by commanding it to exist" (See: Active or Passive)

what is visible was not made out of things that were visible

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God did not create what we see out of things that were visible"

Translation Words - ULT

- By faith
- we understand
- to have been prepared
- by the command
- of God

Translation Words - UST

- Because we trust in God
- we understand that
- God
- formed
- by commanding that it exist

Hebrews 11:4

Connecting Statement:

The writer then gives many examples (mostly from Old Testament writings) of people who lived by faith even though they did not receive what God had promised while they lived on the earth.

he was attested to be righteous (ULT)
declared...Abel was righteous (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God declared him to be righteous" or "God declared that Abel was righteous" (See: Active or Passive)

he still speaks (ULT)
we still learn from...about trusting God (UST)

Reading the scriptures and learning about Abel's faith is spoken of as if Abel himself were still speaking. Alternate translation: "we still learn from what Abel did" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- By faith
- Abel
- having died
- God
- God
- a...sacrifice
- Cain
- he was attested
- testifying
- righteous
- gifts

Translation Words - UST

- Adam's son...trusted God
- Abel
- Abel...righteous
- although Abel is dead
- to God
- God
- older brother Cain
- offered to God
- declared
- God spoke well about...and
- Abel sacrificed

ULT

4 By faith Abel offered God a better sacrifice than Cain, through which he was attested to be righteous, God testifying because of his gifts, and through faith, having died, he still speaks.

UST

4 Because Adam's son Abel trusted God, he sacrificed something better to God than what his older brother Cain offered to God. So God spoke well about what Abel sacrificed, and God declared that Abel was righteous. And although Abel is dead, we still learn from him about trusting God.

Hebrews 11:5

By faith Enoch was taken up, not seeing death (ULT)
Because Enoch believed…God took him up to heaven. Enoch did not die (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "It was by faith that Enoch did not die because God took him" (See: Active or Passive)

seeing…death (ULT)
Enoch did not die (UST)

This speaks of **death** as if it were an object that people can see. It means to experience death. Alternate translation: "dying" (See: Metaphor)

before…his} removal (ULT)
Before…took him away (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "before God took him" (See: Active or Passive)

he was reported to have pleased God (ULT)
God…he testified that Enoch pleased him well (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. This could mean: (1) God said that Enoch had pleased him. (2) people said that Enoch pleased God. (See: Active or Passive)

ULT

5 By faith Enoch was taken up, not seeing death, and "He was not found, because God took him." For before {his} removal, he was reported to have pleased God.

UST

5 Because Enoch believed God, God took him up to heaven. Enoch did not die, because God took him, but no one could find him. Before God took him away, he testified that Enoch pleased him well.

Translation Words - ULT

- By faith
- Enoch
- death
- God
- God

Translation Words - UST

- Because…believed
- Enoch
- God
- God
- Enoch did not die

Hebrews 11:6

Now without faith (ULT)
only if they trust him...that (UST)

Now does not mean "at this moment," but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

without...faith {it is} impossible to please him (ULT)
only if...Now it is possible for people to please God...they trust him (UST)

You can state the double negative **without ... impossible** in positive form. Alternate translation: "a person can please God only if he has faith in God" (See: Double Negatives)

the one who comes to God (ULT)
anyone who wants to come to God (UST)

Wanting to worship God and belong to his people is spoken of as if the person is literally coming **to God**. Alternate translation: "that anyone who wants to belong to God" (See: Metaphor)

of those who seek...is a rewarder (ULT)
those who try to know...he rewards (UST)

Alternate translation: "he rewards those who seek"

of those who seek him (ULT)
those who try to know him (UST)

People who learn about God and make an effort to obey him are spoken of as if they were seeking to find him. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- faith
- to God
- to believe
- who seek

Translation Words - UST

- they trust him
- God
- first believe
- try to know

Hebrews 11:7

having been given a divine message (ULT)
God warned Noah...he would send a flood, which (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "because God told him" (See: Active or Passive)

about things not yet being seen (ULT)
that...had never seen before...of the (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "about things no one had ever seen before" or "about events that had not happened yet" (See: Active or Passive)

the world (ULT)
rest...people (UST)

Here, **the world** refers to the world's human population. Alternate translation: "the people living in the world at that time" (See: Metonymy)

the...became an heir of...righteousness (ULT)
the...So Noah became a person whom God made right with himself, because (UST)

Noah receiving **righteousness** is spoken of as if he were inheriting property and wealth from a family member. Alternate translation: "received from God the righteousness" (See: Metaphor)

that is according to faith (ULT)
In...Noah trusted him (UST)

Alternate translation: "that God gives to those who have faith in him"

Translation Words - ULT

- By faith
- faith
- Noah
- having become reverently obedient
- an ark
- salvation
- of...household
- he condemned
- world
- an heir
- of...righteousness

ULT

7 By faith Noah, having been given a divine message about things not yet being seen, having become reverently obedient, built an ark for salvation of his household, through which he condemned the world and became an heir of the righteousness that is according to faith.

UST

7 God warned Noah that he would send a flood, which Noah had never seen before, and Noah believed him. He honored God by building a ship to save his family. In this way he showed that the rest of the people deserved for God to punish them. So Noah became a person whom God made right with himself, because Noah trusted him.

Translation Words - UST

- Noah...believed him
- Noah trusted him
- Noah
- So Noah became a person whom God made right with himself, because
- So Noah became a person whom God made right with himself, because
- He honored God
- a ship
- save
- family
- he showed...deserved...God to punish them
- rest...people

Hebrews 11:8

being called (ULT)
God called (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "when God called him" (See: Active or Passive)

to go out to a place (ULT)
go to the land that (UST)

Alternate translation: "to leave his home to go to the place"

that he was going to receive for an inheritance (ULT)
to…he would give his descendants…him (UST)

The land that God promised to give Abraham's descendants is spoken of as if it were **an inheritance** that Abraham was **going to receive**. Alternate translation: "that God would give him for an inheritance" (See: Metaphor)

went out (ULT)
left his country (UST)

Alternate translation: "he left his home"

ULT

8 By faith, Abraham, being called, obeyed to go out to a place that he was going to receive for an inheritance and went out, not knowing where he is going.

UST

8 God called Abraham to go to the land that he would give his descendants. Because Abraham trusted him, he obeyed God and left his country, even though he did not know where he was going.

Translation Words - ULT

- By faith
- Abraham
- being called
- obeyed
- to receive
- an inheritance
- knowing

Translation Words - UST

- God called
- Abraham
- give
- his descendants
- Because Abraham trusted
- he obeyed God
- he did…know

Hebrews 11:9

he lived in a land of promise as a foreigner (ULT)
he lived as though he were a foreigner...a land that God had promised to give (UST)

You can express the abstract noun **promise** with the verb "promised." Alternate translation: "he lived as a foreigner in the land God had promised to him" (See: Abstract Nouns)

the fellow heirs (ULT)
his descendants...did also. God promised to give to Isaac and Jacob (UST)

This speaks about Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob as if they were **fellow heirs** that would receive an inheritance from their father. Alternate translation: "heirs together" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- By faith
- of promise
- of...promise (2)
- as
- a foreigner
- tents
- Isaac
- Jacob

Translation Words - UST

- Because Abraham trusted God
- as though
- he were a foreigner
- God had promised...give
- he promised to give Abraham (2)
- tents
- and his son Isaac
- his grandson Jacob

ULT

9 By faith he lived in a land of promise as a foreigner, having lived in tents with Isaac and Jacob, the fellow heirs of the same promise,

UST

9 Because Abraham trusted God, he lived as though he were a foreigner in a land that God had promised to give his descendants. Abraham lived in tents, and his son Isaac and his grandson Jacob did also. God promised to give to Isaac and Jacob the same things that he promised to give Abraham.

Hebrews 11:10

the city having foundations (ULT)
the permanent city (UST)

Having **foundations** indicates that the city is permanent. Alternate translation: "the eternal city" (See: Metonymy)

whose architect and builder {is} God (ULT)
that God himself would design and build (UST)

Alternate translation: "which God designed and built" or "which God would design and build"

architect (ULT)
himself would design (UST)

An **architect** a person who designs buildings and cities.

Translation Words - ULT

- foundations
- is} God

Translation Words - UST

- permanent
- God

Hebrews 11:11

It was by faith, even though Sarah herself was barren, that Abraham received ability to father a child. This happened even though he was too old, since he considered

The verbs **received** and **considered** could be either masculine or feminine. Some versions interpret this verse as referring to Abraham. "By faith Abraham, even though Sarah herself was beyond the time of full age, received power to bear children, since he considered"

By faith (ULT)
by faith (UST)

You can express the abstract noun **faith** with the verb "believe." This could mean: (1) this happened because of Abraham's faith. Alternate translation: "It was because Abraham believed God" (2) this happened because of Sarah's faith. Alternate translation: "It was because Sarah believed God" (See: Abstract Nouns)

received ability for the conception of a descendant (ULT)
received the ability to bear a child (UST)

Alternate translation: "received ability to become a father" or "received ability to have a child"

since she considered {to be} faithful the one who had promised (ULT)
because...considered Yahweh to be faithful because he had made the promise to her that she would have a son (UST)

Alternate translation: "because he believed God, who had given the promise, to be faithful"

Translation Words - ULT

- By faith
- Sarah
- received
- ability
- the conception
- the time
- to be} faithful
- who had promised

Translation Words - UST

- Sarah
- was unable to have children because of her old-age...she
- by faith
- received
- the ability

ULT

11 By faith, even Sarah herself received ability for the conception of a descendant, even beyond the time of full age, since she considered {to be} faithful the one who had promised. [1]

UST

11 And even though Sarah was unable to have children because of her old-age, by faith she received the ability to bear a child, because she considered Yahweh to be faithful because he had made the promise to her that she would have a son.

• bear
• to be
• because he had made...promise to her that she would have a son

Hebrews 11:12

were born...just as the stars of the sky in number, and countless as the sand along the shore of the sea (ULT)
people descended who are...that...as many in number as the stars in the sky and are as countless as the grains of sand along the shore, just like God promised him (UST)

This simile means Abraham had very many descendants. (See: Simile)

as countless as sand by the seashore

Here, **countless as the sand along the shore of the sea** means that just as there are so many grains of **sand** on the seashore that no one can count them all, Abraham had so many descendants that no one can count them all.

ULT

12 Therefore, also from one {man}—and he being made dead—these were born, just as the stars of the sky in number, and countless as the sand along the shore of the sea.

UST

12 So, although Abraham was too old to have children, from that one man people descended who are as many in number as the stars in the sky and are as countless as the grains of sand along the shore, just like God promised him.

Translation Words - ULT

- he being made dead
- just as
- as
- of...sky

Translation Words - UST

- Abraham was too old to have children
- as many...as
- just like God promised him
- in...sky

Hebrews 11:13

without receiving the promises (ULT)
they had not yet received the things that God had promised to give them (UST)

This speaks of **the promises** as if they are objects that a person receives. Alternate translation: "without receiving what God had promised them" (See: Metaphor)

seeing and greeting them from far off (ULT)
it was as though they had seen those things… distance…they were glad (UST)

Future promised events are spoken of as if they were travelers arriving from far away. Alternate translation: "after learning what God will do in the future" (See: Metaphor)

having confessed (ULT)
It was as though they had admitted…that (UST)

Alternate translation: "they acknowledged" or "they accepted"

they are foreigners and exiles on the earth (ULT)
in the…they did not belong to this earth, but…they were only here temporarily (UST)

Here, **foreigners** and **exiles** mean basically the same thing. This emphasizes that this earth was not their true home. They were waiting for their true home that God would make for them. (See: Doublet)

ULT

13 In faith all these died without receiving the promises, but seeing and greeting them from far off, and having confessed that they are foreigners and exiles on the earth.

UST

13 While they still trusted in God, all these people died. Even though they had not yet received the things that God had promised to give them, it was as though they had seen those things in the distance, and they were glad. It was as though they had admitted that they did not belong to this earth, but that they were only here temporarily.

Translation Words - ULT

- faith
- died
- receiving
- promises
- having confessed
- exiles
- earth

Translation Words - UST

- trusted
- died
- they had…received
- things that God had promised to give them
- It was as though they had admitted…that
- earth
- they…only here temporarily

Hebrews 11:14

a homeland (ULT)
will become their true native land (UST)

Alternate translation: "a country for them to belong to"

Translation Words - ULT

- they seek

Translation Words - UST

- they...long for

Hebrews 11:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- opportunity
- to return

Translation Words - UST

- they could have
- simply returned there

Hebrews 11:16

a heavenly one (ULT)
desired a home in heaven (UST)

Alternate translation: "a heavenly country" or "a country in heaven"

God is not ashamed of them, to be called their God (ULT)
God...them...pleased for them to say that he is their God (UST)

You can express this in active form. Alternate translation: "God is not ashamed that they call him their God" (See: Active or Passive)

God is not ashamed of them, to be called their God (ULT)
God...them...pleased for them to say that he is their God (UST)

The writer expressed this in a negative form to stress that God was proud to be **their God**. You can express this in positive form. Alternate translation: "God is proud to have them say that he is their God" (See: Litotes)

ULT

16 But now, they desire a better one, that is, a heavenly one. Therefore God is not ashamed of them, to be called their God, for he has prepared a city for them.

UST

16 But, instead, they desired a better place in which to live. They desired a home in heaven. So God has prepared a city for them to live with him, and he is pleased for them to say that he is their God.

Translation Words - ULT

- a heavenly one
- God
- God (2)
- is...ashamed of
- to be called

Translation Words - UST

- desired a home in heaven
- God
- God (2)
- them...pleased for
- to say that he is

Hebrews 11:17

being tested (ULT)
when God tested him (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "when God tested him" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- By faith
- Abraham
- being tested
- Isaac
- who had received
- promises

Translation Words - UST

- Because...trusted God
- Abraham
- Isaac
- when God tested him
- Abraham, to whom God promised to give a son
- he had given him

ULT

17 By faith Abraham, being tested, offered Isaac, even the one who had received the promises offered up {his} one and only {son}.

UST

17 Because Abraham trusted God, he was ready to kill his son Isaac as a sacrifice when God tested him. Abraham, to whom God promised to give a son, was going to sacrifice the very son whom he had given him, the only son whom his own wife had borne!

Hebrews 11:18

To him it had been said (ULT)
It was about this son...God had said (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God had said to him" (See: Active or Passive)

your descendants will be named (ULT)
that I will consider your family to descend (UST)

Here, **named** means assigned or designated. Alternate translation: "your descendants will be designated" (See: Metonymy)

your descendants will be named (ULT)
that I will consider your family to descend (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "I will designate your descendants" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- Isaac
- descendants
- will be named

Translation Words - UST

- Isaac
- that I will consider
- family to descend

> **ULT**
>
> **18** To him it had been said, "Through Isaac your descendants will be named,"
>
> **UST**
>
> **18** It was about this son that God had said, "It is only from Isaac that I will consider your family to descend."

Hebrews 11:19

God is able to raise up even from the dead (ULT)

Alternate translation: "God was able to cause Isaac to live again"

to raise up even from the dead (ULT)

Here, **to raise up** is to make alive again. The words **from the dead** speak of all dead people together in the underworld.

in a parable (ULT)
if...it was as though (UST)

Here the phrase **in a parable** means that what the author says next is not to be understood literally. God did not bring Isaac back from death literally. But because Abraham was about to sacrifice Isaac when God stopped him, it was as if God brought him back from the dead. Alternate translation: "in a manner of speaking"

from there (ULT)
result was that (UST)

Alternate translation: "from the dead"

him...he received...back (ULT)
him...did receive (UST)

Alternate translation: "Abraham received Isaac back"

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- to raise up
- the dead
- he received...back

Translation Words - UST

- make Isaac live again
- died
- did receive
- God

ULT

19 having reasoned that God is able to raise up even from the dead, and in a parable, he received him back from there.

UST

19 Abraham considered that to fulfill that promise, God could make Isaac live again even if he died after Abraham had sacrificed him! The result was that when Abraham did receive Isaac back after God told him not to harm Isaac, it was as though he received him back even after he died.

Hebrews 11:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- By faith
- Isaac
- blessed
- Jacob
- Esau

Translation Words - UST

- Because...trusted God
- Isaac
- he prayed...God...bless
- Jacob
- Esau after he died

ULT

20 By faith also, concerning what is coming, Isaac blessed Jacob and Esau.

UST

20 Because Isaac trusted God, he prayed that God would bless his sons Jacob and Esau after he died.

Hebrews 11:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- By faith
- Jacob
- when he is dying
- blessed
- of...sons
- of Joseph
- worshiped
- of...staff

Translation Words - UST

- Because...trusted God
- Jacob
- as he was dying
- he prayed God would bless
- sons of
- his own son Joseph
- He worshiped God
- walking stick before he died

ULT

21 By faith Jacob, when he is dying, blessed each of the sons of Joseph, and worshiped, {leaning} on the end of his staff.

UST

21 Because Jacob trusted God, as he was dying, he prayed God would bless each of the sons of his own son Joseph. He worshiped God as he leaned upon his walking stick before he died.

Hebrews 11:22

coming to an end (ULT)
when he was...to die in Egypt, he thought ahead to (UST)

Here, **an end** is a polite way of referring to death. Alternate translation: "when he was about to die" (See: Euphemism)

spoke about the departure of the sons of Israel from Egypt (ULT)
about...the time when the Israelites would leave Egypt, and he instructed his people to carry (UST)

Alternate translation: "spoke of when the children of Israel would leave Egypt"

of the sons of Israel (ULT)
the time when the Israelites (UST)

Alternate translation: "the Israelites" or "the descendants of Israel"

instructed them about his bones (ULT)
and he instructed his people to carry...his bones with them when they left Egypt (UST)

Joseph died while in Egypt. He wanted his people to take **his bones** with them when they left Egypt so they could bury his bones in the land that God promised them. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

ULT

22 By faith Joseph, coming to an end, spoke about the departure of the sons of Israel from Egypt and instructed them about his bones.

UST

22 Because Joseph trusted God, when he was about to die in Egypt, he thought ahead to the time when the Israelites would leave Egypt, and he instructed his people to carry his bones with them when they left Egypt.

Translation Words - ULT

- By faith
- Joseph
- of...sons
- of Israel
- instructed them

Translation Words - UST

- Because...trusted God
- Joseph
- Israelites
- Israelites
- with them when they left Egypt

Hebrews 11:23

**Moses, when he was born, was hidden for three months by his parents (ULT)
Moses' father...mother...they hid their son for three months shortly after he was born...the (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "Moses' parents hid him for three months after he was born" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- By faith
- Moses
- parents
- a...child
- they were...afraid
- of...command
- of...king

Translation Words - UST

- Because...trusted God
- Moses
- father...mother
- child
- They were...afraid of disobeying
- what...had commanded
- king of Egypt

ULT

23 By faith Moses, when he was born, was hidden for three months by his parents because they saw {he was} a beautiful child, and they were not afraid of the command of the king.

UST

23 Because Moses' father and mother trusted God, they hid their son for three months shortly after he was born, because they saw that the child was beautiful. They were not afraid of disobeying what the king of Egypt had commanded, that all the Jewish male babies must die.

Hebrews 11:24

having become great (ULT)
The daughter of the king, whom they called Pharaoh, raised...but when Moses had grown up (UST)

Alternate translation: "having become an adult"

refused to be called (ULT)
he refused to accept the royal privileges that would have been his if people considered him as "the (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "refused to allow people to call him" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- By faith
- Moses
- to be called
- the son
- Pharaoh's

Translation Words - UST

- Moses
- because he trusted God
- to accept the royal privileges that would have been his if people considered him as "the
- son of
- Pharaoh's

ULT

24 By faith Moses, having become great, refused to be called the son of Pharaoh's daughter.

UST

24 The daughter of the king, whom they called Pharaoh, raised Moses, but when Moses had grown up, because he trusted God, he refused to accept the royal privileges that would have been his if people considered him as "the son of Pharaoh's daughter."

Hebrews 11:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- he chose
- to suffer with
- people
- people of God
- of God
- of sin

Translation Words - UST

- He decided
- for others to mistreat him...along with
- God's...people
- God's
- people
- living sinfully

ULT

25 Instead, he chose to suffer with the people of God, rather than to have the temporary enjoyment of sin.

UST

25 He decided that it was better for others to mistreat him for a time along with God's people, than to temporarily enjoy living sinfully in the king's palace.

Hebrews 11:26

the reproach of the Christ (ULT)
if he suffered…the Messiah (UST)

You can reword the abstract noun **reproach** with the verb
"disrespect." Alternate translation: "the experience of people
disrespecting him because he did what Christ would want" (See:
Abstract Nouns)

he was looking away…to {his} reward (ULT)
He looked forward…to the time when God would give him an eternal reward (UST)

Fully concentrating on achieving a goal is spoken of as if a person
were staring at an object and refusing to look away. Alternate
translation: "doing what he knew would earn him a reward in
heaven" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- reproach
- of…Christ
- of Egypt
- reward

Translation Words - UST

- if he suffered
- the Messiah
- of Egypt that he would receive as one of Pharaoh's family
- time when God would give him an eternal reward

ULT

26 He reasoned that the reproach of the
Christ {was} greater riches than the
treasures of Egypt, for he was looking
away to {his} reward.

UST

26 He decided that if he suffered for the
Messiah, it would be worth far more in
God's sight than owning the treasures
of Egypt that he would receive as one of
Pharaoh's family. He looked forward to
the time when God would give him an
eternal reward.

Hebrews 11:27

the...he endured as if he were seeing...unseen one (ULT)

Moses is spoken of as if he saw God, who is invisible. (See: Simile)

the one who is invisible

Alternate translation: "the one no one can see"

Translation Words - ULT

- By faith
- Egypt
- having feared
- of...king
- he endured
- as if

Translation Words - UST

- trusted God
- Egypt
- afraid
- king
- kept going
- as

ULT

27 By faith he left Egypt, not having feared the anger of the king, for he endured as if he were seeing the unseen one.

UST

27 Because he trusted God, Moses left Egypt. He was not afraid that the king would be angry because he left. He kept going because it was as though he kept seeing God, whom no one can see.

Hebrews 11:28

he performed the Passover and the sprinkling of the blood (ULT)
he obeyed God's commands about Passover, which became a yearly festival. He commanded the people to kill lambs and sprinkle their blood on...doorposts...the (UST)

This was the first **Passover**. Moses kept it by obeying God's commands concerning the Passover and by commanding the people to obey them every year. Alternate translation: "he commanded the people to obey God's commands concerning the Passover and to sprinkle blood on their doors" or "he established the Passover and the sprinkling of blood"

the sprinkling of the blood (ULT)
the people...sprinkle their blood on... doorposts (UST)

> ### ULT
>
> **28** By faith he performed the Passover and the sprinkling of the blood, so that the destroyer of the firstborn would not touch them.
>
> ### UST
>
> **28** Because Moses believed God would save his own people, he obeyed God's commands about Passover, which became a yearly festival. He commanded the people to kill lambs and sprinkle their blood on their doorposts so that the angel who causes people to die would not kill the oldest male Israelites with the oldest sons in each Egyptian family.

Here, **the sprinkling of the blood** refers to God's command to the Israelites to kill a lamb and spread its* *blood** on the doorposts of every house where Israelites lived. This would prevent the destroyer from harming their firstborn sons. This was one of the Passover commands. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

not...would...touch (ULT)
not...would...kill (UST)

Here, **touch** refers to harming or to killing someone. Alternate translation: "would not harm" or "would not kill" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- By faith
- Passover
- of...blood
- destroyer
- of...firstborn

Translation Words - UST

- Because Moses believed God would save his own people
- Passover, which became a yearly festival
- their blood on...doorposts
- angel who causes people to die
- oldest male Israelites with

Hebrews 11:29

they passed through the Sea of Reeds (ULT)
when they walked through the Sea of Reeds (UST)

Alternate translation: "the Israelites passed through the Sea of Reeds"

they were swallowed up (ULT)
they drowned, because the sea came back and flooded them (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "the water swallowed up the Egyptians" (See: Active or Passive)

they were swallowed up (ULT)
they drowned, because the sea came back and flooded them (UST)

The Egyptians are spoken of as if an animal **swallowed** them as it would swallow water or food. Alternate translation: "the Egyptians drowned in the water" (See: Metaphor)

> **ULT**
>
> **29** By faith they passed through the Sea of Reeds as if over dry land. When the Egyptians took this attempt, they were swallowed up.
>
> **UST**
>
> **29** Because the Israelites trusted God when they walked through the Sea of Reeds, it was as though they were walking on dry land! But, when the army of Egypt also attempted to cross where the sea had been, they drowned, because the sea came back and flooded them!

Translation Words - ULT

- By faith
- Sea of Reeds
- of Reeds
- as if
- When...took
- Egyptians

Translation Words - UST

- Because the Israelites trusted God
- Sea of Reeds
- Reeds
- it was as though
- army of Egypt
- to cross where the sea had been

Hebrews 11:30

having been encircled for seven days (ULT) marched around the walls for seven days (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "the Israelites had marched around them for seven days" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- By faith
- of Jericho
- days

Translation Words - UST

- Because the Israelite people trusted God
- the city of Jericho
- days

Hebrews 11:31

having received the spies with peace (ULT) into the city to find ways to destroy it, but God saved Rahab because she welcomed those spies peacefully (UST)

Alternate translation: "who had peacefully received the spies"

Translation Words - ULT

- By faith
- Rahab
- prostitute
- did...perish
- who disobeyed
- having received
- peace

Translation Words - UST

- Rahab
- was a prostitute
- but because she trusted God
- she did...perish with
- those inside Jericho who disobeyed God. Joshua had sent spies
- into the city to find ways to destroy it, but God saved Rahab because she welcomed
- peacefully

ULT

31 By faith Rahab the prostitute did not perish with those who disobeyed, having received the spies with peace.

UST

31 Rahab was a prostitute, but because she trusted God, she did not perish with those inside Jericho who disobeyed God. Joshua had sent spies into the city to find ways to destroy it, but God saved Rahab because she welcomed those spies peacefully.

Hebrews 11:32

what more might I say (ULT)
what more I should say about others who trusted in God (UST)

The author uses a question to emphasize that there are many examples that he could have quoted. This can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "there are many more examples." (See: Rhetorical Question)

will fail...me...the time (ULT)
It would take too much...to tell...time (UST)

Alternate translation: "I will not have enough time"

Barak (ULT)
Barak (UST)

Barak is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- time
- Gideon
- Samson
- Jephthah
- David
- Samuel
- prophets

Translation Words - UST

- time
- Gideon
- Samson
- Jephthah
- David
- Samuel
- other prophets

ULT

32 And what more might I say? For the time will fail me, telling about Gideon, Barak, Samson, Jephthah, David, and also Samuel and the prophets,

UST

32 I do not know what more I should say about others who trusted in God. It would take too much time to tell about Gideon, Barak, Samson, Jephthah, David, Samuel, and the other prophets.

Hebrews 11:33

who through faith (ULT)
Because they trusted God, some of them did great deeds for him (UST)

Here, **who** does not mean that each person listed in 11:32 did all the things the author is about to mention. The author means in general these are the kinds of things that those with faith were able to do. Alternate translation: "people like these through faith"

who through faith conquered kingdoms (ULT)
Because they trusted God, some of them did great deeds for him. Some conquered lands ruled by powerful men (UST)

Here, **kingdoms** refers to the people who lived in them. Alternate translation: "who through faith defeated the people of foreign kingdoms"

stopped the mouths of lions (ULT)
Some forced lions to keep their mouths shut (UST)

The **mouths of the lions** represents the entire lions. (See: Metonymy)

stopped the mouths of lions (ULT)
Some forced lions to keep their mouths shut (UST)

This phrase begins a list of some of the ways God saved believers from death. Preventing the **lions** from eating them is spoken of as stopping **the mouths** of the lions. Alternate translation: "kept lions from eating them" (See: Metaphor)

ULT

33 who through faith conquered kingdoms, worked justice, received promises, stopped the mouths of lions,

UST

33 Because they trusted God, some of them did great deeds for him. Some conquered lands ruled by powerful men. Some ruled Israel and justly treated men and nations. Some received from God the things that he promised to give them. Some forced lions to keep their mouths shut.

Translation Words - ULT

- faith
- kingdoms
- worked
- justice
- promises
- of lions

Translation Words - UST

- Because they trusted God
- lands ruled by powerful men
- Some ruled Israel
- and justly treated men and nations
- the things that he promised to give them
- lions

Hebrews 11:34

Hebrews 11:34

extinguished the power of fire (ULT)
Some escaped from burning up in fire (UST)

The **power of fire** represents being burned to death by fire. (See: Metonymy)

extinguished the power of fire (ULT)
Some escaped from burning up in fire (UST)

Preventing **fire** from burning them to death them is spoken of as extinguishing the **power of fire**. Alternate translation: "prevented fire from burning them" (See: Metaphor)

escaped the edge of the sword (ULT)
Some escaped...others who tried to kill them with swords (UST)

The **edge of the sword** represents the entire sword and its ability to kill. (See: Metonymy)

escaped the edge of the sword (ULT)
Some escaped...others who tried to kill them with swords (UST)

Avoiding being killed by **the sword** is spoken of as escaping the **edge of the sword**. Alternate translation: "avoided being killed by the sword" (See: Metaphor)

were healed from illnesses (ULT)
from...Some became well again after being sick (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "received healing from God" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- extinguished
- the power
- of fire
- of the sword
- mighty
- foreign

Translation Words - UST

- Some escaped from
- Some escaped from
- burning up in fire
- swords
- powerful
- that came from foreign lands

ULT

34 extinguished the power of fire, escaped the edge of the sword, were healed from illnesses, became mighty in battle, {and} defeated foreign armies.

UST

34 Some escaped from burning up in fire. Some escaped from others who tried to kill them with swords. Some became well again after being sick. Some became powerful when they fought wars. Some caused armies that came from foreign lands to run away from them.

Hebrews 11:35

Women received back their dead from resurrection (ULT)
Some women who trusted God received...back again when God made them live again after they had died...their (UST)

You can state the abstract noun **resurrection** with a verb. Alternate translation: "Women received their dead back alive" (See: Abstract Nouns)

Women received back their dead from resurrection (ULT)
Some women who trusted God received...back again when God made them live again after they had died...their (UST)

The word **dead** is a nominal adjective. You can state this as a verb. Alternate translation: "Women received back alive those who had died" (See: Nominal Adjectives)

but others were tortured, not accepting release (ULT)
their relatives...But others who trusted God were tortured until they died. They were tortured because they refused to agree when...enemies said, "We will release you if you deny that you believe in God (UST)

It is implied that their enemies would have released them from prison under certain conditions. Alternate translation: "but others were tortured rather than denying their faith in order to be released from prison" or "but others were tortured rather than doing what their enemies required of them in order to release them" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

but others were tortured, not accepting release (ULT)
their relatives...But others who trusted God were tortured until they died. They were tortured because they refused to agree when...enemies said, "We will release you if you deny that you believe in God (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "but others accepted torture rather than release from prison" (See: Active or Passive)

resurrection...better (ULT)
God made them live again...which is better than continuing to live on earth (UST)

This could mean: (1) these people will experience a **better** life in heaven than what they experienced in this world. (2) these people will have a **better resurrection** than those who did not have faith. Those with faith will live forever with God. Those without faith will live forever separated from God.

Translation Words - ULT

- received back
- dead
- resurrection
- a...resurrection (2)
- release

Translation Words - UST

- received...back again
- God made them live again
- they wanted to live with God forever (2)
- after they had died
- when...enemies said...We will release you if you deny that you believe in God

Hebrews 11:36

others…received trials of mocking and of whippings (ULT)
Other people who trusted God…were mocked. Some had their backs cut open by being struck with whips. Some were chained (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "people mocked and whipped others" (See: Active or Passive)

others…received trials of mocking and of whippings, and even of chains and of imprisonment (ULT)
Other people who trusted God…were mocked. Some had their backs cut open by being struck with whips. Some were chained and put in prison (UST)

You can express the abstract nouns **mocking**, **whippings**, and **imprisonment** with verbs. Alternate translation: "God tested others by allowing their enemies to mock and whip them and even put them in chains and imprison them" (See: Abstract Nouns)

> ### ULT
>
> **36** and others received trials of mocking and of whippings, and even of chains and of imprisonment.
>
> ### UST
>
> **36** Other people who trusted God were mocked. Some had their backs cut open by being struck with whips. Some were chained and put in prison.

Translation Words - ULT

- received
- of mocking
- of chains
- of imprisonment

Translation Words - UST

- were mocked
- Some were chained
- Some were chained
- put in prison

Hebrews 11:37

They were stoned, they were sawn in two, they were tested, they died with slaughter of the sword (ULT)
Some of those believers were stoned to death. Others were sawn completely in two. Others were killed...swords (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "People threw stones at others and sawed others in two and killed others with the sword" (See: Active or Passive)

they went about (ULT)
Others of these people who trusted God wandered around the land (UST)

Alternate translation: "they went from place to place" or "they lived all the time"

in sheepskins and goatskins

Alternate translation: "wearing only the skins of sheep and goats"

destitute (ULT)
They did not have any money (UST)

Alternate translation: "having nothing" or "being very poor"

Translation Words - ULT

- They were stoned
- they were sawn in two
- they died
- of the sword
- oppressed

Translation Words - UST

- Some of those believers were stoned to death
- Others were sawn completely...two
- Others were killed...swords
- Others were killed...swords
- People constantly oppressed them and

ULT

37 They were stoned, they were sawn in two, they were tested, they died with slaughter of the sword, they went about in sheepskins {and} in goatskins, destitute, oppressed, mistreated; [2]

UST

37 Some of those believers were stoned to death. Others were sawn completely in two. Others were killed with swords. Others of these people who trusted God wandered around the land wearing garments made only of skins from sheep and goats. They did not have any money. People constantly oppressed them and harmed them.

Hebrews 11:38

the world was not worthy (ULT)
The people on earth who caused those who trusted in...to suffer like this were so bad that they did not deserve to live...God (UST)

Here, **the world** refers to the people who lived in the world. Alternate translation: "the people of this world were not worthy" (See: Metonymy)

being caused to wander about (ULT)
Some who trusted God wandered (UST)

They wandered about because they had no place to live.

Translation Words - ULT

- world
- worthy
- deserts
- in...ground

Translation Words - UST

- The people on earth who caused those who trusted in...to suffer like this
- so bad that they did...deserve to live
- in deserts
- ground

ULT

38 (of whom the world was not worthy), being caused to wander about in deserts and mountains and caves and holes in the ground.

UST

38 The people on earth who caused those who trusted in God to suffer like this were so bad that they did not deserve to live with people like those who trusted God. Some who trusted God wandered in deserts and mountains. Some lived in caves and in other large holes in the ground.

Hebrews 11:39

all these, having been commended because of {their} faith, did not receive the promise (ULT) God approved of all these people because they trusted him, he did not give them what he had promised them (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God honored all these because of their faith, but they did not themselves receive what God had promised" (See: Active or Passive)

the promise (ULT)
what he had promised them (UST)

Here, **the promise** stands for "what God had promised them." (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- having been commended
- of...faith
- did...receive
- promise

Translation Words - UST

- God approved of
- they trusted him
- he did...give them
- what he had promised them

Hebrews 11:40

so that without us, they would not be made perfect (ULT)
What God intends is that only when they and we are together will we have all that God intends us to have (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "in order that God not would perfect them without also perfecting us" (See: Active or Passive)

so that without us, they would not be made perfect (ULT)
What God intends is that only when they and we are together will we have all that God intends us to have (UST)

ULT

40 God having planned something better concerning us, so that without us, they would not be made perfect. 11:11 [1]
11:37 [2]

UST

40 God knew ahead of time that what he would give us and them later would be better than giving them immediately what he promised. What God intends is that only when they and we are together will we have all that God intends us to have.

You can state the double negative **without ... not** in positive form. Alternate translation: "in order that God would perfect both us and them together" (See: Double Negatives)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- they would...be made perfect

Translation Words - UST

- God
- will we have all that God intends...to have

Hebrews 12

Hebrews 12 General Notes

Structure and formatting

After telling of the value discipline, the author begins a series of exhortations. (See; exhort, exhortation)

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 12:5-6, which are words from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

Discipline

God wants his people to do what is right. When they do what is wrong, he needs to correct or punish them. He does this just as earthly fathers correct and punish children whom they love. (See: discipline, self-discipline)

Hebrews 12:1

we...us...let us run...us (ULT)
We...and...to us...Then let us run...we make it to (UST)

The word **we** and each occurrence of **us** refers to the author and his readers. (See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We')

Connecting Statement:

Because of this great number of Old Testament believers, the author talks of the life of faith that believers should live with Jesus as their example.

we also, having so great a cloud of witnesses surrounding us (ULT)
We...know about many people like these who proved that they trusted in God...to us...and (UST)

The writer speaks about the Old Testament believers as if they were a **cloud** that surrounded the present-day believers. Alternate translation: "since there are so many examples of faithful people about whom we learn in the scriptures" (See: Metaphor)

of witnesses (ULT)
who proved that they trusted...God (UST)

Here, **witnesses** refers to the Old Testament believers in chapter 11 who lived faithful lives previously.

having laid aside every weight and the easily entangling sin (ULT)
Let us put off everything that weighs us down and...we put away the sin that clings (UST)

Here, **every weight** and **the easily entangling sin** are spoken of as if a person could take them off himself and put them down. (See: Metaphor)

weight...every (ULT)
Let us put off...that weighs us down...everything (UST)

Attitudes or habits that keep believers from trusting and obeying God are spoken of as if they were loads that would make it difficult for a person to carry while running. (See: Metaphor)

the easily entangling sin (ULT)
the sin that clings (UST)

Here, **sin** is spoken of as if it were a net or something else that can trip people up and make them fall. Alternate translation: "sin that makes obeying God difficult" (See: Metaphor)

let us run with endurance the race that is placed before us (ULT) so...Then let us run our race patiently...do everything God gives us to do until we make it to the finish line (UST)

Following Jesus is spoken of as if it were running a **race**. Alternate translation: "let us continue obeying what God has commanded us, just like a runner keeps going until the race is over" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- of witnesses
- sin
- let us run
- endurance

Translation Words - UST

- who proved that they trusted...God
- sin
- Then let us run
- patiently...do

Hebrews 12:2

the founder and perfecter of the faith (ULT)
He is the one who leads us and he makes our
faith complete (UST)

Jesus gives us faith and makes our faith perfect by causing us to reach our goal. Alternate translation: "the creator and finisher of our faith" or "the one who enables us to have faith from beginning to end"

because of the joy that is placed before him (ULT)
the...him. He did this because he knew how joyful God would make him later (UST)

The **joy** that Jesus would experience is spoken of as if God the Father had **placed** it **before him** as a goal to reach. (See: Metaphor)

despising its shame (ULT)
he paid no attention to the people who tried to shame (UST)

This means Jesus hated the **shame** of dying on a cross, even though he allowed that to happen.

and sat down at the right hand of the throne of God (ULT)
and...He now sits at the place of highest honor in the throne where God rules in heaven (UST)

To sit at the **right hand** of God is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. See how you translated a similar phrase in Hebrews 1:3. Alternate translation: "and sat down at the place of honor and authority beside the throne of God" (See: Symbolic Action)

ULT

2 looking away to Jesus, the founder and perfecter of the faith, who because of the joy that is placed before him, endured the cross, despising its shame, and sat down at the right hand of the throne of God.

UST

2 And let us keep thinking about Jesus and give him all our attention. He is the one who leads us and he makes our faith complete. He is the one who endured the terrible suffering on the cross and he paid no attention to the people who tried to shame him. He did this because he knew how joyful God would make him later. He now sits at the place of highest honor in the throne where God rules in heaven.

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- founder
- of God
- perfecter
- of...faith
- joy
- endured
- the cross
- its shame
- the right hand
- of...throne

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus

- He is...one...leads us
- how joyful
- He now sits at the place of highest honor
- throne
- God
- he makes our...complete
- faith
- He is the one...endured the terrible suffering on
- cross
- to shame

Hebrews 12:3

you might not become weary in your souls, giving up (ULT)
you will not give up trusting God or become discouraged (UST)

The words **you** and **your** are plural and here refer to the readers. (See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We')

in your souls (ULT)
you (UST)

Here, **souls** represents a person's thoughts and emotions. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- who has endured
- sinners
- in…souls

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus patiently endured it
- sinful people
- you

ULT

3 For think about the one who has endured such opposition by sinners against himself, so that you might not become weary in your souls, giving up.

UST

3 Jesus patiently endured it when sinful people hatefully acted against him. Strengthen your hearts and minds with Jesus' example so that you will not give up trusting God or become discouraged.

Hebrews 12:4

not yet...You have...resisted...struggling against sin (ULT)
you have not yet...you have struggled against being tempted to sin...because of resisting evil, as Jesus did (UST)

Here, **sin** is spoken of as if it were a person against whom someone fights in a battle. Alternate translation: "You have not yet bled from resisting the attacks of sinners" (See: Personification)

to the point of blood (ULT)
While...bled and died (UST)

Resisting opposition so much that one dies for it is spoken of as if one reached a certain place where he would die. (See: Metaphor)

of blood (ULT)
bled and died (UST)

Here, **blood** refers to death. Alternate translation: "of death" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- of blood
- sin

Translation Words - UST

- sin
- bled and died

ULT

4 You have not yet resisted to the point of blood, struggling against sin,

UST

4 While you have struggled against being tempted to sin, you have not yet bled and died because of resisting evil, as Jesus did.

Hebrews 12:5

the exhortation that...you...addresses (ULT)
these words that Solomon spoke to...which...
you...encourages (UST)

Old Testament scripture is spoken of as if it were a person who could exhort others. Alternate translation: "what God has instructed you in the scriptures to exhort you" (See: Personification)

as sons...My son (ULT)
his son...are the same with which God...as his children...My son (UST)

The word translated **sons** and **son** is specifically the word for a male child. In that culture the family line continued through the sons, not normally through the daughters. However, as stated by the UST and some English versions, the author is directing his words to both males and females. (See: When Masculine Words Include Women)

My son, do not think lightly of the Lord's discipline, nor be wearied when you are reproved by him (ULT)
My son, pay attention when the Lord is disciplining you...do not be discouraged when the Lord punishes you (UST)

Here the author is quoting from the book of Proverbs in the Old Testament, which was the words of Solomon to his male children.

do not think lightly of the Lord's discipline, nor be wearied (ULT)
pay attention when the Lord is disciplining you...do not be discouraged (UST)

You can state this in positive form. Alternate translation: "take it very seriously when the Lord disciplines you, and remain encouraged" (See: Litotes)

when you are reproved by him (ULT)
when the Lord punishes you (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "when he corrects you" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- exhortation
- as
- sons
- My son
- of the...discipline
- Lord's
- when you are reproved

ULT

5 and you have forgotten the exhortation that addresses you as sons: "My son, do not think lightly of the Lord's discipline, nor be wearied when you are reproved by him;"

UST

5 Do not forget these words that Solomon spoke to his son, which are the same with which God encourages you as his children: "My son, pay attention when the Lord is disciplining you, and do not be discouraged when the Lord punishes you,

Translation Words - UST

- words that Solomon spoke to
- his son
- are the same with which God…as his children
- My son
- Lord
- is disciplining you
- punishes you

Hebrews 12:6

whom...every son...he receives (ULT) everyone...everyone he calls his own (UST)

The word translated **son** is specifically the word for a male child. In that culture the family line continued through the sons, not normally through the daughters. (See: When Masculine Words Include Women)

Translation Words - ULT

- the Lord
- loves, he
- disciplines
- son
- he receives

Translation Words - UST

- the Lord
- loves
- he also disciplines
- he calls his own
- he calls his own

ULT

6 For whom the Lord loves, he disciplines, and he punishes every son whom he receives.

UST

6 because everyone the Lord loves he also disciplines, and he severely corrects everyone he calls his own."

Hebrews 12:7

God offers himself to you as to sons (ULT) you. When God disciplines you, he is treating you as a father treats his children (UST)

This compares God disciplining his people to a father disciplining his **sons**. (See: Simile)

God offers himself to you as to sons (ULT) you. When God disciplines you, he is treating you as a father treats his children (UST)

You can state clearly the understood information. Alternate translation: "God deals with you the same way a father deals with his sons" (See: Ellipsis)

to sons...son {is there (ULT) treats his children...their children (UST)

You can translate **sons** and **son** to include males and females. Alternate translation: "to children ... child is there" (See: When Masculine Words Include Women)

For what son {is there} whom {his} father does not discipline (ULT) All fathers discipline their children (UST)

The author makes the point through this question that every good **father** disciplines his children. This can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "For every good father disciplines his children!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- If} you endure
- discipline
- does...discipline
- God
- as
- to sons
- son {is there
- his} father

Translation Words - UST

- God may discipline you by requiring you
- discipline
- endure difficult things that happen to
- When God disciplines you
- as a father
- treats his children
- their children
- fathers

ULT

7 {If} you endure in discipline, God offers himself to you as to sons. For what son {is there} whom {his} father does not discipline?

UST

7 God may discipline you by requiring you to endure difficult things that happen to you. When God disciplines you, he is treating you as a father treats his children. All fathers discipline their children.

Hebrews 12:8

But if you are without discipline, of which all {men} have become partakers (ULT)
if you have not experienced God disciplining you like he disciplines all his children (UST)

ULT

8 But if you are without discipline, of which all {men} have become partakers, then you are illegitimate and not {his} sons.

UST

8 So if you have not experienced God disciplining you like he disciplines all his children, you are not true children of God. You are like illegitimate children who have no father to correct them.

You can restate the abstract noun **discipline** with the verb "disciplining." Alternate translation: "So if you have not experienced God disciplining you like he disciplines all his children" (See: Abstract Nouns)

then you are illegitimate and not {his} sons (ULT)
So…you are not true children of God. You are like illegitimate children who have no father to correct them (UST)

Those whom God does not discipline are spoken of as if they are **sons** born to a man and a woman who are not married each other. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- discipline
- his} sons

Translation Words - UST

- God disciplining you
- you are…true children of God

Hebrews 12:9

not much...will we...more be subjected to the Father of spirits and live (ULT)
should certainly...we...more readily accept God our spiritual Father disciplining us so we will live eternally (UST)

The author uses a question to emphasize that we should obey God **the Father**. This can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "even more so, we should obey the Father of spirits and live!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

to the Father of spirits (ULT)
God our spiritual Father (UST)

The idiom **Father of spirits** contrasts with **fathers of our flesh** earlier in this verse. Alternate translation: "our spiritual Father" or "our Father in heaven" (See: Idiom)

and...live (ULT)
and...we will live eternally (UST)

Alternate translation: "so that we will live"

Translation Words - ULT

- fathers
- of...flesh
- as} discipliners
- will we...be subjected
- to...Father
- of spirits
- live

Translation Words - UST

- natural...So
- fathers
- disciplined us
- we...readily accept...disciplining us
- God our...Father
- spiritual
- we will live eternally

ULT

9 Furthermore, on the one hand, we had the fathers of our flesh {as} discipliners and we respected them; on the other hand, will we not much more be subjected to the Father of spirits and live?

UST

9 Furthermore, our natural fathers disciplined us when we were young, and we respected them for doing that. So we should certainly more readily accept God our spiritual Father disciplining us so we will live eternally!

Hebrews 12:10

to partake of his holiness (ULT)
to...share in his holy nature (UST)

This metaphor speaks of **holiness** as if it were an object that can be shared among people. Alternate translation: "so that we may become holy as God is holy" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- disciplined us
- a...days
- think {best
- benefit
- of...holiness

Translation Words - UST

- a...time
- as...considered right
- always disciplines us
- help us
- holy nature

ULT

10 For on the one hand, they disciplined us for a few days according to what they think {best}, but he, on the other hand, for {our} benefit, to partake of his holiness.

UST

10 Our natural fathers disciplined us for a short time as they considered right, but God always disciplines us to help us share in his holy nature.

Hebrews 12:11

the peaceful fruit…it produces…of righteousness (ULT)
produces peace in us…it causes…to live righteously (UST)

Here, **fruit** here is a metaphor for "result" or "outcome." Alternate translation: "it produces the peaceful result of righteousness" or "it produces righteousness, which results in peace" (See: Metaphor)

for those who have been trained by it (ULT)
those who have learned from it…which (UST)

The discipline or correction done by the Lord is spoken of as if it were the Lord himself. Alternate translation: "for those who have been trained by God" (See: Personification)

for those who have been trained by it (ULT)
those who have learned from it…which (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "whom God has trained by disciplining them" (See: Active or Passive)

ULT

11 Now every discipline does not seem to be joy at the time, but pain, but afterward it produces the peaceful fruit of righteousness for those who have been trained by it.

UST

11 During the time God is disciplining us, it does not seem to be anything about which we can rejoice. Instead, it pains us. But later it causes those who have learned from it to live righteously, which produces peace in us.

Translation Words - ULT

- discipline
- joy
- peaceful
- the…fruit
- of righteousness

Translation Words - UST

- God is disciplining us
- we can rejoice
- righteously
- produces
- peace in us

Hebrews 12:12

strengthen the hands that are weak and the knees that are paralyzed (ULT)
instead of acting as though you were spiritually tired out, trust God's discipline to renew you (UST)

Possibly this continues the metaphor about the race in Hebrews 12:1. It is in this way that the author speaks about living as Christians and helping others. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- hands

Translation Words - UST

- instead of acting as though you were spiritually tired out

ULT

12 Therefore, strengthen the hands that are weak and the knees that are paralyzed,

UST

12 So, instead of acting as though you were spiritually tired out, trust God's discipline to renew you.

Hebrews 12:13

make straight paths for your feet (ULT)
Go straight forward following the Messiah...
you (UST)

Possibly this continues the metaphor about the race in Hebrews 12:1. It is in this way that the author speaks about living as Christians and helping others. (See: Metaphor)

straight paths (ULT)
Go straight forward following the Messiah (UST)

Living so as to honor and please God is spoken of as if it were a **straight** path to follow. (See: Metaphor)

the lame might not be sprained (ULT)
the Messiah will gain strength from...not become crippled...as an injured... useless limb (UST)

In this metaphor of running a race, **lame** represents another person in the race who is hurt and wants to quit. This, in turn, represent the Christians themselves. Alternate translation: "whoever is weak and wants to quit will not sprain his ankle" (See: Metaphor)

not...might...be sprained (ULT)
not become...as an injured (UST)

Someone who stops obeying God is spoken of as if he injured his foot or ankle on a path. (See: Metaphor)

not...might...be sprained (ULT)
not become...as an injured (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "will not sprain his ankle" (See: Active or Passive)

but rather might be healed (ULT)
Instead, they will be spiritually restored...and...becomes well again (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "but instead become strong" or "but instead God will heal him" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

   • might be healed

Translation Words - UST

   • Instead, they will be spiritually restored...becomes well

Hebrews 12:14

Pursue peace with all {men (ULT)
Try to live peacefully with all people (UST)

Here, **peace** is spoken of as if it were something that a person must chase after. Alternate translation: "Seek to be at peace with everyone" (See: Metaphor)

Pursue peace with all {men (ULT)
Try to live peacefully with all people (UST)

You can translate the abstract noun **peace** with an adverb. Alternate translation: "Try to live peacefully with everyone" (See: Abstract Nouns)

and the holiness without which no one will see the Lord (ULT)
Do your best to be holy, since no one will see the Lord if he is not (UST)

You can express the double negative **without … no one** as a positive encouragement. Alternate translation: "also work hard to be holy, because only holy people will see the Lord" (See: Double Negatives)

and the holiness (ULT)
Do your best to be holy (UST)

You can state clearly the understood information. Alternate translation: "also pursue the holiness" (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT

- peace
- holiness
- Lord

Translation Words - UST

- peacefully
- Do your best to be holy
- Lord

ULT

14 Pursue peace with all {men}, and the holiness without which no one will see the Lord,

UST

14 Try to live peacefully with all people. Do your best to be holy, since no one will see the Lord if he is not holy.

Hebrews 12:15

no one is lacking from the grace of God (ULT) everyone among you experiences the kind things that God does for us. Kind things that we do not deserve (UST)

You can state the double negative **no one … lacking** in positive form. Alternate translation: "everyone receives enough of God's grace" (See: Double Negatives)

**not any root of bitterness is growing up to cause trouble, and by this many might become defiled (ULT)
Be on guard so that none of you act in an evil way toward others, because that will grow like a root grows into a big plant, leading many believers to sin (UST)**

ULT

15 exercising care that no one is lacking from the grace of God, not any root of bitterness is growing up to cause trouble, and by this many might become defiled,

UST

15 Make sure that everyone among you experiences the kind things that God does for us. Kind things that we do not deserve. Be on guard so that none of you act in an evil way toward others, because that will grow like a root grows into a big plant, leading many believers to sin.

Hateful or resentful attitudes are spoken of as if they were a plant that is bitter to the taste. Alternate translation: "that no one becomes like a bitter root, which when it grows causes trouble and harms many people" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- grace
- of God
- to cause trouble
- might become defiled

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Kind things that we do not deserve
- leading
- sin

Hebrews 12:16

Esau (ULT)
Esau (UST)

Esau, who was told about in the writings of Moses, was Isaac's first son and Jacob's brother.

Translation Words - ULT

- sexually immoral
- profane one
- such as
- Esau
- birthright

Translation Words - UST

- be immoral
- disobey God
- like
- Esau
- rights he had as a firstborn son

ULT

16 not any sexually immoral or profane one such as Esau, who in exchange for one meal sold {his} own birthright.

UST

16 Do not let anyone be immoral or disobey God like Esau. He exchanged the rights he had as a firstborn son for only one meal.

Hebrews 12:17

he was rejected (ULT)
But Isaac refused to do what (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "his father, Isaac, refused to bless him" (See: Active or Passive)

because he found no opportunity for repentance (ULT)
For Esau found no way to change what he had done (UST)

You can translate the abstract noun **repentance** with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "because it was not possible for him to repent" or "because it was not possible for him to change his decision" (See: Abstract Nouns)

even though he sought it with tears (ULT)
later...Esau requested...even though he sought it tearfully (UST)

Here, **he** refers to Esau.

ULT

17 For you know that even afterwards, desiring to inherit the blessing, he was rejected, because he found no opportunity for repentance, even though he sought it with tears.

UST

17 For you know that Esau later wanted to get back his birth rights and all that his father Isaac's blessing would give him. But Isaac refused to do what Esau requested. For Esau found no way to change what he had done, even though he sought it tearfully.

Translation Words - ULT

- you know
- to inherit
- blessing
- he was rejected
- for repentance
- he sought

Translation Words - UST

- you know that Esau
- his birth rights
- all...his father Isaac's blessing would give him
- But Isaac refused to do what
- Esau requested
- change what he had done

Hebrews 12:18

Connecting Statement:

The author gives a contrast between what believers in Moses' time had while living under the law and what present day believers have after coming to Jesus under the new covenant. He illustrates the experience of the Israelites by describing how God appeared to them at Mount Sinai.

not…you have…come to (ULT)
not…In coming to God (UST)

Here, **you** refers to the Hebrew believers to whom the author wrote.

For you have not come to what that can be touched (ULT)
In coming to God, you have not experienced things (UST)

You can state the implicit information explicitly. Alternate translation: "For you have not come, as the people of Israel came, to a mountain that can be touched" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

not…what that can be touched (ULT)
not…you have…experienced things (UST)

This means that believers in Christ have not come to a physical mountain like Mount Sinai that a person can touch. If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "you have not come a mountain that you can touch" or " you have not come a mountain that you can perceive with your senses" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- to a…fire
- to darkness

Translation Words - UST

- They approached a blazing fire
- gloomy

ULT

18 For you have not come to what that can be touched and to a blazing fire and to darkness and to gloom and to a storm,

UST

18 In coming to God, you have not experienced things like what the Israelite people experienced at Mount Sinai. They approached a mountain that God commanded them not to touch because he himself had come down to that mountain. They approached a blazing fire, and it was gloomy and dark, with a violent storm.

Hebrews 12:19

and to a voice of words whose hearers begged for not a word to be added to them (ULT) and they heard God speak a message. It was so powerful that they pleaded for him not to speak to them like that again (UST)

Here, **voice** refers to someone speaking. (See: Metonymy)

and to a voice of words whose hearers begged for not a word to be added to them (ULT) and they heard God speak a message. It was so powerful that they pleaded for him not to speak to them like that again (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "or where God was speaking in such a way that those who heard him begged him not to speak another word to them" (See: Active or Passive)

ULT

19 and to a trumpet blast and to a voice of words whose hearers begged for not a word to be added to them.

UST

19 They heard a trumpet sound, and they heard God speak a message. It was so powerful that they pleaded for him not to speak to them like that again.

Translation Words - ULT

- to a trumpet
- to a voice

Translation Words - UST

- a trumpet
- God speak

Hebrews 12:20

what was commanded (ULT)
God had commanded them (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "what God commanded" (See: Active or Passive)

it must be stoned (ULT)
you must kill him (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "you must stone it" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- they could...endure
- was commanded
- an animal
- it must be stoned

Translation Words - UST

- God had commanded them
- a person or even an animal
- you must kill him
- The people were terrified

ULT

20 For they could not endure what was commanded: "If even an animal might touch the mountain, it must be stoned." [1]

UST

20 For God had commanded them, "If a person or even an animal touches this mountain, you must kill him." The people were terrified.

Hebrews 12:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- fearful
- terrified
- that} Moses
- trembling

Translation Words - UST

- Moses
- terrified
- I am very afraid
- trembling

ULT

21 And what appeared was so fearful {that} Moses said, "I am terrified and trembling."

UST

21 Truly, because Moses was terrified after seeing what happened on the mountain, he said, "I am trembling because I am very afraid!"

Hebrews 12:22

Mount Zion (ULT)
on Mount Zion in Israel, upon which (UST)

The writer speaks of **Mount Zion**, the location of the Temple in Jerusalem, as if it were heaven itself, the residence of God. (See: Metaphor)

to myriads of angels (ULT)
countless angels who are rejoicing as they have (UST)

Alternate translation: "to an uncountable number of angels"

Translation Words - ULT

- Mount Zion
- of the...God
- living
- heavenly
- the...Jerusalem
- of angels
- to the assembly

Translation Words - UST

- who truly lives
- in heaven
- God
- on Mount Zion in Israel, upon which
- the earthly Jerusalem was built
- angels who are rejoicing as they have
- gathered together

ULT

22 But you have come to Mount Zion and to the city of the living God, the heavenly Jerusalem, and to myriads of angels, to the assembly

UST

22 Instead, you have come to the presence of God who truly lives in heaven, to the "New Jerusalem." That is like what your ancestors did when they came to worship God on Mount Zion in Israel, upon which the earthly Jerusalem was built. You have come to where there are countless angels who are rejoicing as they have gathered together.

Hebrews 12:23

of the firstborn (ULT)
who have privileges as firstborn sons (UST)

Here, **the firstborn** is plural and speaks of believers in Christ as if they were firstborn sons. This emphasizes their special place and privilege as God's people. (See: Metaphor)

who have been registered in heaven (ULT)
whose names God has written down in heaven (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "whose names God has written in heaven" (See: Active or Passive)

made perfect (ULT)
whom God has now made perfect in heaven (UST)

ULT

23 and to the church of the firstborn, who have been registered in heaven, and to God, the Judge of all, and to the spirits of the righteous ones made perfect,

UST

23 You have joined the assembly of all the believers who have privileges as firstborn sons, whose names God has written down in heaven. You have come to God, who will judge everyone. You have come to where the spirits of God's people are, people who lived righteously before they died, and whom God has now made perfect in heaven.

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "whom God has made perfect" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- to the church
- of the firstborn
- heaven
- to God
- the Judge
- to the spirits
- of the righteous ones
- made perfect

Translation Words - UST

- assembly of all the believers
- who have privileges as firstborn sons
- heaven
- will judge
- the spirits of…s people are
- God
- people who lived righteously before they died
- whom God has now made perfect in heaven

Hebrews 12:24

the mediator of a new covenant (ULT)
who arranged a new covenant between us (UST)

This means **Jesus** caused the **new covenant** between God and humans to exist. See how you translated this phrase in Hebrews 9:15.

to the sprinkled blood speaking better than Abel's (ULT)
by the blood that flowed when he died on the cross...made it possible for God to forgive us... his blood confirms better promises for us than Abel's blood (UST)

The **blood** of Jesus and the blood of Abel are spoken of as if they were people calling out. Alternate translation: "to the sprinkled blood of Jesus that says better things than the blood of Abel" (See: Personification)

Abel's (ULT)
the...Abel's blood (UST)

Abel was the son of the first man and woman, Adam and Eve. Cain, also their son, murdered Abel.

to the sprinkled blood (ULT)
by the blood that flowed when he died on...cross...made it possible for God to forgive us (UST)

Here, **blood** stands for Jesus' death, as Abel's blood stands for his death. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- to Jesus
- the mediator
- of a...covenant
- to the...blood
- Abel's

Translation Words - UST

- who arranged
- a...covenant between us
- by the blood that flowed when he died on...cross
- Jesus' blood
- Abel's blood

Hebrews 12:25

Connecting Statement:

Having contrasted the Israelites' experience at Mount Sinai with the believers' experience after Christ died, the writer reminds believers that they have the same God who warns them today. This is the fifth main warning given to believers.

you do not refuse (ULT)
not refuse to listen to (UST)

The word **you** continues to refer to believers. (See: Forms of You)

you do not refuse the one who is speaking (ULT)
not refuse to listen to God who is speaking to you (UST)

> **ULT**
>
> **25** See that you do not refuse the one who is speaking. For if they did not escape when they refused the one who warns them on earth, much less we who turn away from the one from heaven;

> **UST**
>
> **25** Beware that you do not refuse to listen to God who is speaking to you. The Israelite people did not escape God punishing them when they rejected his warning to them here on earth. For we shall surely not escape God punishing us if we reject what he says when he warns us from heaven!

You can state this in positive form. Alternate translation: "you pay attention to the one who is speaking" (See: Double Negatives)

we (ULT)
we (UST)

The word **we** continues to refer to the writer and the readers who are believers. (See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We')

if...they did not escape (ULT)
if...Israelite people did not escape God punishing them...we shall...not escape God punishing us (UST)

You can state the implicit information explicitly. Alternate translation: "if the people of Israel did not escape judgment" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

on earth...the one...who warns them (ULT)
here on earth...God who...them (UST)

This could refer to: (1) Moses, who warned them here **on earth**. (2) God, who warned them at Mount Sinai.

we who turn away from the one from heaven (ULT)
we reject what he says when he warns us from heaven (UST)

Rejecting God is spoken of as if a person were changing direction and **turn away from** him. Alternate translation: "if we reject the one who is warning" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- you do...refuse
- when they refused

- earth
- turn away from
- heaven

Translation Words - UST

- refuse to listen to
- when they rejected his warning to
- here...earth
- reject
- heaven

Hebrews 12:26

the voice of whom at that time shook the earth (ULT)
When God...from Mount Sinai his voice shook the earth (UST)

Alternate translation: "when God spoke at that time, the sound of his voice caused the earth to shake"

the earth...Once more I will shake not only... but also the heavens (ULT)
the earth...another...Once again I will shake not only the...but...heavens also (UST)

This quotation is from the prophet Haggai in the Old Testament.

shook...will shake (ULT)
shook...will shake (UST)

Translate **shook** and **shake** with words for what an earthquake does when it moves the ground. This refers back to Hebrews 12:18-21 and what happened when the people saw the mountain where Moses received the law from God.

ULT

26 the voice of whom at that time shook the earth, but now he has promised, saying, "Once more I will shake not only the earth, but also the heavens."

UST

26 When God spoke from Mount Sinai his voice shook the earth, but now he makes another promise: "Once again I will shake not only the earth but the heavens also."

Translation Words - ULT

- voice
- earth
- earth (2)
- he has promised
- heavens

Translation Words - UST

- God...his voice
- earth
- earth (2)
- he makes...promise
- heavens also

Hebrews 12:27

Hebrews 12:27

indicates the removal of the things that are shaken (ULT)
indicate…God will remove…shake, everything (UST)

You can translate the abstract noun **removal** with the verbal phrase "take away." Alternate translation: "to the taking away of the things that can be shaken" (See: Abstract Nouns)

indicates the removal of the things that are shaken, that is, of what has been created (ULT)
indicate…God will remove those things on earth that he will shake, everything that he has created (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "means that God will remove the things that he can shake, that is, the things that he created" (See: Active or Passive)

of the things that are shaken (ULT)
shake, everything (UST)

Translate **shaken** with the word for what an earthquake does when it moves the ground. This refers back to Hebrews 12:18-21 and what happened when the people saw the mountain where Moses received the law from God. See how you translated "shook" and "shake" in Hebrews 12:26.

of what has been created (ULT)
those things on earth…that he has created (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "of what God has created" (See: Active or Passive)

what is not shaken (ULT)
the things in heaven that cannot shake (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "the things that do not shake" or "the things that cannot shake" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

  • that is

Translation Words - UST

  • that he will

Hebrews 12:28

receiving an unshakeable kingdom (ULT)
that we are becoming members of a kingdom...nothing can shake (UST)

You can add the words **because we are** to make clear the logical connection between this statement and the next statement. Alternate translation: "because we are receiving an unshakeable kingdom" or "because God is making us members of his kingdom which cannot be shaken" (See: Connecting Words and Phrases)

let us have gratitude (ULT)
let us thank God (UST)

Alternate translation: "let us give thanks"

with reverence and awe (ULT)
and by showing him great honor and respect (UST)

The words **reverence** and **awe** share similar meanings and emphasize the greatness of reverence due to God. Alternate translation: "with great respect and dread" (See: Doublet)

Translation Words - ULT

- receiving
- an...kingdom
- gratitude
- we may worship
- to God
- reverence
- awe

Translation Words - UST

- let us thank God
- that we are becoming members of
- a kingdom
- God
- worshiping him
- great honor
- respect

Hebrews 12:29

our God {is} a consuming fire (ULT)
the God we worship...a fire that burns up
everything that is impure (UST)

God is spoken of here as if he were a **fire** that can burn up anything. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- is} a...fire
- consuming

Translation Words - UST

- the God
- a fire
- that burns up everything that is impure

Hebrews 13

Hebrews 13 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The author finishes the list of exhortations he began in chapter 12. Then he asks the readers to pray for him and ends the letter.

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 13:6, which are words from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

Hospitality

God wants his people to invite other people to come to their homes to eat food and even to sleep. His people should do this even if they do not know well the people they are inviting. In the Old Testament, Abraham and his nephew Lot both showed hospitality to people they did not know. Abraham served a costly meal to them, and then Lot invited them to sleep in his house. They learned later that those people were actually angels.

Hebrews 13:1

Connecting Statement:

In this closing section, the author gives specific instructions to believers on how they are supposed to live.

Let brotherly love continue (ULT)
Continue to love your fellow believers (UST)

Alternate translation: "Continue to show your love for other believers as you would for members of your family"

Translation Words - ULT

- brotherly love

Translation Words - UST

- love your fellow believers

ULT
[1] Let brotherly love continue.

UST
[1] Continue to love your fellow believers.

Hebrews 13:2

Do not forget (ULT)
Do not forget (UST)

You can state this in positive form. Alternate translation: "Be sure to remember" (See: Litotes)

hospitality (ULT)
to be hospitable to needy travelers (UST)

Alternate translation: "to welcome and show kindness to strangers"

Translation Words - ULT

- angels

Translation Words - UST

- angels into their home

ULT

2 Do not forget hospitality, for through this, some have shown hospitality to angels without knowing it.

UST

2 Do not forget to be hospitable to needy travelers. By caring for strangers, some people have welcomed angels into their home without knowing it.

Hebrews 13:3

as if you were bound with them (ULT)
though you were in prison with them…as (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "as if someone tied you to them" or "as if you were in prison with them" (See: Active or Passive)

and} those who are mistreated (ULT)
were suffering physically (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "and those whom others are mistreating" or "and those who are suffering" (See: Active or Passive)

as if you also were with them in body (ULT)
as…and…they are suffering physically (UST)

This phrase encourages believers to think about other people's suffering as they would think about their own suffering. Alternate translation: "as if you were the one suffering" (See: Active or Passive)

ULT

3 Remember the prisoners, as if you were bound with them, {and} those who are mistreated, as if you also were with them in body.

UST

3 Remember to help those who are in prison because they are believers, as though you were in prison with them and were suffering physically as they are suffering physically.

Translation Words - ULT

- prisoners
- you were bound with them
- as if
- as if (2)
- body

Translation Words - UST

- are in prison because they are believers
- though you were in prison with them
- as
- as (2)
- physically

Hebrews 13:4

Marriage {is} honorable in all (ULT)
Men...women who are married to each other must respect each other in every way (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "Everyone should consider that marriage is a good and honorable thing" (See: Active or Passive)

the marriage bed {is} pure (ULT)
they must be faithful to each other (UST)

Here, **the marriage bed** is a polite way to refer to the act of sexual union of a married couple. (See: Euphemism)

the marriage bed {is} pure (ULT)
they must be faithful to each other (UST)

This refers to the act of sexual union as if it were only the bed of a married couple. Alternate translation: "let husbands and wives honor their marriage relationship to one another and not sleep with other people" (See: Metonymy)

> ### ULT
> [4] Marriage {is} honorable in all, and the marriage bed {is} pure, for God will judge sexually immoral people and adulterers.
>
> ### UST
> [4] Men and women who are married to each other must respect each other in every way, and they must be faithful to each other. God will surely condemn those who act immorally or adulterously.

Translation Words - ULT

- is} honorable
- marriage bed
- God
- will judge
- sexually immoral people
- adulterers

Translation Words - UST

- must respect each other
- they must be faithful to each other
- God
- will surely condemn
- those who act immorally
- or adulterously

Hebrews 13:5

Your} conduct {is to be} free from the love of money (ULT)
Live without constantly wanting money, and be happy...matter how much or little you own (UST)

Here, **conduct** refers to a person's character or the way he lives, and **free from the love of money** refers to not greatly desiring to have more money. A person who loves money is not content with the amount of money he has. Alternate translation: "Let your conduct not be affected by the love of money" or "Do not greatly wish to have more money" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- will I forsake

Translation Words - UST

- stop providing

ULT

5 {Your} conduct {is to be} free from the love of money, being content with the things you have, for he himself has said, "I will never leave you, nor never will I forsake you."

UST

5 Live without constantly wanting money, and be happy no matter how much or little you own in your present circumstances. Remember what Moses wrote that God said: "I will never leave you; I will never stop providing for you."

Hebrews 13:6

The Lord {is} my helper, and I will not be made afraid. What will a man do to me (ULT)
Since the Lord is the one who helps me, I will not be afraid! People can do nothing to me that will keep God from helping me (UST)

This is a quotation from the book of Psalms in the Old Testament. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

What will a man do to me (ULT)
I will...be afraid...People can do nothing to me that will keep God from helping me (UST)

> **ULT**
>
> **6** So then, we are confident to say, "The Lord {is} my helper, and I will not be made afraid. What will a man do to me?"
>
> **UST**
>
> **6** So we can say confidently as the psalmist said, "Since the Lord is the one who helps me, I will not be afraid! People can do nothing to me that will keep God from helping me."

The author uses a question to emphasize that he does not fear people because God is helping him. Alternate translation: "I will not fear what a man can do to me!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

What will a man do to me (ULT)
I will...be afraid...People can do nothing to me that will keep God from helping me (UST)

Here, **man** means any person in general. Alternate translation: "What can another person do to me?" (See: When Masculine Words Include Women)

Translation Words - ULT

- are confident
- The Lord
- I will...be made afraid

Translation Words - UST

- confidently
- Since the Lord
- I will...be afraid

Hebrews 13:7

the result of {their} conduct (ULT)
how they have conducted their lives...how they have (UST)

Alternate translation: "the outcome of the way they behave"

imitate {their} faith (ULT)
and imitate...trusted in the Messiah (UST)

Here the trust in God and the way of life led by these leaders are spoken of as **their faith**. Alternate translation: "trust and obey God in the same way they do" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- Word of God
- imitate
- faith

Translation Words - UST

- message...of God...about the Messiah
- and imitate
- trusted in...Messiah

ULT

7 Consider your leaders, who spoke the Word of God to you, of whom considering the result of {their} conduct, imitate {their} faith.

UST

7 Your spiritual leaders have told you the message of God about the Messiah. Remember how they have conducted their lives and imitate how they have trusted in the Messiah.

Hebrews 13:8

is} the same yesterday and today and forever (ULT)
the same now as he always has been, and he will be the same forever (UST)

Here, **yesterday** means all times in the past. Alternate translation: "is the same in the past, the present, and in the future forever" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Christ
- forever

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- the Messiah is
- same forever

ULT

8 Jesus Christ {is} the same yesterday and today and forever.

UST

8 Jesus the Messiah is the same now as he always has been, and he will be the same forever.

Hebrews 13:9

General Information:

This section refers to animal sacrifices made by believers in God in Old Testament times, which covered their sins temporarily until the death of Christ came about.

Do not be carried away by various and strange teachings (ULT)
So do not let other people mislead you to believe other things about God, strange things that you have not learned...us...and (UST)

Being persuaded by **various and strange teachings** is spoken of as if a person were being carried away by a force. If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "Do not be persuaded by various and strange teachings" (See: Metaphor)

Do not be carried away by various and strange teachings (ULT)
So do not let other people mislead you to believe other things about God, strange things that you have not learned...us...and (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "Do not let others persuade you to believe their various strange teachings" (See: Active or Passive)

by various and strange teachings (ULT)
So do not let other people...to believe other things about God, strange things that you have...learned...us...and (UST)

Alternate translation: "by many, different teachings that are not the good news we told you"

it is good for...the heart to be confirmed by grace, not by foods that do not help those who walk by them (ULT)
true...from...our...strength comes from God's acts of kindness towards us, rather than following various rules about what to eat...not to eat (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "we become stronger when we think of how God has been kind to us, but we do not become stronger by obeying rules about food" (See: Active or Passive)

the heart to be confirmed (ULT)
our...strength (UST)

Here, **heart** is a metonym for the "inner being." Alternate translation: "we should be strengthened inwardly" (See: Metonymy)

by foods (ULT)
about...to eat...not to eat (UST)

Here, **foods** stands for rules about food. (See: Metonymy)

those who walk (ULT)
following various rules (UST)

Living is spoken of as if it were walking. Alternate translation: "those who live by them" or "those who regulate their lives by them" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- by...teachings
- it is good for
- heart
- to be confirmed
- by grace
- that do...help

Translation Words - UST

- So do not let other people...to believe
- our...strength
- our...strength
- true
- comes from God's acts of kindness towards
- us

Hebrews 13:10

We have an altar (ULT)
the sacred altar (UST)

Here, **altar** stands for "place of worship." It also stands for the animals that the priests in the old covenant sacrificed, from which they took meat for themselves and their families. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- an altar
- who serve
- in...tabernacle
- the right

Translation Words - UST

- serve
- sacred tent
- right
- the sacred altar

ULT

10 We have an altar from which those who serve in the tabernacle do not have the right to eat.

UST

10 Those who serve in the sacred tent have no right to eat at the sacred altar where we worship the Messiah.

Hebrews 13:11

those...the blood of...animals is brought for sins by the high priest into the holy {place (ULT)
After...the high priest brings into the very holy place the blood of animals that they have sacrificed to atone...sins (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "the high priest brings into the holy place the blood of the animals that the priests killed for sins" (See: Active or Passive)

but} the bodies of these are burned (ULT)
other people burn the bodies of those animals (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "while the priests burn the animals' bodies" (See: Active or Passive)

outside the camp (ULT)
outside the camp (UST)

Alternate translation: "away from where the people lived"

Translation Words - ULT

- blood
- sins
- high priest
- holy {place
- bodies

Translation Words - UST

- high priest
- very holy place
- blood
- sins
- bodies

Hebrews 13:12

Connecting Statement:

There is a comparison here between Jesus' sacrifice and the tabernacle sacrifices of the Old Testament.

So (ULT)
Similarly (UST)

Alternate translation: "In the same way" or "Because the bodies of the sacrifices were burned outside the camp" (Hebrews 13:11)

outside the gate (ULT)
outside the gates of Jerusalem (UST)

Here, **outside the gate** stands for "outside the city." (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- suffered
- gate
- sanctify
- people
- blood

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- suffered...died
- gates of Jerusalem
- he might make us, his...special for God. He did
- people
- offering...blood as a sacrifice for our sins

ULT

12 So Jesus also suffered outside the gate, in order to sanctify the people through {his} own blood.

UST

12 Similarly, Jesus suffered and died outside the gates of Jerusalem in order that he might make us, his people, special for God. He did this by offering his own blood as a sacrifice for our sins.

Hebrews 13:13

Let us therefore go to him outside the camp (ULT)
So we must go to Jesus to be saved. We must leave behind other rules and rituals (UST)

Obeying Jesus is spoken of as if a person were leaving **the camp** to go out where Jesus is. (See: Metaphor)

bearing his reproach (ULT)
and allow others to insult us just like people insulted him (UST)

Here, **reproach** is spoken of as if it were an object that had to be carried in one's hands or on one's back. Alternate translation: "while allowing others to insult us just like people insulted him" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- bearing
- reproach

Translation Words - UST

- and allow others to insult us
- just like people insulted

ULT

13 Let us therefore go to him outside the camp, bearing his reproach.

UST

13 So we must go to Jesus to be saved. We must leave behind other rules and rituals and allow others to insult us just like people insulted him.

Hebrews 13:14

we are seeking (ULT)
we are waiting (UST)

Alternate translation: "we are waiting for"

Translation Words - ULT

- we are seeking

Translation Words - UST

- we are waiting

ULT

14 For we do not have a permanent city here, but we are seeking one that is to come.

UST

14 Here on earth, we believers do not have a city such as Jerusalem. Instead, we are waiting for the heavenly city that will last forever.

Hebrews 13:15

a sacrifice of praise (ULT)
we must continually praise…That will be something we can sacrifice (UST)

Here, **praise** is spoken of as if it were a **sacrifice** of animals or incense. (See: Metaphor)

of praise through all to God, that is, the fruit of lips that acknowledge his name (ULT)
we must continually praise God no matter what happens…to him instead of animals. We must be ready to openly say to others that we trust in the Messiah (UST)

Here, **praise** is spoken of as if it were **fruit** produced by the **lips** of people. Alternate translation: "praise to God in every situation that is produced by the lips of those who acknowledge his name" (See: Metaphor)

of lips that acknowledge his name (ULT)
instead of animals. We must be ready…openly say to others that we trust in the Messiah (UST)

Here, **lips** represents people who speak. Alternate translation: "the lips of those who acknowledge his name" or "those who acknowledge his name" (See: Synecdoche)

his name (ULT)
in the Messiah (UST)

A person's **name** represents that person. Alternate translation: "him" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- a sacrifice
- of praise
- to God
- the fruit
- that acknowledge
- name

Translation Words - UST

- we must continually praise
- God
- That will be something we can sacrifice
- instead of animals. We must be ready
- openly say to others that we trust
- in…Messiah

Hebrews 13:16

the...let us not neglect...doing of good and sharing (ULT)
the...Always...be doing good deeds for others...and sharing...things you have (UST)

You can state this in positive form. Alternate translation: "let us always remember to do good and to help others" (See: Litotes)

with such...sacrifices (ULT)
doing things like that...will be as though you are offering sacrifices (UST)

Doing good and helping others is spoken of as if they were **sacrifices** on an altar. (See: Metaphor)

> **ULT**
>
> **16** But let us not neglect the doing of good and sharing, for God is pleased with such sacrifices.
>
> **UST**
>
> **16** Always be doing good deeds for others and sharing the things you have, because doing things like that will be as though you are offering sacrifices that will please God.

Translation Words - ULT

- doing of good
- sharing
- God
- sacrifices

Translation Words - UST

- be doing good deeds for others
- sharing...things you have
- will be as though you are offering sacrifices
- God

Hebrews 13:17

keep watch over your souls (ULT)
your...they are the ones who are guarding... welfare (UST)

The believers' **souls**, that is, the believers' spiritual well-being, are spoken of as if they were objects or animals that guards could **keep watch over**. (See: Metaphor)

not with groaning (ULT)
not...sadly...if you cause them to do...sadly (UST)

Here, **groaning** stands for sadness or grief. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- Obey
- submit to them
- keep watch
- souls
- as
- account
- joy
- with groaning

Translation Words - UST

- Obey
- do...tell you
- they are...ones who are guarding
- welfare
- Some day they will have to stand before God so that he can
- say
- they can do the work of guarding you joyfully
- sadly...if you cause them to do...sadly

ULT

17 Obey your leaders and submit to them, for they keep watch over your souls, as those who will give account, in order that they might do this with joy and not with groaning, for this would be useless to you.

UST

17 Obey your leaders and do what they tell you, since they are the ones who are guarding your welfare. Some day they will have to stand before God so that he can say if he approves of what they have done. Obey them in order that they can do the work of guarding you joyfully and not have to do it sadly, because if you cause them to do it sadly, that will certainly not help you at all.

Hebrews 13:18

Connecting Statement:

The author closes with a blessing and greetings.

Pray for us (ULT)
Pray...me and those with me (UST)

Here, **us** refers to the author and his companions, but not to the readers. (See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We')

we are persuaded...that we have a good conscience (ULT)
I am certain...that I have not done anything that displeases God. I have (UST)

Here, **good conscience** stands for being free from guilt. Alternate translation: "we are certain that we have no guilt" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- Pray
- we are persuaded
- good
- a...conscience

Translation Words - UST

- Pray
- I am certain
- I have not done anything that displeases God
- I have not done anything that displeases God

Hebrews 13:19

so that I will be returned to you sooner (ULT) God will quickly remove the things that stop my coming to you (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "that God will quickly remove the things that stop my coming to you" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- I encourage you

Translation Words - UST

- I urge you

ULT

19 But I encourage you even more to do this, so that I will be returned to you sooner.

UST

19 I urge you earnestly to pray that God will quickly remove the things that stop my coming to you.

Hebrews 13:20

Now (ULT)
and (UST)

Now marks a new section of the letter. Here the author praises God and gives a final prayer for his readers.

brought back from the dead the great shepherd of the sheep, our Lord Jesus

Alternate translation: "raised the great shepherd of the sheep, our Lord Jesus, to life"

from the dead (ULT)
from...dead...when...died on...cross (UST)

ULT

20 Now the God of peace, who brought up from the dead the great shepherd of the sheep, our Lord Jesus, by the blood of the eternal covenant,

UST

20 Jesus provides for us, protects us, and guides us as a great shepherd does for his sheep. And God, who gives us inner peace, raised our Lord Jesus from the dead. By doing that God confirmed his eternal covenant with us by the blood that flowed from the Messiah when he died on the cross.

Here, **the dead** describes all dead people together in the underworld. To bring someone up from among them speaks of causing that person to become alive again.

the great shepherd of the sheep (ULT)
Jesus provides for us, protects us...guides us as a great shepherd does for his sheep. And...who...the...the...Messiah (UST)

Christ in his role of leader and protector of those who believe in him is spoken of as if he were a **shepherd** of **sheep**. (See: Metaphor)

by the blood of the eternal covenant (ULT)
By doing that God confirmed his eternal covenant with us by...blood that flowed from (UST)

Here, **blood** stands for the death of Jesus, which is the basis for the **covenant** that will last forever between God and all believers in Christ. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- of peace
- the dead
- shepherd
- of...sheep
- Lord
- Jesus
- the blood
- of the...covenant
- eternal

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus provides for us, protects us

- does for his sheep
- when…died on…cross
- God
- gives us inner peace
- Lord
- Jesus
- By doing that God confirmed his…covenant
- eternal
- blood that flowed from

Hebrews 13:21

equip you with everything good to do his will

Alternate translation: "may he give you every good thing you need in order to do his will" or "may he make you capable of doing every good thing according to his will"

working in us (ULT)
I...May he accomplish in us (UST)

The word **us** refers to the author and the readers. (See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We')

to do...to whom {be} the glory...forever...and} ever (ULT)
So...that...him...May all people praise...forever (UST)

Alternate translation: "whom all people will praise forever"

Translation Words - ULT

- good
- his...will
- Jesus
- Christ
- glory
- forever
- and} ever
- Amen

Translation Words - UST

- good
- what...he...desires
- follow Jesus, who offered up himself
- May all people praise
- Jesus the Messiah
- forever
- forever
- Amen

ULT

21 may he equip you with everything good to do his will, working in us what {is} pleasing before him, through Jesus Christ, to whom {be} the glory forever {and} ever. Amen.

UST

21 So I pray that God may equip you with everything good that you may do what he desires. May he accomplish in us what pleases him, as he watches us follow Jesus, who offered up himself for us. May all people praise Jesus the Messiah forever. Amen!

Hebrews 13:22

Now (ULT)
that (UST)

Now marks a new section of the letter. Here the author gives his final comments to his audience.

brothers (ULT)
My fellow believers (UST)

Here, **brothers** refers to all the believers to whom the author is writing, whether male or female. Alternate translation: "fellow believers" (See: When Masculine Words Include Women)

bear with the word of encouragement (ULT)
this...that...patiently consider what I have just written...encourage (UST)

Alternate translation: "patiently consider what I have just written to encourage you"

the word of encouragement (ULT)
this...that...what I have just written...encourage (UST)

Here, **word** stands for a message. Alternate translation: "the encouraging message" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- I encourage
- of encouragement
- brothers
- bear with

Translation Words - UST

- My fellow believers
- I ask you
- encourage
- patiently consider

Hebrews 13:23

has been set free (ULT)
has gone free from prison (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "is no longer in prison" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- Know that
- brother
- Timothy

Translation Words - UST

- I want you to know that
- fellow believer
- Timothy

Hebrews 13:24

Those from Italy greet you (ULT)
that I greet them. The believers in this area
who have come from Italy greet you also (UST)

This could mean: (1) the author is not in **Italy**, but there is a group of believers with him who have come from Italy. (2) the author is in **Italy** while writing this letter.

Italy (ULT)
The believers in...Italy (UST)

Italy is the name of a region at that time. At that time, Rome was the capital city of Italy. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- saints

Translation Words - UST

- believers who belong to God in your city

ULT

24 Greet all your leaders and all the saints. Those from Italy greet you.

UST

24 Tell all your spiritual leaders and all your other fellow believers who belong to God in your city that I greet them. The believers in this area who have come from Italy greet you also.

Hebrews 13:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• Grace

Translation Words - UST

• kindness

ULT

25 Grace {be} with you all.

UST

25 May God continue to love you and protect you by his kindness.

---

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy

Version 29

Abstract Nouns

Description

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

> This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. Abstract nouns are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships between those ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. They provide a way of giving names to actions or qualities. With names, people who speak these languages can talk about the concepts as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin."
But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, speakers may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. For example, they would express, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," by using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas. Instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, "What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

Examples From the Bible

> From **childhood** you have known the sacred writings … (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone was a child.

> But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

> Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

> The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers to the lack of speed with which something is done.

> He will both bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

The abstract noun "purposes" refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun. Alternative translations are indented below the Scripture example.

> … from **childhood** you have known the sacred writings … (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)
>
>> Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.
>
> But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)
>
>> But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.
>
> Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)
>
>> Today the people in this house **have been saved** … Today God **has saved** the people in this house …
>
> The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be. (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)
>
>> The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.
>
> He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)
>
>> He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects bolded:

> • Active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
> • Passive: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

> • In the active form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
> • In the passive form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is not always mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have bolded the subject.

> • active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
> • passive: **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
> • passive: **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

Purposes for the Passive

> • The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
> • The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
> • The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

> • Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
> • Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples From the Bible

> Then their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed** too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

> When the men of the city arose early in the morning, and see, the altar of Baal **was torn down**. (Judges 6:28a ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

> It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
(3) Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

> A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21b ULT)

> > **The king's servants gave** Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

> It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

> > It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.
> > It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

(3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

> A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

> > He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

Abstract Nouns
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:12; 1:14; 2:1; 2:2; 2:3; 2:8; 2:9; 2:11; 2:15; 2:18; 3:3; 3:4; 3:5; 3:13; 3:15; 4:2; 4:3; 4:6; 4:9; 4:13; 4:15; 5:1; 5:2; 5:3; 5:4; 5:7; 5:9; 5:10; 6:18; 7:7; 7:8; 7:11; 7:12; 7:13; 7:19; 7:28; 8:3; 8:5; 8:6; 9:2; 9:6; 9:9; 9:11; 9:15; 9:18; 9:22; 9:23; 9:24; 9:28; 10:2; 10:8; 10:10; 10:13; 10:14; 10:22; 10:29; 10:32; 10:33; 11:1; 11:2; 11:3; 11:4; 11:5; 11:7; 11:8; 11:16; 11:17; 11:18; 11:23; 11:24; 11:29; 11:30; 11:34; 11:35; 11:36; 11:37; 11:39; 11:40; 12:5; 12:11; 12:13; 12:17; 12:18; 12:19; 12:20; 12:23; 12:27; 13:3; 13:4; 13:9; 13:11; 13:19; 13:23)

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.

> This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways. The speaker gives explicit information in what he states directly. Implicit Information is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from other things he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is explicit information.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called assumed knowledge.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Implicit information is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this implicit information by combining what they already know (assumed knowledge) with the explicit information that the speaker tells them directly.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different from the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the assumed knowledge or the implicit information is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

Examples From the Bible

> Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

> Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But

> I say to you, it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you. (Matthew 11:21-22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

> Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat bread**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

> Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

> > Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."

> It will be more tolerable for **Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.
>

> > At the day of judgment, it will be more tolerable for **those cities of Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, than it will be for you. or At

> > the day of judgment, It will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities,
> > Tyre and Sidon,** than for you.
>
> > Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands**
> > when they eat bread. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

> > Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not
> > go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when
> > they eat bread.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

> Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to
> him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to
> lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, then, like Jesus, he would have to live without a house.

> > Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests,
> > but **I, the Son of Man**, have **no home to rest in. If you want to follow
> > me, you will live as I live**."

> It will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22
> ULT)

The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

> > At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose
> > people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you**.
> > or:
> > At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and
> > Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

> Next we recommend you learn about:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]*

Collective Nouns

Description

This page answers the question: *What are collective nouns and how can I translate them?*

A collective noun is a singular noun that refers to a group of something. Examples: a **family, clan,** or **tribe** is a group of people who are related to each other; a **flock** is a group of birds or sheep; a **fleet** is a group of ships; and an **army** is a group of soldiers.

Many collective nouns are used exclusively as a singular replacement for a group as in the examples above. Frequently in the Bible the name of an ancestor is used, through a process of metonymy, as a collective noun referencing the group of his descendants. In the Bible, sometimes the singular noun will take a singular verb form, other times it will take a plural verb form. This may depend on how the author is thinking about the group, or whether the action is being done as a group or as individuals.

Reason This is a Translation Issue

There are several issues that require care when translating collective nouns. Further care is needed because the language you are translating into may not use collective nouns in the same way as the language you are translating from. Issues include:

The source language may have a collective noun for a group that the target language does not and vice-versa. You may have to translate a collective noun with a plural noun in your language, or you may need to translate a plural noun with a collective noun in your language.
Subject-verb agreement. Different languages or dialects may have different rules about using singular or plural verbs with collective nouns.
Examples (from Wikipedia):

- a singular noun with a singular verb: The team *is* in the dressing room.
- a singular noun with a plural verb which is correct in British, but not American, English: The team *are* fighting among themselves. The team *have* finished the project.

Pronoun agreement. Similar to the previous, care needs to be taken to use the correct pronoun plurality and possibly gender or noun class to agree with the number/gender/class of the noun used. See the biblical examples below.
Clarity of referent. Especially if there is a mismatch in your translation between the verb and noun or pronoun concerning any of the factors above, readers may be confused about who or what is being referenced.

Examples from the Bible

> And Joab and all the **army** which was with him arrived (2 Samuel 3:23a ULT)

The word in bold is written in singular form in both Hebrew and English, but it refers to a group of warriors that fight together.

> and though the **flock** is cut off from the fold and there are no cattle in the stalls. (Habakkuk 3:17b ULT)

The word in bold is singular and refers to a group of sheep.

> And he went out again beside the sea, and all the **crowd** was coming to him, and he was teaching **them**. (Mark 2:13 ULT)

Note in this example that the noun is singular but the pronoun is plural. This may or may not be allowed or natural in your language.

> Do not let **your heart** be troubled. **You** believe in God; believe also in me. (John 14:1 ULT)

In this verse, the words translated "your" and "you" are plural, referring to many people. The word "heart" is singular in form, but it refers to all of their hearts as a group.

> And he shall take the **hair** of the head of his separation. And he shall put **it** on the fire that is under the sacrifice of the peace offerings. (Num 6:18b ULT)

The word **hair** is singular, but it refers to many hairs, not just one.

> And Pharaoh said, "Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **Israel** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **Israel** go." (Exodus 5:2 ULT)

Here, "Israel" is singular, but means "the Israelites" by metonymy.

Translation Strategies

If your language has a collective (singular) noun that refers to the same group as referenced by the collective noun in the source text, then translate the word using that term. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

(1) Translate the collective noun with a plural noun.
(2) Add a plural word to the collective noun so that you can use a plural verb and pronouns.
(3) Use a phrase to describe the group that the collective noun references. A useful strategy here can be to use a general collective noun that refers to a group of people or things.
(4) If your language uses a collective noun for something that is a plural noun in the source language, you can translate the plural noun as a collective noun and, if necessary, change the form of the verb and any pronouns so that they agree with the singular noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the collective noun with a plural noun.

> And Pharaoh said, "Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **Israel** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **Israel** go." (Exodus 5:2 ULT)

And Pharaoh said, "Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **the Israelites** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **the Israelites** go."

> And he shall take the **hair** of the head of his separation. And he shall put **it** on the fire that is under the sacrifice of the peace offerings. (Num 6:18b ULT)

And he shall take the **hairs** of the head of his separation. And he shall put **them** on the fire that is under the sacrifice of the peace offerings.

(2) Add a plural word to the collective noun so that you can use a plural verb and pronouns.

> And Joab and all the **army** which was with him arrived (2 Samuel 3:23a ULT)

And Joab and all the **army men who were** with him arrived

> And he went out again beside the sea, and all the **crowd** was coming to him, and he was teaching **them**. (Mark 2:13 ULT)

And he went out again beside the sea, and all the **people of the crowd were** coming to him, and he was teaching **them**.

(3) Use a phrase to describe the group that the collective noun references. A useful strategy here can be to use a general collective noun that refers to a group of people or things.

> and though the **flock** is cut off from the fold and there are no cattle in the stalls. (Habakkuk 3:17b ULT)

and though the **group of sheep** is cut off from the fold and there are no cattle in the stalls.

> And Pharaoh said, "Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **Israel** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **Israel** go." (Exodus 5:2 ULT)

And Pharaoh said, "Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **the people of Israel** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **the people of Israel** go."

(4) If your language uses a collective noun for something that is a plural noun in the source language, you can translate the plural noun as a collective noun and, if necessary, change the form of the verb and any pronouns so that they agree with the singular noun.

> Now this John had his clothing from the **hairs** of a camel and a leather belt around his waist (Matthew 3:4a ULT)

Now this John had his clothing from the **hair** of a camel and a leather belt around his waist

> You shall not make for yourself a carved figure nor any likeness that {is} in **the heavens** above, or that {is} in the earth beneath, or that {is} in **the waters** under the earth. (Deuteronomy 5:8 ULT)

You shall not make for yourself a carved figure nor any likeness that is in **heaven** above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in **the water** under the earth.

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2:16)

Connect — Contrary to Fact Conditions

Conditional Relationships

Conditional connectors connect two clauses to indicate that one of them will happen when the other one happens. In English, the most common way to connect conditional clauses is with the words, "if ... then." Often, however, the word "then" is not stated.

Contrary-to-Fact Conditions

Description

A Contrary-to-Fact Condition is a condition that sounds hypothetical, but the speaker is already certain that it is NOT true.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Usually there are no special words that indicate a Contrary-to-Fact Condition. The writer assumes that the reader knows that it is NOT a true condition. For this reason it often requires knowledge of implied information to know that it is not true. If this kind of condition is difficult for translators to communicate, they may want to consider using the same strategies that they used for Rhetorical Questions or Implied Information.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> But **if Baal is God**, worship him! (Story 19 Frame 6 OBS)

> Elijah came near to all the people and said, "How long will you keep changing your mind? If Yahweh is God, follow him. But **if Baal is God**, then follow him." Yet the people did not answer him a word. (1 Kings 18:21 ULT)

Baal is not God. Elijah is not suggesting that Baal might be God, and he does not want the people to follow Baal. But Elijah used a conditional statement to show them that what they were doing was wrong. In the example above, we see two conditions that have the same construction. The first one, "If Yahweh is God," is a Factual Condition because Elijah is certain that it is true. The second one, "if Baal is God," is a Contrary-to-Fact Condition because Elijah is certain that it is not true. You will need to consider if people would say both of these in the same way in your language or if they would say them in different ways.

> But his wife replied to him, "**If Yahweh had desired to kill us**, he would not have taken from our hand the whole burnt offering and the offering. He would not have shown us all these things, and at this time would he have not allowed us to hear about this." (Judges 13:23 ULT)

Manoah's wife thinks that the second part of her conditional statement is not true, therefore the first part is also not true. God received their burnt offering; therefore, He does not want to kill them.
>

> "**If only we had died** by Yahweh's hand in the land of Egypt, sitting by a pot of meat and eating bread to the full." (Exodus 16b:3 ULT)

Of course the people speaking here did not die in Egypt, and so this is a Contrary-to-Fact condition that is used to express a wish.

> "Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! **If the mighty deeds had been done** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, **they would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes." (Matthew 11:21 ULT)

The English reader knows that these last two examples are Contrary-to-Fact conditions because of the past-tense verbs used in the first part (they are not things that might happen). The last example also has a second part that uses "would have." These words also signal something that did not happen.

Translation Strategies

If Contrary-to-Fact conditions are clear in your language, then use them as they are.

(1) If the condition leads the reader to think that the speaker believes something that is false, then restate the condition as something that others believe.

(2) If the condition leads the reader to think that the speaker is suggesting that the first part is true, then restate it as a statement that it is not true.

(3) If the condition is expressing something that did not happen but the speaker wanted it to happen, restate it as a wish.

(4) If the condition is expressing something that did not happen, restate it as a negative statement.

(5) Often Factual and Contrary-to-Fact conditions are used to make reasoned arguments for a change in behavior. If translators are struggling to know the best way to translate them, it could be helpful to discuss how this is done in their language community. If someone is trying to convince people to change their behavior, how do they do that? It may be possible to adapt similar strategies when translating these conditions.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the condition leads the reader to think that the speaker believes something that is false, then restate the condition as something that others believe.

> But **if Baal is God**, worship him! (Story 19 Frame 6 OBS)

>> If you believe that Baal is God, then worship him!

(2) If the condition leads the reader to think that the speaker is suggesting that the first part is true, then restate it as a statement that it is not true.

>> If Baal is not God, then you should not worship him!

But his wife replied to him, "**If Yahweh had desired to kill us**, he would not have taken from our hand the whole burnt offering and the offering. He would not have shown us all these things, and at this time would he have not allowed us to hear about this." (Judges 13:23 ULT)

>> "**Yahweh does not want to kill us**, or he would not have received the burnt offering and the offering we gave him."

(3) If the condition is expressing something that did not happen but the speaker wanted it to happen, restate it as a wish.

> "**If only we had died** by Yahweh's hand in the land of Egypt, sitting by a pot of meat and eating bread to the full." (Exodus 16b:3 ULT)

> "**I wish we had died** by Yahweh's hand in the land of Egypt…"

(4) If the condition is expressing something that did not happen, restate it as a negative statement.

> "Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! **If the mighty deeds had been done** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, **they would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes." (Matthew 11:21 ULT)

> > "Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! The mighty deeds which were done in you **were not done** in Tyre and Sidon. But **if they had been done there, those people would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes."

(5) Often Factual and Contrary-to-Fact Conditions are used to make reasoned arguments for a change in behavior. If translators are struggling to know the best way to translate them, it could be helpful to discuss how this is done in their language community. If someone is trying to convince people to change their behavior, how do they do that? It may be possible to adapt similar strategies when translating these conditions.

> But **if Baal is God**, worship him! (Story 19 Frame 6 OBS)

> > Is Baal the one who is truly God? Should you worship him?

> "Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! **If the mighty deeds had been done** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, **they would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes." (Matthew 11:21 ULT)

> > "Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! You think that you are better than Tyre and Sidon, but you are not! **They would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes at seeing the mighty deeds that you have seen! **You should be like them**!"

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 3:11)

Connect — Contrast Relationship

Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate a contrast relationship?*

Contrast Relationship

Description

A contrast relationship is a logical relationship in which one event or item is in contrast or opposition to another.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In Scripture, many events did not happen as the people involved intended or expected them to happen. Sometimes people acted in ways that were not expected, whether good or bad. Often it was God at work, changing the events. These events were often pivotal. It is important that translators understand and communicate these contrasts. In English, contrast relationships are often indicated by the words "but," "although," "even though," "though," "yet," or "however."

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, **but** God used the evil for good! (Story 8 Frame 12 OBS)

Joseph's brothers' evil plan to sell Joseph is contrasted with God's good plan to save many people. The word "but" marks the contrast.

> For who is greater, the one who reclines at the table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at the table? **Yet** I am among you as one who serves. (Luke 22:27 ULT)

Jesus contrasts the proud way that human leaders behave with the humble way that he behaves. The contrast is marked by the word "yet."

> The hill country will also be yours. **Though** it is a forest, you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders, for you will drive out the Canaanites, even **though** they have chariots of iron, and even **though** they are strong. (Joshua 17:18 ULT)

It was unexpected that the Israelites, who had been slaves in Egypt, would be able to conquer and lay claim to the promised land.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses contrast relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

(1) If the contrast relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a connecting word or phrase that is more specific or more clear.

(2) If it is more clear in your language to mark the other clause of the contrast relationship, then use a connecting word on the other clause.

(3) If your language shows a contrast relationship in a different way, then use that way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the contrast relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a connecting word or phrase that is more specific or more clear.

> For who is greater, the one who reclines at table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at table? **Yet** I am among you as one who serves. (Luke 22:27 ULT)

>> For who is greater, the one who reclines at table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at table? **Unlike that person**, I am among you as one who serves.

(2) If it is more clear in your language to mark the other clause of the contrast relationship, then use a connecting word on the other clause.

> The hill country will also be yours. **Though** it is a forest, you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders, for you will drive out the Canaanites, even **though** they have chariots of iron, and even **though** they are strong. (Joshua 17:18 ULT)

>> The hill country will also be yours. It is a forest, **but** you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders. They have chariots of iron, and they are strong, **but** you will drive out the Canaanites.

(3) If your language shows a contrast relationship in a different way, then use that way.

> [David] found favor in the sight of God, and he asked if he might find a dwelling place for the house of Jacob. **However**, Solomon built the house for him. **But** the Most High does not live in houses made with hands. (Acts 7:46-48a ULT)

>> [David] found favor in the sight of God, and he asked if he might find a dwelling place for the house of Jacob. **But** it was, Solomon, **not David**, who built the house for God. **Even though Solomon built him a house**, the Most High does not live in houses made with hands.

(**Go back to:**)

Connect — Factual Conditions

Conditional Relationships

Conditional connectors connect two clauses to indicate that one
of them will happen when the other one happens. In English, the most common way to connect conditional clauses
is with the words, "if … then." Often, however, the word "then" is not stated.

Factual Conditions

Description

A Factual Condition is a condition that sounds hypothetical but is already certain or true in the speaker's mind. In English, a sentence containing a Factual Condition can use the words "even though," "since," or "this being the case" to indicate that it is a factual condition and not a hypothetical condition.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not state something as a condition if it is certain or true. Translators from these languages may misunderstand the original languages and think that the condition is uncertain. This would lead to mistakes in their translations. Even if the translators understand that the condition is certain or true, the readers may misunderstand it. In this case, it would be best to translate it as a statement of fact rather than as a conditional statement.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> "**If** Yahweh is God, worship him!" (Story 19 Frame 6 OBS)

> Elijah came near to all the people and said, "How long will you keep changing your mind? **If Yahweh is God**, follow him. But if Baal is God, then follow him." Yet the people did not answer him a word. (1 Kings 18:21 ULT)

This sentence has the same construction as a hypothetical condition. The condition is "if Yahweh is God." If that is true, then the Israelites should worship Yahweh. But the prophet Elijah does not question whether or not Yahweh is God. In fact, he is so certain that Yahweh is God that later in the passage he pours water all over his sacrifice. He is confident that God is real and that he will burn even an offering that is completely wet. Over and over again, the prophets taught that Yahweh is God, so the people should worship him. The people did not worship Yahweh, however, even though He is God. By putting the statement or instruction into the form of a Factual Condition, Elijah is trying to get the Israelites to understand more clearly what they should do.

> "A son honors his father, and a servant honors his master. **If** I, then, am a father, where is my honor? **If** I am a master, where is the reverence for me?" says Yahweh of hosts to you priests, who despise my name. (Malachi 1:6 ULT)

Yahweh has said that he is a father and a master to Israel, so even though this sounds like a hypothetical condition because it begins with "if," it is not hypothetical. This verse begins with the proverb that a son honors his father. Everyone knows that is right. But the Israelites are not honoring Yahweh. The other proverb in the verse says that a servant honors his master. Everyone knows that is right. But the Israelites are not honoring Yahweh, so it seems that he is not their master. But Yahweh is the master. Yahweh uses the form of a hypothetical condition to demonstrate that the Israelites are wrong. The second part of the condition that should occur naturally is not happening, even though the conditional statement is true.

Translation Strategies

If using the form of a hypothetical condition is confusing or would make the reader think that the speaker doubts what he is saying in the first part of the sentence, then use a statement instead. Words such as "since" or "you know that ..." or "it is true that ..." can be helpful to make the meaning clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

> "**If** Yahweh is God, worship him!" (Story 19 Frame 6 OBS)

>> "**It is true that** Yahweh is God, so worship him!"

> "A son honors his father, and a servant honors his master. **If** I, then, am a father, where is my honor? **If** I am a master, where is the reverence for me?" says Yahweh of hosts to you priests, who despise my name. (Malachi 1:6 ULT)

>> "A son honors his father, and a servant honors his master. **Since** I, then, am a father, where is my honor? **Since** I am a master, where is the reverence for me?"

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2:2; 3:7)

Connect — Hypothetical Conditions

Conditional Relationships

> This page answers the question: *How can I translate hypothetical conditions?*

Conditional connectors connect two clauses to indicate that one
of them will happen when the other one happens. In English, the most common way to connect conditional clauses is with the words "if … then." Often, however, the word "then" is not stated.

Hypothetical Condition

Description

A Hypothetical Condition is a condition in which the second event (the "then" clause) will only take place if the first event (the "if" clause) takes place or is fulfilled in some way. Sometimes what takes place is dependent on the actions of other people.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

It is important that translators understand whether or not something is a Hypothetical Condition so that they translate it in the correct way. For example, some of God's promises to Israel were conditional, based on whether or not Israel obeyed God. However, many of God's promises to Israel were not conditional; God would keep these promises whether or not the Israelites obeyed. It is important that you (the translator) know the difference between these two types of promises and communicate each one accurately in your own language. Also, sometimes conditions are stated in an order different than the order in which they would happen. If the target language would state the clauses in a different order, then you will need to make that adjustment.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> God promised to bless the people and protect them, **if** they obeyed these laws. But he said he would punish them **if** they did not obey them (Story 13 Frame 7 OBS)

There are two hypothetical conditions in this frame. In both of these conditions, the first event (the "if clause") is stated after the "then" clause. If this is unnatural or confusing, the clauses can be restated in the more natural order. The first hypothetical condition is: if the Israelites obeyed God, then God would bless and protect them. The second hypothetical condition is: if the Israelites did not obey God, then God would punish them.

> If you do what is right, will you not be accepted? (Genesis 4:7a ULT)

If Cain does what is right, then he will be accepted. The only way for Cain to be accepted is by doing what is right.

> … **if** this plan or this work is of men, it will be overthrown. But **if** it is of God, you will not be able to overthrow them. (Acts 5:38b-39aULT)

There are two hypothetical conditions here: (1) If it is true that this plan is of men, then it will be overthrown; (2) If it is true that this plan is of God, then it cannot be overthrown.

Translation Strategies

(1) If the order of clauses makes the hypothetical condition confusing, then change the order of the clauses.

(2) If it is not clear where the second event is, mark that part with a word like "then."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the order of clauses makes the hypothetical condition confusing, then change the order of the clauses.

> God promised to bless the people and protect them **if** they obeyed these laws. But he said he would punish them **if** they did not obey them. (Story 13 Frame 7 OBS)

>> If the people obeyed these laws, God promised he would bless them and protect them. But **if** they did not obey these laws, God said that he would punish them.

(2) If it is not clear where the second event is, mark that part with a word like "then."

> God promised to bless the people and protect them, **if** they obeyed these laws. But he said he would punish them **if** they did not obey them. (Story 13 Frame 7 OBS)

>> If the people obeyed these laws, **then** God promised he would bless them and protect them. But **if** they did not obey these laws, **then** God said that he would punish them.

> … **if** this plan or this work is of men, it will be overthrown. But **if** it is of God, you will not be able to overthrow them; (Acts 5:38b-39a ULT)

>> … **if** this plan or this work is of men, **then** it will be overthrown. But **if** it is of God, **then** you will not be able to overthrow them;

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2:3; 3:6; 3:14)

Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

Logical Relationships

> This page answers the question: *How can I translate the reason-result relationship?*

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, of chunks of text.

Reason-and-Result Relationships

Description

A reason-and-result relationship is a logical relationship in which one event is the **reason** or cause for another event. The second event, then, is the **result** of the first event.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

A reason-and-result relationship can look forward — "I did Y because I wanted X to happen." But usually it is looking backward — "X happened, and so I did Y." Also, it is possible to state the reason either before or after the result. Many languages have a preferred order for the reason and the result, and it will be confusing for the reader if they are in the opposite order. Common words used to indicate a reason-and-result relationship in English are "because," "so," "therefore," and "for." Some of these words can also be used to indicate a goal relationship, so translators need to be aware of the difference between a goal relationship and a reason-and-result relationship. It is necessary for translators to understand how the two events are connected, and then communicate them clearly in their language.

If the reason and result are stated in different verses, it is still possible to put them in a different order. If you change the order of the verses, then put the verse numbers together at the beginning of the group of verses that were rearranged like this: 1-2. This is called a Verse Bridge.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> The Jews were amazed, **because** Saul had tried to kill believers, and now he believed in Jesus! (Story 46 Frame 6 OBS)

The **reason** is the change in Saul — that he had tried to kill people who believed in Jesus, and now he himself believed in Jesus. The **result** is that the Jews were amazed. "Because" connects the two ideas and indicates that what follows it is a reason.

> Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **so that** the boat was covered with the waves. (Matthew 8:24a ULT)

The **reason** is the great storm, and the **result** is that the boat was covered with the waves. The two events are connected by "so that." Notice that the term "so that" often indicates a goal relationship, but here the relationship is reason-and-result. This is because the sea cannot think and therefore does not have a goal.

> God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, **because** in it he rested from all his work which he had done in his creation. (Genesis 2:3 ULT)

The **result** is that God blessed and sanctified the seventh day. The **reason** is because he rested on the seventh day from his work.

> "Blessed are the poor, **for** yours is the kingdom of God." (Luke 6:20b ULT)

The **result** is that the poor are blessed. The **reason** is that the kingdom of God is theirs.

> But he raised up in their place their sons that Joshua circumcised, being uncircumcised,
> **because** they had not been circumcised on the way. (Joshua 5:7 ULT)

The **result** is that Joshua circumcised the boys and men who had been born in the wilderness. The **reason** was that they had not been circumcised while they were journeying.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses reason-and-result relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

(1) If the order of the clauses is confusing for the reader, then change the order.

(2) If the relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a more clear connecting word.

(3) If it is more clear to put a connecting word in the clause that does not have one, then do so.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

> God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, **because** in it he rested from all his work which
> he had done in his creation. (Genesis 2:3 ULT)

(1) God rested on the seventh day from all his work which he had done in his creation. **That is why** he blessed the seventh day and sanctified it.

> Blessed are the poor, **for** yours is the kingdom of God. (Luke 6:20 ULT)

(1) The kingdom of God belongs to you who are poor. **Therefore**, the poor are blessed.

(2) Blessed are the poor, **because** yours is the kingdom of God.

(3) **The reason that** the poor are blessed **is because** yours is the kingdom of God.

> Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **so that** the boat was covered with the waves.
> (Matthew 8:24a ULT)

(1) Behold, the boat was covered with the waves **because** a great storm arose on the sea.

(2) Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **with the result that** the boat was covered with the waves.

(3) Behold, **because** a great storm arose on the sea, the boat was covered with the waves.

> **Since** he was not able to find out anything for certain because of the noise, he ordered that he
> be brought into the fortress. (Acts 21:34b ULT)

(1) The captain ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress, **because** he could not tell anything because of all the noise.

(2) **Because** the captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.

(3) The captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, **so** he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2:1; 2:2; 2:10; 2:11; 2:14; 2:16; 2:17; 2:18; 3:1; 3:7; 3:14; 4:1)

Connect — Sequential Time Relationship

Time Relationships

Some connectors establish time relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

Sequential Clause

Description

A sequential clause is a time relation that connects two events in which one happens and then the other happens.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages indicate sequences of events in different ways; some use ordering, some use connecting words, some even use relative tense (Relative tense is a tense that refers to a time in relation to a reference point in the context.) Connecting words that may indicate sequence are words such as "then," "later," "after," "afterward," "before," "first," and "when." Translators need to be certain that they communicate the order of the events in a way that is natural in their language. This may require ordering clauses differently than in the original languages.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> **When** Joseph came to his brothers, they kidnapped him and sold him to some slave traders. (OBS Story 8 Frame 2)

First Joseph came to his brothers, and then they kidnapped and sold him. We know this because of the connecting word "**when**." The translator needs to decide the best way to communicate this sequence clearly and correctly.

> It was as sweet as honey in my mouth, but **after** I ate it, my stomach became bitter. (Revelation 10:10b ULT)

The event of the first clause occurs first, and the event of the last clause occurs later. We know this because of the connecting word "**after**." The translator needs to decide the best way to communicate this sequence clearly and correctly.

> For **before** the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good, the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate (Isaiah 7:16 ULT)

The event of the first clause occurs after the event of the second clause. First the land they dread will be desolate, and then the child will know to refuse evil and choose good. We know this because of the connecting word "**before**." However, stating the clauses in this order may communicate the wrong order of events in your language. The translator may have to change the order so that the clauses come in the order that they happen. Or it may be possible to keep the order of the original language text and mark the ordering of sequence so that it is clear to the readers. You (the translator) need to decide the best way to communicate this sequence clearly and correctly.

> Then Mary arose in those days **and** quickly went into the hill country, to a city of Judah, **and** she entered into the house of Zechariah **and** greeted Elizabeth. (Luke 1:39-40 ULT)

Here the general connector "**and**" connects four events. These are sequential events—each happens after the one before it. We know this because that is the only way that these events would happen. So in English, the general

connector "and" is enough to make the sequence clear for events such as these. You will need to decide if this also communicates this sequence clearly and correctly in your language.

Translation Strategies

If the sequence of events is clear in your language, then translate the sequence as it is.

(1) If the connecting word is not clear, use a connecting word that communicates the sequence more clearly.

(2) If the clauses are in an order that makes the sequence unclear, put the clauses in an order that is more clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the connecting word is not clear, use a connecting word that communicates the sequence more clearly.

> Then Mary arose in those days **and** quickly went into the hill country, to a city of Judah, **and** she entered into the house of Zechariah **and** greeted Elizabeth. (Luke 1:39-40 ULT)

>> Then Mary arose in those days. **Then** she quickly went into the hill country, to a city of Judah. **Then** she entered into the house of Zechariah, **and then** she greeted Elizabeth.

> For **before** the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good, the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate (Isaiah 7:16 ULT)

>> For the time will come when the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good, **but even before that time**, the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate.

(2) If the clauses are in an order that makes the sequence unclear, put the clauses in an order that is more clear.

> For the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate **before** the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good.

For more about sequences of events, see Sequence of Events.

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:1)

Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship

Time Relationships

Some connectors establish time relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

Simultaneous Clause

Description

A simultaneous clause is a time relationship that connects two or more events that occur at the same time.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages indicate in many different ways that events occur simultaneously. These ways may vary based on whether or not something is causing the events to occur simultaneously. Connecting words that may indicate simultaneous events are words such as "while," "as," and "during." Often the Bible does not state a relationship between the events but simply says they occurred at the same time. It is important that you (the translator) know when a time relationship is implied and when it is not implied so that you can communicate it clearly. A simultaneous clause communicates that events happened at the same time but it does not indicate that one event caused the other. That would be a reason-and-result relationship.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> Joseph served his master well, **and** God blessed Joseph. (OBS Story 8 Frame 4)

Two events happened while Joseph was a slave to a wealthy government official: Joseph served well, and God blessed Joseph. There is no indication of a reason-and-result (cause and effect) relationship between the two, or that the first event happened, and then the second event happened.

> But in truth I say to you that there were many widows in Israel **during** the days of Elijah. (Luke 4:25b ULT)

The connecting word "**during**" tells us clearly that two things happened at the same time, but one event did not cause the other.

> And the people were waiting for Zechariah, **and** they were wondering at his delaying in the temple. (Luke 1:21 ULT)

The people were both waiting and wondering at the same time. The general connector "**and**" indicates this.

> **While** they were looking intensely into heaven **as** he was going up, suddenly, two men stood by them in white clothing. (Acts 1:10 ULT)

Three events happened at the same time — the disciples looking, Jesus going up, and two men standing. The connector words "**while**" and "**as**" tell us this.

Translation Strategies

If the way that the simultaneous clauses are marked also is clear in your language, then translate the simultaneous clauses as they are.

(1) If the connecting word does not make it clear that the simultaneous clauses are happening at the same time, use a connecting word that communicates this more clearly.

(2) If it is not clear which clause the simultaneous clause is connected to, and that they are happening at the same time, mark all of the clauses with a connecting word.

(3) If your language marks events as simultaneous in a different way than using connecting words, then use that way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

Below, each Bible verse will be restated in three different ways, according to the translation strategies in the list above. Each restatement will have the same number as the translation strategy that it is using.

> And the people were waiting for Zechariah, **and** they were wondering at his delaying in the temple. (Luke 1:21 ULT)

(1) Now **while** the people were waiting for Zechariah, they were wondering at his delaying in the temple.

(2) Now **while** the people were waiting for Zechariah, they were **also** wondering at his delaying in the temple.

(3) Now the people were waiting for Zechariah, wondering at his delaying in the temple.

> **While** they were looking intently into heaven **as** he was going up, suddenly, two men stood by them in white clothing. (Acts 1:10 ULT)

(1) And **during the time** they were looking intently into heaven **while** he was going up, suddenly, two men stood by them in white clothing.

(2) And **while** they were looking intently into heaven **as** he was going up, suddenly, **at that same time** two men stood by them in white clothing.

(3) They were looking intently into heaven; he was going up **when** they saw two men standing by them in white clothing.

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 3:12)

Connecting Words and Phrases

Description

This page answers the question: *How do connecting words work to join parts of the text in different ways?*

As humans, we write our thoughts in phrases and sentences. We usually want to communicate a series of thoughts that are connected to each other in different ways. **Connecting words and phrases** show how these thoughts are related to each other. For example, we can show how the following thoughts are related by using the Connecting Words in bold type:

- It was raining, **so** I opened my umbrella.
- It was raining, **but** I did not have an umbrella. **So** I got very wet.

Connecting words or phrases can connect phrases or clauses within a sentence. They can connect sentences to each other. They can also connect entire chunks to one another in order to show how the chunk before relates to the chunk after the connecting word. Very often, the connecting words that connect entire chunks to one another are either conjunctions or adverbs.

> It was raining, but I did not have an umbrella, so I got very wet.
>
> **Now** I must change my clothes. Then I will drink a cup of hot tea and warm myself by the fire.

In the above example, the word **now** connects the two short chunks of text, showing the relationship between them. The speaker must change his clothes, drink hot tea, and warm himself because of something that happened earlier (that is, he got wet in the rain).

Sometimes people might not use a connecting word because they expect the context to help the readers understand the relationship between the thoughts. Some languages do not use connecting words as much as other languages do. They might say:

- It was raining. I did not have an umbrella. I got very wet.

You (the translator) will need to use the method that is most natural and clear in the target language. But in general, using connecting words whenever possible helps the reader to understand the ideas in the Bible most clearly.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- You need to understand the relationship between paragraphs, between sentences, and between parts of sentences in the Bible, and how connecting words and phrases can help you to understand the relationship between the thoughts that they are connecting.
- Each language has its own ways of showing how thoughts are related.
- You need to know how to help readers understand the relationship between the thoughts in a way that is natural in your language.

Translation Principles

- You need to translate in a way that readers can understand the same relationship between thoughts that the original readers would have understood.
- Whether or not a connecting word is used is not as important as readers being able to understand the relationship between the ideas.

The Different Types of Connections

Listed below are different types of connections between ideas or events. These different types of connections can be indicated by using different connecting words. When we write or translate something, it is important to use the right connecting word so that these connections are clear for the reader. If you would like additional information, simply click the colored, hyperlinked word to be directed to a page containing definitions and examples for each type of connection.

- Sequential Clause — a time relationship between two events in which one happens and then the other happens.
- Simultaneous Clause — a time relationship between two or more events that occur at the same time.
- Background Clause — a time relationship in which the first clause describes a long event that is happening at the time when the beginning of the second event happens, which is described in the second clause.
- Exceptional Relationship — one clause describes a group of people or items, and the other clause excludes one or more items or people from the group.
- Hypothetical Condition — the second event will only take place if the first one takes place. Sometimes what takes place is dependent on the actions of other people.
- Factual Condition — a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain or true, so that the condition is guaranteed to happen.
- Contrary-to-Fact Condition — a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain that it is not true. See also: Hypothetical Statements.
- Goal Relationship — a logical relationship in which the second event is the purpose or goal of the first.
- Reason and Result Relationship — a logical relationship in which one event is the reason for the other event, the result.
- Contrast Relationship — one item is being described as different or in opposition to another.

Examples from the Bible

> I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood. I did not go up to Jerusalem to those who were apostles before me. **Instead**, I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. **Then** after three years, I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days. (Galatians 1:16b-18 ULT)

The word "instead" introduces something that contrasts with what was said before. The contrast here is between what Paul did not do and what he did do. The word "then" introduces a sequence of events. It introduces something that Paul did after he returned to Damascus.

> **Therefore,** whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

The word "therefore" links this section with the section before it, signaling that the section that came before gave the reason for this section. "Therefore" usually links sections larger than one sentence. The word "and" links only two actions within the same sentence, that of breaking commandments and teaching others. In this verse the word "but" contrasts what one group of people will be called in God's kingdom with what another group of people will be called.

> We place nothing as a stumbling block in front of anyone, **so that** our ministry might not be discredited. **Instead**, we commend ourselves in everything as God's servants. (2 Corinthians 6:3-4 ULT)

Here the words "so that" connect what follows as the reason for what came before; the reason that Paul does not place stumbling blocks is that he does not want his ministry brought into disrepute. "Instead" contrasts what Paul does (prove by his actions that he is God's servant) with what he said he does not do (place stumbling blocks).

General Translation Strategies

See each type of Connecting Word above for specific strategies

If the way the relationship between thoughts is shown in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, then consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

(1) Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).

(2) Do not use a connecting word if it would be strange to use one and people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.

(3) Use a different connecting word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).

> Jesus said to them, "Come follow me, and I will make you to become fishers of men." Then immediately they left the nets and followed him. (Mark 1:17-18 ULT)

They followed Jesus because he told them to. Some translators may want to mark this clause with the connecting word "so."

> Jesus said to them, "Come follow me, and I will make you to become fishers of men." **So**, immediately they left the nets and followed him.

(2) Do not use a connecting word if it would be odd to use one, and if people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.

> Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Some languages would prefer not to use connecting words here because the meaning is clear without them and using them would be unnatural. They might translate like this:

> Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments, teaching others to do so as well, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. Whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

> I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood. I did not go up to Jerusalem to those who were apostles before me. **Instead**, I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. **Then** after three years, I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days. (Galatians 1:16b-18 ULT) (Galatians 1:16-18 ULT)

Some languages might not need the words "instead" or "then" here. They might translate like this:

> I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me. I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. After three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days.

(3) Use a different connecting word.

> Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Instead of a word like "therefore," a language might need a phrase to indicate that there was a section before it that gave the reason for the section that follows. Also, the word "but" is used here because of the contrast between the two groups of people. But in some languages, the word "but" would show that what comes after it is surprising because of what came before it. So "and" might be clearer for those languages. They might translate like this:

> **Because of that**, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **And** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:5; 2:5; 3:16; 3:19; 12:28)

Direct and Indirect Quotations

Description

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotations and indirect quotations.

A direct quotation occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker's exact words. In the example below, John would have said "I" when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is reporting John's words, uses the word "I" in the quotation to refer to John. To show that these are John's exact words, many languages put the words between quotation marks: "".

> This page answers the question: *What are direct and indirect quotations?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Pronouns*
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]
> *Quotations and Quote Margins*

- John said, "**I** do not know at what time **I** will arrive."

An indirect quotation occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead and not from the original person's point of view. This kind of quotation usually contains changes in pronouns, and it often includes changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as "he" in the quotation and uses the word "would" to replace the future tense, indicated by "will."

- John said that **he** did not know at what time **he** would arrive.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by either direct or indirect quotations. In other languages, it is more natural to use one than the other. There may be a certain meaning implied by using one rather than the other. So for each quotation, translators need to decide whether it is best to translate it as a direct quotation or as an indirect quotation.

Examples From the Bible

The verses in the examples below contain both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have marked in bold the words that are quoted.

> And he commanded him to tell no one, but, "Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them." (Luke 5:14 ULT)

- Indirect quote: He commanded him **to tell no one**,
- Direct quote: but told him, "**Go, show yourself to the priest ...**"

> And being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God was coming, he answered them and said, "The kingdom of God is not coming with careful observation. Neither will they say, 'Look, here it is!' or 'There it is!' For indeed, the kingdom of God is among you." (Luke 17:20-21 ULT)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees **when the kingdom of God was coming,**
- Direct quote: he answered them and said, "**The kingdom of God is not coming with careful observation. Neither will they say, 'Look. here it is!' or 'There it is!' For indeed, the kingdom of God is among you.**"
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, '**Look, here it is!**' or, '**There it is!**'

Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it. If the kind of quote used in that context is not natural for your language, follow these strategies.

(1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

(2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

> And he commanded him to tell no one, but, "**Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.**" (Luke 5:14 ULT)
>
> > He commanded him to tell no one, but **to go and show himself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for his cleansing according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them**.

(2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

> And he commanded him **to tell no one,** but, "Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them." (Luke 5:14 ULT)
>
> > He commanded him, "**Tell no one**. But go and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them."

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_quotations.

Next we recommend you learn about:

Quotes within Quotes

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:5; 1:6; 1:7; 1:8; 1:9; 1:10; 1:11; 1:12; 1:13; 2:6; 2:7; 2:8; 2:12; 2:13; 3:7; 3:8; 3:9; 3:10; 3:11; 3:15; 8:11)

Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding

Description

In some languages, phrases that modify a noun can be used with the noun for two different purposes. They can either (1) distinguish the noun from other similar items, or (2) they can give more information about the noun. That information could be new to the reader, or a reminder about something the reader might already know. Other languages use modifying phrases with a noun only for distinguishing the noun from other similar things. When people who speak these languages hear a modifying phrase along with a noun, they assume that its function is to distinguish one item from another similar item.

> This page answers the question: *When a phrase is used with a noun, what is the difference between phrases that distinguish the noun from others and phrases that simply inform or remind?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Some languages use a comma to mark the difference between (1) making a distinction between similar items and (2) giving more information about an item. Without the comma, the sentence below communicates that it is making a distinction:

- Mary gave some of the food to **her sister who was very thankful**.
  - If her sister was usually thankful, the phrase "who was thankful" could distinguish this sister of Mary's from another sister who was not usually thankful.

With the comma, the sentence is giving more information:

- Mary gave some of the food to **her sister, who was very thankful**.
  - This same phrase can be used to give us more information about Mary's sister. It tells us about how Mary's sister responded when Mary gave her the food. In this case it does not distinguish one sister from another sister.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Many source languages of the Bible use phrases that modify a noun both for distinguishing the noun from another similar item and also for giving more information about the noun. You (the translator) must be careful to understand which meaning the author intended in each case.
- Some languages use phrases that modify a noun only for distinguishing the noun from another similar item. When translating a phrase that is used for giving more information, translators who speak these languages will need to separate the phrase from the noun. Otherwise, people who read it or hear it will think that the phrase is meant to distinguish the noun from other similar items.

Examples From the Bible

Examples of words and phrases that are used to distinguish one item from other possible items:

(These usually do not cause any problem in translation.)

> The curtain is to separate **the holy place** from **the most holy place**. (Exodus 26:33b ULT)

The words "holy" and "most holy" distinguish two different places from each other and from any other place.

> A foolish son is a grief to his father, and bitterness to **the woman who bore him**. (Proverbs 17:25 ULT)

The phrase "who bore him" distinguishes which woman the son is bitterness to. He is not bitterness to all women, but to his mother.

Examples of words and phrases that are used to give added information or a reminder about an item:

(These are a translation issue for languages that do not use these.)

> … for **your righteous judgments** are good. (Psalm 119:39b ULT)

The word "righteous" simply reminds us that God's judgments are righteous. It does not distinguish his righteous judgments from his unrighteous judgments, because all of his judgments are righteous.

> How can Sarah, **who is 90 years old**, bear a son? (Genesis 17:17b ULT)

The phrase "who is 90 years old" is the reason that Abraham did not think that Sarah could bear a son. He was not distinguishing one woman named Sarah from another woman named Sarah who was a different age, and he was not telling anyone something new about her age. He simply did not think that a woman who was that old could bear a child.

> I will wipe away mankind **whom I have created** from the surface of the earth. (Genesis 6:7 ULT)

The phrase "whom I have created" is a reminder of the relationship between God and mankind. It is the reason God had the right to wipe away mankind. There is not another mankind that God did not create.

Translation Strategies

If readers would understand the purpose of a phrase with a noun, then consider keeping the phrase and the noun together. For languages that use words or phrases with a noun only to distinguish one item from another, here are some strategies for translating phrases that are used to inform or remind.

(1) Put the information in another part of the sentence and add words that show its purpose.
(2) Use one of your language's ways for expressing that this is just added information. It may be by adding a small word, or by changing the way the voice sounds. Sometimes changes in the voice can be shown with punctuation marks, such as parentheses or commas.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Put the information in another part of the sentence and add words that show its purpose.

> I hate those who serve **worthless** idols (Psalm 31:6 ULT)

By saying "worthless idols," David was commenting about all idols and giving his reason for hating those who serve them. He was not distinguishing worthless idols from valuable idols.
>

> > **Because idols are worthless**, I hate those who serve them.

> … for your **righteous** judgments are good. (Psalm 119:39b ULT)

> > … for your judgments are good **because they are righteous**.

> Can Sarah, **who is 90 years old**, bear a son? (Genesis 17:17b ULT)

The phrase "who is 90 years old" is a reminder of Sarah's age. It tells why Abraham was asking the question. He did not expect that a woman who was that old could bear a child.
>

> > Can Sarah bear a son **even when she is 90 years old**?

> I will call on Yahweh, **who is worthy to be praised**. (2 Samuel 22:4a ULT) There is only one Yahweh. The phrase "who is worthy to be praised" gives a reason for calling on Yahweh.

> > I will call on Yahweh, because **he is worthy to be praised**

(2) Use one of your language's ways for expressing that this is just added information.

> You are my Son, **whom I love**. I am pleased with you. (Luke 3:22 ULT)

> > You are my Son. **I love you** and I am pleased with you.

> > **Receiving my love**, you are my Son. I am pleased with you.

Next we recommend you learn about:

Double Negatives

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 3:16; 7:5)

Double Negatives

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of "not." Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

This page answers the question: *What are double negatives?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning "not." Examples in English are "no," "not," "none," "no one," "nothing," "nowhere," "never," "nor," "neither," and "without." Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean "not," such as the bolded parts of these words: "**un**happy," "**im**possible," and "use**less**." Some other kinds of words also have a negative meaning, such as "lack" or "reject," or even "fight" or "evil."

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each have a negative meaning.

> We did this **not** because we have **no** authority … (2 Thessalonians 3:9a ULT)
>
> And this was **not** done **without** an oath! (Hebrews 7:20a ULT)
>
> Be sure of this—the wicked person will **not** go **un**punished. (Proverbs 11:21a ULT)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as English, a second negative in a clause cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, "He is not unintelligent" means "He is intelligent."
- In some languages, such as French and Spanish, two negative words in a clause do not cancel each other to become a positive. The Spanish sentence, "No vi a nadie," literally says "I did not see no one." It has both the word 'no' next to the verb and 'nadie,' which means "no one." The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, "I did not see anyone."
- In some languages, a double negative creates a stronger negative statement.
- In some languages, a double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, "He is not unintelligent" means, "He is somewhat intelligent."
- In some languages, including the languages of the Bible, a double negative can produce a stronger positive meaning than a simple positive statement. So, "He is not unintelligent" can mean "He is very intelligent." In this case, the double negative is actually the figure of speech called litotes.

Biblical Greek can do all of the above. So to translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know what each double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

Examples From the Bible

The Greek of John 15:5 says:

> χωρὶς ἐμοῦ **οὐ** δύνασθε ποιεῖν **οὐδέν**
>
> Without me **not** you can do **nothing**

We cannot reproduce this double negative in the English ULT because in English, a second negative in a clause cancels the first one. In English, and perhaps in your language, we need to choose only one of the negatives and say either:

Without me, you can do **nothing**.

or:

Without me, you **cannot** do anything.

> … in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14b ULT)

This means "in order to be fruitful."

> A prophet is **not without** honor (Mark 6:4 ULT)

This means "a prophet is honored."

> I do **not** want you to be **ignorant**. (1 Corinthians 12:1)

This means "I want you to be knowledgeable."

Translation Strategies

If the way that the double negative is used in the Bible is natural and has the same meaning as in your language, consider using it in the same way. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives.

(3) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a stronger negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives and add a strengthening word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

> For we do **not** have a high priest who **cannot** feel sympathy for our weaknesses. (Hebrews 4:15a ULT)
>
> > "For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses."
>
> … in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14b ULT)
>
> > "… so that they may be fruitful."

(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives.

> χωρὶς ἐμοῦ **οὐ** δύνασθε ποιεῖν **οὐδέν**
>
> Without me **not** you can do **nothing** (John 15:5)

> Without me, you can do **nothing**.
>
> or:
>
> Without me, you **cannot** do anything.

(3) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a stronger negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives and add a strengthening word.

> …ὶῶτα ἓν ἢ μία κεραία **οὐ μὴ** παρέλθη ἀπὸ τοῦ νόμου (Matthew 5:18)
>
> …iota one or one serif **not not** may pass away from the law
>
> > …**not even** one iota or one serif may pass away from the law
> >
> > or:
> >
> > …**certainly no** iota or serif may pass away from the law

> Next we recommend you learn about:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]*

Doublet

Description

We are using the word "doublet" to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word "and." Unlike Hendiadys, in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

> This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]*

A very similar issue is the repetition of the same word or phrase for emphasis, usually with no other words between them. Because these figures of speech are so similar and have the same effect, we will treat them here together.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

Examples From the Bible

> He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

The bolded words mean the same thing. Together they mean the people were spread out.

> He attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself. (1 Kings 2:32b ULT)

This means that they were "much more righteous" than he was.

> You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

> ... like of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect—not even one.

> Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, **"Master! Master!** We are perishing!"** (Luke 8:24 ULT)

The repetition of "Master" means that the disciples called to Jesus urgently and continually.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

(1) Translate only one of the words or phrases.

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

> You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)
>
> > "You have decided to prepare **false** things to say."

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."

> He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)
>
> > "He has one people **very spread out**."

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

> ... like a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)
>
> > • English can emphasize this with "any" and "at all."
> >
> > > "... like a lamb **without any blemish at all**."

> Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, **"Master! Master!** We are perishing!" (Luke 8:24 ULT)
>
> > Then they approached {and} woke him up, **urgently shouting, "Master!** We are perishing!"

Ellipsis

Description

An ellipsis[1] occurs when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words that normally should be in the sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

> This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis ?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

> So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, **nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous**. (Psalm 1:5 ULT)

There is ellipsis in the second part because "nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous" is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would read:

> > So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **will** sinners **stand** in the assembly of the righteous.

[1] English has a punctuation symbol which is also called an ellipsis. It is a series of three dots (…) used to indicate an intentional omission of a word, phrase, sentence or more from text without altering its original meaning. This translationAcademy article is not about the punctuation mark, but about the concept of omission of words that normally should be in the sentence.

Two Types of Ellipsis

A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.
An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage or from the nature of the situation.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

Examples From the Bible

Relative Ellipsis

> He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox**. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

> > He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young
> > ox.
>
> Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**not as unwise but as wise**. (Ephesians 5:15b ULT)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

> > Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**walk** not as unwise but **walk** as
> > wise,

Absolute Ellipsis

> Then when he had come near, he asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" And so he
> said, "Lord, **that I might recover my sight**." (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

> > "Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight."
>
> To Titus, a true son in our common faith. Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ
> Jesus our Savior. (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

> > To Titus, a true son in our common faith. **May you receive** grace and
> > peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

> So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **sinners in the assembly** of the righteous.
> (Psalm 1:5 ULT)
>
> > So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinners will not stand
> > in the assembly** of the righteous.
>
> Then when he had come near, he asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" And so he
> said, "Lord, **that I might recover my sight**." (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)
>
> > Then when the man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to
> > do for you?" He said, "Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my
> > sight."
>
> He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox**. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

> He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:4; 1:8; 2:6; 3:6; 5:6; 12:7; 12:14)

Euphemism

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

> This page answers the question: *What is a euphemism?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]*

> … they found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons "were dead." It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples From the Bible

> … where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

> But Mary said to the angel, "How will this be, since I have not **known a man**?" (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

(1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

> … where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT) — Some languages might use euphemisms like these:
>
> > "… where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **dig a hole**"
> >
> > "… where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **have some time alone**"

> But Mary said to the angel, "How will this be, since I have not **known a man**?" (Luke 1:34 ULT)

> > But Mary said to the angel, "How will this be, since I have not **slept with a man**?"

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

> They found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

> > "They found Saul and his sons **dead** on Mount Gilboa."

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:3; 3:14; 11:22; 13:4)

Exclamations

Description

Exclamations are words or sentences that show strong feeling such as surprise, joy, fear, or anger. In the ULT and UST, they usually have an exclamation mark (!) at the end. The mark shows that it is an exclamation. The situation and the meaning of what the people said helps us understand what feelings they were

> This page answers the question: *What are ways of translating exclamations?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes]]*

expressing. In the example below from Matthew 8, the speakers were terribly afraid. In the example from Matthew 9, the speakers were amazed, because something happened that they had never seen before.

> Save us, Lord; we are about to die! (Matthew 8:25b ULT)

> When the demon had been driven out, the mute man spoke. The crowds were astonished and said, "This has never been seen before in Israel!" (Matthew 9:33 ULT)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages have different ways of showing that a sentence communicates strong emotion.

Examples From the Bible

Some exclamations have a word that shows feeling. The sentences below have "Oh" and "Ah." The word "oh" here shows the speaker's amazement.

> **Oh**, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

The word "Alas" below shows that Gideon was very frightened.

> When Gideon saw that he was the angel of Yahweh, Gideon lamented, "**Alas**, O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)

> Some exclamations start with a question word such as "how" or "why," even though they are not questions. The sentence below shows that the speaker is amazed at how unsearchable God's judgments are.

> **How** unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33b ULT)

Some exclamations in the Bible do not have a main verb. The exclamation below shows that the speaker is disgusted with the person he is speaking to.

> You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22b ULT)

Translation Strategies

(1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is "is" or "are."

(2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling.

(3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.

(4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.

(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is "is" or "are."

> You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22b ULT)
>
> > "You **are** such a worthless person!"
>
> Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33b ULT)
>
> > "Oh, the riches of the wisdom and the knowledge of God **are** so deep!"

(2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling. In the first suggested translation below, the word "wow" shows that they were astonished. In the second suggested translation, the expression "Oh no" shows that something terrible or frightening has happened.

> They were extremely astonished, saying, "He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf hear and the mute speak." (Mark 7:37 ULT)
>
> > "They were extremely astonished, saying, '**Wow**! He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.'"
>
> Alas, oh my Lord Yahweh! For because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face! (Judges 6:22b ULT)
>
> > "**Oh no**, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!"

(3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.

> "**Alas,** O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)
>
> > "Lord Yahweh, **what will happen to me**? For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!"
> > "**Help**, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!"

(4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.

> How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33b ULT)
>
> > "His judgments are **so** unsearchable and his ways are **far** beyond discovering!"

(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

> When Gideon saw that he was the angel of Yahweh, Gideon lamented, "**Alas,** O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)
>
> > Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. **He was terrified** and said, "**Alas**, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!"

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:8; 1:10; 2:13; 9:14; 10:29)

Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

Description

Some languages have more than one form of "we": an inclusive form that means "I and you" and an exclusive form that means "I and someone else but not you." The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for "us," "our," "ours," and "ourselves." Some languages have inclusive

> This page answers the question: *What are the exclusive and inclusive forms of "we"?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Pronouns*

forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive "we" and the exclusive "we" refer to.

we/us (inclusive)
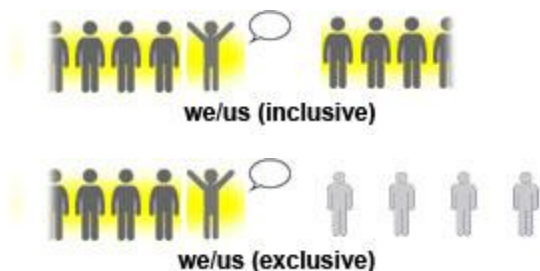
we/us (exclusive)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for "we." If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of "we," then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of "we" to use.

Examples From the Bible

Exclusive

> They said, "There are not more than five loaves of bread and two fish with us—unless **we** go and buy food for all these people." (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food. They were speaking to Jesus, but Jesus was not going to buy food. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" would use the **exclusive** form there.

> **We** have seen it, and **we** bear witness to it. **We** are announcing to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and which has been made known to **us**. (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **exclusive** forms in this verse.

Inclusive

> The shepherds said one to each other, "Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**." (Luke 2:15b ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said "us," they were including the people they were speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

> Now it happened that on one of those days, he indeed got into a boat with his disciples, and he said to them, "Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake." So they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said "us," he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Next we recommend you learn about:

When Masculine Words Include Women

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2:5; 5:11; 8:1; 10:30; 12:1; 12:3; 12:25; 13:18; 13:21)

First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as "I" and the person he is speaking to as "you." Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than "I" or "you."

<div style="border: 1px solid;">

This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]
Pronouns

</div>

Description

- First person — This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns "I" and "we." (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- Second person — This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun "you." (Also: your, yours)
- Third person — This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns "he," "she," "it," and "they." (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like "the man" or "the woman" are also third person.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant "I" or "you."

Examples From the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of "I" or "me" to refer to themselves.

> But David said to Saul, "**Your servant** used to keep **his** father's sheep." (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as "your servant" and used "his." He was calling himself Saul's servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

> Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,
> "… Do you have an arm like **God's**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?" (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words "God's" and "his." He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of "you" or "your" to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

> Abraham answered and said, "Look, I have undertaken to speak to my Lord, even though I am only dust and ashes!" (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as "My Lord" rather than as "you." He did this to show his humility before God.

> So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying "each of you," Jesus used the third person "his" instead of "your."

Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean "I" or "you" would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

(1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun "I" or "you."

(2) Simply use the first person ("I") or second person ("you") instead of the third person.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun "I" or "you."

> But David said to Saul, "**Your servant** used to keep **his** father's sheep." (1 Samuel 17:34)

>> But David said to Saul, "**I, your servant**, used to keep **my** father's sheep."

(2) Simply use the first person ("I") or second person ("you") instead of the third person.

> Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, "... Do you have an arm like **God's**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?" (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

>> Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, "... Do you have an arm like **mine**? Can you thunder with a voice like **mine**?"

> So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

>> So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **your** brother from your heart.

> Next we recommend you learn about:
>
> *Forms of You*

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:7; 1:8; 1:9; 3:9; 3:10)

Forms of You

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for "you" based on how many people the word "you" refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

> This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Forms of 'You' — Singular*
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-youdual]]*

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of "you" even though he is speaking to a crowd.

• Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of "you" based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of "you" when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_youform.

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

• Forms of "You" — Formal or Informal

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 10:5; 12:25)

Forms of 'You' — Singular

Description

Some languages have a singular form of "you" for when the word "you" refers to just one person, and a **plural** form for when the word "you" refers to more than one person. Translators who speak one of these languages will always need to know what the speaker meant so they can choose the right word for "you" in their language. Other languages, such as English, have only one form, which people use regardless of how many people it refers to.

> This page answers the question: *How do I know if the word 'you' is singular?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]
> *Forms of You*
> *Pronouns*

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. These languages all have both a singular form of "you" and a plural form of "you." When we read the Bible in those languages, the pronouns and verb forms show us whether the word "you" refers to one person or more than one. When we read the Bible in a language that does not have different forms of you, we need to look at the context to see how many people the speaker was speaking to.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators who speak a language that has distinct singular and plural forms of "you" will always need to know what the speaker meant so they can choose the right word for "you" in their language.
- Many languages also have different forms of the verb depending on whether the subject is singular or plural. So even if there is no pronoun meaning "you," translators of these languages will need to know if the speaker was referring to one person or more than one.

Often the context will make it clear whether the word "you" refers to one person or more than one. If you look at the other pronouns in the sentence, they will help you know the number of people the speaker was speaking to. Sometimes Greek and Hebrew speakers used the singular form of "you" even though they were speaking to a group of people. (See Forms of 'You' — Singular to a Crowd.)

Examples From the Bible

> But he said, "All these things I have kept from my youth." But when he heard this, Jesus said to him, "One thing **is** still lacking to **you**. All things, as much as **you** have, sell all and distribute to the poor, and **you** will have treasure in heaven—and come, follow me." (Luke 18:21-22 ULT)

The ruler was speaking about just himself when he said "I." This shows us that when Jesus said "you" he was referring only to the ruler. So languages that have singular and plural forms of "you" need the singular form here.

> The angel said to him, "Dress **yourself** and put on **your** sandals." So he did that. He said to him, "Put on **your** outer garment and follow me." (Acts 12:8 ULT)

The context makes it clear that the angel was speaking to one person and that only one person did what the the angel commanded. So languages that have singular and plural forms of "you" would need the singular form here for "yourself" and "your." Also, if verbs have different forms for singular and plural subjects, then the verbs "dress" and "put on" need the form that indicates a singular subject.

> To Titus, a true son in our common faith. For this purpose I left **you** in Crete, that **you** might set in order things not yet complete and ordain elders in every city as I directed **you**. But **you**, say what fits with sound teaching. (Titus 1:4a, 5; 2:1 ULT)

Paul wrote this letter to one person, Titus. Most of the time the word "you" in this letter refers only to Titus.

Strategies for finding out how many people "you" refers to

(1) Look at the notes to see if they tell whether "you" refers to one person or more than one person.

(2) Look at the UST to see if it says anything that would show you whether the word "you" refers to one person or more than one person.

(3) If you have a Bible that is written in a language that distinguishes "you" singular from "you" plural, see which form of "you" that Bible has in that sentence.

(4) Look at the context to see how many people the speaker was talking to and who responded.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_younum.

> Next we recommend you learn about:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-youdual]]*

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:5; 1:8; 1:9; 1:10; 1:11; 1:12; 1:13; 2:6; 2:7; 2:8; 2:12)

Generic Noun Phrases

Description

Generic noun phrases refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things. This happens frequently in proverbs, because proverbs tell about things that are true about people in general.

> This page answers the question: *What are generic noun phrases and how can I translate them?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]*

> Can **a man** walk on hot coals without scorching his feet?
> So is **the man who goes in to his neighbor's wife**;
> **the one who touches her** will not go unpunished. (Proverbs 6:28-29 ULT)

The phrases in bold above do not refer to a specific man. They refer to any man who does these things.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages have different ways of showing that noun phrases refer to something in general. You (the translator) should refer to these general ideas in ways that are natural in your language.

Examples From the Bible

> The **righteous person** is kept away from trouble and it comes upon **the wicked** instead. (Proverbs 11:8 ULT)

The bold phrases above do not refer to a specific person but to anyone who does what is right or anyone who is wicked.

> People curse **the man who refuses to sell grain**. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

This does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who refuses to sell grain.

> Yahweh gives favor to **a good man**, but he condemns **a man who makes evil plans**. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)

The phrase "a good man" does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who is good. The phrase "a man who makes evil plans" does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who makes evil plans.

Translation Strategies

If your language can use the same wording as in the ULT to refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things, consider using the same wording. If not, here are some strategies you might use.

(1) Use the word "the" in the noun phrase.

(2) Use the word "a" in the noun phrase.

(3) Use the word "any," as in "any person" or "anyone."

(4) Use the plural form, as in "people."

(5) Use any other way that is natural in your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the word "the" in the noun phrase.

> Yahweh gives favor to **a good man**, but he condemns **a man who makes evil plans**. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)
>
>> "Yahweh gives favor to **the good man**, but he condemns **the man who makes evil plans**." (Proverbs 12:2)

(2) Use the word "a" in the noun phrase.

> People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)
>
>> "People curse **a man** who refuses to sell grain."

(3) Use the word "any," as in "any person" or "anyone."

> People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)
>
>> "People curse **any man** who refuses to sell grain."

(4) Use the plural form, as in "people" (or in this sentence, "men").

> People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)
>
>> "People curse **men** who refuse to sell grain"

(5) Use any other way that is natural in your language.

> People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)
>
>> "People curse **whoever** refuses to sell grain."

Next we recommend you learn about:

When Masculine Words Include Women

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 9:9; 10:38)

Go and Come

Description

Different languages have different ways of determining whether
to use the words "go" or "come" and whether to use the words "take" or "bring" when talking about motion. For example, when saying that they are approaching a person who has called them, English speakers say "I'm coming," while Spanish speakers say "I'm going." You will need to study the context in order to understand what is meant by the words "go" and "come" (and also "take" and "bring"), and then translate those words in a way that your readers will understand which direction people are moving in.

> This page answers the question: *What do I do if the word "go" or "come" is confusing in a certain sentence?*

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages have different ways of talking about motion. The biblical languages or your source language may use the words "go" and "come" or "take" and "bring" differently than your language uses them. If these words are not translated in the way that is natural in your language, your readers may be confused about which direction people are moving.

Examples From the Bible

> Yahweh said to Noah, "**Come**, you and all your household, into the ark." (Genesis 7:1 ULT)

In some languages, this would lead people to think that Yahweh was in the ark.

> But you will be free from my oath if you **come** to my relatives and they will not give her to you. Then you will be free from my oath. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to his servant. Abraham's relatives lived far away from where he and his servant were standing and he wanted his servant to **go** to them, not **come** toward Abraham.

> When you have **come** to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ... (Deuteronomy 17:14a ULT)

Moses is speaking to the people in the wilderness. They had not yet gone into the land that God was giving them. In some languages, it would make more sense to say, "When you have **gone** into the land ..."

> They **brought** him up to the temple in Jerusalem to present him to the Lord. (Luke 2:22b ULT)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that they**took** or **carried** Jesus to the temple.

> Then see, there was a man whose name was Jairus, and he was a leader of the synagogue. And falling at the feet of Jesus, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

The man was not at his house when he spoke to Jesus. He wanted Jesus to **go** with him to his house.

> What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)

In some languages, it might make more sense to ask what did you come out to see.

Translation Strategies

If the word used in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other strategies.

(1) Use the word "go," "come," "take," or "bring" that would be natural in your language.

(2) Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the word "go," "come," "take," or "bring" that would be natural in your language.

> But you will be free from my oath if you **come** to my relatives and they will not give her to you. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)
>
>> But you will be free from my oath if you **go** to my relatives and they will not give her to you.

> What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)
>
>> What did you come out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind?

(2) Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

> When you have **come** to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it … (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULT)
>
>> "When you have **arrived** in the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it …"

> Yahweh said to Noah, "**Come**, you and all your household, into the ark …" (Genesis 7:1 ULT)
>
>> Yahweh said to Noah, "**Enter**, you and all your household, into the ark …"

> What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)
>
>> What did you travel out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind?

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 3:16)

Hendiadys

Description

When a speaker expresses a single idea by using two words that are connected with "and," it is called a hendiadys. In a hendiadys, the two words work together. Usually one of the words is the primary idea and the other word further describes the primary one.

> This page answers the question: *What is hendiadys and how can I translate phrases that have it?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]

> ... his own **kingdom and glory.** (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)

Though "kingdom" and "glory" are both nouns, "glory" actually tells what kind of kingdom it is: it is a **kingdom of glory** or **a glorious kingdom**.

Two phrases connected by "and" can also be a hendiadys when they refer to a single person, thing, or event.

> while we look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory** of **our great God and Savior Jesus Christ**. (Titus 2:13b ULT)

Titus 2:13 contains two hendiadyses. "The blessed hope" and "appearing of the glory" refer to the same thing and serve to strengthen the idea that the return of Jesus Christ is greatly anticipated and wonderful. Also, "our great God" and "Savior Jesus Christ" refer to one person, not two.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Often a hendiadys contains an abstract noun. Some languages may not have a noun with the same meaning.
- Many languages do not use the hendiadys, so people may not understand that the second word is further describing the first one.
- Many languages do not use the hendiadys, so people may not understand that only one person or thing is meant, not two.

Examples From the Bible

> For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** ... (Luke 21:15a ULT)

"A mouth" and "wisdom" are nouns, but in this figure of speech "wisdom" describes what comes from the mouth.

> If you are willing and obedient ... (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

"Willing" and "obedient" are adjectives, but "willing" describes "obedient."

Translation Strategies

If the hendiadys would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

(1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.

(2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.

(3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.

(5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.

> For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** … (Luke 21:15a ULT)
>
> > For I will give you **wise words** …
>
> Walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you into **his own kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)
>
> > You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to **his own glorious kingdom**.

(2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.

> For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** … (Luke 21:15a ULT)
>
> > for I will give you **words of wisdom**.
>
> You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you into **his own kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)
>
> > You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to **his own kingdom of glory**.

(3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

> If you are willing and obedient … (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)
>
> > If you are **willingly obedient** …

(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.

> If you are willing and obedient … (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

The adjective "obedient" can be substituted with the verb "obey."

> > if you **obey willingly** …

(4) and (5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

> We look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory** of **our great God and Savior Jesus Christ**. (Titus 2:13b ULT)

The noun "glory" can be changed to the adjective "glorious" to make it clear that Jesus' appearing is what we hope for. Also, "Jesus Christ" can be moved to the front of the phrase and "great God and Savior" put into a relative clause that describes the one person, Jesus Christ.

> > We look forward to receiving **what we are longing for, the blessed and glorious appearing** of **Jesus Christ, who is our great God and Savior**.

Next we recommend you learn about:

Doublet

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2:14)

How to Translate Names

Description

The Bible contains the names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

> This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Translate Unknowns*

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to, but sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

> For this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, was the one who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name "Melchizedek" primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title "king of Salem" tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

> His name first indeed means "king of righteousness," and then also "king of Salem," that is, "king of peace." (Hebrews 7:2b ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek's name and title because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples From the Bible

> Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** … fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that "Jordan" is the name of a river, "Jericho" is the name of a city, and "Amorites" is the name of a group of people.

> She said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that "Beer Lahai Roi" means "Well of the Living One who sees me."

> And she called his name **Moses** and she said, "For out of the water I drew him." (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words "pull out."

> **Saul** was in agreement with his execution. (Acts 8:1a ULT)

> But when the apostles, Barnabas and **Paul**, heard of it, they tore their clothing. (Acts 14:14a ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.

(5) Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

> Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** … fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)
>
> > You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The men of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites.**

> At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, "Leave and go away from here, because **Herod** wants to kill you." (Luke 13:31 ULT)
>
> > At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, "Go and leave here, because **King Herod** wants to kill you."

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

> And she called his name **Moses** and she said, "For out of the water I drew him." (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

> > She called his name **Moses (which sounds like 'drawn out'),** and she said, "For out of the water I drew him."

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

> She said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

> > She said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore, the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**.

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

> ... a young man named **Saul**. (Acts 7:58b ULT)

> > ... a young man named **Paul** 1

The footnote would look like:

> > [1] Most versions say "Saul" here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called "Paul."

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

> But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

> > But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."

> a young man named **Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULT)

> > a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

> > [1] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

> But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

> > But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

> It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

> It came about in Iconium that **Paul**[1] and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:

> [1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

> Next we recommend you learn about:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate]]*

(**Go back to:** Introduction to Hebrews; Hebrews 2:16; 3:2; 3:5; 3:16; 7:1; 11:32; 13:24)

Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

> This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, "You are teasing me by telling me something that is not true.")
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, "Do not take a matter to its extreme.")
- This house is under water. (This means, "The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.")
- We are painting the town red. (This means, "We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.")

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

> he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

The words "set his face" is an idiom that means "decided."

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

> I am not worthy that you would **come under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

The phrase "come under my roof" is an idiom that means "enter my house."

> Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

This idiom means "Listen carefully and remember what I say."

Purpose: An idiom is probably created in a culture somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples From the Bible

> Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your **flesh and bone**." (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, "We and you belong to the same race, the same family."

> The children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8b ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

> the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3b ULT)

This means, "the one who helps me."

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

(2) Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

> Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your **flesh and bone**." (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)
>> Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.
> Then he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)
>> He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.
> I am not worthy that you would come **under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)
>> I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

(2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

> Put these words **into your ears.** (Luke 9:44a ULT)
>> **Be all ears** when I say these words to you.
> My **eyes grow dim** from grief. (Psalm 6:7a ULT)
>> I am crying my **eyes out**

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:1; 1:2; 1:8; 1:10; 1:12; 2:3; 2:6; 2:7; 2:9; 2:14; 2:15; 2:16; 3:8; 3:12; 3:13; 3:17; 12:9)

Imperatives — Other Uses

Description

Imperative sentences are mainly used to express a desire or requirement that someone do something. In the Bible, sometimes imperative sentences have other uses.

> This page answers the question: *What other uses are there for imperative sentences in the Bible?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes]]

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use an imperative sentence for some of the functions that they are used for in the Bible.

Examples From the Bible

Speakers often use imperative sentences to tell or ask their listeners to do something. In Genesis 26, God spoke to Isaac and told him not to go to Egypt but to live where God would tell him to live.

> Now Yahweh appeared to him and said, "**Do not go down** to Egypt; **live** in the land that I tell you to live in." (Genesis 26:2 ULT)

Sometimes imperative sentences in the Bible have other uses.

Imperatives that make things happen

God can make things happen by commanding that they happen. Jesus healed a man by commanding that the man be healed. The man could not do anything to obey the command, but Jesus caused him to be healed by commanding it. (In this context, the command "Be clean" means to "be healed" so that others around would know that it was safe to touch the man again.)

> "I am willing. **Be clean**." Immediately he was cleansed of his leprosy. (Matthew 8:3b ULT)

In Genesis 1, God commanded that there should be light, and by commanding it, he caused it to exist. Some languages, such as the Hebrew of the Bible, have commands that are in the third person. English does not do that, and so it must turn the third-person command into a general, second-person command, as in the ULT:

> God said, "**Let there be** light," and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

Languages that have third-person commands can follow the original Hebrew, which translates into English as something like "light must be."

Imperatives that function as blessings

In the Bible, God blesses people by using imperatives. This indicates what his will is for them.

> God blessed them and said to them, "**Be fruitful**, and **multiply**. **Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **Have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth." (Genesis 1:28 ULT)

Imperatives that function as conditions

An imperative sentence can also be used to tell the **condition** under which something will happen. The proverbs mainly tell about life and things that often happen. The purpose of Proverbs 4:6 below is not primarily to give a command, but to teach what people can expect to happen **if** they love wisdom.

> **Do not abandon** wisdom and she will watch over you;
> **love** her and she will keep you safe. (Proverbs 4:6 ULT)

The purpose of Proverbs 22:6, below, is to teach what people can expect to happen if they teach their children the way they should go.

> **Teach** a child the way he should go,
> and when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction. (Proverbs 22:6 ULT)

Translation Strategies

(1) If people would not use an imperative sentence for one of the functions in the Bible, try using a statement instead.

(2) If people would not understand that a sentence is used to cause something to happen, add a connecting word like "so" to show that what happened was a result of what was said.

(3) If people would not use a command as a condition, translate it as a statement with the words "if" and "then."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people would not use an imperative sentence for one of the functions in the Bible, try using a statement instead.

> **Be clean**. (Matthew 8:3b ULT)
>
> > "You are now clean."
> > "I now cleanse you."

> God said, "**Let there be** light," and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)
>
> > God said, "**There is now light**" and there was light.

> God blessed them and said to them, "**Be fruitful**, and **multiply**. **Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **Have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth." (Genesis 1:28 ULT)
>
> > God blessed them and said to them, "**My will for you is that you be fruitful**, and **multiply**. **Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **I want you to have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth."

(2) If people would not understand that a sentence is used to cause something to happen, add a connecting word like "so" to show that what happened was a result of what was said.

> God said, "**Let there be** light," and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)
>
> > God said, 'Let there be light,' **so** there was light.
> > God said, "Light must be;" **as a result**, there was light.

(3) If people would not use a command as a condition, translate it as a statement with the words "if" and "then."

> Teach a child the way he should go, and when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction. (Proverbs 22:6 ULT)

Translated as:

> "**If** you teach a child the way he should go,
> **then** when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction."

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:6)

Information Structure

Description

Different languages arrange the parts of the sentence in different ways. In English, a sentence normally has the subject first, then the verb, then the object, then other modifiers, like this: Peter painted his house yesterday.

Many other languages normally put these things in a different order such as: Painted yesterday Peter his house.

Although all languages have a normal order for parts of a sentence, this order can change depending on what information the speaker or writer considers to be the most important.

Suppose that someone is answering the question, "What did Peter paint yesterday?" The person asking the question already knows all of the information in our sentence above except for the object, "his house." Therefore, that becomes the most important part of the information, and a person answering in English might say "His house is what Peter painted (yesterday)."

This puts the most important information first, which is normal for English. Many Other Languages would normally put the most important information last. In the flow of a text, the most important information is usually what the writer considers to be new information for the reader. In some languages the new information comes first, and in others it comes last.

> This page answers the question: *How do languages arrange the parts of a sentence?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Different languages arrange the parts of a sentence in different ways. If you (the translator) copy the order of the parts of a sentence from the source, it may not make sense in your language.
- Different languages put important or new information in different places in the sentence. If you keep the important or new information in the same place that it had in the source language, it may be confusing or give the wrong message in your language.

Examples From the Bible

> They all ate until they were satisfied. (Mark 6:42 ULT)

The parts of this sentence were in a different order in the original Greek source language. They were like this: And they ate all and they were satisfied.

In English, this means that the people ate everything. But the next verse says that they took up twelve baskets full of leftover pieces of food. In order for this to not be so confusing, the translators of the ULT put the parts of the sentence in the right order for English.

> And the day began to end, and the twelve came to him and said, "Send the crowd away so that, going into the surrounding villages and countryside, they may find lodging and food, because we are here in an desolate place." (Luke 9:12 ULT)

In this verse, what the disciples say to Jesus puts the important information first, that he should send the crowd away. In languages that put the important information last, people would understand that the reason that they gave, being in an isolated place, is the most important part of their message to Jesus. They might then think that the disciples are afraid of the spirits in that place, and that sending the people to buy food is a way to protect them from the spirits. That is the wrong message.

> Woe to you when all men speak well of you, for their fathers treated the false prophets in the same way. (Luke 6:26 ULT)

In this verse, the most important part of the information is first, that "woe" is coming on the people for what they are doing. The reason that supports that warning comes last. This could be confusing for people who expect the important information to come last.

Translation Strategies

(1) Study how your language arranges the parts of a sentence, and use that order in your translation.

(2) Study where your language puts the new or important information, and rearrange the order of information so that it follows the way it is done in your language.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Study how your language arranges the parts of a sentence, and use that order in your translation.

This is the verse in the original Greek order:

> And he went out from there and came to the hometown his, and they followed him the disciples his. (Mark 6:1)

The ULT has put this into the normal order for English:

> Now Jesus went out from there and came to his hometown, and his disciples followed him. (Mark 6:1 ULT)

(2) Study where your language puts the new or important information and rearrange the order of information so that it follows the way it is done in your language.

> And the day began to end, and the twelve came and said to him, "Send the crowd away so that, going into the surrounding villages and countryside, they may find lodging and food, because we are here in a desolate place." (Luke 9:12 ULT)

If your language puts the important information last, you can change the order of the verse.

> > Now the day was about to come to an end, and the twelve came to him and said, "Because we are here in an desolate place, send the crowd away that they may go into the surrounding villages and countryside to find lodging and food."

> Woe to you, when all men speak well of you, for that is how their ancestors treated the false prophets. (Luke 6:26 ULT)

If your language puts the important information last, you can change the order of the verse.

> > When all men speak well of you, which is just as people's ancestors treated the false prophets, then woe to you!

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]
Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:3; 1:6; 2:10; 2:15; 2:16; 3:10; 3:15; 3:19)

Kinship

Description

This page answers the question: *What are kinship terms and how can I translate them?*

Kinship terms refer to those words used to describe people related to one another in familial relationships. These terms vary widely in their specificity from language to language. They range from the (Western) nuclear or immediate family (father-son, husband-wife) out to broad clan relationships in other cultures.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Depending on the language translators may need to use specific terms to designate the accurate kinship relationship. In some languages a different term may be used based on siblings' birth order. In others, the side of the family (father's or mother's), age, marital status, etc. may determine the term used. Different terms may be used based on the gender of the speaker and/or addressee. Translators may need to make sure they know the exact relationship between two related people in the Bible to find the correct term. Sometimes these terms are difficult even for native speakers to remember and translators may need to seek community help in finding the correct term. Another complicating issue is that the Bible may not give enough information about the relationship for translators to determine the correct term in the language being translated into. In this case, translators will have to use a more general term or simply pick a satisfactory term based on the limited information available.

Sometimes terms that seem like kinship terms are used for people who are not necessarily related. For instance, an older person may refer to a younger man or woman as "my son" or "my daughter."

Examples from the Bible

> Then Yahweh said to Cain, "Where is Abel **your brother**?" He said, "I do not know. Am I **my brother's** keeper?" (Genesis 4:9 ULT)

Abel was Cain's younger brother.

> Jacob sent and called Rachel and Leah to the field to his flock and said to them, "I see **your father's** attitude toward me has changed, but the God of my father has been with me." (Genesis 31:4-5 ULT)

Jacob is referring here to his father-in-law. In some languages there may be a specific term for a man's father-in-law, however, in this case it is better to retain the form **your father** as Jacob may be using it to distance himself from Laban.

> And Moses was shepherding the flock of Jethro **his father-in-law**, the priest of Midian. (Exodus3:1a ULT)

Unlike the previous instance, if your language has a term for a man's father-in-law this is a good place to use it.

> And **his sister** stationed herself at a distance to know what would be done to him. (Exodus 2:4 ULT)

From context we know that this was Miriam, Moses's older sister. In some languages this may require a specific term. In others, the term for older sister may be only used when the younger sibling is addressing and/or referring to his or her sister.

> Then she and **her daughters-in-law** arose to return from the fields of Moab (Ruth 1:6a ULT)

Ruth & Orpah are Naomi's daughters-in-law.

> Then she said, "Look, your sister-in-law has turned back to her people and to her gods." (Ruth 1:15 ULT)

Orpah had been the wife of Ruth's husband's brother. This may be a different term in your language than if she had been Ruth's husband's sister.

> Then Boaz said to Ruth, "Will you not listen to me, **my daughter**?" (Ruth 2:8a ULT)

Boaz is not Ruth's father; he is simply using the term to address a younger woman.

> And behold, **your relative** Elizabeth—she also has conceived a son in her old age, and this is the sixth month for her who was called barren. (Luke 1:36 ULT)

While the KJV translated this as **cousin**, the term simply means a related woman.

Translation Strategies

(1) Find out the exact relationship specified and translate using the term your language uses.

(2) If the text does not specify the relationship as clearly as your language would, either:

(a) settle on a more general term.

(b) use a specific term if required by your language, choosing the one that is most likely to be correct.

Translation Strategies Applied

This is not an issue in English, so the following illustrations draw on other languages.

In Korean, there are several terms for brother and sister, the use of them depends on the speaker's (or referent's) sex and birth order. Examples are from the Korean Living Bible, found on biblegateway.com

> Genesis 30:1 Rachel is jealous of her "eonni," which is the term a woman uses for her older sister.
>
> Genesis 34:31 Simeon and Levi refer to Dinah as "nui," a general term for sister.
>
> Genesis 37:16 Joseph refers to his brothers as "hyeong," which is the term a man uses for his older brother(s).
>
> Genesis 45:12 Joseph refers to Benjamin as "dongsaeng," which roughly means sibling, usually younger.

In Russian, in-law terms are complex. For instance, "nevéstka" is the term for a brother's (or brother-in-law's) wife; a woman uses the same term for her daughter-in-law but her husband would call the same daughter-in-law "snoxá." Examples from the Russian Synodal Version.

> Genesis 38:25 Tamar sends a message to her father-in-law, Judah. The term used is "svekor." This is used for a woman's husband's father.
>
> Exodus 3:1 Moses is watching his father-in-law's herd. The term used is "test'." This is used for a man's wife's father.

Litotes

Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by negating a word or phrase that means the opposite of the meaning that he intends. For example, someone could intend to communicate that something is extremely good by describing it as "not bad." The difference between a litotes and a double negative is that a litotes heightens the positive meaning beyond what a plain positive statement would do, and a double negative does not. In the example above, the literal meaning of "not bad," taken as a plain double negative, would be "acceptable" or even "good." But if the speaker intended it as a litotes, then the meaning is "very good" or "extremely good."

> This page answers the question: *What is litotes?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

Examples From the Bible

> For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was **not useless**, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was **very** useful.

> Now when it became day, there was **no small disturbance** among the soldiers over what therefore had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a **lot** of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

> But you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,
> are **not the least** among the leaders of Judah,
> for from you will come a ruler
> who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULT)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a **very important city**.

Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

> For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was **not useless**. (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

> "For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you **did much good**."

Now when it became day, there was **no small disturbance** among the soldiers over what therefore had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

> "Now when it became day, there was **great excitement** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter."
>
> or:
>
> "Now when it became day, the soldiers were **very concerned** because of what had happened to Peter."

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2:11; 11:16; 12:5; 13:2; 13:16)

Metaphor

Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say, "The girl I love is a red rose."

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer's task is to understand in what way they are alike.

> This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a Bible passage that has one?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]*
> *Simile*

The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about "the girl I love." This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and "a red rose." The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both beautiful. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

  • The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
  • The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
  • The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a metaphor is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker's **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison** (**Idea**) between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a "passive" metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being "active." Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these "dead metaphors." Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms "table **leg**," "family **tree**," "book **leaf**" (meaning a page in

a book), or the word "crane" (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word "hand" to represent "power," using the word "face" to represent "presence," and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were "clothing."

Patterned Pairs of Concepts Acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction "up" (the Image) often represents the concepts of "more" or "better" (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as "The price of gasoline is going **up**," "A **highly** intelligent man," and also the opposite kind of idea: "The temperature is going **down**," and "I am feeling very **low**."

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world's languages because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- "Turn the heat **up**." More is spoken of as up.
- "Let us **go ahead** with our debate." Doing what was planned is spoken of as walking or advancing.
- "You **defend** your theory well." Argument is spoken of as war.
- "A **flow** of words." Words are spoken of as liquids.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. Metaphors make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

> But for you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings. (Malachi 4:2a ULT)

Here, God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun's rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

> And he said to them, "Go and tell that fox ..." (Luke 13:32a ULT)

Here, "that fox" refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors require the translator's special care to make a correct translation. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

> Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is "I" (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is "bread." Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is "life." In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus, misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so, not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

Examples From the Bible

> Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1q ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you," the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshiped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

> Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay**. **You are our potter**; and we all are the work
> of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are "we" and "you," and the Image(s) are "clay" and "potter." The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter's clay and "us" is that **neither the clay nor God's people have a right to complain about what they are becoming**.

> Jesus said to them, "Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees**."
> The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, "It is because we did not take bread."
> (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said "yeast," they thought he was talking about bread, but "yeast" was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as." See Simile.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.

(8) If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

> Then, see, one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **fell at his feet**. (Mark 5:22 ULT)
>
>> Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **immediately bowed down in front of him**.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

> But Jesus said to them, "He wrote this commandment to you because of your **hardness of heart.**" (Mark 10:5 ULT)
>
>> It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law.

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as."

> Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we **are the clay.** You **are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)
>
>> And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are **like** clay. You are **like** a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.

> Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14b ULT)
>
>> Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to **kick against a pointed stick**.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

> Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **clay**. You are our **potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)
>
>> "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **wood**. You are our **carver**; and we all are the work of your hand."
>> "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **string**. You are the **weaver**; and we all are the work of your hand."

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

> Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

> > Yahweh lives; **He is my rock**. May he be praised. May the God of my
> > salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

> Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

> > Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock **under which I can hide from my enemies**. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

> Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

> > Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You **fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick**.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

> I will make you to become **fishers of men**. (Mark 1:17b ULT)

> > I will make you to become **people who gather men**.
> > Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns.

Metonymy

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A metonym is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

> This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

> ... and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from every sin. (1 John 1:7b ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

> And he took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you." (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not familiar with metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples From the Bible

> The Lord God will give to him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

> Then immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64a ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

> Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

(2) Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

> And he took the cup in the same way after the supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you." (Luke 22:20 ULT)
>
> > He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "**The wine in this cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."

This verse also contains a second metonym: The cup, (representing the wine it contains) also represents the new covenant made with the blood Christ shed for us.

(2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

> The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)
>
> > "The Lord God will give him **the kingly authority** of his father, David."
> > or:
> > "The Lord God will **make him king** like his ancestor, King David."

> Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)
>
> > "Who warned you to flee from God's coming **punishment**?"

To learn about some common metonymies, see Biblical Imagery — Common Metonymies.

Nominal Adjectives

Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word "rich" is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that "rich" is an adjective.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate adjectives that act like nouns?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]

> **The rich man** had huge numbers of flocks and herds. (2 Samuel 12:2 ULT)

The adjective "rich" comes before the word "man" and describes "man."

> **He will not be rich**; his wealth will not last. (Job 15:29a ULT)

The adjective "rich" comes after the verb "be" and describes "He."

Here is a sentence that shows that "rich" can also function as a noun.

> **The rich** must not give more than the half shekel, and **the poor** must not give less. (Exodus 30:15b ULT)

In Exodus 30:15, the word "rich" acts as a noun in the phrase "the rich," and it refers to rich people. The word "poor" also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

Examples From the Bible

> The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)

"The righteous" here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

> Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)

"The meek" here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

> The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)
>
>> The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **righteous people**.
>
> Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)
>
>> Blessed are **people who are meek**.

(**Go back to:**)

Ordinal Numbers

Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

> And God has indeed appointed some in the church, **first** apostles, **second** prophets, **third** teachers, then miracles. (1 Corinthians 12:28a ULT)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

<div style="border:1px solid">
This page answers the question: *What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-numbers]]
</div>

Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have "-th" added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

Examples From the Bible

> The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim … the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

The people cast lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

> You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The **first** row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The **second** row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The **third** row must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The **fourth** row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULT)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

(1) Use "one" with the first item and "another" or "the next" with the rest.

(2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell the total number of items, and use "one" with the first item and "another" or "the next" with the rest.

> The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim … the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

> > There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **another** to Jedaiah, **another** to Harim … **another** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

> > There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **the next** to Jedaiah, **the next** to Harim … **the next** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

> A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **the first** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the second** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the third** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. **The fourth** river is the Euphrates. (Genesis 2:10-14 ULT)

> > A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **one** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the next** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the next** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The **last** river is the Euphrates.

(2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

> The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim … the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

> > They cast **24** lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim … Delaiah, and Maaziah.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 4:4; 8:7; 9:3; 10:9)

Parallelism

Description

Parallelism is a poetic device in which two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. The following are some of the different kinds of parallelism.

- The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is called synonymous parallelism.
- The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
- The second completes what is said in the first.
- The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

This article will only discuss synonymous parallelism, the kind in which the two parallel phrases mean the same thing, because that is the kind that presents a problem for translation. Note that we use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term "doublet" for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

In the poetry of the original languages, synonymous parallelism has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and raises it above the ordinary way of speaking.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or, since it is in the Bible, they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it would be confusing, rather than beautiful. They would not understand that the repetition of the idea in different words serves to emphasize the idea.

Examples From the Bible

> Your word is a lamp to my feet
>
> and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live. That is the single idea. The words "lamp" and "light" are similar in meaning because they refer to light. The words "my feet" and "my path" are related because they refer to a person walking. Walking is a metaphor for living.

> You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
>
> you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything. "To rule over" is the same idea as putting things "under his feet," and "the works of your [God's] hands" is the same idea as "all things."

> Yahweh sees everything a person does
>
> and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The first phrase and the second phrase mean the same thing. There are three ideas that are the same between these two phrases. "Sees" corresponds to "watches," "everything…does" corresponds to "all the paths…takes," and "a person" corresponds to "he."

> Praise Yahweh, all you nations;
>
> exalt him, all you peoples! (Psalm 117:1 ULT)

Both parts of this verse tell people everywhere to praise Yahweh. The words 'Praise' and 'exalt' mean the same thing. The words 'Yahweh' and 'him' refer to the same person. The terms 'all you nations' and 'all you peoples' refer to the same people.

> For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people,
>
> and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2b ULT)

The two parts of this verse say that Yahweh has a serious disagreement with his people, Israel. These are not two different disagreements or two different groups of people.

Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

(1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as "truly" or "certainly."

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like "very," "completely," or "all."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

> Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

> > Until now you have deceived me with your lies.

> Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The phrase "all the paths he takes" is a metaphor for "all he does."

> > Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.

> For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2 ULT)

This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

> > For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.

(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as "truly" or "certainly."

> Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

> > Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.

> You make him to rule over the works of your hands; you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

> > You have certainly made him to rule over everything that you have created.

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like "very," "completely" or "all."

> Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

> > All you have done is lie to me.

> Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

> > Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.

Next we recommend you learn about:

Personification

Personification

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

> Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1a ULT)

Or sin:

> Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT)

People also use personification because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things such as wealth as if they were relationships between people.

> You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples From the Bible

> You cannot **serve** God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

> Does not Wisdom **call** out? Does not Understanding **raise her voice**? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they were woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

> **Sin crouches** at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.
>
> > **Sin** is at your door, **waiting to attack you.**

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

> Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — This can be translated with the word "as."
>
> > Sin is crouching at the door, **just as a wild animal does as it waits to attack a person.**.

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

> Even the **winds and the sea obey him**. (Matthew 8:27b ULT) — The men speak of the "wind and the sea" as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.
>
> > He even **controls the winds and the sea**.

NOTE: We have broadened our definition of "personification" to include "zoomorphism" (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and "anthropomorphism" (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

> Next we recommend you learn about:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-apostrophe]]*
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]*

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 4:12; 6:7; 6:19; 7:17; 7:19; 12:4; 12:5; 12:11; 12:24)

Possession

Description

In English, the grammatical form that commonly indicates possession is also used to indicate a variety of relationships between people and objects or people and other people. In English, that grammatical relationship is shown by using the word "**of**," by using **an apostrophe and the letter "s"**, or by using a **possessive pronoun**. The following examples are different ways to indicate that my grandfather owns a house.

> This page answers the question: *What is possession and how can I translate phrases that show it?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

   • the house **of** my grandfather
   • my grandfather **'s** house
   • **his** house

Possession is used in Hebrew, Greek, and English for a variety of situations. Here are a few common situations that it is used for.

   • Ownership — Someone owns something.
       ◦ The clothes of me - my clothes — The clothes that I own

   • Social Relationship — Someone has some kind of social relationship with another.
       ◦ The mother of John — John's mother - the woman who gave birth to John, or the woman who cared for John
       ◦ A teacher of Israel - Israel's teacher — a person who teaches Israel

   • Association — A particular thing is associated with a particular person, place, or thing.
       ◦ The sickness of David - David's sickness — the sickness that David is experiencing
       ◦ the fear of the Lord — the fear that is appropriate for a human being to have when relating to the Lord

   • Contents — Something has something in it.
       ◦ a bag of clothes — a bag that has clothes in it, or a bag that is full of clothes

   • Part and whole: One thing is part of another.
       ◦ my head — the head that is part of my body
       ◦ the roof of a house — the roof that is part of a house

In some languages there is a special form of possession, termed **inalienable possession.** This form of possession is used for things that cannot be removed from you, as opposed to things you could lose. In the examples above, *my head* and *my mother* are examples of inalienable possession (at least in some languages), while *my clothes* or *my teacher* would be alienably possessed. What may be considered alienable vs. inalienable may differ by language.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

   • You (the translator) need to understand the relationship between two ideas represented by the two nouns when one is in the grammatical relationship of possessing the other.
   • Some languages do not use grammatical possession for all of the situations that your source text Bible might use it for.

Examples From the Bible

Ownership — In the example below, the son owned the money.

> The younger son … wasted his wealth by living recklessly. (Luke 15:13b)

Social Relationship — In the example below, the disciples were people who learned from John.

> Then **the disciples of John** came to him. (Matthew 9:14a ULT)

Association — In the example below, the gospel is the message associated with Paul because he preaches it.

> Remember Jesus Christ, raised from the dead, from the seed of David, according to **my gospel**, (2 Timothy 2:8 ULT)

Material — In the example below, the material used for making the crowns was gold.

> On their heads were something like **crowns of gold.** (Revelation 9:7b)

Contents — In the example below, the cup has water in it.

> For whoever gives you **a cup of water** to drink … will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)

Part of a whole — In the example below, the door was a part of the palace.

> But Uriah slept at **the door of the king's palace.** (2 Samuel 11:9a ULT)

Part of a group — In the example below, "us" refers to the whole group and "each one" refers to the individual members.

> Now to **each one of us** grace has been given according to the measure of the gift of Christ. (Ephesians 4:7 ULT)

Events and Possession

Sometimes one or both of the nouns is an abstract noun that refers to an event or action. In the examples below, the abstract nouns are in **bold** print. These are just some of the relationships that are possible between two nouns when one of them refers to an event.

Subject — Sometimes the word after "of" tells who would do the action named by the first noun. In the example below, **John baptized people**.

> The **baptism of John**, was it from heaven or from men? Answer me. (Mark 11:30)

In the example below, **Christ loves us**.

> Who will separate us from the **love of Christ**? (Romans 8:35)

Object — Sometimes the word after "of" tells who or what something would happen to. In the example below, **people love money**.

> For the **love of money** is a root of all kinds of evil. (1 Timothy 6:10a ULT)

Instrument — Sometimes the word after "of" tells how something would happen. In the example below, God would **punish people by sending enemies to attack them with swords**.

> Then be afraid of the sword, because wrath brings **the punishment of the sword**. (Job 19:29a ULT)

Representation — In the example below, John was baptizing people who were repenting of their sins. They were being baptized to show that they were repenting. Their **baptism represented their repentance**.

> John came, baptizing in the wilderness and preaching **a baptism of repentance** for the forgiveness of sins. (Mark 1:4 ULT)

Strategies for learning what the relationship is between the two nouns

(1) Read the surrounding verses to see if they help you to understand the relationship between the two nouns.

(2) Read the verse in the UST. Sometimes it shows the relationship clearly.

(3) See what the notes say about it.

Translation Strategies

If possession would be a natural way to show a particular relationship between two nouns, consider using it. If it would be strange or hard to understand, consider these.

(1) Use an adjective to show that one noun describes the other.

(2) Use a verb to show how the two are related.

(3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use an adjective to show that one noun describes the other.

> On their heads were something like **crowns of gold.** (Revelation 9:7b)
>
> > "On their heads were **gold crowns**"

(2) Use a verb to show how the two are related.

> Whoever gives you **a cup of water** to drink … will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)
>
> > Whoever gives you a **cup that has water in it** to drink … will not lose his reward.

> Wealth is worthless on **the day of wrath.** (Proverbs 11:4a ULT)
>
> > Wealth is worthless on **the day when God shows his wrath**.
> > or:
> > Wealth is worthless on the **day when God punishes people because of his wrath**.

(3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb. (In the example below, there are two possession relationships, "punishment of Yahweh" and "your God.")

> Notice that I am not speaking to your children, who have not known or seen **the punishment of Yahweh your God.** (Deuteronomy 11:2a ULT)
>
> > Notice that I am not speaking to your children who have not known or seen **how Yahweh, the God whom you worship, punished the people of Egypt**.

> You will only observe and see the **punishment of the wicked**. (Psalms 91:8 ULT)
>
> > You will only observe and see **how Yahweh punishes the wicked**.

> You will receive **the gift of the Holy Spirit**. (Acts 2:38b ULT)

> > You will receive the **Holy Spirit, whom God will give to you**.

(**Go back to:**)

Predictive Past

Description

The predictive past is a figure of speech that uses the past tense to refer to things that will happen in the future. This is sometimes done in prophecy to show that the event will certainly happen. It is also called the prophetic perfect.

> This page answers the question: *What is the predictive past?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]

> Therefore my people have gone into captivity for lack of understanding;
> their honored leaders go hungry, and their common people have nothing to drink. (Isaiah 5:13 ULT)

In the example above, the people of Israel had not yet gone into captivity, but God spoke of their going into captivity as if it had already happened because he had decided that they certainly would go into captivity.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue:

Readers who are not aware of the past tense being used in prophecy to refer to future events may find it confusing.

Examples From the Bible

> Now Jericho was tightly closed because of the sons of Israel. No one went out and no one came in. Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I have delivered Jericho, and its king, and its powerful soldiers into your hand." (Joshua 6:1-2 ULT)

> For to us a child has been born, to us a son has been given;
> and the rule will be on his shoulder. (Isaiah 9:6a ULT)

In the examples above, God spoke of things that would happen in the future as if they had already happened.

> But even Enoch, the seventh from Adam, prophesied about them, saying, "Look! The Lord came with thousands and thousands of his holy ones." (Jude 1:14 ULT)

Enoch was speaking of something that would happen in the future, but he used the past tense when he said "the Lord came."

Translation Strategies

If the past tense would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

(1) Use the future tense to refer to future events.

(2) If it refers to something in the immediate future, use a form that would show that.

(3) Some languages may use the present tense to show that something will happen very soon.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the future tense to refer to future events.

> For to us a child **has been born**, to us a son **has been given**. (Isaiah 9:6a ULT)

>> For to us a child **will be born**, to us a son **will be given**.

(2) If it refers to something that would happen very soon, use a form that shows that.

> Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I have delivered Jericho, and its king, and its powerful soldiers into your hand." (Joshua 6:2 ULT)

>> Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I **am about to deliver** over to you Jericho, its king, and its powerful soldiers."

(3) Some languages may use the present tense to show that something will happen very soon.

> Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I have delivered Jericho, and its king, and its powerful soldiers into your hand." (Joshua 6:2 ULT)

>> Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I **am delivering** over to you Jericho, its king, and its powerful soldiers."

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:6)

Pronouns

Description

Pronouns are words that people might use instead of using a noun when referring to someone or something. Some examples are "I," "you," "he," "it," "this," "that," "himself," "someone," and others. The personal pronoun is the most common type of pronoun.

> This page answers the question: *What are pronouns, and what kinds of pronouns are in some languages?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]

Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns refer to people or things and show whether the speaker is referring to himself, the person he is speaking to, or someone or something else. The following are kinds of information that personal pronouns may provide. Other types of pronouns may give some of this information, as well.

Person

- First Person — The speaker and possibly others (I, me, we, us)
    - Exclusive and Inclusive "We"
- Second Person — The person or people that the speaker is talking to and possibly others (you)
    - Forms of You
- Third Person — Someone or something other than the speaker and those he is talking to (he, she, it, they)

Number

- Singular — one (I, you, he, she, it)
- Plural — more than one (we, you, they)
    - Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups
- Dual — two (Some languages have pronouns specifically for two people or two things.)

Gender

- Masculine — he
- Feminine — she
- Neuter — it

Relationship to other words in the sentence

- Subject of the verb: I, you, he, she, it, we, they
- Object of the verb or preposition: me, you, him, her, it, us, them
- Possessor with a noun: my, your, his, her, its, our, their
- Possessor without a noun: mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs

Other Types of pronouns

Reflexive Pronouns refer to another noun or pronoun in the same sentence: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.

> • John saw **himself** in the mirror. The word "himself" refers to John.

Interrogative Pronouns are used to make a question that needs more than just a yes or no for an answer: what, which, who, whom, whose.

> • **Who** built the house?

Relative Pronouns mark a relative clause. The relative pronouns, who, whom, whose, which and that give more information about a noun in the main part of the sentence. Sometimes, the relative adverbs when and where can also be used as relative pronouns.

> • I saw the house **that John built**. The clause "that John built" tells which house I saw.
> • I saw the man **who built the house**. The clause "who built the house" tells which man I saw.

Demonstrative Pronouns are used to draw attention to someone or something and to show distance from the speaker or something else. The demonstrative pronouns are: this, these, that, and those.

> • Have you seen **this** here?
> • Who is **that** over there?

Indefinite pronouns are used when no particular noun is being referred to. The indefinite pronouns are: any, anyone, someone, anything, something, and some. Sometimes a personal pronoun is used in a generic way to do this: you, they, he or it.

> • He does not want to talk to **anyone**.
> • **Someone** fixed it, but I do not know who.
> • **They** say that **you** should not wake a sleeping dog.

In the last example, "they" and "you" just refer to people in general.

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 6:9; 6:11)

Pronouns — When to Use Them

Description

When we talk or write, we use pronouns to refer to people or things without always having to repeat the noun or name. Usually, the first time we refer to someone in a story, we use a descriptive phrase or a name. The next time we might refer to that person with a simple noun or by name. After that we might refer to him simply with a pronoun as long as we think that our listeners will be able to understand easily to whom the pronoun refers.

> This page answers the question: *How do I decide whether or not to use a pronoun?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Pronouns*
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]*

> Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. **This man** came to Jesus at night. Jesus replied and said to **him** … (John 3:1, 2a, 3a ULT)

In John 3, Nicodemus is first referred to with noun phrases and his name. Then he is referred to with the noun phrase "this man." Then he is referred to with the pronoun "him."

Each language has its rules and exceptions to this usual way of referring to people and things.

- In some languages, the first time something is referred to in a paragraph or chapter, it is referred to with a noun rather than a pronoun.
- The main character is the person whom a story is about. In some languages, after a main character is introduced in a story, he is usually referred to with a pronoun. Some languages have special pronouns that refer only to the main character.
- In some languages, marking on the verb helps people know who the subject is. (See Verbs.) In some of these languages, listeners rely on this marking to help them understand who the subject is. Speakers will use a pronoun, noun phrase, or proper name only when they want either to emphasize or to clarify who the subject is.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- If translators use a pronoun at the wrong time for their language, readers might not know about whom the writer is talking.
- If translators too frequently refer to a main character by name, listeners of some languages might not realize that the person is a main character, or they might think that there is a new character with the same name.
- If translators use pronouns, nouns, or names at the wrong time, people might think that there is some special emphasis on the person or thing to which it refers.

Examples From the Bible

The example below occurs at the beginning of a chapter. In some languages it might not be clear to whom the pronouns refer.

> Then Jesus entered into the synagogue again, and there was a man who had a withered hand. Some people watched **him** closely to see if **he** would heal **him** on the Sabbath so that they might accuse **him**. (Mark 3:1-2 ULT)

In the example below, two men are named in the first sentence. It might not be clear whom "he" in the second sentence refers to.

> Now after some days had passed, **King Agrippa** and Bernice came down to Caesarea to pay their respects to **Festus**. After **he** had been there for many days, Festus presented to the king the things concerning Paul. (Acts 25:13-14)

Jesus is the main character of the book of Matthew, but in the verses below he is referred to four times by name. This may lead speakers of some languages to think that Jesus is not the main character. Or it might lead them to think that there is more than one person named Jesus in this story. Or it might lead them to think that there is some kind of emphasis on him, even though there is no emphasis.

> At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **Jesus**, "See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath." But **Jesus** said to them, "Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?" Then **Jesus** left from there and went into their synagogue. (Matthew 12:1-3,9 ULT)

Translation Strategies

(1) If it would not be clear to your readers to whom or to what a pronoun refers, use a name or a noun.

(2) If repeating a noun or name would lead people to think that a main character is not a main character, or that the writer is talking about more than one person with that name, or that there is some kind of emphasis on someone when there is no emphasis, use a pronoun instead.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If it would not be clear to your readers to whom or to what a pronoun refers, use a name or a noun.

> Again **he** walked into the synagogue, and a man with a withered hand was there. Some Pharisees watched **him** to see if **he** would heal the man on the Sabbath. (Mark 3:1-2)

> > Again **Jesus** walked into the synagogue, and a man with a withered hand was there. Some Pharisees watched **Jesus** to see if **he** would heal the man on the Sabbath.

(2) If repeating a noun or name would lead people to think that a main character is not a main character, or that the writer is talking about more than one person with that name, or that there is some kind of emphasis on someone when there is no emphasis, use a pronoun instead.

> At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **Jesus**, "See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath." But **Jesus** said to them, "Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?" Then **Jesus** left from there and went into their synagogue. (Matthew 12:1-3,9 ULT)

This may be translated as:

> > At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **him**, "See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath." But **he** said to them, "Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?" Then **he** left from there and went into their synagogue.

(**Go back to:**)

Quotations and Quote Margins

Description

When saying that someone said something, we often tell who spoke, whom they spoke to, and what they said. The information about who spoke and whom they spoke to is called the quote margin. What the person said is the quotation. (This is also called a quote.) In some languages the quote margin may come first, last, or even in between two parts of the quotation.

> This page answers the question: *What are quote margins and where should I put them?*

The quote margins are bolded below.

- **She said**, "The food is ready. Come and eat."
- "The food is ready. Come and eat," **she said**.
- "The food is ready," **she said.** "Come and eat."

Also in some languages, the quote margin may have more than one verb meaning "said."

> But his mother **answered** and **said**, "No. Rather, he will be called John." (Luke 1:60 ULT)

When writing that someone said something, some languages put the quote (what was said) in quotation marks called inverted commas (" "). Some languages use other symbols around the quotation, such as these angle quote marks (« »), or something else.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators need to put the quote margin where it is most clear and natural in their language.
- Translators need to decide whether they want the quote margin to have one or two verbs meaning "said."
- Translators need to decide which marks to use around the quotation.

Examples From the Bible

Quote margin before the quote

> **Then Zechariah said to the angel**, "How will I know this? For I am an old man and my wife is advanced in her days." (Luke 1:18 ULT)

> Then tax collectors also came to be baptized, and **they said to him**, "Teacher, what should we do?" (Luke 3:12 ULT)

> So **he said to them**, "Collect nothing more than what you have been ordered." (Luke 3:13 ULT)

Quote margin after the quote

> Yahweh relented concerning this. "It will not happen," **he said**. (Amos 7:3 ULT)

Quote margin between two parts of the quote

> "I will hide my face from them," **he said,** "and I will see what their end will be; for they are a perverse generation, children who are unfaithful." (Deuteronomy 32:20 ULT)

> For look, days are coming—**this is Yahweh's declaration**—when I will restore the fortunes of my people, Israel and Judah. (Jeremiah 30:3a ULT)

Translation Strategies

(1) Decide where to put the quote margin.

(2) Decide whether to use one or two words meaning "said."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Decide where to put the quote margin.

> **He said**, "Therefore, those among you who are leaders should go down with us. If there is something wrong with the man, let them accuse him." (Acts 25:5 ULT)

>> "Therefore, those who can should go there with us," **he said**. "If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him."

>> "Therefore, those who can should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him," **he said**.

>> "Therefore, those who can," **he said**, "should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him."

(2) Decide whether to use one or two words meaning "said."

> But his mother **answered and said**, "No. Rather, he will be called John." (Luke 1:60 ULT)

>> But his mother **replied**, "No. Rather, he will be called John."

>> But his mother **said**, "No. Rather, he will be called John."

>> But his mother **answered** like this. "No. Rather, he will be called John," she **said**.

> Next we recommend you learn about:
>
> *Direct and Indirect Quotations*

Quotes within Quotes

Description

A quotation may have a quote within it, and quotes that are inside of other quotes can also have quotes within them. When a quote has quotes within it, we say there are "layers" of quotation, and each of the quotes is a layer. When there are many layers of quotes inside of quotes, it can be hard for listeners and readers to know who is saying what. Some languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes to make it easier.

> This page answers the question: *What is a quote within a quote, and how can I help the readers understand who is saying what?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Direct and Indirect Quotations*

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

When there is a quote within a quote, the listener needs to know who the pronouns refer to. For example: if a quote that is inside a quote has the word "I," the listener needs to know whether "I" refers to the speaker of the inner quote or the outer quote.
Some languages make this clear by using different kinds of quotes when there are quotes within quotes. They may use direct quotes for some and indirect quotes for others.
Some languages do not use indirect quotes.

Examples From the Bible

A quotation with only one layer

> But Paul said, "I, however, was indeed born a citizen." (Acts 22:28b ULT)

Quotations with two layers

> Jesus answered and said to them, "Be careful that no one leads you astray. For many will come in my name. They will say, 'I am the Christ,' and will lead many astray." (Matthew 24:4-5 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to his disciples. The second layer is what other people will say.

> Jesus answered, "You say that I am a king." (John 18:37b ULT)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to Pilate. The second layer is what Pilate said about Jesus.

A quotation with three layers

> Abraham said, "… I said to her, 'You must show me this faithfulness as my wife: At every place where we go, say about me, **"He is my brother."**'" (Genesis 20:11a, 13 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Abraham responded to Abimelech. The second layer is what Abraham had told his wife. The third layer is what he wanted his wife to say. (We have bolded the third layer.)

A quotation with four layers

> They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: **'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal- Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"'"** (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

The outermost layer is what the messengers said to the king. The second layer is what the man who had met the messengers told them. The third is what that man wanted the messengers to say to the king. The fourth is what Yahweh said. (We have bolded the fourth layer.)

Translation Strategies

Some languages use only direct quotes. Other languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes. In those languages it might sound strange and perhaps even be confusing if there are many layers of direct quotes.

(1) Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes.

(2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. (See Direct and Indirect Quotations.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes. In the example below we have bolded the indirect quotes in the ULT and the quotes that we have changed to direct quotes below it.

> Festus presented to the king the things concerning Paul, saying, "There is a certain man was left here as a prisoner by Felix. So I am uncertain about the things concerning this matter. I asked **if he was willing to go to Jerusalem and there to be judged concerning these things**. But when Paul appealed **to keep him in custody for the decision of the emperor**, I ordered him **to be held in custody until when I could send him to Caesar**." (Acts 25:14b, 20-21 ULT)

> > Festus presented Paul's case to the king. He said, "A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner. I was uncertain about the things concerning this matter. I asked him, **'Will you go to Jerusalem to be judged there concerning these things?'** But when Paul said, **'I want to be kept in custody for the emperor's decision,'** I told the guard, **'Keep him in custody until when I can send him to Caesar.'"**

(2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. In English the word "that" can come before indirect quotes. It is bolded in the examples below. The pronouns that changed because of the indirect quote are also bolded.

> And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying, "I have heard the complaints of the sons of Israel. Speak to them and say, 'During the evenings you will eat meat, and in the morning you will be satisfied with bread. And you will know that I am Yahweh your God.'" (Exodus 16:11-12 ULT)

> > And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying, "I have heard the complaints of the sons of Israel. Tell them **that** during the evenings **they** will eat meat, and in the morning **they** will be satisfied with bread. And **they** will know that I am Yahweh **their** God.'"

> They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal-Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"'" (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

>> They told him **that** a man had come to meet **them** who said to **them**, "Go back to the king who sent you, and tell him **that** Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-quotemarks]]

Reflexive Pronouns

Description

All languages have ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. English does this by using reflexive pronouns. These are pronouns that refer to someone or something that has already been mentioned in a sentence. In English the reflexive pronouns are: "myself," "yourself," "himself," "herself," "itself," "ourselves," "yourselves," and "themselves." Other languages may have other ways to show this.

> This page answers the question: *What are reflexive pronouns?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Pronouns*
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]*

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. For those languages, translators will need to know how to translate the English reflexive pronouns.
- The reflexive pronouns in English also have other functions.

Uses of Reflexive Pronouns

- To show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence
- To emphasize a person or thing in the sentence
- To show that someone did something alone
- To show that someone or something was alone

Examples From the Bible

Reflexive pronouns are used to show the same person or thing fills two different roles in a sentence.

> If **I** should testify about **myself**, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31 ULT)

> Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and **many** went up to Jerusalem from the country before the Passover in order to purify **themselves**. (John 11:55 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to emphasize a person or thing in the sentence.

> **Jesus himself** was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2 ULT)

> So they left the crowd, taking Jesus with them, just as he was, in the boat. There also were other boats with him. Then a violent windstorm arose and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was already full of water. But **Jesus himself** was in the stern, asleep on the cushion. (Mark 4:36-38a ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone did something alone.

> When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain **by himself**. (John 6:15 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone or something was alone.

> He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. **It** was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up in a place **by itself**. (John 20:6b-7 ULT)

Translation Strategies

If a reflexive pronoun would have the same function in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other strategies.

(1) In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
(2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.
(3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.
(4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like "alone."
(5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) In some languages people modify the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.

> If I should testify about **myself** alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31)
>
>> "If I should **self-testify** alone, my testimony would not be true."

> Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem from the country before the Passover in order to **purify themselves**. (John 11:55)
>
>> "Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out from country before the Passover in order to **self-purify**."

(2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.

> **He himself** took our sickness and bore our diseases. (Matthew 8:17 ULT)
>
>> "**It was he who** took our sickness and bore our diseases."

> **Jesus himself** was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2)
>
>> "**It was not Jesus who** was baptizing, but his disciples were."

(3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it. English adds the reflexive pronoun.

> But Jesus said this to test Philip, for he **himself** knew what he was going to do. (John 6:6)

(4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like "alone."

> When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain **by himself**. (John 6:15)
>
>> "When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again **alone** up the mountain."

(5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

> He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up in a place **by itself**. (John 20:6b-7 ULT)

> "He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up and lying **in it's own place**."

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:11; 1:12; 2:18)

Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes]]

Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

> But those who stood by said, "**Are you insulting the high priest of God?**"(Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking if he was insulting God's high priest. Rather, they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purposes: of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

Examples From the Bible

> Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that, since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

> **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him who is so much greater than those things.

> Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11a ULT)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

> And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord would come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

> Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

> Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father who is in heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

> **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?** It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden … (Luke 13:18b-19a ULT)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

(1) Add the answer after the question.
(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the answer after the question.

> **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

> > Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? **Of course not!** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

> Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

> > Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? **None of you would do that!**

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

> **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?** It is like a mustard seed. (Luke 13:18-19a ULT)

> > **This is what the kingdom of God is like.** It is like a mustard seed …

> **Are you insulting the high priest of God?** (Acts 23:4b ULT) (Acts 23:4 ULT)

> > **You should not insult God's high priest!**

> **Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11a ULT)

> > **I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!**

> **And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULT)

> > **How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!**

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

> **Do you not still rule** the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

> > You still rule the kingdom of Israel, **do you not?**

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the orignal speaker communicated in his.

> Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

> > If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, **would you give him a stone**?

> **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils**? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

> > **What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils**? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number

Simile

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. The simile focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words "like," "as," or "than."

> This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]*

> When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were troubled and discouraged, **like sheep not having a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as the serpents** and harmless **as the doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep; Jesus' enemies would attack his disciples.

> For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

God's word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people's attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with both of the items being compared.

Examples From the Bible

> Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier** of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

> Just as the lightning flashing from a place under the sky shines to another place under the sky, so will the Son of Man be. (Luke 17:24b ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But in context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves.** (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.
>
> > See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.
>
> For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)
>
> > For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**.

(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.
>
> > See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**.
>
> How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)
>
> > How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!
>
> If you have faith **as a grain of mustard** ... (Matthew 17:20)
>
> > If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT)
>
> > See, I send you out among **people who will want to harm you**.

> How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)

>> How often I wanted to **protect you**, but you refused!

Next we recommend you learn about:

Metaphor
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:11; 1:12; 11:12; 11:27; 12:7)

Symbolic Action

Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their heads up and down to mean "yes" or turn their heads from side to side to mean "no." Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

> This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Translate Unknowns*

Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means "I am surprised" or "What did you say?" In other cultures it means "yes."

In the Bible, people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible, we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture today.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

Examples From the Bible

> And behold, a man came whose name was Jairus, and he was a ruler of the synagogue. And **falling at the feet of Jesus**, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

> Look, I am standing at the door and am knocking. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come into him and will eat with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

> And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)
>
>> Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

> Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)
>
>> Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

> And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)
>
>> Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

> Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)
>
>> Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

> And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT) — Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

> Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT) — Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.
>
>> Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

(**Go back to:** Introduction to Hebrews; Hebrews 1:3; 1:13; 8:1; 9:19; 9:21; 10:12; 10:22; 12:2)

Synecdoche

Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

> **My soul** magnifies the Lord. (Luke 1:46b ULT)

This page answers the question: *What is a synecdoche, and how can I translate such a thing into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Mary was was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said "my soul," which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

> So **the Pharisees** said to him, "Look, why are they doing that which is not lawful?" (Mark 2:24a ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example From the Bible

> Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

"My hands" is a synecdoche for the whole person because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person's accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

> "**My soul** magnifies the Lord." (Luke 1:46b ULT)
>
> > "**I** magnify the Lord."
>
> So **the Pharisees** said to him … (Mark 2:24a ULT)
>
> > **A representative of the Pharisees** said to him …
>
> Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

> > I looked on all the deeds that **I** had accomplished

> Next we recommend you learn about:
>
> *Metonymy*
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part2]]*

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:3; 1:13; 9:11; 9:24; 10:39; 13:15)

Textual Variants

Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However, people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, or some mistook one word for another that looked like it. Occasionally, they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles include some of these sentences that were added. In the ULT, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

> This page answers the question: *Why does the ULT have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-source-text]]
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts]]

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULT based the ULT on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULT may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULT translators have sometimes included information about some of the differences between them, either in the ULT footnotes or in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULT and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULT. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

Examples From the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULT has a footnote about verse 11.

> [10] See that you do not despise one of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. [11] [1]
>
> [1] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11: **For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.**

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULT, but it is marked off with square brackets ([ ]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

> 53 [Then everyone went to his own house … 11 She said, "No one, Lord." Jesus said, "Neither do I condemn you. Go and sin no more."] [2]
>
> [2] Some ancient manuscripts include John 7:53-8:11

Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULT or another version that you have access to.

(1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

(2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULT, which has a footnote about verse 16.

> [14] He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. [15] There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man." [16] [1]

> [1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

> [14] He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. [15] There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man." [16] [1]
>
> > [1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

> [14] He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. [15]There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man. [16] If any man has ears to hear, let him hear." [1]
>
> > [1] Some ancient manuscripts do not include verse 16.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-chapverse]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-terms]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-original]]

(**Go back to:** Introduction to Hebrews; Hebrews 1:8; 2:7; 3:2)

Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: "How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?"

> This page answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

> They said to him, "We have nothing here except five loaves of **bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples From the Bible

> So I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals**. (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

> Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are ravenous **wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

> They offered him wine mixed with **myrrh**, but he did not drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

> ... to him who made **great lights** ... (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

> Your sins ... will be white like **snow**. (Isaiah 1:18b ULT)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

> Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are inwardly they are **ravenous wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)
>
>> Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but **inwardly they are very hungry and dangerous animals**.

"Ravenous wolves" is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See Translating Metaphors.)

> "We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT)
>
>> We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked grain seeds** and two fish.

(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

> Your sins ... will be white like **snow.** (Isaiah 1:18b ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.
>
>> Your sins ... will be white like **milk**.
>
>> Your sins ... will be white like **the moon**.

(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

> Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **myrrh**. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) — People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."

> > Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **a medicine called myrrh**. But he refused to drink it.

> "We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT) — People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).

> > We have nothing here except five loaves of **baked crushed seed bread** and two fish.

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

> I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)

> > I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **wild dogs**

> "We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

> > We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked food** and two fish.

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

> … to him who made **great lights** … (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

> > to him who made **the sun and the moon**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate]]
How to Translate Names

Translating Son and Father

Door43 supports Bible translations that represent these concepts when they refer to God.

Biblical Witness

"Father" and "Son" are names that God calls himself in the Bible.

The Bible shows that God called Jesus his Son:

> After he was baptized, Jesus came up immediately from the water, and ... a voice came out of the heavens saying, "**This is my beloved Son**. I am very pleased with him." (Matthew 3:16-17 ULT)

The Bible shows that Jesus called God his Father:

> Jesus ... said, "I praise you **Father**, Lord of heaven and earth ... no one knows the **Son** except the **Father**, and no one knows the **Father** except the **Son**." (Matthew 11:25a, 27b ULT) (See also: John 6:26-57)

Christians have found that "Father" and "Son" are the ideas that most essentially describe the eternal relationship of the First and Second Persons of the Trinity to each other. The Bible indeed refers to them in various ways, but no other terms reflect the eternal love and intimacy between these Persons, nor the interdependent eternal relationship between them.

Jesus referred to God in the following terms:

> Baptize them into **the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit**. (Matthew 28:19b ULT)

The intimate, loving relationship between the Father and the Son is eternal, just as they are eternal. The Father **loves** the Son. (See John 3:35-36; 5:19-20 ULT)

> I **love** the Father, and just as the Father commanded me, thus I do. (John 14:31 ULT)

> **No one knows who the Son is except the Father, and who the Father is except the Son**. (Luke 10:22b ULT)

The terms "Father" and "Son" also communicate that the Father and the Son are of the same essence; they are both eternal God.

> Jesus said, "Father, ... glorify your Son so that the Son will glorify you ... I glorified you on the earth ... Now Father, glorify me ... with the glory that **I had with you before the world was made**." (John 17:1, 4a, 5 ULT)

> But in these last days, he [God the Father] has spoken to us through a Son, whom he appointed to be the heir of all things. Through him, he also made the universe. He is the brightness of God's glory and **the very exact representation of his being**. He holds everything together by the word of his power. (Hebrews 1:2-3a ULT)

> Jesus said to him, "I have been with you for so long and you still do not know me, Philip? **Whoever has seen me has seen the Father**. How can you say, 'Show us the Father'?" (John 14:9 ULT)

Human Relationships

Human fathers and sons are not perfect, but the Bible still uses those terms for the Father and Son, who are perfect.

Just as today, human father-son relationships during Bible times were never as loving or perfect as the relationship between Jesus and his Father. But this does not mean that the translator should avoid the concepts of father and son. The Scriptures use these terms to refer to God, the perfect Father and Son, as well as to sinful human fathers and sons. In referring to God as Father and Son, choose words in your language that are widely used to refer to a human "father" and "son." In this way you will communicate that God the Father and God the Son are of the same divine essence (they are both God), just as a human father and son are of the same human essence (they are both human and share the same human characteristics).

Translation Strategies

(1) Think through all the possibilities within your language to translate the words "son" and "father." Determine which words in your language best represent the divine "Son" and "Father."

(2) If your language has more than one word for "son," use the word that has the closest meaning to "only son" (or "first son" if necessary).

(3) If your language has more than one word for "father," use the word that has the closest meaning to "birth father," rather than "adoptive father."

(See *God the Father* and *Son of God* pages in unfoldingWord® Translation Words for help translating "Father" and "Son.")

When Masculine Words Include Women

In the Bible, sometimes the words "men," "brothers," and "sons" refer only to men. At other times, those words include both men and women. In those places where the writer meant both men and women, you (the translator) need to translate it in a way that does not limit the meaning to men.

> This page answers the question: *How do I translate "brother" or "he" when it could refer to anyone, male or female?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Pronouns*
>
> *Generic Noun Phrases*

Description

In some languages a word that normally refers to men can also be used in a more general way to refer to both men and women. For example, the Bible sometimes says "brothers" when it refers to both brothers and sisters.

Also in some languages, the masculine pronouns "he" and "him" can be used in a more general way for any person if it is not important whether the person is a man or a woman. In the example below, the pronoun is "his," but it is not limited to males.

> A wise son makes **his** father rejoice
> but a foolish son brings grief to **his** mother. (Proverbs 10:1 ULT)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- In some cultures words like "man," "brother," and "son" can only be used to refer to men. If those words are used in a translation in a more general way, people will think that what is being said does not apply to women.
- In some cultures, the masculine pronouns "he" and "him" can only refer to men. If a masculine pronoun is used, people will think that what is said does not apply to women.

Translation Principles

When a statement applies to both men and women, translate it in such a way that people will be able to understand that it applies to both.

Examples From the Bible

> Now we want you to know, **brothers**, the grace of God that has been given to the churches of Macedonia. (2 Corinthians 8:1 ULT)

This verse is addressing the believers in Corinth, not only men, but **men and women**.

> Then said Jesus to his disciples, "If anyone wants to follow me, **he** must deny **himself**, take up **his** cross, and follow me." (Matthew 16:24 ULT)

Jesus was not speaking only of men, but of **men and women**.

Caution: Sometimes masculine words are used specifically to refer to men. Do not use words that would lead people to think that they include women. The words below are specifically about men.

> Moses said, 'If **someone** dies, not having children, **his brother** must marry **his** wife and have children for **his brother**.' (Matthew 22:24 ULT)

Translation Strategies

If people would understand that that masculine words like "man," "brother," and "he" can include women, then consider using them. Otherwise, here are some ways for translating those words when they include women.

(1) Use a noun that can be used for both men and women.

(2) Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.

(3) Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use nouns that can be used for both men and women.

> The wise **man** dies just like the fool dies. (Ecclesiastes 2:16b ULT)

>> "The wise **person** dies just like the fool dies."
>> "Wise **people** die just like fools die."

(2) Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.

> For we do not want you to be uninformed, **brothers**, about the troubles that happened to us in Asia. (2 Corinthians 1:8) — Paul was writing this letter to both men and women.

>> "For we do not want you to be uninformed, **brothers and sisters**, about the troubles that happened to us in Asia."

(3) Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

> "If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me." (Matthew 16:24 ULT)

English speakers can change the masculine singular pronouns, "he," "himself," and "his" to plural pronouns that do not mark gender, "they," "themselves," and "their" in order to show that it applies to all people, not just men.
>

>> "If **people** want to follow me, **they** must deny **themselves**, take up **their** cross, and follow me."

When to Keep Information Implicit

Description

Sometimes it is better not to state assumed knowledge or implicit information explicitly. This page gives some direction about when not to do this.

> This page answers the question: *When should I not make implicit information explicit?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information*
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]*

Translation Principles

- If a speaker or author intentionally left something unclear, do not try to make it more clear.
- If the original audience did not understand what the speaker meant, do not make it so clear that your readers would find it strange that the original audience did not understand.
- If you need to explicitly state some assumed knowledge or implicit information, try to do it in a way that does not make your readers think that the original audience needed to be told those things.
- Do not make implicit information explicit if it confuses the message or leads the reader to forget what the main point is.
- Do not make assumed knowledge or implicit information explicit if your readers already understand it.

Examples From the Bible

> From the eater came forth food;
> and from the strong one came forth sweetness. (Judges 14:14 ULT)

This was a riddle. Samson purposely said this in a way that it would be hard for his enemies to know what it meant. Do not make it clear that the eater and the strong thing was a lion and that the sweet thing to eat was honey.

> Jesus said to them, "Take heed and beware of the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees." They reasoned among themselves saying, "It is because we did not take bread." (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Some possible implicit information here is that the disciples should beware of the false teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. But Jesus' disciples did not understand this. They thought that Jesus was talking about real yeast and bread. So it would not be appropriate to state explicitly that the word "yeast" here refers to false teaching. The disciples did not understand what Jesus meant until they heard what Jesus said in Matthew 16:11.

> "How is it that you do not understand that I was not speaking to you about bread? Beware of the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees." Then they understood that he was not telling them to beware of yeast in bread, but to beware of the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. (Matthew 16:11-12 ULT)

Only after Jesus explained that he was not talking about bread did they realize that he was talking about the false teaching of the Pharisees. Therefore, it would be wrong to explicitly state the implicit information in Matthew 16:6.

Translation Strategies

Because we recommend that translators not change this kind of passage to make it more clear, this page does not have any translation strategies.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

Because we recommend that translators not change this kind of passage to make it more clear, this page does not have any translation strategies applied.

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:4; 1:9; 3:2; 3:5)

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

Version 32

Aaron

Facts:

Aaron was Moses' older brother. God chose Aaron to be the first high priest for the people of Israel.

- Aaron helped Moses speak to Pharaoh about letting the Israelites go free.
- While the Israelites were traveling through the desert, Aaron sinned by making an idol for the people to worship.
- God also appointed Aaron and his descendants to be the priest priests for the people of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: priest, Moses, Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:14
- Acts 7:38-40
- Exodus 28:1-3
- Luke 1:5
- Numbers 16:45

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:15** God warned Moses and **Aaron** that Pharaoh would be stubborn.
- **10:5** Pharaoh called Moses and **Aaron** and told them that if they stopped the plague, the Israelites could leave Egypt.
- **13:9** God chose Moses' brother, **Aaron**, and Aaron's descendants to be his priests.
- **13:11** So they (the Israelites) brought gold to **Aaron** and asked him to form it into an idol for them!
- **14:7** They (the Israelites) became angry with Moses and **Aaron** and said, "Oh, why did you bring us to this horrible place?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0175, G00020

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 5:4; 7:11; 9:4)

Abel

Facts:

Abel was Adam and Eve's second son. He was Cain's younger brother.

- Abel was a shepherd.
- Abel sacrificed some of his animals as an offering to God.
- God was pleased with Abel and his offerings.
- Adam and Eve's firstborn son Cain murdered Abel.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Cain, sacrifice, shepherd)

Bible References:

- Genesis 4:2
- Genesis 4:9
- Hebrews 12:24
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 23:35

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1893, G00060

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 11:4; 12:24)

Abraham, Abram

Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to "Abraham."

- The name "Abram" means "exalted father."
- "Abraham" means "father of many."
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Chaldea, Sarah, Isaac)

Bible References:

- Galatians 3:8
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:4
- Genesis 22:2
- James 2:23
- Matthew 1:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:6** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **5:4** Then God changed **Abram**'s name to **Abraham**, which means "father of many."
- **5:5** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's son.
- **5:6** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham's** faith by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **6:1** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **6:4** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **21:2** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0087, H0085, G00110

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2:16; 6:13; 7:1; 7:2; 7:4; 7:5; 7:6; 7:9; 11:8; 11:17)

adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress

Definition:

The term "adultery" refers to a sin that occurs when a married person has sexual relations with someone who is not that person's spouse. Both of them are guilty of adultery. The term "adulterous" describes this kind of behavior or any person who commits this sin.

  • The term "adulterer" refers generally to any person who commits adultery.
  • Sometimes the term "adulteress" is used to specify that it was a woman who committed adultery.
  • Adultery breaks the promises that a husband and wife made to each other in their covenant of marriage.
  • God commanded the Israelites to not commit adultery.

Translation Suggestions:

  • If the target language does not have one word that means "adultery," this term could be translated with a phrase such as "having sexual relations with someone else's wife" or "being intimate with another person's spouse."
  • Some languages may have an indirect way of talking about adultery, such as "sleeping with someone else's spouse" or "being unfaithful to one's wife." (See: euphemism)

(See also: commit, covenant, sexual immorality, sleep with, faithful)

Bible References:

  • Exodus 20:14
  • Hosea 4:1-2
  • Luke 16:18
  • Matthew 5:28
  • Matthew 12:39
  • Revelation 2:22

Examples from the Bible stories:

  • **13:6** "Do not commit **adultery**."
  • **28:2** Do not commit **adultery**.
  • **34:7** "The religious leader prayed like this, 'Thank you, God, that I am not a sinner like other men-such as robbers, unjust men, **adulterers**, or even like that tax collector.'"

Word Data:

  • Strong's: H5003, H5004, G34280, G34290, G34300, G34310, G34320

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 13:4)

adversary, enemy

Definition:

An "adversary" is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term "enemy" has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an "adversary" of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an "adversary" and an "enemy."
- The term "adversary" may be translated as "opponent" or "enemy," but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: Satan)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:14
- Isaiah 9:11
- Job 6:23
- Lamentations 4:12
- Luke 12:59
- Matthew 13:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G04760, G04800, G21890, G21900, G52270

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:13; 10:13; 10:27)

age, aged

Definition:

The term "age" refers to the number of years a person has lived. It also used to refer generally to a time period.

- Other words used to express an extended period of time include "era" and "season."
- Jesus refers to "this age" as the present time when evil, sin, and disobedience fill the earth.
- There will be a future age when righteousness will reign over a new heaven and a new earth.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "age" could also be translated as "era" or "number of years old" or "time period" or "time."
- The phrase "at a very old age" could be translated as "at many years old" or "when he was very old" or "when he had lived a very long time."
- The phrase "this present evil age" means "during this time right now when people are very evil."

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:28
- 1 Corinthians 2:7
- Hebrews 6:5
- Job 5:26

Word Data:

- Strong's: G01650, G10740

alien, foreigner, sojourn

Definition:

The term "foreigner" refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an "alien." To sojourn is to live temporarily as a foreigner.

- In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
- A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from those of a particular region.
- For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a "foreigner" there because she was not originally from Israel.
- A sojourner is another word for a temporary foreign resident.
- The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were "foreigners" to God's covenant.
- Sometimes "foreigner" is translated as "stranger," but it should not refer only to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 2:17
- Acts 7:29-30
- Deuteronomy 1:15-16
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 17:27
- Luke 17:18
- Matthew 17:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0312, H0628, H0776, H1471, H1481, H1616, H2114, H3937, H4033, H5236, H5237, H6154, H8453, G02410, G02450, G05260, G09150, G18540, G35810, G39270, G39410

(**Go back to:**)

altar

Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, false god, grain offering, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Genesis 8:20
- Genesis 22:9
- James 2:21
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 5:23
- Matthew 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **5:8** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **13:9** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **16:6** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G10410, G23790

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 7:13; 13:10)

amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded

Definition:

All these terms refer to being very surprised because of something extraordinary that happened.

- Some of these words are translations of Greek expressions that mean "struck with amazement" or "standing outside of (oneself)." These expressions show how very surprised or shocked the person was feeling. Other languages might also have ways to express this.
- Usually the event that caused the wonder and amazement was a miracle, something only God could do.
- The meaning of these terms can also include feelings of confusion because what happened was totally unexpected.
- Other ways to translate these words could be "extremely surprised" or "very shocked."
- Related words include "marvelous" (amazing, wonderful), "amazement," and "astonishment."
- In general, these terms are positive and express that the people were happy about what had happened.

(See also: miracle, sign)

Bible References:

- Acts 8:9-11
- Acts 9:20-22
- Galatians 1:6
- Mark 2:10-12
- Matthew 7:28
- Matthew 15:29-31
- Matthew 19:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0926, H2865, H3820, H4159, H6313, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H8074, H8429, H8539, H8540, H8541, G06390, G15680, G15690, G16050, G16110, G18390, G22840, G22850, G22960, G22970, G22980, G40230, G45920, G50590

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2:4)

amen, truly

Definition:

The term "amen" is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as "truly."

- When used at the end of a prayer, "amen" communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
- In his teaching, Jesus used "amen" to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by "and I say to you" to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
- When Jesus uses "amen" this way, some English versions (and the ULT) translate this as "verily" or "truly."
- Another word meaning "truly" is sometimes translated as "surely" or "certainly" and is also used to emphasize what the speaker is saying.

Translation Suggestions:

- Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
- When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, "amen" could be translated as "let it be so" or "may this happen" or "that is true."
- When Jesus says, "truly I tell you," this could also be translated as "Yes, I tell you sincerely" or "That is true, and I also tell you."
- The phrase "truly, truly I tell you" could be translated as "I tell you this very sincerely" or "I tell you this very earnestly" or "what I am telling you is true."

(See also: fulfill, true)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 27:15
- John 5:19
- Jude 1:24-25
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Philemon 1:23-25
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0543, G02810

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 13:21)

ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Definition:

The term "father" refers to a person's male parent.

- The terms "father" and "forefather" are often used to refer to a male ancestor(s) of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a "ancestor" or "ancestral father."
- The expression "the father of" can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 "the father of all who live in tents" could mean, "the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents."
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the "father" of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- "God the Father" should also be translated using the usual, common word for "father."
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as "ancestors" or "ancestral fathers."
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as "spiritual father" or "father in Christ."
- Sometimes the word "father" can be translated as "clan leader," depending on the context.
- The phrase "father of all lies" could be translated as "source of all lies" or "the one from whom all lies come."

(See also: God the Father, son, Son of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:2
- Acts 7:32
- Acts 7:45
- Acts 22:3
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 7:4-6
- John 4:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 3:7
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 1:7
- Matthew 3:9
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 4:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0001, H0002, H0025, H0369, H0539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G05400, G10800, G37370, G39620, G39640, G39660, G39670, G39700, G39710, G39950, G42450, G42690, G46130

angel, archangel

Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term "archangel" refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word "angel" literally means "messenger."
- The term "archangel" literally means "chief messenger." The only angel referred to in the Bible as an "archangel" is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God's authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, "angel of Yahweh," has more than one possible meaning: (1) It may mean "angel who represents Yahweh" or "messenger who serves Yahweh." (2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel's use of "I" as if Yahweh himself was talking.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "angel" could include "messenger from God" or "God's heavenly servant" or "God's spirit messenger."
- The term "archangel" could be translated as "chief angel" or "head ruling angel" or "leader of the angels."
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase "angel of Yahweh" should be translated using the words for "angel" and "Yahweh." This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include "angel from Yahweh" or "angel sent by Yahweh" or "Yahweh, who looked like an angel."

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: chief, head, messenger, Michael, ruler, servant)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 12:23
- Colossians 2:18-19
- Genesis 48:16
- Luke 2:13
- Mark 8:38
- Matthew 13:50
- Revelation 1:20
- Zechariah 1:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:12** God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- **22:3** The **angel** responded to Zechariah, "I was sent by God to bring you this good news."
- **23:6** Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, "Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you."
- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising God.
- **25:8** Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- **38:12** Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- **38:15** "I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H0430, H4397, H4398, H8136, G00320, G07430, G24650

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1 General Notes; 1:4; 1:5; 1:6; 1:7; 1:13; Notes; 2:2; 2:5; 2:7; 2:9; 2:16; 12:22; 13:2)

anoint, anointed, anointing

Definition:

The term "anoint" means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. In biblical times, there were several reasons for anointing someone with oil.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God. (This and the other uses are symbolic actions, see Symbolic Action.)
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles "Messiah" (Hebrew) and "Christ" (Greek) mean "the Anointed (One)."
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.
- In biblical times, a woman might anoint herself with perfume to make herself more sexually attractive.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "anoint" could be translated as "pour oil on" or "put oil on" or "consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on."
- To "be anointed" could be translated as "be consecrated with oil." or "be appointed" or "be consecrated."
- In some contexts the term "anoint" could be translated as "appoint."
- A phrase like "the anointed priest," could be translated as "the priest who was consecrated with oil" or "the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil."

(See also: Christ, consecrate, high priest, King of the Jews, priest, prophet)

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:20
- 1 John 2:27
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- Acts 4:27-28
- Amos 6:5-6
- Exodus 29:5-7
- James 5:13-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H0430, H1101, H1878, H3323, H4397, H4398, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, H8136, G00320, G02180, G07430, G14720, G20250, G34620, G55450, G55480

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:9)

apostle, apostleship

Definition:

The "apostles" were men sent by Jesus to preach about God and his kingdom. The term "apostleship" refers to the position and authority of those who were chosen as apostles.

- The word "apostle" means "someone who is sent out for a special purpose." The apostle has the same authority as the one who sent him.
- Jesus' twelve closest disciples became the first apostles. Other men, such as Paul and James, also became apostles.
- By God's power, the apostles were able to boldly preach the gospel and heal people, and were able to force demons to come out of people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word "apostle" can also be translated with a word or phrase that means "someone who is sent out" or "sent-out one" or "person who is called to go out and preach God's message to people."
- It is important to translate the terms "apostle" and "disciple" in different ways.
- Also consider how this term was translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: authority, disciple, James (son of Zebedee), Paul, the twelve)

Bible References:

- Jude 1:17-19
- Luke 9:12-14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:10** Then Jesus chose twelve men who were called his **apostles**. The **apostles** traveled with Jesus and learned from him.
- **30:1** Jesus sent his **apostles** to preach and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:2** Judas was one of Jesus' **apostles**. He was in charge of the **apostles'** money bag, but he loved money and often stole from the bag.
- **43:13** The disciples devoted themselves to the **apostles'** teaching, fellowship, eating together, and prayer.
- **46:8** Then a believer named Barnabas took Saul to the **apostles** and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G06510, G06520, G24910, G53760, G55700

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 3:1)

appoint, appointed

Definition:

The terms "appoint" and "appointed" refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To "be appointed" can also refer to being "chosen" to receive something, as in "appointed to eternal life." That people were "appointed to eternal life" means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase "appointed time" refers to God's "chosen time" or "planned time" for something to happen.
- The word "appoint" may also mean to "command" or "assign" someone to do something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "appoint" could include "choose" or "assign" or "formally choose" or "designate."
- The term "appointed" could be translated as "assigned" or "planned" or "specifically chose."
- The phrase "be appointed" could also be translated as "be chosen."

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 8:11
- Acts 3:20
- Acts 6:2
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 3:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0561, H0977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G03220, G06060, G12990, G13030, G19350, G25250, G27490, G42870, G42960, G43840, G49290, G50210, G50870

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:2; 3:2; 4:7; 5:1; 7:28; 8:3)

ark

Definition:

The term "ark" literally refers to a rectangular wooden box that is made to hold or protect something. An ark can be large or small, depending on what it is being used for.

- In the English Bible, the word "ark" is first used to refer to the very large, rectangular, wooden boat that Noah built to escape the worldwide flood. The ark had a flat bottom, a roof, and walls.
- Ways to translate this term could include "very large boat" or "barge" or "cargo ship" or "large, box-shaped boat."
- The Hebrew word that is used to refer to this huge boat is the same word used for the basket or box that held baby Moses when his mother put him in the Nile River to hide him. In that case it is usually translated as "basket."
- In the phrase "ark of the covenant," a different Hebrew word is used for "ark." This could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
- When choosing a term to translate "ark," it is important in each context to consider what size it is and what it is being used for.

(See also: ark of the covenant, basket)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 3:20
- Exodus 16:33-36
- Exodus 30:6
- Genesis 8:4-5
- Luke 17:27
- Matthew 24:37-39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0727, H8392, G27870

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 9:4; 11:7)

ash, ashes

Facts:

The term "ash" (or "ashes") refers to the grey powdery substance that is left behind after wood is burned.

- In ancient times, sitting in ashes was a sign of mourning or grieving. When grieving, it was the custom to wear rough, scratchy sackcloth and sit in ashes or put ashes on the head.
- Putting ashes on the head was also a sign of humiliation or embarrassment.
- An "ash heap" is a pile of ashes.
- Sometimes the word "dust" is used with the term "ashes" in the phrase, "dust and ashes." This phrase can be translated as "dust and ashes" or simply as "ashes."
- When translating "ashes," use the word in the target language that refers to the burned-up remains after wood has burned.

(See also: fire, sackcloth)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 20:10
- Jeremiah 6:26
- Psalms 102:9
- Psalms 113:7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0080, H0665, H1854, H6083, H6368, H7834, G28680, G47000, G50770, G55220

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 9:13)

assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community

Definition:

The term "assembly" usually refers to a group of people who come together for some reason, often to discuss problems, give advice, or make decisions. An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.

Old Testament

- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a "sacred assembly" in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term "assembly" referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.

New Testament

- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the "Sanhedrin" or the "Council."

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, "assembly" could also be translated as "special gathering" or "congregation" or "council" or "army" or "large group."
- When the term "assembly" refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as "community" or "people of Israel."
- The phrase, "all the assembly" could be translated as "all the people" or "the whole group of Israelites" or "everyone." (See: hyperbole)
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an "assembly." This could be translated as "army."

(See also: council)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:14
- Acts 7:38
- Ezra 10:12-13
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Leviticus 4:20-21
- Nehemiah 8:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0622, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H6116, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, G15770, G38310, G48630, G48640, G48710, G49050

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2:12; 12:22)

astray, go astray, went astray, lead astray, stray

Definition:

The terms "stray" and "go astray" mean to disobey God's will. People who are "led astray" have allowed other people or circumstances to influence them to disobey God.

- The word "astray" gives a picture of leaving a clear path or a place of safety to go down a wrong and dangerous path.
- Sheep who leave the pasture of their shepherd have "strayed." God compares sinful people to sheep who have left him and "gone astray."

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase "go astray" could be translated as "go away from God" or "take a wrong path away from God's will" or "stop obeying God" or "live in a way that goes away from God."
- To "lead someone astray" could be translated as "cause someone to disobey God" or "influence someone to stop obeying God" or "cause someone to follow you down a wrong path."

(See also: disobey, shepherd)

Bible References:

- 1 John 3:7
- 2 Timothy 3:13
- Exodus 23:4-5
- Ezekiel 48:10-12
- Matthew 18:13
- Matthew 24:5
- Psalms 58:3
- Psalms 119:110

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5080, H7683, H7686, H8582, G41050, G53510

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 3:10; 5:2)

atonement lid

Definition:

The "atonement lid" was a slab of gold that was used to cover the top of the ark of the covenant. In many English translations, it is also referred to as an "atonement cover."

- The atonement lid was about 115 centimeters in length and 70 centimeters in width.
- Above the atonement lid were two gold cherubim with their wings touching.
- Yahweh said that he would meet with the Israelites above the atonement lid, under the outstretched wings of the cherubim. Only the high priest was permitted to meet with Yahweh in this way, as the representative of the people.
- Sometimes this atonement lid has been referred to as a "mercy seat" because it communicates God's mercy in coming down to redeem sinful human beings.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include "ark covering where God promises to redeem" or "place where God atones" or "lid of ark where God forgives and restores."
- Can also mean "place of propitiation."
- Compare this term with how you translated "atonement," "propitiation," and "redemption."

(See also: ark of the covenant, atonement, cherubim, propitiation, redeem)

Bible References:

- Exodus 25:17
- Exodus 30:6
- Exodus 40:17-20
- Leviticus 16:1-2
- Numbers 7:89

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3727, G24350

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 9:5)

authority

Definition:

The term "authority" usually refers to a position of influence, responsibility, or rule over another person.

- Kings and other governing rulers have authority over the people they are ruling.
- The word "authorities" can refer to people, governments, or organizations that have authority over others.
- The word "authorities" can also refer to spirit beings who have power over people who have not submitted themselves to God's authority.
- Masters have authority over their servants or slaves. Parents have authority over their children.
- Governments have the authority or right to make laws that govern their citizens.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "authority" can also be translated as "control" or "right" or "qualifications."
- Sometimes "authority" is used with the meaning of "power."
- When "authorities" is used to refer to people or organizations who rule people, it could also be translated as "leaders" or "rulers" or "powers."
- The phrase "by his own authority" could also be translated as "with his own right to lead" or "based on his own qualifications."
- The expression, "under authority" could be translated as "responsible to obey" or "having to obey others' commands."

(See also: dominion, king, ruler, power)

Bible References:

- Colossians 2:10
- Esther 9:29
- Genesis 41:35
- Jonah 3:6-7
- Luke 12:5
- Luke 20:1-2
- Mark 1:22
- Matthew 8:9
- Matthew 28:19
- Titus 3:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8633, G08310, G14130, G18490, G18500, G20030, G27150, G52470

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 13:10)

avenge, avenger, revenge, vengeance

Definition:

To "avenge" or "take revenge" or "execute vengeance" is to punish someone in order to pay him back for the harm he did. The act of avenging or taking revenge is "vengeance."

- Usually "avenge" implies an intent to see justice done or to right a wrong,
- When referring to people, the expression "take revenge" or "get revenge" usually involves wanting to get back at the person who did the harm.
- When God "takes vengeance" or "executes vengeance," he is acting in righteousness because he is punishing sin and rebellion.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression to "avenge" could also be translated as to "right a wrong" or to "get justice for."
- When referring to human beings, to "take revenge" could be translated as "pay back" or "hurt in order to punish" or "get back at."
- Depending on the context, "vengeance" could be translated as "punishment" or "punishment of sin" or "payment for wrongs done." If a word meaning "retaliation" is used, this would apply to human beings only.
- When God says, "take my vengeance," this could be translated by "punish them for wrongs done against me" or "cause bad things to happen because they have sinned against me."
- When referring to God's vengeance, make sure it is clear that God is right in his punishment of sin.

(See also: punish, just, righteous)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:12-13
- Ezekiel 25:15
- Isaiah 47:3-5
- Leviticus 19:17-18
- Psalms 18:47
- Romans 12:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H3467, H5358, H5359, H5360, H8199, G15560, G15570, G15580, G37090

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 10:30)

awe, awesome

Definition:

The term "awe" refers to the sense of amazement and deep respect that comes from seeing something great, powerful, and magnificent.

- The term "awesome" describes someone or something that inspires a feeling of awe.
- The visions of the glory of God seen by the prophet Ezekiel were "awesome" or "awe-inspiring."
- Typical human responses showing awe of God's presence include: fear, bowing or kneeling down, covering the face, and trembling.

(See also: fear, glory)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 17:21
- Genesis 28:16-17
- Hebrews 12:28
- Psalm 22:23
- Psalms 147:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0366, H1481, H3372, H6206, H7227, G21240

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 12:28)

bear, bearer, carry

Facts:

The term "bear" literally means "carry" something. There are also many figurative uses of this term.

- When speaking of a woman who will bear a child, this means "give birth to" a child.
- To "bear a burden" means to "experience difficult things." These difficult things could include physical or emotional suffering.
- A common expression in the Bible is "bear fruit," which means "produce fruit" or "have fruit."
- The expression "bear witness" means "testify" or "report what one has seen or experienced."
- The statement that "a son will not bear the iniquity of his father" means that he "will not be held responsible for" or "will not be punished for" his father's sins.
- In general, this term could be translated as "carry" or "be responsible for" or "produce" or "have" or "endure," depending on the context.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: burden, Elisha, endure, fruit, iniquity, report, sheep, strength, testimony, testimony)

Bible References:

- Lamentations 3:27

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2232, H3201, H3205, H5375, H5445, H5449, H6030, H6509, H6779, G01420, G04300, G09410, G10800, G16270, G25920, G31400, G41600, G47220, G48280, G50410, G50880, G53420, G54090, G55760

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 12:20; 13:13; 13:22)

beast

Facts:

In the Bible, the term "beast" is often just another way of saying "animal."

- A wild beast is a type of animal that lives freely in the forest or fields and has not been trained by people.
- A domestic beast is an animal that lives with people and is kept for food or for performing work, such as plowing fields. Often the term "livestock" is used to refer to this kind of animal.
- The Old Testament book of Daniel and the New Testament book of Revelation describe visions which have beasts that represent evil powers and authorities that oppose God. (See: Metaphor)
- Some of these beasts are described as having strange features, such as several heads and many horns. They often have power and authority, indicating that they may represent countries, nations, or other political powers.
- Ways to translate this could include "creature" or "created thing" or "animal" or "wild animal," depending on the context.

(See also: authority, Daniel, livestock, nation, power, reveal, Beelzebul)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:32
- 1 Samuel 17:44
- 2 Chronicles 25:18
- Jeremiah 16:1-4
- Leviticus 7:21
- Psalms 49:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0338, H0929, H1165, H2123, H2416, H2423, H2874, H3753, H4806, H7409, G22260, G23410, G23420, G29340, G49680, G50740

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 12:20)

believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief

Definition:

The terms "believe" and "believe in" are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

2. believe in

- To "believe in" someone means to "trust in" that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase "have faith in" usually has the same meaning as "believe in."
- To "believe in Jesus" means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

3. believer

In the Bible, the term "believer" refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term "believer" literally means "person who believes."
- The term "Christian" eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

4. unbelief

The term "unbelief" refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, "unbelief" refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one's Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an "unbeliever."

Translation Suggestions:

- To "believe" could be translated as to "know to be true" or "know to be right."
- To "believe in" could be translated as "trust completely" or "trust and obey" or "completely rely on and follow."
- Some translations may prefer to say "believer in Jesus" or "believer in Christ."
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means "person who trusts in Jesus" or "someone who knows Jesus and lives for him."
- Other ways to translate "believer" could be "follower of Jesus" or "person who knows and obeys Jesus."
- The term "believer" is a general term for any believer in Christ, while "disciple" and "apostle" were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
- Other ways to translate "unbelief" could include "lack of faith" or "not believing."

- The term "unbeliever" could be translated as "person who does not believe in Jesus" or "someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior."

(See also: believe, apostle, Christian, disciple, faith, trust)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:6
- Genesis 45:26
- Job 9:16-18
- Habakkuk 1:5-7
- Mark 6:4-6
- Mark 1:14-15
- Luke 9:41
- John 1:12
- Acts 6:5
- Acts 9:42
- Acts 28:23-24
- Romans 3:3
- 1 Corinthians 6:1
- 1 Corinthians 9:5
- 2 Corinthians 6:15
- Hebrews 3:12
- 1 John 3:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:4** Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- **4:8** Abram **believed** God's promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God's promise.
- **11:2** God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- **11:6** But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?"
- **43:1** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **43:3** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the **believers**.
- **43:13** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **46:6** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **46:1** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- **46:9** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus.
- **46:9** It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called "Christians."
- **47:14** They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0539, H0540, G05430, G05440, G05690, G05700, G05710, G39820, G41000, G41020, G41030, G41350

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 3:12; 3:19; 4:3; 11:6)

beloved

Definition:

The term "beloved" is an expression of affection that describes someone who is loved and dear to someone else.

- The term "beloved" literally means "loved (one)" or "(who is) loved."
- God refers to Jesus as his "beloved Son."
- In their letters to Christian churches, the apostles frequently address their fellow believers as "beloved."

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as "loved" or "loved one" or "well-loved," or "very dear."
- In the context of talking about a close friend, this could be translated as "my dear friend" or "my close friend." In English it is natural to say "my dear friend, Paul" or "Paul, who is my dear friend." Other languages may find it more natural to order this in a different way.
- Note that the word "beloved" comes from the word for God's love, which is unconditional, unselfish, and sacrificial.

(See also: love)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 4:14
- 1 John 3:2
- 1 John 4:7
- Mark 1:11
- Mark 12:6
- Revelation 20:9
- Romans 16:8
- Song of Songs 1:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0157, H1730, H2532, H3033, H3039, H4261, G00250, G00270, G52070

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 6:9)

bind, bond, bound

Definition:

The term "bind" means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a "bond." The term "bound" is the past tense of this term.

- To be "bound" means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be "bound" to a vow, which means he is "required to fulfill" what he promised to do.
- The term "bonds" refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term "bind" can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be "bound" with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term "bond" is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are "bound" or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "bind" could also be translated as "tie" or "tie up" or "wrap (around)."
- Figuratively, it could be translated as to "restrain" or to "prevent" or to "keep from (something)."
- A special use of "bind" in Matthew 16 and 18 means "forbid" or "not permit."
- The term "bonds" could be translated as "chains" or "ropes" or "shackles."
- Figuratively the term "bond" could be translated as "knot" or "connection" or "close relationship."
- The phrase "bond of peace" means "being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other" or "the tying together that peace brings."
- To "bind up" could be translated as "wrap around" or "put a bandage on."
- To "bind" oneself with a vow could be translated as "promise to fulfill a vow" or "commit to fulfill a vow."
- Depending on the context, the term "bound" could also be translated as "tied" or "tied up" or "chained" or "obligated (to fulfill)" or "required to do."

(See also: fulfill, peace, prison, servant, vow)

Bible References:

- Leviticus 8:7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0247, H0481, H0519, H0615, H0631, H0632, H0640, H1366, H1367, H1379, H2280, H2706, H3256, H3533, H3729, H4147, H4148, H4205, H4562, H5650, H5656, H5659, H6029, H6123, H6616, H6696, H6872, H6887, H7194, H7405, H7573, H7576, H8198, H8244, H8379, G02540, G03310, G03320, G11950, G11960, G11980, G11990, G12100, G13970, G13980, G14010, G14020, G26110, G26150, G37340, G37840, G38140, G40190, G40290, G43850, G48860, G48870, G52650

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 11:36; 13:3)

birthright

Definition:

The term "birthright" in the Bible refers to the honor, family name, and physical wealth that was normally given to the firstborn son in a family.

- The birthright of the firstborn son included a double portion of the father's inheritance.
- A king's firstborn son was normally given the birthright to rule after his father died.
- Esau sold his birthright to his younger brother Jacob. Because of this, Jacob inherited the blessing of the firstborn instead of Esau.
- The birthright also included the honor of having the family descendants traced through the firstborn son's line.

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible ways to translate "birthright" could include, "rights and wealth of the firstborn son" or "family honor" or "privilege and inheritance of the firstborn."

(See also: firstborn, inherit, descendant)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:1
- Genesis 25:34
- Genesis 43:33
- Hebrews 12:14-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1062, G44150

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 12:16)

blameless

Definition:

The term "blameless" literally means "without blame." It is used to refer to a person who obeys God wholeheartedly, but it does not mean that the person is sinless.

- Abraham and Noah were considered blameless before God.
- A person who has a reputation for being "blameless" behaves in a way that honors God.
- According to one verse, a person who is blameless is "one who fears God and turns away from evil."

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as "with no fault to his character" or "completely obedient to God" or "avoiding sin" or "keeping away from evil."

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:10
- 1 Thessalonians 3:11-13
- 2 Peter 3:14
- Colossians 1:22
- Genesis 17:1-2
- Philippians 2:15
- Philippians 3:6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5352, H5355, H8535, G02730, G02740, G02980, G02990, G03380, G04100, G04230

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 8:7; 9:14)

bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:

To "bless" someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people "bless" God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term "bless" is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To "bless" could also be translated as to "provide abundantly for" or to "be very kind and favorable toward."
- "God has brought great blessing to" could be translated as "God has given many good things to" or "God has provided abundantly for" or "God has caused many good things to happen to".
- "He is blessed" could be translated as "he will greatly benefit" or "he will experience good things" or "God will cause him to flourish."
- "Blessed is the person who" could be translated as "How good it is for the person who."
- Expressions like "blessed be the Lord" could be translated as "May the Lord be praised" or "Praise the Lord" or "I praise the Lord."
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as "thanked God for the food" or "praised God for giving them food" or "consecrated the food by praising God for it."

(See also: praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:3
- James 1:25
- Luke 6:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 9:5
- Romans 4:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:7** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **1:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, "Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth."
- **1:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **4:4** "I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you."
- **4:7** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, "May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram."

• **7:3** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
• **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

Word Data:

• Strong's: H0833, H0835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G17570, G21270, G21280, G21290, G31060, G31070, G31080, G60500

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 6:7; 6:14; 7:1; 7:6; 7:7; 11:20; 11:21; 12:17)

blood

Definition:

The term "blood" refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person's skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person's entire body. In the Bible, the term "blood" is often used figuratively to mean "life" and/or several other concepts.

- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal's life to pay for people's sins.
- The expression "flesh and blood" refers to human beings.
- The expression "own flesh and blood" refers to people who are biologically related.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression "flesh and blood" could be translated as "people" or "human beings."
- Depending on the context, the expression "my own flesh and blood" could be translated as "my own family" or "my own relatives" or "my own people."
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate "flesh and blood."

(See also: bloodshed; flesh; life)

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 14:32
- Acts 2:20
- Acts 5:28
- Colossians 1:20
- Galatians 1:16
- Genesis 4:11
- Psalms 16:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:3** Before Joseph's brothers returned home, they tore Joseph's robe and dipped it in goat's **blood**.
- **10:3** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **11:5** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb's **blood**.
- **13:9** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins."
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person's sin, and God's punishment passes over him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1818, H5332, G01290, G01300, G01310

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2:14; 9:7; 9:12; 9:13; 9:14; 9:18; 9:19; 9:20; 9:21; 9:22; 9:25; 10:4; 10:19; 10:29; 11:28; 12:4; 12:24; 13:11; 13:12; 13:20)

boast, boastful

Definition:

The term "boast" means to talk proudly about something or someone. Often it means to brag about oneself.

- Someone who is "boastful" talks about himself in a proud way.
- God rebuked the Israelites for "boasting in" their idols. They arrogantly worshiped false gods instead of the true God.
- The Bible also talks about people boasting in such things as their wealth, their strength, their fruitful fields, and their laws. This means that they were proud about these things and did not acknowledge that God is the one who provided these things.
- God urged the Israelites to instead "boast" or be proud about the fact that they know him.
- The apostle Paul also talks about boasting in the Lord, which means being glad and thankful to God for all he has done for them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "boast" could include "brag" or "talk proudly" or "be proud."
- The term "boastful" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "full of prideful talk" or "prideful" or "talking proudly about oneself."
- In the context of boasting in or about knowing God, this could be translated as "take pride in" or "exalt in" or "be very glad about" or "give thanks to God about."
- Some languages have two words for "pride": one that is negative, with the meaning of being arrogant, and the other that is positive, with the meaning of taking pride in one's work, family, or country.

Translation Suggestions:

(See also: proud)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 20:11
- 2 Timothy 3:1-4
- James 3:14
- James 4:15-17
- Psalms 44:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1984, H3235, H6286, G02120, G02130, G17400, G26200, G27440, G27450, G27460, G31660

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 3:6)

body

Definition:

The term "body" refers to the physical body of a person or animal. This term is also used figuratively to refer to an object or to a group consisting of individual members.

- Often the term "body" refers to a dead person or animal. Sometimes this is referred to as a "dead body" or a "corpse."
- When Jesus said to the disciples at his last Passover meal, "This (bread) is my body," he was referring to his physical body that would be "broken" (killed) to pay for their sins.
- In the Bible, Christians as a group are referred to as the "body of Christ."
- Just as a physical body has many parts, the "body of Christ" has many individual members.
- Each individual believer has a special function in the body of Christ to help the whole group work together to serve God and bring him glory.
- Jesus is also referred to as the "head" (leader) of the "body" of his believers. Just as a person's head tells his body what to do, so Jesus is the one who guides and directs Christians as members of his "body."

Translation Suggestions:

- The best way to translate this term would be with the word that is most commonly used to refer to a physical body in the project language. Make sure that the word used is not an offensive term.
- When referring collectively to believers, for some languages it may be more natural and accurate to say "spiritual body of Christ."
- When Jesus says, "This is my body," it is best to translate this literally, with a note to explain it if needed.
- Some languages may have a separate word when referring to a dead body, such as "corpse" for a person or "carcass" for an animal. Make sure the word used to translate this makes sense in the context and is acceptable.

(See also: head, hand; face; loins; righthand; tongue)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:12
- 1 Corinthians 5:5
- Ephesians 4:4
- Judges 14:8
- Numbers 6:6-8
- Psalm 31:9
- Romans 12:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0990, H1320, H1460, H1465, H1472, H1480, H1655, H3409, H4191, H5038, H5085, H5315, H6106, H6297, H7607, G44300, G49540, G49830, G55590

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 3:17; 10:5; 10:10; 10:22; 13:3; 13:11)

bold, boldness, emboldened

Definition:

These terms all refer to having courage and confidence to speak the truth and do the right thing even when it is difficult or dangerous.

- A "bold" person is not afraid to say and do what is good and right, including defending people who are being mistreated. This could be translated as "courageous" or "fearless."
- In the New Testament, the disciples continued to "boldly" preach about Christ in public places, in spite of the danger of being put in jail or killed. This could be translated as "confidently" or "with strong courage" or "courageously."
- The "boldness" of these early disciples in speaking the good news of Christ's redeeming death on the cross resulted in the gospel being spread throughout Israel and nearby countries and finally, to the rest of the world. "Boldness" could also be translated as "confident courage."

(See also: confidence, good news, redeem)

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:28
- 1 Thessalonians 2:1-2
- 2 Corinthians 3:12-13
- Acts 4:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0982, H5797, G06620, G22920, G36180, G39540, G39550, G51110, G51120

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 4:16)

bread

Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term "loaf" occurs by itself, it means "loaf of bread."
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast. However, bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. This is called "unleavened bread" in the Bible. The ancient Israelites ate "unleavened bread" during the passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: Synecdoche) Many times the term "bread" can be translated more generally as "food."
- The phrase "bread of the presence" refers to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as "bread showing that God lived among them."
- The term "bread from heaven" refers to the special white food called "manna" that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert. Jesus also called himself the "bread that came down from heaven" and the "bread of life."

(See also: Passover, tabernacle, temple, unleavened bread, yeast)

Bible References:

- Acts 2:46
- Acts 27:35
- Exodus 16:15
- Luke 9:13
- Mark 6:38
- Matthew 4:4
- Matthew 11:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G01060, G07400, G42860

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 9:2)

brother

Definition:

The term "brother" refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term "brothers" is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term "brothers" to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term "sister" when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to "a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing."

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when "brothers" is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include "relatives" or "clan members" or "fellow Israelites."
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as "brother in Christ" or "spiritual brother."
- If both males and females are being referred to and "brother" would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be "fellow believers" or "Christian brothers and sisters."
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: apostle, God the Father, sister, spirit)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 3:1
- Philippians 4:21
- Revelation 1:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0251, H0252, H0264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G00800, G00810, G23850, G24550, G25000, G46130, G53600, G55690

burnt offering, offering by fire

Definition:

A "burnt offering" was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an "offering by fire."

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: altar, atonement, ox, priest, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Exodus 40:5-7
- Genesis 8:20
- Genesis 22:1-3
- Leviticus 3:5
- Mark 12:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0801, H5930, H7133, H8548, G36460

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 10:6; 10:8)

Cain

Facts:

Cain and his younger brother Abel were the first sons of Adam and Eve mentioned in the Bible.

- Cain was a farmer who produced food crops while Abel was a sheep herder.
- Cain killed his brother Abel in a fit of jealousy because God had accepted Abel's sacrifice but had not accepted Cain's sacrifice.
- As punishment, God sent him away from Eden and told him that the land would no longer yield crops for him.
- God put a mark on Cain's forehead as a sign that God would protect him from being killed by other people as he wandered.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Adam, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 1 John 3:12
- Genesis 4:2
- Genesis 4:9
- Genesis 4:15
- Hebrews 11:4
- Jude 1:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7014, G25350

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 11:4)

call, call out

Definition:

The terms "call" and "call out" usually mean to speak loudly, but the term "call" can also mean to name or summon a person. There are also some other meanings.

- To "call out" to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, "call" has a meaning of "summon" or "command to come" or "request to come."
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their "calling."
- When God "calls" people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, "His name is called John," means "He is named John" or "His name is John."
- To be "called by the name of" means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, "I have called you by name" means that God has specifically chosen that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "call" could be translated by a word that means "summon," which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression "call out to you" could be translated as "ask you for help" or "pray to you urgently."
- When the Bible says that God has "called" us to be his servants, this could be translated as "specially chose us" or "appointed us" to be his servants.
- "You must call his name" can also be translated as "you must name him."
- "His name is called" could also be translated as "his name is" or "he is named."
- To "call out" could be translated as "say loudly" or "shout" or "say with a loud voice." Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression "your calling" could be translated as "your purpose" or "God's purpose for you" or "God's special work for you."
- To "call on the name of the Lord" could be translated as "seek the Lord and depend on him" or "trust in the Lord and obey him."
- To "call for" something could be translated by "demand" or "ask for" or "command."
- The expression "you are called by my name" could be translated as "I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me."
- When God says, "I have called you by name," this could be translated as "I know you and have chosen you."

(See also: pray, cry)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 1:9
- Ephesians 4:1
- Galatians 1:15
- Matthew 2:15
- Philippians 3:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G01540, G03630, G14580, G15280, G19410, G19510, G20280, G20460, G25640, G28210, G28220, G28400, G29190, G30040, G31060, G33330, G33430, G36030, G36860, G36870, G43160, G43410, G43770, G47790, G48670, G54550, G55370, G55810

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2:11; 3:1; 3:13; 5:4; 9:2; 9:3; 9:15; 11:8; 11:16; 11:24)

cherub

Definition:

The term "cherub," and its plural form "cherubim," refer to a special type of heavenly being that God created. The Bible describes cherubim as having wings and flames.

- The cherubim display the glory and power of God and seem to be guardians of sacred things.
- After Adam and Eve sinned, God placed cherubim with flaming swords at the east side of the Garden of Eden so that people could no longer get to the tree of life.
- God commanded the Israelites to carve two cherubim facing each other, with their wings touching, over the atonement lid of the ark of the covenant.
- He also told them to weave pictures of the cherubim into the curtains of the tabernacle.
- In some passages, these creatures are also described as having four faces: of a man, a lion, an ox, and an eagle.
- Cherubim are sometimes thought of as being angels, but the Bible does not clearly state that.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "cherubim" could be translated as "creatures with wings" or "guardians with wings" or "winged spiritual guardians" or "holy, winged guardians."
- A "cherub" should be translated as the singular of cherubim, as in, "creature with wings" or "winged spiritual guardian," for example.
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of "angel."
- Also consider how this term is translated or written in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: angel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:6
- 1 Kings 6:23-26
- Exodus 25:15-18
- Ezekiel 9:3
- Genesis 3:22-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3742, G55020

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 9:5)

children, child, offspring

Definition:

The term "child" (plural "children") refers to the offspring of a man and woman. The term is often used more generally to refer to anyone who is young in age and is not yet a fully grown adult. The term "offspring" is a general reference to the biological descendants of people or animals.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called "children."
- Often the term "children" is used to refer to a person's descendants.
- Often in the Bible, "offspring" has the same meaning as "children" or "descendants."
- The term "seed" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to offspring.
- The phrase "children of" can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
    ◦ children of the light
    ◦ children of obedience
    ◦ children of the devil
- This term can also refer to the Church. For example, sometimes the New Testament refers to people who believe in Jesus as "children of God."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "children" could be translated as "descendants" when it is referring to a person's great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, "children of" could be translated as "people who have the characteristics of" or "people who behave like."
- If possible, the phrase, "children of God" should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, "people who belong to God" or "God's spiritual children."
- When Jesus calls his disciples "children," this could also be translated as "dear friends" or "my beloved disciples."
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as "children," this could also be translated as "dear fellow believers."
- The phrase, "children of the promise" could be translated as "people who have received what God promised them."

(See also: descendant, seed, promise, son, spirit, believe, beloved)

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:28
- 3 John 1:4
- Galatians 4:19
- Genesis 45:11
- Joshua 8:34-35
- Nehemiah 5:5
- Acts 17:29
- Exodus 13:11-13
- Genesis 24:7
- Isaiah 41:8-9
- Job 5:25
- Luke 3:7
- Matthew 12:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1323, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2138, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3208, H3211, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5209, H5271, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5764, H5768, H5953, H6185, H6363, H6529, H6631, H7908, H7909, H7921, G07300, G08150, G10250, G10640, G10810, G10850, G14710, G34390, G35150, G35160, G38080, G38120, G38130, G38160, G50400, G50410, G50420, G50430, G50440, G52060, G52070, G53880

chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect

Definition:

The term "the elect" literally means "chosen ones" or "chosen people" and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. "Chosen One" or "Chosen One of God" is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term "choose" means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be "chosen" means to be "selected" or "appointed" to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called "the chosen (ones)" or "the elect."
- The term "chosen one" is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God's chosen people.
- The phrase "the elect" is an older term that literally means "the chosen ones" or "the chosen people." This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term "elect" is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for "chosen one(s)." More modern versions use "elect" only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as "chosen ones."

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate "elect" with a word or phrase that means "chosen ones" or "chosen people." This could also be translated as "people whom God chose" or "the ones God appointed to be his people."
- The phrase "who were chosen" could also be translated as "who were appointed" or "who were selected" or "whom God chose."
- "I chose you" could be translated as "I appointed you" or "I selected you."
- In reference to Jesus, "Chosen One" could also be translated as "God's chosen One" or "God's specially appointed Messiah" or "the One God appointed (to save people)."

(See also: appoint, Christ)

Bible References:

- 2 John 1:1
- Colossians 3:12
- Ephesians 1:3-4
- Isaiah 65:22-23
- Luke 18:7
- Matthew 24:19-22
- Romans 8:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0970, H0972, H0977, H1262, H1305, H4005, H6901, G01380, G01400, G15860, G15880, G15890, G19510, G37240, G44000, G44010, G47580, G48990, G55000

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 11:25)

Christ, Messiah

Facts:

The terms "Messiah" and "Christ" mean "Anointed One" and refer to Jesus, God's Son.

- Both "Messiah" and "Christ" are used in the New Testament to refer to God's Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning "anointed (one)" is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word "Christ" is often used as a title, as in "the Christ" and "Christ Jesus."
- "Christ" also came to be used as part of his name, as in "Jesus Christ."

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, "the Anointed One" or "God's Anointed Savior."
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like "Christ" or "Messiah." (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, "Christ, the Anointed One."
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of "Messiah" and "Christ" work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Son of God, David, Jesus, anoint)

Bible References:

- 1 John 5:1-3
- Acts 2:35
- Acts 5:40-42
- John 1:40-42
- John 3:27-28
- John 4:25
- Luke 2:10-12
- Matthew 1:16

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:7** The **Messiah** was God's Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **17:8** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.
- **21:1** From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- **21:4** God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David's own descendants.
- **21:5** The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- **21:6** God's prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.

- **21:9** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- **43:7** "But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave.'"
- **43:9** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah**!"
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins."
- **46:6** Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4899, G33230, G55470

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 3:6; 3:14; 5:5; 6:1; 9:11; 9:14; 9:24; 9:28; 10:10; 11:26; 13:8; 13:21)

church, Church

Definition:

In the New Testament, the term "church" refers to all people who believe in Jesus. Sometimes "church" refers to a part of that larger group who regularly met together in a certain place, such as the "church at Ephesus."

- This term literally refers to an assembly or congregation of people who were "called out" of the general population to meet together for a special purpose.
- Often the believers in a particular city would meet together in someone's home to pray together and to hear and discuss scripture. These local churches were given the name of the city such as the "church at Ephesus."
- In the Bible, "church" does not refer to a building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "church" could be translated as a "gathering together" or "assembly" or "congregation" or "ones who meet together."
- The word or phrase that is used to translate this term should also be able to refer to all believers, not just one small group.
- Make sure that the translation of "church" does not just refer to a building.
- The term used to translate "assembly" in the Old Testament could also be used to translate this term.
- Also consider how it is translated in a local or national Bible translation. (See: How to Translate Unknowns.)

(See also: assembly, believe, Christian)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:12
- 1 Thessalonians 2:14
- 1 Timothy 3:5
- Acts 9:31
- Acts 14:23
- Acts 15:41
- Colossians 4:15
- Ephesians 5:23
- Matthew 16:18
- Philippians 4:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **43:12** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were baptized and became part of the **church** at Jerusalem.
- **46:9** Most of the people in Antioch were not Jews, but for the first time, very many of them also became believers. Barnabas and Saul went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the **church**.
- **46:10** So the **church** in Antioch prayed for Barnabas and Saul and placed their hands on them. Then they sent them off to preach the good news of Jesus in many other places.
- **47:13** The good news of Jesus kept spreading, and the **Church** kept growing.
- **50:1** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the good news about Jesus the Messiah. The **Church** has been growing.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G15770

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 12:23)

citizen, citizenship

Definition:

A citizen is someone who lives in a specific city, country, or kingdom. It especially refers to someone who is recognized officially as being a legal resident of that place.

- Depending on the context, this could also be translated as "inhabitant" or "official resident."
- A citizen could live in a region that is part of a larger kingdom or empire that is governed by a king, emperor, or other ruler. For example, Paul was a citizen of the Roman Empire, which consisted of many different provinces; Paul lived in one of those provinces.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Jesus are called "citizens" of heaven in the sense that they will live there someday. Like a citizen of a country, Christians belong to God's kingdom.

(See: kingdom, Paul, province, Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 21:39-40
- Isaiah 3:3
- Luke 15:15
- Luke 19:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6440, G41750, G41770, G48470

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 8:11)

clean, wash

Definition:

The term "clean" generally refers either to removing dirt or stains from someone/something or to not having any dirt or stain in the first place. The term "wash" refers specifically to action of removing dirt or stains from someone/something.

- "Cleanse" is the process of making something "clean." It could also be translated as "wash" or "purify."
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually "clean" and which ones were "unclean." Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term "clean" means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared "clean" again.
- Sometimes "clean" is used figuratively to refer to moral purity, meaning to be "clean" from sin.

In the Bible, the term "unclean" is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were "clean" and which ones were "unclean." The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be "unclean" until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something "unclean," they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God's commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God's service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an "unclean spirit" refers to an evil spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for "clean" or "pure" (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, "ritually clean" or "acceptable to God."
- "Cleanse" could be translated by "wash" or "purify."
- Make sure that the words used for "clean" and "cleanse" can also be understood in a figurative sense.
- The term "unclean" could also be translated as "not clean" or "unfit in God's eyes" or "physically unclean" or "defiled."
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, "unclean" could be translated as "evil" or "defiled."
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: defile, demon, holy, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Genesis 7:2
- Genesis 7:8
- Deuteronomy 12:15
- Psalms 51:7
- Proverbs 20:30
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Matthew 23:27

- Luke 5:13
- Acts 8:7
- Acts 10:27-29
- Colossians 3:5
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- James 4:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2548, H2834, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3001, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6172, H6565, H6663, H6945, H7137, H8552, H8562, G01670, G01690, G25110, G25120, G25130, G28390, G28400, G33940, G36890

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:3; 9:14; 9:22; 9:23; 10:2)

clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments

Definition:

When used figuratively in the Bible, "clothed with" means to be endowed or equipped with something. To "clothe" oneself with something means to seek to have a certain character quality.

- In the same way that clothing is external to your body and is visible to all, when you are "clothed" with a certain character quality, others can readily see it. To "clothe yourself with kindness" means to let your actions be so characterized by kindness that it is easily seen by everyone.
- To be "clothed with power from on high" means to have power given to you.
- This term is also used to express negative experiences, such as "clothed with shame" or "clothed with terror."

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the literal figure of speech, "clothe yourselves with." Another way to translate this could be "put on" if this refers to putting on clothes.
- If that does not give the correct meaning, other ways to translate "clothed with" could be "showing" or "manifesting" or "filled with" or "having the quality of."
- The term "clothe yourself with" could also be translated as "cover yourself with" or "behave in a way that shows."

Bible References:

- Luke 24:49

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0899, H3680, H3736, H3830, H3847, H3848, H4055, H4374, H5497, H8008, H8071, H8516, G02940, G14630, G15620, G17370, G17420, G17460, G19020, G20660, G22240, G24390, G24400, G40160, G47490, G55090

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:11; 1:12)

command, commandment

Definition:

The term "command" means to order someone to do something. The term "commandment" refers to the thing that a person is commanded to do.

- The term "commandment" sometimes refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the "Ten Commandments."
- A command can be positive ("Honor your parents") or negative ("Do not steal").
- To "take command" means to "take control" or "take charge" of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, "law." Also compare with the definitions of "decree" and "statute."
- Some translators may prefer to translate "command" and "commandment" with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See decree, statute, law, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Luke 1:6
- Matthew 1:24
- Matthew 22:38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 1:17-19
- Romans 7:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H0560, H0565, H1296, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2941, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4662, H4687, H4929, H4931, H4941, H5057, H5713, H5749, H6213, H6310, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7761, H7970, H8269, G12630, G12910, G12960, G12970, G12990, G16900, G17780, G17810, G17850, G20030, G20040, G20080, G20360, G27530, G30560, G37260, G38520, G38530, G43670, G44830, G44870, G55060

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 7:5; 7:16; 7:18; 9:19; 9:20; 11:3; 11:23; 12:20)

companion, fellow worker, friend

Facts:

The term "companion" refers to a person who goes with someone else or who is associated with someone else, such as in a friendship or marriage. The term "fellow worker" refers to someone who works with another person.

- Companions go through experiences together, share meals together, and support and encourage each other.
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated with a word or phrase that means, "friend" or "fellow traveler" or "supporting-person who goes with" or "person who works with."

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 37:16
- Hebrews 1:9
- Proverbs 2:17
- Psalms 38:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0251, H0441, H2269, H2270, H2273, H2278, H3674, H3675, H4828, H7453, H7462, H7464, G28440, G33530, G48980, G49040

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:9)

compassion, compassionate

Definition:

The term "compassion" refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A "compassionate" person cares about other people and helps them.

- The word "compassion" refers to caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
- The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways of translating "compassion" could include, "deep caring" or "pity" or "helpful mercy."
- The term "compassionate" could also be translated as "caring and helpful" or "deeply loving and merciful."

Bible References:

- Daniel 1:8-10
- Hosea 13:14
- James 5:9-11
- Jonah 4:1-3
- Mark 1:41
- Romans 9:14-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2550, H7349, H7355, H7356, G16530, G33560, G36270, G46970, G48340, G48350

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 10:34)

conceive, conception

Definition:

The terms "conceive" and "conception" usually refer to becoming pregnant with a child. It can also be used for animals that become pregnant.

- The phrase "conceive a child" could be translated as "become pregnant" or some other term that is an acceptable way of referring to this.
- The related term "conception" could be translated as "beginning of a pregnancy" or "moment of becoming pregnant."
- These terms can also refer to creating something or thinking of something, such as an idea, a plan, or a task. Ways to translate this could include, "think of" or "plan" or "create," depending on the context.
- Sometimes this term can be used figuratively as in, "when sin is conceived" which means "when sin is first thought of" or "at the very start of a sin" or "when a sin first begins."

(See also: create, womb)

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:1-4
- Hosea 2:4-5
- Job 15:35
- Luke 1:24-25
- Luke 2:21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2029, H2030, H2032, H2232, H2254, H2803, H3179, G10800, G17220, G28450, G48150

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 11:11)

condemn, condemned, condemnation

Definition:

The terms "condemn" and "condemnation" refer to judging someone for doing something wrong.

- Often the word "condemn" includes punishing that person for what they did wrong.
- Sometimes "condemn" means to falsely accuse someone or to judge someone harshly.
- The term "condemnation" refers to the act of condemning or accusing someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as "harshly judge" or "criticize falsely."
- The phrase "condemn him" could be translated as "judge that he is guilty" or "state that he must be punished for his sin."
- The term "condemnation" could be translated as "harsh judging" or "declaring to be guilty" or "punishment of guilt."

(See also: judge, punish)

Bible References:

- 1 John 3:20
- Job 9:29
- John 5:24
- Luke 6:37
- Matthew 12:7
- Proverbs 17:15-16
- Psalms 34:22
- Romans 5:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6064, H7034, H7561, H8199, G01760, G08430, G26070, G26130, G26310, G26320, G26330, G29170, G29190, G29200, G52720, G60480

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 11:7)

confess, confession

Definition:

To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A "confession" is a statement or admission that something is true.

- The term "confess" can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
- The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
- James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
- Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "confess" could include, "admit" or "testify" or "declare" or "acknowledge" or "affirm."
- Different ways to translate "confession" could be, "declaration" or "testimony" or "statement about what we believe" or "admitting sin."

(See also: faith, testimony)

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:8-10
- 2 John 1:7-8
- James 5:16
- Leviticus 5:5-6
- Matthew 3:4-6
- Nehemiah 1:6-7
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Psalms 38:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3034, H8426, G18430, G36700, G36710

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 3:1; 4:14; 10:23; 11:13; 13:15)

confidence, confident

Definition:

The term "confidence" refers to being sure that something is true or certain to happen.

- In the Bible, the term "hope" often means to wait expectantly for something that is sure to happen. The ULT often translates this as "confidence" or "confidence for the future" or "future confidence" especially when it means to be assured of receiving what God has promised to believers in Jesus.
- Often the term "confidence" refers especially to the certainty that believers in Jesus have that they will someday be with God forever in heaven.
- The phrase, "have confidence in God" means to fully expect to receive and experience what God has promised.
- Being "confident" means believing in God's promises and acting with the assurance that God will do what he has said. This term can also have the meaning of acting boldly and courageously.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "confident" could be translated as "assured" or "very sure."
- The phrase "be confident" could also be translated as "trust completely" or "be completely sure about" or "know for certain."
- The term "confidently" could also be translated as "boldly" or "with certainty."
- Depending on the context, ways to translate "confidence" could include, "complete assurance" or "sure expectation" or "certainty."

(See also: believe, believe, bold, faithful, hope, trust)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0982, H0983, H0986, H3689, H3690, H4009, G22920, G39540, G39820, G40060, G52870

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 3:6; 3:14; 6:9; 10:19; 10:35; 13:6; 13:18)

confirm, confirmation, legal

Definition:

The term "confirm" refers to verifying that something is true or legally certifying that a transaction has occurred.

- When a king is "confirmed" it means that the decision to make him king has been agreed upon and supported by the people.
- To confirm what someone wrote means to verify that what was written is true.
- The "confirmation" of the gospel means teaching people about the good news of Jesus in such a way that it shows that it is true.
- To give an oath "as confirmation" means to solemnly state or swear that something is true or trustworthy.
- Ways to translate "confirm" could include, "state as true" or "prove to be trustworthy" or "agree with" or "assure" or "promise," depending on the context.

(See also: covenant, oath, trust)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:15-18
- 2 Corinthians 1:21
- 2 Kings 23:3
- Hebrews 6:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H1396, H3045, H3559, H4390, H4672, H5414, H5975, H6213, H6965, G09500, G09510, G33150, G49720

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2:3; 13:9)

conscience

Definition:

The conscience is the part of a person's thinking through which God makes him aware that he is doing something sinful.

- God gave people a conscience to help them know the difference between what is right and what is wrong.
- A person who obeys God is said to have a "pure" or "clear" or "clean" conscience.
- If a person has a "clear conscience" it means that he is not hiding any sin.
- If someone ignores their conscience and no longer feels guilty when he sins, this means his conscience is no longer sensitive to what is wrong. The Bible calls this a "seared" conscience, one that is "branded" as if with a hot iron. Such a conscience is also called "insensitive" and "polluted."
- Possible ways to translate this term could include, "inner moral guide" or "moral thinking."

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:19
- 1 Timothy 3:9
- 2 Corinthians 5:11
- 2 Timothy 1:3
- Romans 9:1
- Titus 1:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: G48930

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 9:9; 9:14; 10:2; 10:22; 13:18)

consume, devour

Definition:

The term "consume" literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

- In the Bible, the word "consume" often refers to destroying things or people.
- A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
- God is described as a "consuming fire," which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
- To consume food means to eat or drink something.
- The phrase, "consume the land" could be translated as "destroy the land."

Translation Suggestions

- In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as "destroy."
- When fire is referred to, "consume" could be translated as "burn up."
- The burning bush that Moses saw "was not consumed" which could be translated as "did not get burned up" or "did not burn up."
- When referring to eating, "consume" could be translated as "eat" or "devour."
- If someone's strength is "consumed," it means his strength is "used up" or "gone."
- The expression, "God is a consuming fire" could be translated as "God is like a fire that burns things up" or "God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire."

(See also: devour, wrath)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:38-40
- Deuteronomy 7:16
- Jeremiah 3:23-25
- Job 7:9
- Numbers 11:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0398, H0402, H1086, H1104, H1197, H2628, H3615, H3617, H3857, H4529, H5595, H8046, H8552, G03550, G26180, G26540, G27190, G53150

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 12:29)

courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, discouragement

Facts:

The term "courage" refers to boldly facing or doing something that is difficult, frightening, or dangerous.

- The term, "courageous" describes someone who shows courage, who does the right thing even when feeling afraid or pressured to give up.
- A person shows courage when he faces emotional or physical pain with strength and perseverance.
- The expression "take courage" means "don't be afraid" or "be assured that things will turn out well."
- When Joshua was preparing to go into the dangerous land of Canaan, Moses exhorted him to be "strong and courageous."
- The term "courageous" could also be translated as "brave" or "unafraid" or "bold."
- Depending on the context, to "have courage" could also be translated as "be emotionally strong" or "be confident" or "stand firm."
- To "speak with courage" could be translated as "speak boldly" or "speak without being afraid" or "speak confidently."

The terms "encourage" and "encouragement" refer to saying and doing things to cause someone to have comfort, hope, confidence, and courage.

- A similar term is "exhort," which means to urge someone to reject an activity that is wrong and to instead do things that are good and right.
- The apostle Paul and other New Testament writers taught Christians to encourage one another to love and serve others.

The term "discourage" refers to saying and doing things that cause people to lose hope, confidence, and courage and so to have less desire to keep working hard to do what they know they should do.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "encourage" could include "urge" or "comfort" or "say kind things" or "help and support."
- The phrase "give words of encouragement" means "say things that cause other people to feel loved, accepted, and empowered."

(See also: confidence, exhort, fear, strength)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 1:37-38
- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 1 Chronicles 17:25
- Matthew 9:20-22
- 1 Corinthians 14:1-4
- 2 Corinthians 7:13
- Acts 5:12-13
- Acts 16:40
- Hebrews 3:12-13
- Hebrews 13:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0533, H0553, H1368, H2388, H2388, H2428, H3820, H3824, H7307, G21140, G21150, G21740, G22920, G22930, G22940, G38700, G38740, G39540, G43890, G48370, G51110

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 3:13; 6:18; 10:25)

covenant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "covenant" refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term "new covenant" refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God's "new covenant" was explained in the part of the Bible called the "New Testament."
- This new covenant is in contrast to the "old" or "former" covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people's sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "binding agreement" or "formal commitment" or "pledge" or "contract."
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as "promise" or "pledge."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term "new covenant" could be translated as "new formal agreement" or "new pact" or "new contract."
- The word "new" in these expressions has the meaning of "fresh" or "new kind of" or "another."

(See also: covenant, promise)

Bible References:

- Genesis 9:12
- Genesis 17:7
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26

• 2 Samuel 23:5
• 2 Kings 18:11-12
• Mark 14:24
• Luke 1:73
• Luke 22:20
• Acts 7:8
• 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
• 2 Corinthians 3:6
• Galatians 3:17-18
• Hebrews 12:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

• **4:9** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
• **5:4** "I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac."
• **6:4** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
• **7:10** "The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
• **13:2** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
• **13:4** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
• **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
• **21:5** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
• **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
• **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it."
• **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

Word Data:

• Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G08020, G12420, G49340

cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

Definition:

The terms "cow," "bull," "heifer," "ox," and "cattle" all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a "cow," the male is a "bull," and their offspring is a "calf."
- In the Bible, cattle were among the "clean" animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A "heifer" is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An "ox" is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is "oxen." Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to "be under a yoke" became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: yoke)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:9-11
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 1:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:3
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Kings 1:9
- 2 Chronicles 11:15
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- Matthew 22:4
- Luke 13:15
- Luke 14:5
- Hebrews 9:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H0441, H0504, H0929, H1165, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H6499, H6510, H6629, H7214, H7716, H7794, H7921, H8377, H8450, G10160, G11510, G23530, G29340, G34470, G34480, G41650, G50220

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 9:12; 9:19)

create, created, creation, creator

Definition:

The term "create" means to make something or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a "creation." God is called the "Creator" because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

- When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
- When human beings "create" something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
- Sometimes "create" is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace, or creating a pure heart in someone.
- The term "creation" can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word "creation" refers more specifically to just the people in the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world "out of nothing" to make sure this meaning is clear.
- The phrase, "since the creation of the world" means "since the time when God created the world."
- A similar phrase, "at the beginning of creation" could be translated as "when God created the world at the beginning of time," or "when the world was first created."
- To preach the good news to "all creation" means to preach the good news to "all people everywhere on earth."
- The phrase "Let all creation rejoice" means "Let everything that God created rejoice."
- Depending on the context, "create" could be translated as "make" or "cause to be" or "make out of nothing."
- The term "the Creator" could be translated as "the One who created everything" or "God, who made the whole world."
- Phrases like "your Creator" could be translated as "God, who created you."

(See also: God, good news, world)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 11:9-10
- 1 Peter 4:17-19
- Colossians 1:15
- Galatians 6:15
- Genesis 1:1
- Genesis 14:19-20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3335, H4639, H6213, H6385, H7069, G20410, G26020, G26750, G29360, G29370, G29390, G41600, G54800

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 4:3; 9:11; 9:26)

creature, creation

Definition:

The term "creature" refers to all the living beings that God created, both humans and animals.

- The prophet Ezekiel described seeing "living creatures" in his vision of the glory of God. He did not know what they were, so he gave them this very general label.
- Note that the term "creation" has a different meaning since it includes everything God created, both living and nonliving things (such as land, water, and stars). The term "creature" only includes living things.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, "creature" could be translated as "being" or "living being" or "created being."
- The plural, "creatures" could be translated as "all living things" or "people and animals" or "animals" or "human beings."

(See also: create)

Bible References:

- Daniel 4:10-12
- Ezekiel 1:9
- Joshua 10:28
- Leviticus 11:46-47
- Revelation 19:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1320, H1321, H1870, H2119, H2416, H4639, H5315, H5971, H7430, H8318, G22260, G29370, G29380

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 4:13)

cross

Definition:

In Bible times, a cross was an upright wooden post stuck into the ground, with a horizontal wooden beam attached to it near the top.

- During the time of the Roman Empire, the Roman government would execute criminals by tying or nailing them to a cross and leaving them there to die.
- Jesus was falsely accused of crimes he did not commit and the Romans put him to death on a cross.
- Note that this is a completely different word from the verb "cross" that means to go over to the other side of something, such as a river or lake.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using a term in the target language that refers to the shape of a cross.
- Consider describing the cross as something on which people were killed, using phrases such as "execution post" or "tree of death."
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: crucify, Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 1:17
- Colossians 2:15
- Galatians 6:12
- John 19:18
- Luke 9:23
- Luke 23:26
- Matthew 10:38
- Philippians 2:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **40:1** After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to crucify him. They made him carry the **cross** on which he would die.
- **40:2** The soldiers brought Jesus to a place called "the Skull" and nailed his arms and feet to the **cross**.
- **40:5** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd mocked Jesus. They said to him, "If you are the Son of God, come down from the **cross** and save yourself! Then we will believe you."
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the **cross**, he received your punishment.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the **cross** instead of you, and that God raised him to life again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G47160

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 12:2)

crown, crowned

Definition:

A crown is a decorative, circular headpiece worn on the head of rulers such as kings and queens. The term to "crown" means to put a crown on someone's head; figuratively it means, to "honor."

- Crowns are usually made of gold or silver, and are embedded with precious gems such as emeralds and rubies.
- A crown was intended to be a symbol of a king's power and wealth.
- By contrast, the crown made of thorn branches that the Roman soldiers placed on Jesus' head was meant to mock him and hurt him.
- In ancient times, winners of athletic contests would be awarded a crown made out of olive branches. The apostle Paul mentions this crown in his second letter to Timothy.
- Used figuratively, to "crown" means to honor someone. We honor God by obeying him and praising him to others. This is like putting a crown on him and acknowledging that he is King.
- Pauls calls fellow believers his "joy and crown." In this expression, "crown" is used figuratively to mean that Paul has been greatly blessed and honored by how these believers have remained faithful in serving God.
- When used figuratively, "crown" could be translated as "prize" or "honor" or "reward."
- The figurative use of to "crown" could be translated as to "honor" or to "decorate."
- If a person is "crowned" this could be translated as "a crown was put on his head."
- The expression, "he was crowned with glory and honor" could be translated as "glory and honor were bestowed on him" or "he was given glory and honor" or "he was endowed with glory and honor."

(See also: glory, king, olive)

Bible References:

- John 19:3
- Lamentations 5:16
- Matthew 27:29
- Philippians 4:1
- Psalms 21:3
- Revelation 3:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3803, H3804, H5145, H5849, H5850, H6936, G12380, G47350, G47370

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2:7; 2:9)

crucify, crucified

Definition:

The term "crucify" means to execute someone by attaching him to a cross and leaving him there to suffer and die in great pain.

- The victim was either tied to the cross or nailed to it. Crucified people died from blood loss or from suffocation.
- The ancient Roman Empire frequently used this method of execution to punish and kill people who were terrible criminals or who had rebelled against the authority of their government.
- The Jewish religious leaders asked the Roman governor to order his soldiers to crucify Jesus. The soldiers nailed Jesus to a cross. He suffered there for six hours, and then died.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "crucify" could be translated as "kill on a cross" or "execute by nailing to a cross."

(See also: cross, Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 2:23
- Galatians 2:20-21
- Luke 23:20-22
- Luke 23:34
- Matthew 20:17-19
- Matthew 27:23-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:11** But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, "**Crucify** him (Jesus)!"
- **39:12** Pilate became afraid that the crowd would begin to riot, so he ordered his soldiers to **crucify** Jesus.played a major role in the crucifixion of Jesus Christ.
- **40:1** After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to **crucify** him. They made him carry the cross on which he would die.
- **40:4** Jesus was **crucified** between two robbers.
- **43:6** "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know. But you **crucified** him!"
- **43:9** "You **crucified** this man, Jesus."
- **44:8** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You **crucified** Jesus, but God raised him to life again!"

Word Data:

- Strong's: G03880, G43620, G47170, G49570

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 6:6)

cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy

Definition:

The terms "heal" and "cure" both mean to cause a sick, wounded, or disabled person to be healthy again.

- A person who is "healed" or "cured" has been "made well" or "made healthy."
- Healing can happen naturally since God gave our bodies the ability to recover from many kinds of wounds and diseases. Thsi kind of healing usually happens slowly.
- However, certain conditions, such as being blind or paralyzed, and certain serious diseases, such as leprosy, however do not heal on their own. When people are healed of these things, it is a miracle that usually happens suddenly.
- For example, Jesus healed many people who were blind or lame or diseased, and they became well right away.
- The apostles also healed people miraculously, such as when Peter caused a crippled man to immediately be able to walk.

(See also: miracle)

Bible References:

- Acts 5:16
- Acts 8:6
- Luke 5:13
- Luke 6:19
- Luke 8:43
- Matthew 4:23-25
- Matthew 9:35
- Matthew 13:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:14** One of the miracles happened to Naaman, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease. He had heard of Elisha so he went and asked Elisha to **heal** him.
- **21:10** He (Isaiah) also predicted that the Messiah would **heal** sick people and those who could not hear, see, speak, or walk.
- **26:6** Jesus continued saying, "And during the time of the prophet Elisha, there were many people in Israel with skin diseases. But Elisha did not **heal** any of them. He only **healed** the skin disease of Naaman, a commander of Israel's enemies."
- **26:8** They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and Jesus **healed** them.
- **32:14** She had heard that Jesus had **healed** many sick people and thought, "I'm sure that if I can just touch Jesus' clothes, then I will be **healed**, too!"
- **44:3** Immediately, God **healed** the lame man, and he began to walk and jump around, and to praise God.
- **44:8** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you **healed** by the power of Jesus the Messiah."
- **49:2** Jesus did many miracles that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, **healed** many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0724, H1369, H1455, H2280, H2421, H2896, H3545, H4832, H4974, H7495, H7499, H7500, H7725, H7965, H8549, H8585, H8644, H0622, G12950, G17430, G23220, G23230, G23860, G23900, G23920, G25110, G36470, G49820, G51980, G51990

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 12:13)

curse, cursed, cursing

Definition:

The term "curse" means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as "cause bad things to happen to" or "declare that something bad will happen to" or "swear to cause evil things to happen to."
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as "punish by allowing bad things to happen."
- The term "cursed" when used to describe people could be translated as "(this person) will experience much trouble."
- The phrase "cursed be" could be translated as "May (this person) experience great difficulties."
- The phrase, "Cursed is the ground" could be translated as "The soil will not be very fertile."
- However, if the target language has the phrase "cursed be" and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: bless)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 2:12-14
- Galatians 3:10
- Galatians 3:14
- Genesis 3:14
- Genesis 3:17
- James 3:10
- Numbers 22:6
- Psalms 109:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:9** God said to the snake, "You are **cursed**!"
- **2:11** "Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food."
- **4:4** "I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you."
- **39:7** Then Peter vowed, saying, "May God **curse** me if I know this man!"
- **50:16** Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0422, H0423, H0779, H1288, H2763, H2764, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, H8381, G03310, G03320, G06850, G19440, G25510, G26520, G26530, G26710, G26720, G60350

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 6:8)

curtain

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "curtain" refers to a very thick, heavy piece of material used in the making of the tabernacle and the temple.

- The tabernacle was built using four layers of curtains for the top and sides. These curtain coverings were made of cloth or animal skins.
- Cloth curtains were also used to form a wall surrounding the tabernacle courtyard. These curtains were made out of "linen" which was a kind of cloth made out of the flax plant.
- In both the tabernacle and temple building, a thick cloth curtain hung between the holy place and the most holy place. It was this curtain that was miraculously torn into two parts when Jesus died.

Translation Suggestions:

- Since modern-day curtains are very different from the curtains used in the Bible, it may be more clear to use a different word or to add words that describe the curtains.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "curtain covering" or "covering" or "piece of thick cloth" or "animal skin covering" or "hanging piece of cloth."

(See also: holy place, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- Hebrews 10:20
- Leviticus 4:17
- Luke 23:45
- Matthew 27:51
- Numbers 4:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1852, H3407, H4539, H6532, H7050, G26650

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 6:19; 9:3; 10:20)

darkness

Definition:

The term "darkness" literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, "darkness" means "impurity" or "evil" or "spiritual blindness."
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression "dominion of darkness" refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term "darkness" can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: Metaphor)
- People who do not know God are said to be "living in darkness," which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as "outer darkness."

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, "darkness of night" (as opposed to "light of day") or "not seeing anything, like at night" or "evil, like a dark place".

(See also: corrupt, dominion, kingdom, light, redeem, righteous)

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:6
- 1 John 2:8
- 1 Thessalonians 5:5
- 2 Samuel 22:12
- Colossians 1:13
- Isaiah 5:30
- Jeremiah 13:16
- Joshua 24:7
- Matthew 8:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0652, H0653, H2816, H2821, H2822, H2825, H3990, H3991, H4285, H5890, H6205, G22170, G46520, G46530, G46550, G46560

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 12:18)

David

Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Goliath, Philistines, Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:34
- 2 Samuel 5:2
- 2 Timothy 2:8
- Acts 2:25
- Acts 13:22
- Luke 1:32
- Mark 2:26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:2** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. … **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **17:3 David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- **17:4** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul.
- **17:5** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- **17:6 David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **17:9 David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was. **David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1732, G11380

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 4:7; 11:32)

day

Definition:

The term "day" generally refers to the time it takes for the alternating periods of light and darkness in the sky to complete one cycle (that is, 24 hours). However, in the Bible the same term is often used to refer to a shorter period of time (such as the time between sunrise and sunset) or a longer period of time that is often not specified.

- "Day" is sometimes used in contrast to "night." In these cases, the term refers to the period of time when the sky is light.
- The term may also refer to a specific point in time, such as "today."
- Sometimes the term "day" is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the "day of Yahweh" or "last days." Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate "day" non-figuratively.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally as "day" or "daytime" using the word in your language that refers to the part of the day when there is light.
- Other translations of "day" could include "daytime," "time," "season," "occasion" or "event," depending on the context.

(See also: time, judgment day, last day)

Bible References:

- Acts 20:6
- Daniel 10:4
- Ezra 6:15
- Ezra 6:19
- Matthew 9:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H3118, H6242, G22500

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:2; Notes; 3:8; 3:13; 4:4; 4:7; 4:8; 5:7; 7:3; 7:27; 8:8; 8:9; 8:10; 10:11; 10:16; 10:25; 10:32; 11:30; 12:10)

deceive, lie, deception, illusions

Definition:

The term "deceive" means to cause someone to believe something that is not true, often by telling a "lie." The act of deceiving someone is called "lying," "deceit," or "deception."

- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a "deceiver." For example, Satan is called a "deceiver." The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- To "lie" is to say something that is not true.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as "deceptive."
- The terms "deceit" and "deception" have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms "deceitful" and "deceptive" have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "deceive" could include "lie to" or "cause to have a false belief" or "cause someone to think something that is not true."
- The term "deceived" could also be translated as "caused to think something false" or "lied to" or "tricked" or "fooled" or "misled."
- "Deceiver" could be translated as "liar" or "one who misleads" or "someone who deceives."
- Depending on the context, the terms "deception" or "deceit" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "falsehood" or "lying" or "trickery" or "dishonesty."
- The terms "deceptive" or "deceitful" could be translated as "untruthful" or "misleading" or "lying" to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: true)

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:8
- 1 Timothy 2:14
- 2 Thessalonians 2:3-4
- Genesis 3:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:64
- Micah 6:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G05380, G05390, G13860, G13870, G13880, G18180, G38840, G41050, G41060, G41080, G54220, G54230

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 3:13)

declare, proclaim, announce

Definition:

The terms "declare" and "declaration" refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. Other terms with similar meaning include "proclaim," "proclamation," "announce," and "announcement."

- A "declaration" not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by "the declaration of Yahweh" or "this is what Yahweh declares." This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "declare" could also be translated as "proclaim" or "publicly state" or "strongly say" or "emphatically state."
- The term "declaration" could also be translated as "statement" or "proclamation."
- The phrase "this is Yahweh's declaration" could be translated as "this is what Yahweh declares" or "this is what Yahweh says."

(See also: preach, decree)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:24
- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- Amos 2:16
- Ezekiel 5:11-12
- Matthew 7:21-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0262, H0559, H0816, H0874, H1696, H3045, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H7121, H7561, H7878, H8085, G03120, G05180, G06690, G12290, G13440, G15550, G17180, G18340, G20970, G25110, G26050, G26070, G31400, G36700, G37240, G38220, G38700, G39550, G42960

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2:12)

dedicate, dedication, established, devoted

Definition:

To dedicate is to set apart or commit something for a special purpose or function.

- David dedicated his gold and silver to the Lord.
- Often the word "dedication" refers to a formal event or ceremony to set apart something for a special purpose.
- The dedication of the altar included offering a sacrifice to God.
- Nehemiah led the Israelites in a dedication of Jerusalem's repaired walls with a renewed promise to serve only Yahweh and to take care of his city. This event included giving thanks to God with musical instruments and singing.
- The term "dedicate" could also be translated as "specially assign a special purpose" or "commit something to be used for a specific use" or "commit someone to do a special task."

(See also: commit)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:11-12
- 1 Corinthians 6:9-11
- 1 Kings 7:51
- 1 Timothy 4:5
- 2 Chronicles 2:4-5
- John 17:18-19
- Luke 2:22-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2596, H2597, H2598, H2764, H4394, H6942, H6944, G14560, G14570

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 9:18; 10:20)

defile, defiled, desecrate

Definition:

The terms "defile" and "be defiled" refer to becoming polluted or dirty. Something can be defiled in a physical, moral, or ritual sense.

- God warned the Israelites to not defile themselves by eating or touching things that he had declared as "unclean" and "unholy."
- Certain things such as dead bodies and contagious diseases were declared by God to be unclean and would defile a person if they touched them.
- God commanded the Israelites to avoid sexual sins. These would defile them and make them unacceptable to God.
- There were also certain kinds of bodily processes that defiled a person temporarily until he could become ritually pure again.
- In the New Testament, Jesus taught that sinful thoughts and actions are what truly defile a person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "defile" can also be translated as "cause to be unclean" or "cause to be unrighteous" or "cause to be ritually unacceptable."
- To "be defiled" could be translated as "become unclean" or "be caused to be morally unacceptable (to God)" or "become ritually unacceptable."

(See also: profane, clean)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:8
- Exodus 20:24-26
- Genesis 34:27
- Genesis 49:4
- Isaiah 43:27-28
- Leviticus 11:43-45
- Mark 7:14-16
- Matthew 15:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1351, H1352, H1602, H2490, H2491, H2610, H2930, H2931, G28390, G28400, G33920, G34350

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 12:15)

delight

Definition:

The term "delight" means great pleasure or great joy.

- To "delight in" something means to "to take pleasure in" or "take joy in" or "be happy about" it. If a person "delights in" something, it means that he enjoys it very much.
- When something is very agreeable or pleasing it is called "delightful."
- The expression "my delight is in the law of Yahweh" could be translated as "the law of Yahweh gives me great joy" or "I love to obey the laws of Yahweh" or "I am happy when I obey Yahweh's commands."
- The phrases "take no delight in" and "have no delight in" could be translated as "not at all pleased by" or "not happy about."
- The phrase "delight himself in" means "he enjoys doing" something or "he is very happy about" something or someone.
- The term "delights" refers to things that a person enjoys. This could be translated as "pleasures" or "things that give joy."
- An expression such as "I delight to do your will" could also be translated as "I enjoy doing your will" or "I am very happy when I obey you."

Bible References:

- Proverbs 8:30
- Psalm 1:2
- Psalms 119:69-70
- Song of Songs 1:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H2530, H2531, H2532, H2654, H2655, H2656, H2836, H4574, H5276, H5727, H5730, H6026, H6027, H7306, H7381, H7521, H7522, H8057, H8173, H8191, H8588, H8597

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 10:6; 10:8; 10:38)

descend, descendant

Definition:

A "descendant" is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person's descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob's descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase "descended from" is another way of saying "a descendant of" as in "Abraham was descended from Noah." This could also be translated as "from the family line of."

(See also: Abraham, ancestor, Jacob, Noah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:4-5
- Acts 13:23
- Deuteronomy 2:20-22
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 28:12-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:9** "The woman's **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel."
- **4:9** "I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**."
- **5:10** "Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky."
- **17:7** "Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants**!"
- **18:13** The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David.
- **21:4** God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David's own **descendants**.
- **48:13** God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0319, H1004, H1121, H1323, H1755, H2232, H2233, H3205, H3211, H3318, H3409, H4294, H5220, H6849, H7611, H8435, G10740, G10850, G46900

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2:16; 11:18)

desert, wilderness

Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as "wilderness."
- "Wilderness" conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as "deserted place" or "remote place" or "uninhabited place."

Bible References:

- Acts 13:16-18
- Acts 21:38
- Exodus 4:27-28
- Genesis 37:21-22
- John 3:14
- Luke 1:80
- Luke 9:12-14
- Mark 1:3
- Matthew 4:1
- Matthew 11:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G20470, G20480

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 3:8; 3:17; 11:38)

destroy, destruction, annihilate

Definition:

The term "destroy" means to completely make an end to something, so that it no longer exists.

- The term "destroyer" means "a person who destroys."
- This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
- When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as "the destroyer of the firstborn." This could be translated as "the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males."
- In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called "the Destroyer." He is the "one who destroys" because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.

(See also: angel, Egypt, firstborn, Passover)

Bible References:

- Exodus 12:23
- Hebrews 11:28
- Jeremiah 6:26
- Judges 16:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0006, H0007, H0622, H0398, H1104, H1197, H1820, H1826, H1942, H2000, H2015, H2026, H2040, H2254, H2255, H2717, H2718, H2763, H2764, H3238, H3341, H3381, H3423, H3582, H3615, H3617, H3772, H3807, H4191, H4229, H4591, H4658, H4889, H5218, H5221, H5307, H5362, H5420, H5422, H5428, H5595, H5642, H6365, H6789, H6979, H7665, H7667, H7703, H7722, H7760, H7843, H7921, H8045, H8074, H8077, H8316, H8552, G03550, G03960, G06220, G08530, G13110, G18420, G20490, G25060, G25070, G26470, G26730, G27040, G30890, G36450, G41990, G53510, G53560

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2:14; 11:28)

devour

Definition:

The term "devour" means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term "devour" is often used with a meaning of "completely destroy" as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as "completely consume" or "totally destroy."

(See also: consume)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:8
- Amos 1:10
- Exodus 24:17
- Ezekiel 16:20
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 23:13-15
- Psalms 21:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0398, H0399, H0400, H0402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G20680, G26660, G27190, G53150

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 10:27)

die, dead, deadly, death

Definition:

The term "death" refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

1. Physical death

- To "die" means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- The expression "put to death" refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Eternal death

- Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
- This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to "die" may be expressed as to "not live." The term "dead" may be translated as "not alive" or "not having any life" or "not living."
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to "pass away" in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say "eternal death" when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say "physical death" in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression "the dead" is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as "dead people" or "people who have died." (See: nominal adjective)
- The expression "put to death" could also be translated as "kill" or "murder" or "execute."

(See also: believe, faith, life)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:21
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Acts 10:42
- Acts 14:19
- Colossians 2:15
- Colossians 2:20
- Genesis 2:15-17
- Genesis 34:27
- Matthew 16:28
- Romans 5:10

- Romans 5:12
- Romans 6:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **2:11** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **7:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **40:8** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:7** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **48:2** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0006, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8045, H8546, H8552, G03360, G03370, G05200, G05990, G06150, G06220, G16340, G19350, G20790, G22530, G22860, G22870, G22880, G22890, G23480, G28370, G29660, G34980, G34990, G35000, G44300, G48800, G48810, G50530, G50540

discern, discernment, distinguish

Definition:

The term "discern" means to be able to understand something, especially being able to know whether something is right or wrong.

> • The term "discernment" refers to understanding and deciding wisely about a certain matter.
> • It means to have wisdom and good judgment.

Translation Suggestions:

> • Depending on the context, "discern" could also be translated as "understand" or "know the difference between" or "distinguish good and evil" or "judge rightly about" or "perceive right from wrong."
> • "Discernment" could be translated as "understanding" or "ability to distinguish good and evil."

(See also: judge, wise)

Bible References:

> • 1 Kings 3:7-9
> • Genesis 41:33-34
> • Proverbs 1:5
> • Psalms 19:12

Word Data:

> • Strong's: H0995, H2940, H4209, H5234, H8085, G03500, G12520, G12530, G29240

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 5:14)

discipline, self-discipline

Definition:

The term "discipline" refers to training people to obey a set of guidelines for moral behavior.

- Parents discipline their children by providing moral guidance and direction for them and teaching them to obey.
- Similarly, God disciplines his children to help them produce healthy spiritual fruit in their lives, such as joy, love, and patience.
- Discipline involves instruction regarding how to live to please God, as well as punishment for behavior that is against God's will.
- Self-discipline is the process of applying moral and spiritual principles to one's own life.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "discipline" could be translated as "train and instruct" or "morally guide" or "punish for wrongdoing."
- The noun "discipline" could be translated as "moral training" or "punishment" or "moral correction" or "moral guidance and instruction."

Bible References:

- Ephesians 6:4
- Hebrews 12:5
- Proverbs 19:18
- Proverbs 23:13-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4148, G14680

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 12 General Notes; 12:5; 12:6; 12:7; 12:8; 12:9; 12:10; 12:11)

disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious

Definition:

The term "disobey" means to not obey what someone in authority has commanded or instructed. A person who does this is being "disobedient."

- A person who does something he was told not to do is disobeying.
- To disobey also means to refuse to do something that was commanded.
- The term "disobedient" is also used to describe the character of someone who habitually disobeys or rebels. It means that they are sinful or wicked.
- The term "disobedience" means "the act of not obeying" or "behavior that is against what God wants."
- A "disobedient people" could be translated by "people who keep on disobeying" or "people who do not do what God commands."

(See also: authority, evil, sin, obey)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 13:21
- Acts 26:19
- Colossians 3:7
- Luke 1:17
- Luke 6:49
- Psalms 89:30-32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:11** God said to the man, "You listened to your wife and **disobeyed** me."
- **13:7** If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they **disobeyed** them, God would punish them.
- **16:2** Because the Israelites kept **disobeying** God, he punished them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **35:12** "The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked faithfully for you! I never **disobeyed** you, and still you did not give me one small goat so I could celebrate with my friends.'"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4784, H5674, G05060, G05430, G05440, G05450, G38470, G38760

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2:2; 3:18; 4:6; 4:11; 11:31)

doctrine, teaching, beliefs, instructions, knowledge

Definition:

The word "doctrine" literally means "teaching." It usually refers to religious teaching.

- In the context of Christian teachings, "doctrine" refers to all teachings about God—Father, Son and Holy Spirit—including all his character qualities and everything he has done.
- It also refers to everything God teaches Christians about how to live holy lives that bring glory to him.
- The word "doctrine" is sometimes also used to refer to false or worldly religious teachings that come from human beings. The context makes the meaning clear.
- This term could also be translated as "teaching."

(See also: teach)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:3
- 2 Timothy 3:16-17
- Mark 7:6-7
- Matthew 15:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3948, G13190, G13220, G20850

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 13:9)

earth, land

Definition:

The term "earth" refers to the world on which human beings and other living things live. In the Bible, this term is sometimes translated as "land" when used in a general way to refer to the ground or the soil, or when used in a specific way to refer to a particular geographical area, usually a country or nation.

- In the Bible, the term "earth" is often paired with the term "heaven" as a way of indicating the abode of humankind on the earth in contrast with the abode of God in heaven.
- This term is usually translated "land" when paired with the name of people group to denote the territory belonging to those people, such as "the land of Canaan."
- The term "earthly" is sometimes used to refer to things that are physical and/or visible in contrast to things that are non-physical and/or invisible.
- This term can be used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth or what the earth contains, such as in "let the earth be glad" and "he will judge the earth."

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, "earth" could also be translated as "world" or "land" or "dirt" or "soil."
- When used figuratively, "earth" could be translated as "people on the earth" or "people living on earth" or "everything on earth."
- Ways to translate "earthly" could include "physical" or "things of this earth" or "visible."

(See also: world, heaven)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 2:11-12
- Daniel 4:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 6:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 6:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0127, H0772, H0776, H0778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G10930, G19190, G27090, G28860, G36250, G45780, G55170

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:10; 8:4; 9:1; 11:13; 11:38; 12:25; 12:26)

Egypt, Egyptian

Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as "Egypt" and "Pathros" in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel's patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Herod the Great, Joseph (NT), Nile River, patriarchs)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 4:7-9
- Acts 7:10
- Exodus 3:7
- Genesis 41:29
- Genesis 41:57
- Matthew 2:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:4** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **8:8** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **8:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to _Egypt_ to buy food.
- **8:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **9:1** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4713, H4714, G01240, G01250

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 3:16; 8:9; 11:26; 11:27; 11:29)

endure, endurance

Definition:

The term "endure" means to last a long time or to bear something difficult with patience.

- It also means to stand firm when times of testing come, without giving up.
- The term "endurance" can mean "patience" or "bearing up under a trial" or "persevering when being persecuted."
- The encouragement to Christians to "endure to the end" is telling them to obey Jesus, even if this causes them to suffer.
- To "endure suffering" can also mean to "experience suffering."

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term "endure" could include "persevere" or "keep believing" or "continue to do what God wants you to do" or "stand firm."
- In some contexts, to "endure" could be translated as to "experience" or to "go through."
- With the meaning of lasting for a long time, the term "endure" could also be tranlsated as "last" or "continue." The phrase "will not endure" could be translated as "will not last" or "will not continue to survive."
- Ways to translate "endurance" could include "perseverance" or "continuing to believe" or "remaining faithful."

(See also: persevere)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 2:11-13
- James 1:3
- James 1:12
- Luke 21:19
- Matthew 13:21
- Revelation 1:9
- Romans 5:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0386, H3201, H3557, H5331, H5375, H5975, G04300, G09070, G15260, G20050, G20760, G25940, G33060, G47220, G52780, G52810, G52970, G53420

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 10:32; 10:36; 11:27; 12:1; 12:2; 12:3; 12:7)

Enoch

Facts:

Enoch was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- One man named Enoch was descended from Seth. He was the great grandfather of Noah.
- This Enoch had a close relationship with God and when he was 365 years old, God took him to heaven while he was still alive.
- A different man named Enoch was a son of Cain.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Cain, Seth)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:3
- Genesis 5:18-20
- Genesis 5:24
- Jude 1:14
- Luke 3:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2585, G18020

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 11:5)

Esau

Facts:

Esau was one of the twin sons of Isaac and Rebekah. He was the first baby born to them. His twin brother was Jacob.

   • Esau sold his birthright to his brother Jacob in exchange for a bowl of food.
   • Since Esau was born first, his father Isaac was supposed to give him a special blessing. But Jacob tricked Isaac into giving him that blessing instead. At first Esau was so angry that he wanted to kill Jacob, but later he forgave him.
   • Esau had many children and grandchildren, and these descendants formed a large people group living in the land of Canaan.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Edom, Isaac, Jacob, Rebekah)

Bible References:

   • Genesis 25:26
   • Genesis 25:29-30
   • Genesis 26:34
   • Genesis 27:11-12
   • Genesis 32:5
   • Hebrews 12:17
   • Romans 9:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

   • **6:7** When Rebekah's babies were born, the older son came out red and hairy, and they named him **Esau**.
   • **7:2** So _Esau_ gave Jacob his rights as the oldest son.
   • **7:4** When Isaac felt the goat hair and smelled the clothes, he thought it was **Esau** and blessed him.
   • **7:5** **Esau** hated Jacob because Jacob had stolen his rights as oldest son and also his blessing.
   • **7:10** But _Esau_ had already forgiven Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.

Word Data:

   • Strong's: H6215, G22690

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 11:20; 12:16)

eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

Definition:

The terms "everlasting" and "eternal" have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term "eternity" refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms "eternal life" and "everlasting life" are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.

The term "forever" refers to never-ending time.

- The phrase "forever and ever" has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like. It emphasizes that something will always happen or exist. It refers to time that never ends.
- God said that David's throne would last "forever." This is referred to the fact that David's descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "eternal" or "everlasting" could include "unending" or "never stopping" or "always continuing."
- The terms "eternal life" and "everlasting life" could also be translated as "life that never ends" or "life that continues without stopping" or "the raising up of our bodies to live forever."
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate "eternity" could include "existing outside of time" or "unending life" or "life in heaven."
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- "Forever" could also be translated by "always" or "never ending."
- The phrase "will last forever" could also be translated as "always exist" or "will never stop" or "will always continue."
- The emphatic phrase "forever and ever" could also be translated as "for always and always" or "not ever ending" or "which never, ever ends."
- David's throne lasting forever could be translated as "David's descendant will reign forever" or "a descendant of David will always be reigning."

(See also: David, reign, life)

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:8
- Genesis 48:4
- Exodus 15:17
- 2 Samuel 3:28-30
- 1 Kings 2:32-33
- Job 4:20-21
- Psalms 21:4
- Isaiah 9:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 7:18

- Luke 18:18
- Acts 13:46
- Romans 5:21
- Hebrews 6:19-20
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- 1 John 1:2
- 1 John 5:12
- Revelation 1:4-6
- Revelation 22:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?"
- **28:1** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, "Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God's laws."
- **28:10** Jesus answered, "Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name's sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G01260, G01650, G01660, G13360

evil, wicked, unpleasant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "evil" can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While "evil" may describe a person's character, "wicked" may refer more to a person's behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term "wickedness" refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms "evil" and "wicked" can be translated as "bad" or "sinful" or "immoral."
- Other ways to translate these could include "not good" or "not righteous" or "not moral."
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, sin, good, righteous, demon)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 6:10
- 3 John 1:10
- Genesis 2:17
- Genesis 6:5-6
- Job 1:1
- Job 8:20
- Judges 9:57
- Luke 6:22-23
- Matthew 7:11-12
- Proverbs 3:7
- Psalms 22:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:4** "God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does."
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **4:2** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **8:12** "You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!"
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:1** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:8** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:2** They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"

- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G00920, G01130, G04590, G09320, G09870, G09880, G14260, G25490, G25510, G25540, G25550, G25560, G25570, G25590, G25600, G26350, G26360, G41510, G41890, G41900, G41910, G53370

ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Definition:

A "sheep" is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a "ram." A female sheep is called a "ewe." The plural of "sheep" is also "sheep."

- A baby sheep is called a "lamb."
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Israel, lamb, sacrifice, shepherd)

Bible References:

- Acts 8:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 2:14
- Luke 15:5
- Mark 6:34
- Matthew 9:36
- Matthew 10:6
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:2** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:3** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:8** Jesus said, "All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, 'I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.'"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G41650, G42620, G42630

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 13:20)

exhort, exhortation

Definition:

The term "exhort" means to strongly encourage and urge someone to do what is right. Such encouragement is called "exhortation."

- The purpose of exhortation is to persuade other people to avoid sin and follow God's will.
- The New Testament teaches Christians to exhort each other in love, not harshly or abruptly.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "exhort" could also be translated as "strongly urge" or "persuade" or "advise."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not imply that the exhorter is angry. The term should convey strength and seriousness, but should not refer to angry speech.
- In most contexts, the term "exhort" should be translated differently than "encourage," which means to inspire, reassure, or comfort someone.
- Usually this term will also be translated differently from "admonish," which means to warn or correct someone for his wrong behavior.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:3-4
- 1 Thessalonians 2:12
- 1 Timothy 5:2
- Luke 3:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: G38670, G38700, G38740, G43890

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 12 General Notes; 12:5; 13:19; 13:22)

exile, exiled

Definition:

The term "exile" refers to people being forced to live somewhere away from their home country.

- People are usually sent into exile for punishment or for political reasons.
- A conquered people may be taken into exile to the country of the conquering army, in order to work for them.
- The "Babylonian exile" (or "the exile") is a period in Bible history when many Jewish citizens of the region of Judah were taken from their homes and forced to live in Babylon. It lasted 70 years.
- The phrase "the exiles" refers to people who are living in exile, away from their home country.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to "exile" could also be translated as to "send away" or to "force out" or to "banish."
- The term "the exile" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "the sent away time" or "the time of banishment" or "the time of forced absence" or "banishment."
- Ways to translate "the exiles" could include "the exiled people" or "the people who were banished" or "the people exiled to Babylon."

(See also: Babylon, Judah)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 24:14
- Daniel 2:25-26
- Ezekiel 1:1-3
- Isaiah 20:4
- Jeremiah 29:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1541, H1546, H1547, H3212, H3318, H5080, H6808, H7617, H7622, H8689, G39270

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 11:13)

exult, exultant

Definition:

The terms "exult" and "exultant" refer to being very happy because of a success or special blessing.

- To "exult" includes a feeling of celebrating something wonderful.
- A person can exult in God's goodness.
- The term "exultant" can also include being arrogant in one's feeling of gladness about success or prosperity.
- The term "exult" could also be translated as "celebrate joyfully" or "praise with great joy."
- Depending on the context, the term "exultant" could be translated as "praising triumphantly" or "celebrating with self praise" or "arrogant."

(See also: arrogant, joy, praise, rejoice)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:1
- Isaiah 13:3
- Job 6:10
- Psalm 68:1-3
- Zephaniah 2:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5539, H5947, H5970

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:9)

faith

Definition:

In general, the term "faith" refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To "have faith" in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To "have faith in Jesus" means to believe all of God's teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes "faith" refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression "the truths of the faith."
- In contexts such as "keep the faith" or "abandon the faith," the term "faith" refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, "faith" can be translated as "belief" or "conviction" or "confidence" or "trust."
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb "believe." (See: abstractnouns)
- The expression "keep the faith" could be translated by "keep believing in Jesus" or "continue to believe in Jesus."
- The sentence "they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith" could be translated by "they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught."
- The expression "my true son in the faith" could be translated by something like "who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus" or "my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus."

(See also: believe, faithful)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:7
- Acts 6:7
- Galatians 2:20-21
- James 2:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:6** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham's **faith** by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **31:7** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, "You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?"
- **32:16** Jesus said to her, "Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace."
- **38:9** Then Jesus said to Peter, "Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0529, H0530, G16800, G36400, G41020, G60660

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 4:2; 6:1; 6:12; Notes; 10:22; 10:38; 10:39; 11:1; 11:3; 11:4; 11:5; 11:6; 11:7; 11:8; 11:9; 11:11; 11:13; 11:17; 11:20; 11:21; 11:22; 11:23; 11:24; 11:27; 11:28; 11:29; 11:30; 11:31; 11:33; 11:39; 12:2; 13:7)

faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy

Definition:

To be "faithful" to God means to consistently live according to God's teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is "faithfulness."

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, "faithful" can be translated as "loyal" or "dedicated" or "dependable."
- In other contexts, "faithful" can be translated by a word or phrase that means "continuing to believe" or "persevering in believing and obeying God."
- Ways that "faithfulness" could be translated could include "persevering in believing" or "loyalty" or "trustworthiness" or "believing and obeying God."

(See also: believe, faith, believe)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:7
- Joshua 2:14
- Judges 2:16-17
- 1 Samuel 2:9
- Psalm 12:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 1:26
- Jeremiah 9:7-9
- Hosea 5:7
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 1:7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:24
- 3 John 1:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:9** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **35:12** "The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!'"
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:4** "If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0529, H0530, H0539, H0540, H0571, H0898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G05690, G05710, G41030

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2:17; 3:2; 3:5; Notes; 10:23; 11:11)

fear, afraid, frighten

Definition:

The terms "fear" refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term "fear" can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "fear" can be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: "be afraid;" "deeply respect," or "deep respect;" "revere," or "reverence;" or perhaps "be in awe of."
- The phrase "fear not" could also be translated as "do not be afraid" or "stop being afraid."
- The sentence "The fear of God fell on all of them" might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: "Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;" or "Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;" or "Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power)."

(See also: awe, Yahweh, Lord, marvel, power)

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:18
- Acts 2:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 6:14
- Jonah 1:9
- Luke 12:5
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0367, H0926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G08700, G11670, G11680, G11690, G16300, G17190, G21240, G21250, G29620, G53980, G53990, G54000, G54010

fellowship

Definition:

In general, the term "fellowship" refers to friendly interactions between members of a group of people who share similar interests and experiences.

- In the Bible, the term "fellowship" usually refers to the unity of believers in Christ.
- Christian fellowship is a shared relationship that believers have with one another through their relationship with Christ and the Holy Spirit.
- The early Christians expressed their fellowship through listening to the teaching of God's Word and praying together, through the sharing of their belongings, and through eating meals together.
- Christians also have fellowship with God through their faith in Jesus and his sacrificial death on the cross which removed the barrier between God and people.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "fellowship" could include "a sharing together" or "relationship" or "companionship" or "Christian community."

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:3
- Acts 2:40-42
- Philippians 1:3-6
- Philippians 2:1
- Philippians 3:10
- Psalms 55:12-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2266, H8667, G28420, G28440, G33520, G47900

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 13:16)

fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- Fire could also refer to lightning in the context of a storm or it being from heaven.
- The term "fire" is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase "baptize with fire" could also be translated as "cause to experience suffering in order to be purified."

(See also: pure)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 1:10
- 2 Thessalonians 1:8
- Acts 7:29-30
- John 15:6
- Luke 3:16
- Matthew 3:12
- Nehemiah 1:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0215, H0217, H0398, H0784, H0800, H0801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H2734, H3341, H3857, H4071, H4168, H5135, H6315, H8316, G04390, G04400, G10670, G27410, G44420, G44430, G44470, G44480, G44510, G53940, G54570

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:7; 10:27; 11:34; 12:18; 12:29)

firstborn

Definition:

The term "firstborn" refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born.

- • In the Bible, "firstborn" usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- • In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- • Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- • This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God's firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- • Jesus, the Son of God is called God's firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- • When "first-born" occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as "firstborn male" or "firstborn son," since that is what is implied. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- • Other ways to translate this term could include "the son who was born first" or "the eldest son" or "the number one son."
- • When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means "the son who has authority over everything" or "the Son who is first in honor."
- • Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See also: inherit, sacrifice, son)

Bible References:

- • Colossians 1:15
- • Genesis 4:3-5
- • Genesis 29:26-27
- • Genesis 43:33
- • Luke 2:6-7
- • Revelation 1:5

Word Data:

- • Strong's: H1060, H1062, H1067, H1069, G44160, G52070

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:6; 11:28; 12:23)

flesh

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "flesh" literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term "flesh" in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term "flesh" is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression "own flesh and blood" refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression "flesh and blood" can also refer to a person's ancestors or descendants.
- The expression "one flesh" refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal's body, "flesh" could be translated as "body" or "skin" or "meat."
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as "living beings" or "everything that is alive."
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as "people" or "human beings" or "everyone who lives."
- The expression "flesh and blood" could also be translated as "relatives" or "family" or "kinfolk" or "family clan." There may be contexts where it could be translated as "ancestors" or "descendants."
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to "flesh and blood."
- The expression "become one flesh" could be translated as "unite sexually" or "become as one body" or "become like one person in body and spirit." The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: euphemism). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who "become one flesh" literally become one person.

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:16
- 2 John 1:7
- Ephesians 6:12
- Galatians 1:16
- Genesis 2:24
- John 1:14
- Matthew 16:17
- Romans 8:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G29070, G45590, G45600, G45610

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2:14; 5:7; 7:16; 9:10; 9:13; 10:20; 12:9)

footstool

Definition:

The term "footstool" refers to an object which a person puts his feet on, usually to rest them while sitting. This term also has figurative meanings of submission and lower status.

- People in Bible times considered feet to be the least honorable parts of the body. So a "footstool" was of even lower honor because feet were rested on it.
- When God says "I will make my enemies a footstool for my feet" he is declaring power, control, and victory over the people who rebel against him. They will be humbled and conquered to the point of submitting to God's will.
- To "worship at God's footstool" means to bow down in worship before him as he sits on his throne. This again communicates humility and submission to God.
- David refers to the temple as God's "footstool." This could refer to his absolute authority over his people. This could also be picturing God the King on his throne, with his feet resting on his footstool, which represents all that is in submission to him.

Bible References:

- Acts 7:49
- Isaiah 66:1
- Luke 20:43
- Matthew 5:35
- Matthew 22:44
- Psalm 110:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1916, H3534, H7272, G42280, G52860

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:13; 10:13)

forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned

Definition:

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. "Forgiveness" is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean "cancel," as in the expression "forgive a debt."
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus' sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term "pardon" means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

- This word has the same meaning as "forgive" but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
- In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
- Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "forgive" could be translated as "pardon" or "cancel" or "release" or "not hold against" (someone).
- The term "forgiveness" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "practice of not resenting" or "declaring (someone) as not guilty" or "the act of pardoning."
- If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate "pardon."

(See also: guilt)

Bible References:

- Genesis 50:17
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Joshua 24:19-20
- 2 Kings 5:17-19
- Psalms 25:11
- Psalms 25:17-19
- Isaiah 55:6-7
- Isaiah 40:2
- Luke 5:21
- Acts 8:22
- Ephesians 4:31-32
- Colossians 3:12-14
- 1 John 2:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **7:10** But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- **13:15** Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- **17:13** David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.

- **21:5** In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.
- **29:1** One day Peter asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?"
- **29:8** I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins."

Word Data:

- H5546, H5547, H3722, H5375, H5545, H5547, H7521, G85900, G86300, G54830

forsake, forsaken, leave

Definition:

The term "forsake" means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been "forsaken" has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people "forsake" God, they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God "forsakes" people, he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following, God's teachings.
- The term "forsaken" can be used in the past tense, as in "he has forsaken you" or as in referring to someone who has "been forsaken."

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include "abandon" or "neglect" or "give up" or "go away from" or "leave behind," depending on the context.
- To "forsake" God's law could be translated "disobey God's law." This could also be translated as "abandon" or "give up on" or "stop obeying" his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase "be forsaken" can be translated as "be abandoned" or "be deserted."
- It more clearer to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text describes forsaking a thing or a person.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:11-13
- Daniel 11:29-30
- Genesis 24:27
- Joshua 24:16-18
- Matthew 27:45-47
- Proverbs 27:9-10
- Psalms 71:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0488, H2308, H5203, H5428, H5800, H5805, H7503, G06460, G06570, G08630, G14590, G26410

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 13:5)

found, founder, foundation

Definition:

The verb "found" means build, create, or lay a base for. The phrase "founded on" means supported by or based on. A "foundation" is the base of support on which something is built or created.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term "foundation" can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A "foundation stone" was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase "before the foundation of the world" could be translated as "before the creation of the world" or "before the time when the world first existed" or "before everything was first created."
- The term "founded on" could be translated as "securely built on" or "firmly based on."
- Depending on the context, "foundation" could be translated as "strong base" or "solid support" or "beginning" or "creation."

(See also: cornerstone, create)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:37-38
- 2 Chronicles 3:1-3
- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- Luke 14:29
- Matthew 13:35
- Matthew 25:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0134, H0787, H2713, H3245, H3247, H3248, H4143, H4144, H4146, H4328, H4349, H4527, H8356, G23100, G23110, G26020

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:10; 4:3; 6:1; 9:26; 11:10)

free, freed, freedom, freeman, freewill, liberty

Definition:

The terms "free" or "freedom" refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for "freedom" is "liberty."

- The expression to "set someone free" or to "free someone" means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
- In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
- Having "liberty" or "freedom" can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "free" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "not bound" or "not enslaved" or "not in slavery" or "not in bondage."
- The term "freedom" or "liberty" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "the state of being free" or "the condition of not being a slave" or "not being bound."
- The expression to "set free" could be translated as to "cause to be free" or to "rescue from slavery" or to "release from bondage."
- A person who has been "set free" has been "released" or "taken out of" bondage or slavery.

(See also: bind, enslave, servant)

Bible References:

- Galatians 4:26
- Galatians 5:1
- Isaiah 61:1
- Leviticus 25:10
- Romans 6:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1865, H2600, H2666, H2668, H2670, H3318, H4800, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5337, H5352, H5355, H5425, H5674, H5800, H6299, H6362, H7342, H7971, G04250, G05250, G05580, G06290, G06300, G08590, G13440, G14320, G16570, G16580, G16590, G18490, G30890, G39550, G45060, G54830

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2:15)

fruit, fruitful, unfruitful

Definition:

The term "fruit" literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is "fruitful" has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses "fruit" to refer to a person's actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person's words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term "fruitful" always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term "fruitful" is also used figuratively to mean "prosperous." This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression "fruit of" refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the "fruit of wisdom" refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression "fruit of the land" refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression "fruit of the Spirit" refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression "fruit of the womb" refers to "what the womb produces"—that is children.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for "fruit" that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural "fruits" whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term "fruitful" could be translated as "producing much spiritual fruit" or "having many children" or "prosperous."
- The expression "fruit of the land" could also be translated as "food that the land produces" or "food crops that are growing in that region."
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to "be fruitful and multiply," which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as "have many offspring" or "have many children and descendants" or "have many children so that you will have many descendants."
- The expression "fruit of the womb" could be translated as "what the womb produces" or "children a women gives birth to" or just "children." When Elizabeth says to Mary "blessed is the fruit of your womb," she means "blessed is the child you will give birth to." The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression "fruit of the vine," could be translated as "vine fruit" or "grapes."
- Depending on the context, the expression "will be more fruitful" could also be translated as "will produce more fruit" or "will have more children" or "will be prosperous."
- The apostle Paul's expression "fruitful labor" could be translated as "work that brings very good results" or "efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus."
- The "fruit of the Spirit" could also be translated as "works that the Holy Spirit produces" or "words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone."

(See also: descendant, grain, grape, Holy Spirit, vine, womb)

Bible References:

- Galatians 5:23
- Genesis 1:11
- Luke 8:15
- Matthew 3:8

• Matthew 7:17

Word Data:

• Strong's: H0004, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2233, H2981, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H5108, H6509, H6529, H7019, H8393, H8570, G10810, G25900, G25920, G25930, G37030, G50520, G53520

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 12:11; 13:15)

gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Definition:

The term "gate" refers to an access point in a fence, wall, or other kind of barrier that surrounds a house, property, city, etc.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A "bar" for a gate refers to a wood or metal bar that can be moved into place so that the doors of the gate cannot be opened from the outside.
- In Bible times, a city gate was often the social center for that town or city. It was a place where news of current events was exchanged between people, where business transactions occurred, and where civil judgments were made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "gate" could be "door" or "wall opening" or "barrier" or "entranceway."
- The phrase "bars of the gate" could be translated as "gate bolts" or "wooden beams to lock the gate" or "metal locking rods of the gate."

Bible References:

- Acts 9:24
- Acts 10:18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:1
- Genesis 24:60
- Matthew 7:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G23740, G44390, G44400

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 13:12)

generation

Definition:

The term "generation" generally refers to a group of people who are all alive at the same time. They are all born in the same general time period and are therefore about the same age.

- A generation can also refer to a span of time. In Bible times, a generation was usually considered to be about 40 years.
- Parents and their children are from two different generations.
- In the Bible, the term "generation" is also used figuratively to refer generally to people who share common characteristics.

Translation Suggestions

- The phrase "this generation" or "people of this generation" could be translated as "the people living now" or "you people."
- "This wicked generation" could also be translated as "these wicked people living now."
- The expression "from generation to generation" or "from one generation to the next" could be translated as "people living now, as well as their children and grandchildren" or "people in every time period" or "people in this time period and future time periods" or "all people and their descendants."
- "A generation to come will serve him; they will tell the next generation about Yahweh" could also be translated as "Many people in the future will serve Yahweh and will tell their children and grandchildren about him."

(See also: descendant, evil, ancestor)

Bible References:

- Acts 15:19-21
- Exodus 3:13-15
- Genesis 15:16
- Genesis 17:7
- Mark 8:12
- Matthew 11:16
- Matthew 23:34-36
- Matthew 24:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1755, H1859, H8435, G10740

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 3:10)

Gideon

Facts:

Gideon was an Israelite man whom God raised up to deliver the Israelites from their enemies.

- During the time when Gideon lived, a people group called the Midianites kept attacking the Israelites and destroying their crops.
- Even though Gideon was afraid, God used him to lead the Israelites to fight against the Midianites and defeat them.
- Gideon also obeyed God by taking down altars to the false gods Baal and Asherah.
- He not only led the people in defeating their enemies but also encouraged them to obey and worship Yahweh, the one true God.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Baal, Asherah, deliver, Midian, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Hebrews 11:32-34
- Judges 6:11
- Judges 6:23
- Judges 8:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:5** The angel of Yahweh came to **Gideon** and said, "God is with you, mighty warrior. Go and save Israel from the Midianites."
- **16:6 Gideon's** father had an altar dedicated to an idol. God told **Gideon** to tear down that altar.
- **16:8** There were so many of them (Midianites) that they could not be counted. **Gideon** called the Israelites together to fight them.
- **16:8 Gideon** called the Israelites together to fight them. **Gideon** asked God for two signs so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **16:10** 32,000 Israelite soldiers came to **Gideon**, but God told him this was too many.
- **16:12** Then **Gideon** returned to his soldiers and gave each of them a horn, a clay pot, and a torch.
- **16:15** The people wanted to make **Gideon** their king.
- **16:16** Then **Gideon** used the gold to make a special garment like the high priest used to wear. But the people started worshiping it as if it were an idol.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1439, H1441

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 11:32)

gift

Definition:

The term "gift" refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called "gifts."
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift.
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term "gifts" is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for "gift" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "something that is given."
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term "gift from the Spirit" could be translated as "spiritual ability" or "special ability from the Holy Spirit" or "special spiritual skill that God gave."

(See also: spirit, Holy Spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:1
- 2 Samuel 11:8
- Acts 8:20
- Acts 10:4
- Acts 11:17
- Acts 24:17
- James 1:17
- John 4:9-10
- Matthew 5:23
- Matthew 8:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0814, H4503, H4864, H4976, H4978, H4979, H4991, H5078, H5083, H5379, H7810, H8641, G03340, G13900, G13940, G14310, G14340, G14350, G33110, G54860

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 5:1; 6:4; 8:3; 8:4; 9:9; 11:4)

glory, glorious, glorify

Definition:

The term "glory" is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term "glorify" means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

- In the Bible, the term "glory" is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God's character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
- The expression to "glory in" means to boast about or take pride in something.

Old Testament

- The specific phrase "the glory of Yahweh" in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh's presence in a particular location.

New Testament

- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term "glorify" carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate "glory" could include "splendor" or "majesty" or "awesome greatness" or "extreme value."
- The term "glorious" could be translated as "full of glory" or "extremely valuable" or "brightly shining" or "awesomely majestic."
- The expression "give glory to God" could be translated as "honor God's greatness" or "praise God because of his splendor" or "tell others how great God is."
- The expression "glory in" could also be translated as "praise" or "take pride in" or "boast about" or "take pleasure in."
- "Glorify" could also be translated as "give glory to" or "bring glory to" or "cause to appear great."
- The phrase "glorify God" could also be translated as "praise God" or "talk about God's greatness" or "show how great God is" or "honor God (by obeying him)."
- The term "be glorified" could also be translated as "be shown to be very great" or "be praised" or "be exalted."

(See also: honor, majesty, exalt, obey, praise)

Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:2

- Luke 18:43
- Luke 2:9
- John 12:28
- Acts 3:13-14
- Acts 7:1-3
- Romans 8:17
- 1 Corinthians 6:19-20
- Philippians 2:14-16
- Philippians 4:19
- Colossians 3:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 2:5
- James 2:1-4
- 1 Peter 4:15-16
- Revelation 15:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, "**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!"
- **25:6** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- **37:1** When Jesus heard this news, he said, "This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God."
- **37:8** Jesus responded, "Did I not tell you that you would see God's **glory** if you believe in me?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0117, H0142, H0155, H0215, H1342, H1921, H1926, H1935, H1984, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G13910, G13920, G17400, G17410, G27440, G48880

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:3; 2:7; 2:9; 2:10; 3:3; 5:5; 9:5; 13:21)

goat, goatskins, scapegoat, kids

Definition:

A goat is a medium-sized, four-legged animal which is similar to a sheep and is raised primarily for its milk and meat. A baby goat is called a "kid."

- Like sheep, goats were important animals of sacrifice, especially at Passover.
- Although goats and sheep can be very similar, these are some ways that they are different:
    ◦ Goats have coarse hair; sheep have wool.
    ◦ The tail of a goat stands up; the tail of a sheep hangs down.
    ◦ Sheep usually like to stay with their herd, but goats are more independent and tend to wander away from their herd.
- In Bible times, goats were often the main source of milk in Israel.
- Goat skins were used for tent coverings and to make bags for holding wine.
- In both the Old and New Testaments, the goat was used as a symbol for unrighteous people, perhaps because of its tendency to wander away from the one taking care of it.
- The Israelites also used goats as symbolic sin bearers. When one goat was sacrificed, the priest would lay his hands on a second, live goat, and send it into the desert as a symbol that the animal was bearing the people's sins.

(See also: flock, sacrifice, sheep, righteous, wine)

Bible References:

- Exodus 12:3-4
- Genesis 30:32
- Genesis 31:10
- Genesis 37:31
- Leviticus 3:12-14
- Matthew 25:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0689, H1423, H1429, H3277, H3629, H5795, H5796, H6260, H6629, H6842, H7716, H8163, H8166, H8495, G01220, G20550, G20560, G51310

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 9:13; 9:19; 10:4)

God

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "God" refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God's personal name is "Yahweh."

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as "Yahweh," which means "he is" or "I am" or "the One who (always) exists."
- The Bible also teaches about false "gods," which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "God" could include "Deity" or "Creator" or "Supreme Being" or "Supreme Creator" or "Infinite Sovereign Lord" or "Eternal Supreme Being."
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for "God" in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for "God" and "god." NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word "god," it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase "I will be their God and they will be my people" could also be translated as "I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: create, false god, God the Father, Holy Spirit, false god, Son of God, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 4:10
- Colossians 1:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 3:1-2
- Genesis 1:2
- Hosea 4:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 2:20
- Jeremiah 5:5
- John 1:3
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Lamentations 3:43
- Micah 4:5
- Philippians 2:6
- Proverbs 24:12

• Psalms 47:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:1 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **1:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **5:3** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **9:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:2** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:7** "You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:9** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:7** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:1** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:9** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0136, H0305, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G01120, G05160, G09320, G09350, G10960, G11400, G20980, G21240, G21280, G21500, G21520, G21530, G22990, G23040, G23050, G23120, G23130, G23140, G23150, G23160, G23170, G23180, G23190, G23200, G33610, G37850, G41510, G52070, G53770, G54630, G55370, G55380

God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

Facts:

The terms "God the Father" and "heavenly Father" refer to Yahweh, the one true God. Another term with the same meaning is "Father," used most often when Jesus was referring to him.

- God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
- God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
- Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

Translation Suggestions:

- In translating the phrase "God the Father," it is best to translate "Father" with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
- The term "heavenly Father" could be translated by "Father who lives in heaven" or "Father God who lives in heaven" or "God our Father from heaven."
- Usually "Father" is capitalized when it, refers to God.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: ancestor, God, heaven, Holy Spirit, Jesus, Son of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 8:4-6
- 1 John 2:1
- 1 John 2:23
- 1 John 3:1
- Colossians 1:1-3
- Ephesians 5:18-21
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 5:16
- Matthew 23:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:9** There is only one God. But John heard **God the Father** speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **29:9** Then Jesus said, "This is what my **heavenly Father** will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart."
- **37:9** Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, "**Father**, thank you for hearing me."
- **40:7** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! **Father**, I give my spirit into your hands."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of **the Father**, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:8** "Jesus is now exalted to the right hand of **God the Father**."
- **50:10** "Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of **God their Father**."

Word Data:

- • Strong's: H0001, H0002, G39620

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:5; 12:9)

godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness

Definition:

The term "godly" is used to describe a person who acts in a way that honors God and shows what God is like. "Godliness" is the character quality of honoring God by doing his will.

- A person who has godly character will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit, such as love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, and self control.
- The quality of godliness shows that a person has the Holy Spirit and is obeying him.

The terms "ungodly" and "godless" describe people who are in rebellion against God. Living in an evil way, without thought of God, is called "ungodliness" or "godlessness."

- The meanings of these words are very similar. However, "godless" and "godlessness" may describe a more extreme condition in which people or nations do not even acknowledge God or his right to rule them.
- God pronounces judgment and wrath on ungodly people, on everyone who rejects him and his ways.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase "the godly" could be translated as "godly people" or "people who obey God." (See: nominaladj)
- The adjective "godly" could be translated as "obedient to God" or "righteous" or "pleasing to God."
- The phrase "in a godly manner" could be translated as "in a way that obeys God" or "with actions and words that please God."
- Ways to translate "godliness" could include "acting in a way that pleases God" or "obeying God" or "living in a righteous manner."
- Depending on the context, the term "ungodly" could be translated as "displeasing to God" or "immoral" or "disobeying God."
- The terms "godless" and "godlessness" literally mean that the people are "without God" or "having no thought of God" or "acting in a way that does not acknowledge God."
- Other ways to translate "ungodliness" or "godlessness" could be "wickedness" or "evil" or "rebellion against God".

(See also evil, honor, obey, righteous, righteous)

Bible References:

- Job 27:10
- Proverbs 11:9
- Acts 3:12
- 1 Timothy 1:9-11
- 1 Timothy 4:7
- 2 Timothy 3:12
- Hebrews 12:14-17
- Hebrews 11:7
- 1 Peter 4:18
- Jude 1:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H1100, H2623, H5760, H7563, G05160, G07630, G07640, G07650, G21240, G21500, G21520, G21530, G23160, G23170

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 10 General Notes)

gold, golden

Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term "golden" or "gold-covered" or "gold-overlaid" could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as "gold-colored," which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: altar, ark of the covenant, false god, silver, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:7
- 1 Timothy 2:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 1:15
- Acts 3:6
- Daniel 2:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6884, H6885, G55520, G55530, G55540, G55570

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 9:4)

good news, gospel

Definition:

The term "gospel" literally means "good news" and refers to a message or announcement that tells people something that benefits them and makes them glad.

- In the Bible, this term usually refers to the message about God's salvation for people through Jesus' sacrifice on the cross.
- In most English Bibles, "good news" is usually translated as "gospel" and is also used in phrases such as, the "gospel of Jesus Christ," the "gospel of God" and the "gospel of the kingdom."

Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways to translate this term could include, "good message" or "good announcement" or "God's message of salvation" or "the good things God teaches about Jesus."
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, "good news of" could include, "good news/message about" or "good message from" or "the good things God tells us about" or "what God says about how he saves people."

(See also: kingdom, sacrifice, save)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:5
- Acts 8:25
- Colossians 1:23
- Galatians 1:6
- Luke 8:1-3
- Mark 1:14
- Philippians 2:22
- Romans 1:3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:6** The angel said, "Do not be afraid, because I have some **good news** for you. The Messiah, the Master, has been born in Bethlehem!"
- **26:3** Jesus read, "God has given me his Spirit so that I can proclaim **good news** to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed. This is the year of the Lord's favor."
- **45:10** Philip also used other Scriptures to tell him the **good news of Jesus**.
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to preach the **good news about Jesus** in many other places.
- **47:1** One day, Paul and his friend Silas went to the town of Philippi to proclaim the **good news about Jesus**.
- **47:13** The **good news about Jesus** kept spreading, and the Church kept growing.
- **50:1** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the **good news about Jesus** the Messiah.
- **50:2** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will preach the **good news** about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."
- **50:3** Before he returned to heaven, Jesus told Christians to proclaim the **good news** to people who have never heard it.

Word Data:

  • Strong's: G20970, G20980, G42830

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 4:2; 4:6)

good, right, pleasant, better, best

Definition:

The term "good" generally refers to a positive evaulation of the quality of something or someone, often in a moral or emotional sense. However, the term conveys various nuances throughout the Bible depending on the context.

- Something that is "good" could be emotionally pleasant, morally right, excellent, helpful, suitable, or profitable.
- In the Bible, the general meaning of "good" is often contrasted with "evil."

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for "good" in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "kind" or "excellent" or "pleasing to God" or "righteous" or "morally upright" or "profitable."
- "Good land" could be translated as "fertile land" or "productive land"; a "good crop" could be translated as a "plentiful harvest" or "large amount of crops."
- The phrase "do good to" means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as "be kind to" or "help" or "benefit" someone or "cause someone to prosper."
- To "do good on the Sabbath" means to "do things that help others on the Sabbath."
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term "goodness" could include "blessing" or "kindness" or "moral perfection" or "righteousness" or "purity."

(See also: righteous, prosper, evil)

Bible References:

- Galatians 5:22-24
- Genesis 1:12
- Genesis 2:9
- Genesis 2:17
- James 3:13
- Romans 2:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:4** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **1:11** God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.
- **1:12** Then God said, "It is not **good** for man to be alone."
- **2:4** "God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does."
- **8:12** "You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good**!"
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- **28:1** "**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me '**good**?' There is only one who is **good**, and that is God."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0117, H0145, H0155, H0202, H0239, H0410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G00140, G00150, G00180, G00190, G05150, G07440, G08650, G09790, G13800, G20950, G20970, G21060, G21070, G21080, G21090, G21140, G21150, G21330, G21400, G21620, G21630, G21740, G22930, G25650, G25670, G25700, G25730, G28870, G29860, G31400, G36170, G37760, G41470, G46320, G46740, G48510, G52230, G52240, G53580, G55420, G55430, G55440

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 5:14; 6:5; 9:11; 10:1; 10:24; 12:10; 13:9; 13:16; 13:18; 13:21)

grace, gracious

Definition:

The word "grace" refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term "gracious" describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God's grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression to "find grace" is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that "grace" could be translated include "divine kindness" or "God's favor" or "God's kindness and forgiveness for sinners" or "merciful kindness."
- The term "gracious" could be translated as "full of grace" or "kind" or "merciful" or "mercifully kind."
- The expression "he found grace in the eyes of God" could be translated as "he received mercy from God" or "God mercifully helped him" or "God showed his favor to him" or "God was pleased with him and helped him."

Bible References:

- Acts 4:33
- Acts 6:8
- Acts 14:4
- Colossians 4:6
- Colossians 4:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 4:7
- John 1:16
- Philippians 4:21-23
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, H8467, G21430, G54850, G55430

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2:9; 4:16; 10:29; 12:15; 12:28; 13:9; 13:25)

groan

Definition:

The term to "groan" refers to the uttering of a deep, low sound that is caused by physical or emotional distress. It could also be the sound someone makes without any words.

- A person can groan because of feeling grief.
- Groaning can be caused by feeling a terrible, oppressive burden.
- Other ways to translate "groan" could include, "give a low cry of pain" or "grieve deeply."
- As a noun, this could be translated as "a low cry of distress" or "a deep murmur of pain."

(See also: cry)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 5:2
- Hebrews 13:17
- Job 23:2
- Psalms 32:3-4
- Psalms 102:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0584, H0585, H0602, H0603, H1901, H1993, H5008, H5009, H5098, H5594, H7581, G47260, G47270, G49590

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 13:17)

had relations with, lovemaking, sleep with, lie with

Definition:

In the Bible, these terms are euphemisms that refer to having sexual intercourse. (See: Euphemism)

- The expression "sleep with" someone commonly refers to having sexual relations with that person. The past tense is "slept with."
- In the Old Testament book "Song of Songs," the ULT uses the term "lovemaking" to translate the word "love," which in that context refers to sexual relations. This term is related to the expression "make love to."

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may use different expressions for these terms in different contexts, depending on whether whether those involved are a married couple or whether they have some other relationship. It is important to make sure that the translation of this term has the correct meaning in each context.
- Depending on the context, expressions like these could be used to translate "sleep with": "lie with" or "make love to" or "be intimate with."
- Other ways to translate "have relations with" could include "have sexual relations with" or "have marital relations with."
- The term "lovemaking" could also be translated as "loving" or "intimacy." Or there may be an expression that is a natural way to translate this in the project language.
- It is important to check that the terms used to translate this concept are acceptable to the people who will be using the Bible translation.

(See also: sexual immorality)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:1-2
- 1 Samuel 1:19
- Deuteronomy 21:13
- Genesis 19:5
- Matthew 1:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0160, H0935, H1540, H2181, H2233, H3045, H3212, H6172, H7250, H7901, H7903, G10970

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 13:4)

hand

Definition:

The word "hand" refers to the part of the body at the end of the arm. This term is often used figuratively to refer to a person's power, control, or action, whether it be in reference to God or in reference to a human person.

Some of the various uses of the term "hand" include the following:

- The term "hand" can be used figuratively to refer to the position of being "beside" a person, an object, or a location.
- To "lay a hand on" means to "harm." To "save from the hand of" means to prevent someone from being harmed by another person.
- The position of being "on the right hand" means "on the right side" or "to the right."
- The expression "by the hand of" someone means "by" or "through" the action of that person. For example, the phrase "by the hand of the Lord" means that God caused something to happen.
- Expressions such as "hand over to" or "deliver into the hands of" refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- The term "laying on of hands" can refer to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God's service, to pray for healing, or to ask God to bless that person.
- When Paul says "written by my hand," it means that he himself wrote that part of the letter rather than speaking it to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression "handed him the scroll" could also be translated as "gave him the scroll" or "put the scroll in his hand." It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- An expression such as "delivered them into the hands of their enemies" or "handed them over to their enemies," could be translated as "allowed their enemies to conquer them" or "caused them to be captured by their enemies" or "empowered their enemies to gain control over them."
- To "die by the hand of" could be translated as "be killed by."
- The expression "on the right hand of" could be translated as "on the right side of."
- In regard to Jesus being "seated at the right hand of God," if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: "on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority."

(See also: power, right hand, honor, bless)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:25
- Acts 8:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 9:5
- Genesis 14:20
- John 3:35
- Mark 7:32
- Matthew 6:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G07100, G11880, G14480, G14510, G21760, G29020, G40840, G44740, G54950, G54960, G54970

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:10; 6:2; 8:9; 10:31; 12:12)

hard, harden, hardness

Definition:

The term "hard" generally refers to something that is difficult, persistent, or unyielding.

- The use of "hard" (in various forms) with "heart" refers to people being stubbornly unrepentant or disobedient (usually) to God.
- When used as a modifier, its meaning is similar to "great effort."

Translation Suggestions

- The term "hard" could also be translated as "difficult" or "stubborn" or "challenging," depending on the context.
- The terms "hardness" or "hardness of heart" or "hard heart" could be translated as "stubbornness" or "persistent rebellion" or "rebellious attitude" or "stubborn disobedience" or "stubbornly not repenting."
- The term "hardened" could also be translated as "stubbornly unrepentant" or "refusing to obey."
- "Do not harden your heart" could be translated as "do not refuse to repent" or "do not stubbornly keep disobeying."
- Other ways to translate "hard-headed" or "hard-hearted" could include "stubbornly disobedient" or "continuing to disobey" or "refusing to repent" or "always rebelling."
- In expressions such as "work hard" or "try hard," the term "hard" could be translated as "with perseverance" or "diligently."
- The expression "press hard against" could also be translated as "shove with force" or "push strongly against."
- To "oppress people with hard labor" could be translated as "force people to work so hard that they suffer" or "cause people to suffer by forcing them to do very difficult work."
- A different kind of "hard labor" is experienced by a woman who is about to deliver a baby.

(See also: disobey, evil, heart, labor pains, stiff-necked)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 11:23
- Deuteronomy 15:7
- Exodus 14:4
- Hebrews 4:7
- John 12:40
- Matthew 19:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0553, H1692, H2388, H2389, H2420, H2864, H3021, H3332, H3513, H3515, H3966, H4165, H4522, H5450, H5647, H5797, H5810, H5980, H5999, H6089, H6381, H6635, H7185, H7186, H7188, H7280, H8068, H8307, H8631, G09170, G14190, G14210, G14220, G14230, G22050, G25320, G25530, G28720, G28730, G34250, G34330, G40530, G41830, G44560, G44570, G46410, G46420, G46430, G46450, G49120

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 3:8; 3:13; 3:15; 4:7)

heart

Definition:

The term "heart" refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term "heart" is often used figuratively to refer to a person's thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a "hard heart" is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
- The expression "take it to heart" means to treat something seriously and apply it to one's life.
- The term "brokenhearted" describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as "stomach" or "liver" to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If "heart" or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as "thoughts" or "emotions" or "desires."
- Depending on the context, "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" could be translated as "with all my energy" or "with complete dedication" or "completely" or "with total commitment."
- The expression "take it to heart" could be translated as "treat it seriously" or "carefully think about it."
- The expression "hard-hearted" could also be translated as "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to obey" or "continually disobeying God."
- Ways to translate "brokenhearted" could include "very sad" or "feeling deeply hurt."

(See also: hard)

Bible References:

- 1 John 3:17
- 1 Thessalonians 2:4
- 2 Thessalonians 3:13-15
- Acts 8:22
- Acts 15:9
- Luke 8:15
- Mark 2:6
- Matthew 5:8
- Matthew 22:37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1079, H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H5640, H7130, H7307, H7356, H7907, G06740, G12820, G12710, G21330, G25880, G25890, G46410, G46980, G55900

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 3:8; 3:10; 3:12; 3:15; 4:7; 4:12; 8:10; 10:16; 10:22; 13:9)

heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as "heaven" usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean "sky," depending on the context.

- The term "heavens" refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can't directly see from the earth.
- The term "sky" refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be "up in the sky."
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word "heaven" could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

Translation Suggestions:

- For "kingdom of heaven" in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word "heaven" since this is distinctive to Matthew's gospel.
- The terms "heavens" or "heavenly bodies" could also be translated as "sun, moon, and stars" or "all the stars in the universe."
- The phrase, "stars of heaven" could be translated as "stars in the sky" or "stars in the galaxy" or "stars in the universe."

(See also: kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Deuteronomy 9:1
- Ephesians 6:9
- Genesis 1:1
- Genesis 7:11
- John 3:12
- John 3:27
- Matthew 5:18
- Matthew 5:46-48

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:2** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called "manna."
- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, "Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!"
- **29:9** Then Jesus said, "This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart."
- **37:9** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, "Father, thank you for hearing me."
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G09320, G20320, G33210, G37700, G37710, G37720

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:10; 3:1; 4:14; 6:4; 7:26; 8:1; 8:5; 9:23; 9:24; 11:12; 11:16; 12:22; 12:23; 12:25; 12:26)

heir

Definition:

An "heir" is a person who legally receives property or money that belonged to a person who has died.

- In Bible times, the main heir was the firstborn son, who received most of the property and money of his father.
- The Bible also uses "heir" in a figurative sense to refer to person who as a Christian receives spiritual benefits from God, his spiritual father.
- As God's children, Christians are said to be "joint heirs" with Jesus Christ. This could also be translated as "co-heirs" or "fellow heirs" or "heirs together with."
- The term "heir" could be translated as "person receiving benefits" or whatever expression is used in the language to communicate the meaning of someone who receives property and other things when a parent or other relative dies.

(See also: firstborn, inherit)

Bible References:

- Galatians 4:1-2
- Galatians 4:7
- Genesis 15:1
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 20:14
- Mark 12:7
- Matthew 21:38-39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1121, H3423, G28160, G28180, G28200, G47890

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:2; 6:17; 11:7)

high priest, chief priests

Definition:

The term "high priest" refers to a special priest who was appointed to serve for one year as the leader of all of the other Israelite priests. In New Testament times, some other priests were also considered very important Jewish religious leaders, with authority over other priests and the people. These were the chief priests.

- The high priest had special responsibilities. He was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy part of the tabernacle or the temple to offer a special sacrifice once per year.
- The Israelites had many priests, but only one high priest at a time.
- After high priests retired, they still kept the title, along with some of the responsibilities of the office. For example, Annas was still referred to as high priest during the priesthood of Caiaphas and others.
- The chief priests were responsible for everything needed for the worship services at the temple. They were also in charge of the money that was given to the temple.
- The chief priests were higher in rank and power than the ordinary priests. Only the high priest had more authority.
- The chief priests were some of Jesus' main enemies and they strongly influenced the Roman leaders to arrest and kill him.

Translation Suggestions:

- "High priest" could be translated as "supreme priest" or "highest ranking priest."
- The term "chief priests" could be translated as "head priests" or "leading priests" or "ruling priests."

(See also: Annas, Caiaphas, priest, temple)

Bible References:

- Acts 5:27
- Acts 7:1
- Acts 9:1
- Exodus 30:10
- Hebrews 6:19-20
- Leviticus 16:32
- Luke 3:2
- Mark 2:25-26
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Matthew 26:51-54

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:8** No one could enter the room behind the curtain except the **high priest**, because God lived there.
- **21:7** The Messiah who would come would be the perfect **high priest** who would offer himself as a perfect sacrifice to God.
- **38:3** The Jewish leaders, led by the **high priest**, paid Judas thirty silver coins to betray Jesus.
- **39:1** The soldiers led Jesus to the house of the **high priest** in order for the **high priest** to question him.
- **39:3** Finally, the **high priest** looked directly at Jesus and said, "Tell us, are you the Messiah, the Son of the living God?"
- **44:7** The next day, the Jewish leaders brought Peter and John to the **high priest** and the other religious leaders.

- **45:2** So the religious leaders arrested Stephen and brought him to the **high priest** and the other leaders of the Jews, where more false witnesses lied about Stephen.
- **46:1** The **high priest** gave Saul permission to go to the city of Damascus to arrest Christians there and bring them back to Jerusalem.
- **48:6** Jesus is the Great **High Priest**. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only sacrifice that could to take away the sin of all the people in the world. Jesus was the perfect **high priest** because he took the punishment for every sin that anyone has ever committed.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7218, H1419, H3548, G07480, G07490

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2 General Notes; 2:17; 3:1; 4:14; 4:15; 5:1; 5:5; 5:10; 6:20; 7:26; 7:27; 7:28; 8:1; 8:3; 9:7; 9:11; 9:25; 13:11)

Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as "the Spirit" and "Spirit of Yahweh" and "Spirit of truth."
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God's Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God's will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate "holy" and "spirit."
- Ways to translate this term could also include "Pure Spirit" or "Spirit who is Holy" or "God the Spirit."

(See also: holy, spirit, God, Lord, God the Father, Son of God, gift)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:10
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7-8
- Acts 8:17
- Galatians 5:25
- Genesis 1:1-2
- Isaiah 63:10
- Job 33:4
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 28:18-19
- Psalms 51:10-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:1** But **God's Spirit** was there over the water.
- **24:8** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **26:1** After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **26:3** Jesus read, "God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:3** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **43:8** "And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are are now seeing and hearing."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit**."
- **45:1** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

Word Data:

• Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G00400, G41510

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2:4; 3:7; 6:4; 9:8; 9:14; 10:15; 10:29)

holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

Definition:

The terms "holy" and "holiness" refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term "unholy" means "not holy." It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called "unholy" could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term "sacred" describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term "sacred" was oftensed to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as "religious."
- "Sacred songs" and "sacred music" refer to music that was sung or played for God's glory. This could be translated as "music for worshiping Yahweh" or "songs that praise God."
- The phrase "sacred duties" referred to the "religious duties" or "rituals" that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "holy" might include "set apart for God" or "belonging to God" or "completely pure" or "perfectly sinless" or "separated from sin."
- To "make holy" is often translated as "sanctify" in English. It could also be translated as "set apart (someone) for God's glory."
- Ways to translate "unholy" could include "not holy" or "not belonging to God" or "not honoring to God" or "not godly."
- In some contexts, "unholy" could be translated as "unclean."

(See also: Holy Spirit, consecrate, sanctify, set apart)

Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 3:2
- Lamentations 4:1
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 7:6

- Mark 8:38
- Acts 7:33
- Acts 11:8
- Romans 1:2
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 1:22
- 1 Thessalonians 3:13
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 3:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **9:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:1** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:5** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:5** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:2** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G00370, G00380, G00400, G00400, G00410, G00420, G04620, G18590, G21500, G24120, G24130, G28390, G37410, G37420

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 3:1; 7:26; 8:2; 9:1; 9:2; 9:3; 9:8; 9:12; 9:24; 9:25; Notes; 10:19; 12:10; 12:14; 13:11)

honor

Definition:

The terms "honor" and to "honor" refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God instructs Christians to honor others.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
- The terms "honor" and "glory" are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "honor" could include "respect" or "esteem" or "high regard."
- The term to "honor" could be translated as to "show special respect to" or to "cause to be praised" or to "show high regard for" or to "highly value."

(See also: dishonor, glory, glory, praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:8
- Acts 19:17
- John 4:44
- John 12:26
- Mark 6:4
- Matthew 15:6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1420, H1921, H1922, H1923, H1926, H1927, H1935, H2082, H2142, H3366, H3367, H3368, H3372, H3373, H3374, H3444, H3513, H3519, H3655, H3678, H5081, H5375, H5457, H6213, H6286, H6437, H6942, H6944, H6965, H7236, H7613, H7812, H8597, H8416, G08200, G13910, G13920, G17840, G21510, G25700, G31700, G44110, G45860, G50910, G50920, G50930, G53990

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2:7; 2:9; 3:3; 5:4; 13:4)

hope, hoped

Definition:

Hope is strongly desiring something to happen. Hope can imply either certainty or uncertainty regarding a future event.

- In the Bible, the term "hope" also has the meaning of "trust," as in "my hope is in the Lord." It refers to a sure expectation of receiving what God has promised his people.
- Sometimes the ULT translates the term in the original language as "confidence." This happens mostly in the New Testament in situations where people who believe in Jesus as their Savior have the assurance (or confidence or hope) of receiving what God has promised.
- To have "no hope" means to have no expectation of something good happening. It means that it is actually very certain that it will not happen.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, the term to "hope" could also be translated as to "wish" or to "desire" or to "expect."
- The expression "nothing to hope for" could be translated as "nothing to trust in" or "no expectation of anything good"
- To "have no hope" could be translated as "have no expectation of anything good" or "have no security" or "be sure that nothing good will happen."
- The expression "have set your hopes on" could also be translated as "have put your confidence in" or "have been trusting in."
- The phrase "I find hope in your Word" could also be translated as "I am confident that your Word is true" or "Your Word helps me trust in you" or "When I obey your Word, I am certain to be blessed."
- Phrases such as "hope in" God could also be translated a, "trust in God" or "know for sure that God will do what he has promised" or "be certain that God is faithful."

(See also: bless, confidence, good, obey, trust, word of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:14-15
- 1 Thessalonians 2:19
- Acts 24:14-16
- Acts 26:6
- Acts 27:20
- Colossians 1:5
- Job 11:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0982, H0983, H0986, H2620, H2976, H3175, H3176, H3689, H4009, H4268, H4723, H7663, H7664, H8431, H8615, G00910, G05600, G16790, G16800, G20700

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 3:6; 6:11; 6:18; 7:19; 10:23; 11:1)

house of God, Yahweh's house

Definition:

In the Bible, the phrases "house of God" (God's house) and "house of Yahweh (Yahweh's house)" refer to a place where God is worshiped.

- This term is also used more specifically to refer to the tabernacle or the temple.
- Sometimes "God's house" is used to refer to the people of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a place of worship, this term could be translated as "a house for worshiping God" or "a place for worshiping God."
- If it is referring to the temple or tabernacle, this could be translated as "the temple (or tabernacle) where God is worshiped" (or "where God is present" or "where God meets with his people").
- The word "house" may be important to use in the translation in order to communicate that God "dwells" there, that is, his spirit is in that place to meet with his people and to be worshiped by them.

(See also: people of God, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 3:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
- Ezra 5:13
- Genesis 28:17
- Judges 18:30-31
- Mark 2:26
- Matthew 12:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0426, H0430, H1004, H1005, H3068, G23160, G36240

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 10:21)

house, household

Definition:

The term "house" refers to a small building, shelter, or tent, usually the place where a family sleeps. The term is often used figuratively in the Bible to mean various concepts such as "household" or "descendants," etc.

- Sometimes the term "house" means "household," referring to all the people who live together in one house or multi-structure home compound (whether buildings or tents), including family members and all their servants.
- Sometimes the term "house" means "family" or "descendants," referring to all the people related to or descended from a particular person. For example, the phrase "house of David" refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms "house of God" and "house of Yahweh" refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to a central place where Yahweh was worshipped.
- The phrase "house of Israel" can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, "house" could be translated as "household" or "people" or "family" or "descendants" or "temple" or "dwelling place."
- The phrase "house of David" could be translated as "clan of David" or "family of David" or "descendants of David." Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate "house of Israel" could include "people of Israel" or "Israel's descendants" or "Israelites."
- The phrase "house of Yahweh" could be translated as "Yahweh's temple" or "place where Yahweh is worshiped" or "place where Yahweh meets with his people" or "where Yahweh dwells." The phrase "house of God" could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: descendant, house of God, tabernacle, temple, house of David, kingdom of Israel)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:42
- Acts 7:49
- Genesis 39:4
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 8:39
- Matthew 10:6
- Matthew 15:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1005, G36090, G36130, G36140, G36240

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 3 General Notes; 3:2; 3:3; 3:4; 3:5; 3:6; 8:8; 8:10; 10:21)

household

Definition:

The term "household" refers to all the people who live together in a house, including family members and all their servants.

- Managing a household would involves directing the servants and also taking care of the property.
- Sometimes "household" can refer figuratively to the whole family line of someone, especially his descendants.

(See also: house)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:10
- Galatians 6:10
- Genesis 7:1
- Genesis 34:19
- John 4:53
- Matthew 10:25
- Matthew 10:36
- Philippians 4:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H5657, G23220, G36090, G36140, G36150, G36160, G36230, G36240

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 11:7)

imitate, imitator

Definition:

The terms "imitate" and "imitator" refers to copying someone else by acting exactly like that person does.

- Christians are taught to imitate Jesus Christ by obeying God and loving others, just as Jesus did.
- The apostle Paul told the early church to imitate him, just as he imitated Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "imitate" could be translated as "do the same things as" or "follow his example."
- The expression "be imitators of God" could be translated as "be people who act like God does" or "be people who do the kinds of things God does."
- "You became imitators of us" could be translated as "You followed our example" or "You are doing the same kinds of godly things that you saw us do."

Bible References:

- 3 John 1:11
- Matthew 23:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0310, H6213, G10960, G25960, G34010, G34020, G41600

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 6:12; 13:7)

incense

Definition:

The term "incense" refers to a mixture of fragrant spices that is burned to produce smoke that has a pleasant smell.

- God told the Israelites to burn incense as an offering to him.
- The incense had to be made by mixing equal amounts of five specific spices exactly as God directed. This was a sacred incense, so they were not allowed to use it for any other purpose.
- The "altar of incense" was a special altar that was only used for burning incense.
- The incense was offered at least four times a day, at each hour of prayer. It was also offered every time a burnt offering was made.
- The burning of incense represents prayer and worship rising up to God from his people.
- Other ways to translate "incense" could include "fragrant spices" or "good-smelling plants."

(See also: altar of incense, burnt offering, frankincense)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 3:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 13:10-11
- 2 Kings 14:4
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Luke 1:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2553, H3828, H4196, H4289, H5208, H6988, H6999, H7002, H7004, H7381, G23680, G23690, G23700, G23790, G30310

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 9:4)

inherit, inheritance, heir

Definition:

The term "inherit" refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after a parent dies. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person. An "inheritance" is the things that are received, and an "heir" is a person who receives an inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term "inherit" could be translated might include "receive" or "possess" or "come into possession of."
- Ways to translate "inheritance" could include "promised gift" or "secure possession."
- The term "heir" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "privileged child who receives the father's possessions."
- The term "heritage" could be translated as "inherited blessings."

(See also: heir, Canaan, Promised Land, possess)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- 1 Peter 1:4
- 2 Samuel 21:3
- Acts 7:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 5:21
- Genesis 15:7
- Hebrews 9:15
- Jeremiah 2:7
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29
- Psalm 79:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:6** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**."
- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?"
- **35:3** "There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, 'Father, I want my **inheritance** now!' So the father divided his property between the two sons."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G28160, G28170, G28190, G28200

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1 General Notes; 1:4; 1:14; 6:12; 9:15; 11:8; 12:17)

iniquity

Definition:

The term "iniquity" is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term "sin," but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

   • The word "iniquity" literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
   • Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
   • Other definitions of iniquity include "perversity" and "depravity," which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

Translation Suggestions:

   • The term "iniquity" could be translated as "wickedness" or "perverse actions" or "harmful acts."
   • Often, "iniquity" occurs in the same text as the word "sin" and "transgression" so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: sin, transgress, trespass)

Bible References:

   • Daniel 9:13
   • Exodus 34:5-7
   • Genesis 15:14-16
   • Genesis 44:16
   • Habakkuk 2:12
   • Matthew 13:41
   • Matthew 23:27-28
   • Micah 3:10

Word Data:

   • Strong's: H0205, H1942, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5932, H5999, H7562, G00920, G00930, G04580, G38920, G41890

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 8:12)

innocent

Definition:

The term "innocent" means to not be guilty of a crime or other wrongdoing. It can also refer more generally to people who are not involved in evil things.

- A person accused of doing something wrong is innocent if he has not committed that wrong.
- Sometimes the term "innocent" is used to refer to people who have done nothing wrong to deserve the bad treatment they are receiving, as in an enemy army attacking "innocent people."
- In the Bible, "blood" can represent "killing," so "innocent blood" refers to "killing people who did not deserve to die."

Translation Suggestions:

- In most contexts, the term "innocent" can be translated as "not guilty" or "not responsible" or "not to blame" for something.
- When referring in general to innocent people, this term could be translated as "who have done nothing wrong" or "who are not involved in evil."
- "To shed innocent blood" can be translated as "to kill people who did not deserve to die."

(See also: guilt)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 4:4
- 1 Samuel 19:5
- Acts 20:26
- Exodus 23:7
- Jeremiah 22:17
- Job 9:23
- Romans 16:18

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:6** After two years, Joseph was still in prison, even though he was **innocent**.
- **40:4** One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, "Do you have no fear of God? We are guilty, but this man is **innocent**."
- **40:8** When the soldier guarding Jesus saw everything that happened, he said, "Certainly, this man was **innocent**. He was the Son of God."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2136, H2600, H2643, H5352, H5355, H5356, G01210

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 7:26)

instruct, instruction, instructors

Facts:

The terms "instruct" and "instruction" refer to giving specific directions about what to do.

- To "give instructions" means to tell someone specifically what he is supposed to do.
- When Jesus gave the disciples the bread and fish to distribute to the people, he gave them specific instructions about how to do it.
- Depending on the context, the term "instruct" could also be translated as "tell" or "direct" or "teach" or "give instructions to."
- The term "instructions" could be translated as "directions" or "explanations" or "what he has told you to do."
- When God gives instructions, this term is sometimes translated as "commands" or "orders."

(See also: command, decree, teach)

Bible References:

- Exodus 14:4
- Genesis 26:5
- Hebrews 11:22
- Matthew 10:5
- Matthew 11:1
- Proverbs 1:30

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0241, H0376, H0559, H0631, H1004, H1696, H1697, H3256, H3289, H3384, H4148, H4156, H4687, H4931, H4941, H6098, H6310, H6490, H6680, H7919, H8451, G12560, G12990, G13190, G13210, G13780, G17810, G17850, G27270, G27530, G35590, G35600, G38110, G38520, G38530, G42640, G43670, G48220

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 11:22)

intercede, intercession

Definition:

The terms "intercede" and "intercession" refer to making requests to someone on behalf of another person. In the Bible this usually refers to praying for other people.

- The expressions "make intercession for" and "intercede for" mean to make requests to God for the benefit of other people.
- The Bible teaches that the Holy Spirit intercedes for us, that is, he prays to God for us.
- A person intercedes for other people by making requests for them to someone in authority.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "intercede" could include "plead for" or "urge (someone) to do something (for someone else)."
- The noun "intercessions" could be translated as "appeals" or "requests" or "urgent prayers."
- The phrase "make intercession for" could be translated as "make requests for the benefit of" or "make an appeal on behalf of" or "ask God to help" or "appeal to God to bless (someone)."

(See also: pray)

Bible References:

- Hebrews 7:25-26
- Isaiah 53:12
- Jeremiah 29:6-7
- Romans 8:26-27
- Romans 8:33-34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6293, G17830, G17930, G52410

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 7:25)

Isaac

Facts:

Isaac was the only son of Abraham and Sarah. God had promised to give them a son even though they were very old.

- The name "Isaac" means "he laughs." When God told Abraham that Sarah would give birth to a son, Abraham laughed because they were both very old. Some time later, Sarah also laughed when she heard this news.
- But God fulfilled his promise and Isaac was born to Abraham and Sarah in their old age.
- God told Abraham that the covenant he had made with Abraham would also be for Isaac and his descendants forever.
- When Isaac was a youth, God tested Abraham's faith by commanding him to sacrifice Isaac.
- Isaac's son Jacob had twelve sons whose descendants later became the twelve tribes of the nation of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, descendant, eternity, fulfill, Jacob, Sarah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- Galatians 4:28-29
- Genesis 25:9-11
- Genesis 25:19
- Genesis 26:1
- Genesis 26:8
- Genesis 28:1-2
- Genesis 31:18
- Matthew 8:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:4** "Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of promise. Name him **Isaac**."
- **5:6** When **Isaac** was a young man, God tested Abraham's faith by saying, "Take **Isaac**, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **5:9** God had provided the ram to be the sacrifice instead of **Isaac**.
- **6:1** When Abraham was very old and his son, **Isaac**, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, **Isaac.**
- **6:5 Isaac** prayed for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **7:10** Then **Isaac** died, and Jacob and Esau buried him. The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to **Isaac** now passed on to Jacob.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3327, H3446, G24640

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 11:9; 11:17; 11:18; 11:20)

Israel, Israelites

Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. Often it refers to the nation that is descended from him.

- The name Israel probably means "He struggles with God."
- The descendants of Jacob became known as the "sons of Israel" or the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
- Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: Jacob, kingdom of Israel, Judah, nation, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1
- 1 Kings 8:2
- Acts 2:36
- Acts 7:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 27:9
- Philippians 3:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **9:3** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **9:5** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:1** They said, "This is what the God of **Israel** says, 'Let my people go!'"
- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of _Israel_ complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:9** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel _** *its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave* _**Israel** peace along all its borders.
- **16:16** So God punished _Israel_ again for worshiping idols.
- **43:6** "Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G09350, G24740, G24750

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 8:8; 8:10; 11:22)

it is written

Definition:

The phrase "as it is written" or "what is written" occurs frequently in the New Testament and usually refers to commands or prophecies that were written in the Hebrew scriptures.

- Sometimes "as it is written" refers to what was written in the Law of Moses.
- Other times it is a quote from what one of the prophets wrote in the Old Testament.
- This could be translated "as it is written in the Law of Moses" or "as the prophets wrote long ago" or "what it says in God's laws that Moses wrote down long ago".
- Another option is to keep "It is written" and give a footnote that explains what this means.

(See also: command, law, prophet, word of God)

Bible References:

- 1 John 5:13-15
- Acts 13:29
- Exodus 32:15-16
- John 21:25
- Luke 3:4
- Mark 9:12
- Matthew 4:6
- Revelation 1:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3789, G11250

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 10:7)

Jacob, Israel

Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac by Rebekah. God changed his name to "Israel." His descendants became the nation of Israel.

- Jacob is the last of the three patriarchs of the Israelite nation: Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. The descendants of Jacob's twelve sons because the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The name Jacob is similar to the Hebrew word meaning "heel." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau. In the Old Testament times, the heel was a body part associated both with attack and with the rear part of a person's body. The Hebrew name Jacob was probably associated with the idea of attacking someone from behind.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which probably means "He struggles with God."
- Jacob married Laban's two daughters, Leah and Rachel, as well as each of their servants, Zilpah and Bilhah. These four women mothered the twelve sons who became the ancestral fathers of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- In the New Testament, a different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Israel, twelve tribes of Israel, Leah, Rachel, Zilpah, Bilhah, deceive, Esau, Isaac, Rebekah, Laban)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:11
- Acts 7:46
- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- John 4:4-5
- Matthew 8:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **7:1** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **7:7 Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **7:8** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **7:10** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **8:1** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3290, G23840

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 11:9; 11:20; 11:21)

Jephthah

Facts:

Jephthah was a warrior from Gilead who served as a judge over Israel.

- • In Hebrews 11:32, Jephthah is praised as an important leader who delivered his people from their enemies.
- • He rescued the Israelites from the Ammonites and led his people to defeat the Ephraimites.
- • Jepthah however, made a foolish, hasty vow to God which resulted in the sacrifice of his daughter.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Ammon, deliver, Ephraim, judge, vow)

Bible References:

- • Hebrews 11:32-34
- • Judges 11:1-3
- • Judges 11:35
- • Judges 12:2

Word Data:

- • Strong's: H3316

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 11:32)

Jericho

Facts:

Jericho was a powerful city in the land of Canaan. It was located just west of the Jordan River and just north of the Salt Sea.

- • As all Canaanites did, the people of Jericho worshiped false gods.
- • Jericho was the first city in the land of Canaan that God told the Israelites to conquer.
- • When Joshua led the Israelites against Jericho, God did a great miracle to help them defeat the city.

(See also: Canaan, Jordan River, Joshua, miracle, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- • 1 Chronicles 6:78
- • Joshua 2:1-3
- • Joshua 7:2-3
- • Luke 18:35
- • Mark 10:46-48
- • Matthew 20:29-31
- • Numbers 22:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- • **15:1** Joshua sent two spies to the Canaanite city of **Jericho**.
- • **15:3** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of **Jericho**.
- • **15:5** Then the walls around **Jericho** fell down! The Israelites destroyed everything in the city as God had commanded.

Word Data:

- • Strong's: H3405, G24100

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 11:30)

Jerusalem

Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name "Jerusalem" is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include "Salem" "city of Jebus," and "Zion." Both "Jerusalem" and "Salem," have the root meaning of "peace."
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called "Zion" which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going "up" to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: Babylon, Christ, David, Jebusites, Jesus, Solomon, temple, Zion)

Bible References:

- Galatians 4:26-27
- John 2:13
- Luke 4:9-11
- Luke 13:5
- Mark 3:7-8
- Mark 3:20-22
- Matthew 3:6
- Matthew 4:23-25
- Matthew 20:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:5** David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- **18:2** In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **20:7** They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.
- **38:1** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:2** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere."
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3389, H3390, G24140, G24150, G24190

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 12:22)

Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

Facts:

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means "Yahweh saves." The term "Christ" is a title that means "anointed one" and is another word for Messiah.

- The two names are often combined as "Jesus Christ" or "Christ Jesus." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah, who came to save people from being punished eternally for their sins.
- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His mother was told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many languages "Jesus" and "Christ" are spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term "Christ," some translators may prefer to use only some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
- Also consider how these names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Christ, God, God the Father, high priest, kingdom of God, Mary, Savior, Son of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:11
- 1 John 2:2
- 1 John 4:15
- 1 Timothy 1:2
- 2 Peter 1:2
- 2 Thessalonians 2:15
- 2 Timothy 1:10
- Acts 2:23
- Acts 5:30
- Acts 10:36
- Hebrews 9:14
- Hebrews 10:22
- Luke 24:20
- Matthew 1:21
- Matthew 4:3
- Philippians 2:5
- Philippians 2:10
- Philippians 4:21-23
- Revelation 1:6

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:4** The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him **Jesus** and he will be the Messiah."
- **23:2** "Name him **Jesus** (which means, 'Yahweh saves'), because he will save the people from their sins."

- **24:7** So John baptized him (Jesus), even though **Jesus** had never sinned.
- **24:9** There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw **Jesus** the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized **Jesus**.
- **25:8 Jesus** did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.
- **26:8** Then **Jesus** went throughout the region of Galilee, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and **Jesus** healed them.
- **31:3** Then **Jesus** finished praying and went to the disciples. He walked on top of the water across the lake toward their boat!
- **38:2** He (Judas) knew that the Jewish leaders denied that **Jesus** was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him.
- **40:8** Through his death, **Jesus** opened a way for people to come to God.
- **42:11** Then **Jesus** was taken up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight. **Jesus** sat down at the right hand of God to rule over all things.
- **50:17 Jesus** and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything that exists. He will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death. **Jesus** will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G24240, G55470

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2:9; 3:1; 4:14; 6:20; 7:22; 10:10; 10:19; 12:2; 12:24; 13:8; 13:12; 13:20; 13:21)

Joseph (OT)

Facts:

Joseph was Jacob's eleventh son. He was Rachel's first son. The descendants of his two sons Ephraim and Manasseh became two of the tribes of Israel.

- The Hebrew name Joseph is similar to both the Hebrew word meaning "to add, increase" and the Hebrew word meaning "to gather, take away."
- A large portion of the book of Genesis is dedicated to the story of Joseph, how he remained faithful to God throughout his many difficulties and forgave his brothers who had sold him to be a slave in Egypt.
- Eventually God raised Joseph to the second highest place of power in Egypt and used him to save the people of Egypt and the surrounding nations in a time when there was little food. Joseph helped save his own family from starving and brought them to live with him in Egypt.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Ephraim, Manasseh, Jacob, Rachel)

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:22-24
- Genesis 33:1-3
- Genesis 37:1-2
- Genesis 37:23-24
- Genesis 41:55-57
- John 4:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:2 Joseph's** brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had dreamed that he would be their ruler.
- **8:4** The slave traders took **Joseph** to Egypt.
- **8:5** Even in prison, **Joseph** remained faithful to God, and God blessed him.
- **8:7** God had given **Joseph** the ability to interpret dreams, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison.
- **8:9 Joseph** told the people to store up large amounts of food during the seven years of good harvests.
- **9:2** The Egyptians no longer remembered **Joseph** and all he had done to help them.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3084, H3130, G25000, G25010

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 11:21; 11:22)

Joshua

Facts:

There were several Israelite men named Joshua in the Bible. The most well-known is Joshua son of Nun who was Moses' helper and who later became an important leader of God's people.

- Joshua was one of the twelve spies whom Moses sent to explore the Promised Land.
- Along with Caleb, Joshua urged the Israelite people to obey God's command to enter the Promised Land and defeat the Canaanites.
- Many years later, after Moses died, God appointed Joshua to lead the people of Israel into the Promised Land.
- In the first and most famous battle against the Canaanites, Joshua led the Israelites to defeat the city of Jericho.
- The Old Testament book of Joshua tells how Joshua led the Israelites in taking control of the Promised Land and how he assigned each tribe of Israel a part of the land to live on.
- Joshua son of Jozadak is mentioned in the books of Haggai and Zechariah; he was a high priest who helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- There are several other men named Joshua mentioned in the genealogies and elsewhere in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Haggai, Jericho, Moses, Promised Land, Zechariah (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 7:25-27
- Deuteronomy 3:21
- Exodus 17:10
- Joshua 1:3
- Numbers 27:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:4** When the Israelites reached the edge of Canaan, Moses chose twelve men, one from each tribe of Israel. He gave the men instructions to go and spy on the land to see what it was like.
- **14:6** Immediately Caleb and **Joshua**, the other two spies, said, "It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **14:8** "Except for **Joshua** and Caleb, everyone who is twenty years old or older will die there and never enter the Promised Land."
- **14:14** Moses was now very old, so God chose **Joshua** to help him lead the people.
- **14:15 Joshua** was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **15:3** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told **Joshua** how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3091, G24240

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 4:8)

joy, joyful, rejoice, glad

Definition:

joy

The term "joy" refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term "joyful" describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

rejoice

The term "rejoice" means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as "be very happy" or "be very glad" or "be full of joy."
- When Mary said "my soul rejoices in God my Savior," she meant "God my Savior has made me very happy" or "I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "joy" could also be translated as "gladness" or "delight" or "great happiness."
- The phrase, "be joyful" could be translated as "rejoice" or "be very glad" or it could be translated "be very happy in God's goodness."
- A person who is joyful could be described as "very happy" or "delighted" or "deeply glad."
- A phrase such as "make a joyful shout" could be translated as "shout in a way that shows you are very happy."
- A "joyful city" or "joyful house" could be translated as "city where joyful people live" or "house full of joyful people" or "city whose people are very happy." (See: metonymy)

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 8:10
- Psalm 48:2
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 2:9-10
- Luke 15:7
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 3:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 5:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 5:23
- Philippians 4:10-13

- 1 Thessalonians 1:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:16
- Philemon 1:4-7
- James 1:2
- 3 John 1:1-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:7** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **34:4** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:7** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G00200, G00210, G21650, G21670, G27440, G46400, G47960, G49130, G54630, G54790

Judah

Facts:

Judah was Jacob's fourth son. He was Leah's fourth son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Judah" or "Judah."
- His name sounds similar to the Hebrew word meaning "praise."
- The tribe of Judah settled in the southern part of Canaan, including the mountainous area to the south of the city of Jerusalem. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Judah" refers to the land given to the tribe of Judah.
- In the Old Testament, the name Judah is sometimes used to refer to the whole southern kingdom of Israel (similar to how the name Ephraim is sometimes used to refer to the whole northern kingdom).
- King David, King Solomon, and all the kings of the southern kingdom were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Judah (kingdom), Jew, Judea, Jacob, Leah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 1:9
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:2
- Luke 3:33
- Ruth 1:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3063

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 7:14; 8:8)

judge

Definition:

A judge is a person who decides what is right or wrong when there are disputes between people, usually in matters that pertain to the law.

- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a judge because he is the one perfect judge who makes the final decisions about what is right or wrong.
- After the people of Israel entered the land of Canaan and before they had kings to rule them, God appointed leaders called "judges" to lead them in times of trouble. Often these judges were military leaders who rescued the Israelites by defeating their enemies.
- The term "judge" could also be called "decision-maker" or "leader" or "deliverer" or "governor," depending on the context.

(See also: governor, judge, law)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:8
- Acts 7:27
- Luke 11:19
- Luke 12:14
- Luke 18:1-2
- Matthew 5:25
- Ruth 1:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0148, H0430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1781, H1782, H6414, H6416, H6419, H8199, G03500, G12520, G13480, G29190, G29220, G29230

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 4:12; 12:23)

judge, judgment

Definition:

The terms "judge" and "judgment" often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right. However, these terms can also refer to actions performed by a person as the result of a decision, usually in the context of deciding that something is bad, wrong, or evil.

- The terms "judge" and "judgment" can also mean "to cause harm to" (usually because God has decided a person or nation's actions are wicked).
- The "judgment of God" often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God's judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term "judge" can also mean "condemn." God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is "arbitrate between" or "judge between," as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God's "judgments" are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- "Judgment" can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks "judgment" does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to "judge" could include to "decide" or to "condemn" or to "punish" or to "decree."
- The term "judgment" could be translated as "punishment" or "decision" or "verdict" or "decree" or "condemnation."
- In some contexts, the phrase "in the judgment" could also be translated as "on judgment day" or "during the time when God judges people."

(See also: decree, judge, judgment day, just, law, law)

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:17
- 1 Kings 3:9
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 3:14
- James 2:4
- Luke 6:37
- Micah 3:9-11
- Psalm 54:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:8** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, "We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?"

- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0148, H0430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G01440, G03500, G09680, G11060, G12520, G13410, G13450, G13480, G13490, G29170, G29190, G29200, G29220, G29230, G42320

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 6:2; 9:27; 10:27; 10:30; 13:4)

just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification

Definition:

"Just" and "justice" refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
- To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God's laws.
- To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."

The terms "unjust" and "unjustly" refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An "injustice" is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being "partial" or "prejudiced" because he is not treating people equally.

The terms "justify" and "justification" refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- "Justification" refers to what God does when he forgives a person's sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include "morally right" or "fair."
- The term "justice" could be translated as "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."
- To "act justly" could be translated as "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."
- In some contexts, "just" could be translated as "righteous" or "upright."
- Depending on the context, "unjust" could also be translated as "unfair" or "partial" or "unrighteous."
- The phrase "the unjust" could be translated as "the unjust ones" or "unjust people" or "people who treat others unfairly" or "unrighteous people" or "people who disobey God."
- The term "unjustly" could be translated as "in an unfair manner" or "wrongly" or "unfairly."
- Ways to translate "injustice" could include, "wrong treatment" or "unfair treatment" or "acting unfairly." (See: abstractnouns)
- Other ways to translate "justify" could include "declare (someone) to be righteous" or "cause (someone) to be righteous."
- The term "justification" could be translated as "being declared righteous" or "becoming righteous" or "causing people to be righteous."
- The phrase "resulting in justification" could be translated as "so that God justified many people" or "which resulted in God causing people to be righteous."
- The phrase "for our justification" could be translated as "in order that we could be made righteous by God."

(See also: forgive, guilt, judge, righteous, righteous)

Bible References:

- Genesis 44:16
- 1 Chronicles 18:14
- Isaiah 4:3-4
- Jeremiah 22:3
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Micah 3:8
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 11:19
- Matthew 23:23-24
- Luke 18:3
- Luke 18:8
- Luke 18:13-14
- Luke 21:20-22
- Luke 23:41
- Acts 13:38-39
- Acts 28:4
- Romans 4:1-3
- Galatians 3:6-9
- Galatians 3:11
- Galatians 5:3-4
- Titus 3:6-7
- Hebrews 6:10
- James 2:24
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:9** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H2555, H3477, H4941, H5765, H5766, H5767, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, H8636, G00910, G00930, G00940, G13420, G13440, G13450, G13460, G13470, G17380

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2:2)

king, kingship

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "king" refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
- The Bible often refers to God is as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: "king of the Jews;" "king of Israel;" and "king of kings."
- Depending on the context, the term "king" might also be translated as "supreme chief" or "sovereign ruler."
- The phrase "king of kings" might be translated as "king who rules over all other kings" or "supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers."

(See also: authority, Herod Antipas, kingdom, kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 6:15-16
- 2 Kings 5:18
- 2 Samuel 5:3
- Acts 7:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 1:5
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 5:35
- Matthew 14:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:6** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **16:1** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **17:5** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **21:6** God's prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4427, H4428, H4430, G09350, G09360

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 7:1; 7:2; 11:23; 11:27)

kingdom

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term "kingdom" can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term "kingdom of God."
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term "kingdom of God" especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a "kingdom" in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as "darkness."

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term "kingdom" could be translated as "country (ruled by a king)" or "king's territory" or "region ruled by a king."
- In a spiritual sense, "kingdom" could be translated as "ruling" or "reigning" or "controlling" or "governing."
- One way to translate "kingdom of priests" might be "spiritual priests who are ruled by God."
- The phrase "kingdom of light" could be translated as "God's reign that is good like light" or "when God, who is light, rules people" or "the light and goodness of God's kingdom." It is best to keep the word "light" in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term "kingdom" is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: authority, king, kingdom of God, kingdom of Israel, Judah, Judah, priest)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:12
- 2 Timothy 4:17-18
- Colossians 1:13-14
- John 18:36
- Mark 3:24
- Matthew 4:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 1:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:2** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation."
- **18:4** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon's death.
- **18:7** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:8** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **21:8** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

Word Data:

• Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G09320

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 11:33)

kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven

Definition:

The terms "kingdom of God" and "kingdom of heaven" both refer to God's rule and authority over his people and over all creation.

- The Jews often used the term "heaven" to refer to God, to avoid saying his name directly. (See: metonymy)
- In the New Testament book that Matthew wrote, he referred to God's kingdom as "the kingdom of heaven," probably because he was writing primarily for a Jewish audience.
- The kingdom of God refers to God ruling people spiritually as well as ruling over the physical world.
- The Old Testament prophets said that God would send the Messiah to rule with righteousness. Jesus, the Son of God, is the Messiah who will rule over God's kingdom forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "kingdom of God" can be translated as "God's rule (as king)" or "when God reigns as king" or "God's rule over everything."
- The term "kingdom of heaven" could also be translated as "God's rule from heaven as king" or "God in heaven reigning" or "heaven's reign" or "heaven ruling over everything." If it is not possible to translate this simply and clearly, the phrase "kingdom of God" could be translated instead.
- Some translators may prefer to capitalize "Heaven" to show that it refers to God. Others may include a note in the text, such as "kingdom of heaven (that is, 'kingdom of God')."
- A footnote at the bottom of the page of a printed Bible may also be used to explain the meaning of "heaven" in this expression.

(See also: God, heaven, king, kingdom, King of the Jews, reign)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 1:5
- Acts 8:12-13
- Acts 28:23
- Colossians 4:11
- John 3:3
- Luke 7:28
- Luke 10:9
- Luke 12:31-32
- Matthew 3:2
- Matthew 4:17
- Matthew 5:10
- Romans 14:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:2** He (John) preached to them, saying, "Repent, for the **kingdom of God** is near!"
- **28:6** Then Jesus said to his disciples, "It is extremely hard for rich people to enter into the **kingdom of God**! Yes, it is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the **kingdom of God**."
- **29:2** Jesus said, "The **kingdom of God** is like a king who wanted to settle accounts with his servants."
- **34:1** Jesus told many other stories about the **kingdom of God**. For example, he said, "The **kingdom of God** is like a mustard seed that someone planted in his field."

- **34:3** Jesus told another story, "The **kingdom of God** is like yeast that a woman mixes into some bread dough until it spreads throughout the dough."
- **34:4** "The **kingdom of God** is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again."
- **34:5** "The **kingdom of God** is also like a perfect pearl of great value."
- **42:9** He proved to his disciples in many ways that he was alive, and he taught them about the **kingdom of God**.
- **49:5** Jesus said that the **kingdom of God** is more valuable than anything else in the world.
- **50:2** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will preach the good news about the **kingdom of God** to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

Word Data:

- Strong's: G09320, G23160, G37720

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:8; 12:28)

know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Definition:

The term "know" and "knowledge" means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression "to make known" means to tell information.

- The term "knowledge" refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To "know about" God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To "know" God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God's will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To "know the Law" means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes "knowledge" is used as a synonym for "wisdom," which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The "knowledge of God" is sometimes used as a synonym for the "fear of Yahweh."
- When used of a man and a woman to "know" is often an euphemism that refers to having sexual intercourse.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "know" could include "understand" or "be familiar with" or "be aware of" or "be acquainted with" or "be in relationship with."
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as "distinguish." When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition "between."
- Some languages have two different words for "know," one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term "make known" could be translated as "cause people to know" or "reveal" or "tell about" or "explain."
- To "know about" something could be translated as "be aware of" or "be familiar with."
- The expression "know how to" means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as "be able to" or "have the skill to."
- The term "knowledge" could also be translated as "what is known" or "wisdom" or "understanding," depending on the context.

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 2:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 2:15
- 2 Peter 1:3-4
- Deuteronomy 4:39-40
- Genesis 19:5
- Luke 1:77

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H3045, H3046, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G00500, G00560, G10970, G11070, G11080, G14920, G19210, G19220, G19870, G24670, G25890, G42670, G48940

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 3:10; 5:2; 8:11; 10:26; 10:30; 10:34; 11:8; 12:17; 13:23)

labor, laborer, work, hard work

Definition:

The term "labor" refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- In English, the word "labor" is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
- Ways to translate "labor" could include "work" or "hard work" or "difficult work" or to "work hard."

(See also: hard, labor pains)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:9
- 1 Thessalonians 3:5
- Galatians 4:10-11
- James 5:4
- John 4:38
- Luke 10:2
- Matthew 10:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3018, H3021, H3022, H3205, H4522, H4639, H5447, H5450, H5647, H5656, H5998, H5999, H6001, H6089, H6468, H6635, G00750, G20380, G20400, G20410, G28720, G28730, G48660, G49040

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 11:33)

lampstand

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "lampstand" generally refers to a structure on which a lamp is placed in order to provide light to a room.

- A simple lampstand usually held one lamp and was made of clay, wood, or metal (such as bronze, silver, or gold.)
- In the Jerusalem temple there was a special gold lampstand which had seven branches for holding seven lamps.

Translation Suggestions

- This term could be also translated as "lamp pedestal" or "structure for holding a lamp" or "lamp holder."
- For the temple lampstand, this could be translated as "seven-lamp lampstand" or "gold pedestal with seven lamps."
- It would also be helpful in a translation to include pictures of a simple lampstand and a seven-branch lampstand in the relevant Bible passages.

(See also: bronze, gold, lamp, light, silver, temple)

Bible References:

- Daniel 5:5-6
- Exodus 37:17
- Mark 4:21-23
- Matthew 5:15-16
- Revelation 1:12-13
- Revelation 1:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4501, G30870

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 9:2)

last day, latter days

Definition:

The term "last days" or "latter days" refers generally to the time period at the end of the current age.

- This time period will have an unknown duration.
- The "last days" are a time of judgment upon those who have turned away from God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "last days" can also be translated as "final days" or "end times."
- In some contexts, this could be translated as "end of the world" or "when this world ends."

(See also: day of the Lord, judge, turn, world)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 3:3-4
- Daniel 10:14-15
- Hebrews 1:2
- Isaiah 2:2
- James 5:3
- Jeremiah 23:19-20
- John 11:24-26
- Micah 4:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0319, H3117, G20780, G22500

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:2)

law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God

Definition:

Most simply, the term "law" refers to a rule or instruction that should be followed. In the Bible, the term "law" is often used generally to refer to anything and everything God wants his people to obey and do. The specific term "law of Moses" refers to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey.

- Depending on the context, the "law" can refer to:
    - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
    - all the laws given to Moses
    - the first five books of the Old Testament
    - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as "scriptures" in the New Testament).
    - all of God's instructions and will
- The phrase "the Law and the Prophets" is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or "Old Testament")

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, "laws," since they refer to many instructions.
- The term "law of Moses" could be translated as "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Depending on the context, "the law of Moses" could also be translated as "the law that God told to Moses" or "God's laws that Moses wrote down" or "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Ways to translate "the law" or "law of God" or "God's laws" could include "laws from God" or "God's commands" or "laws that God gave" or "everything that God commands" or "all of God's instructions."
- The phrase "law of Yahweh" could also be translated as "Yahweh's laws" or "laws that Yahweh said to obey" or "laws from Yahweh" or "things Yahweh commanded."

(See also: instruct, Moses, Ten Commandments, lawful, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Acts 15:6
- Daniel 9:13
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 7:25-26
- Galatians 2:15
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 5:18
- Nehemiah 10:29
- Romans 3:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:7** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.
- **16:1** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.

- **21:5** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
- **27:1** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"
- **28:1** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G23160, G35510, G35650

law, principle

Definition:

A "law" is a legal rule that is usually written down and enforced by someone in authority. A "principle" is a guideline for decision-making and behavior, and is usually not written down or enforced. However, sometimes the term "law" is used to mean a "principle."

- A "law" is similar to a "decree," but the term "law" is generally used to refer to something written rather than spoken.
- Both "law" and "principle" can refer to a general rule or belief that guides a person's behavior.
- This meaning of "law" is different from its meaning in the term "law of Moses," where it refers to commands and instructions that God gave the Israelites.
- When a general law is being referred to, "law" could be translated as "principle" or "general rule."

(See also: law of Moses, decree, command, declare)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 4:2
- Esther 3:8-9
- Exodus 12:12-14
- Genesis 26:5
- John 18:31
- Romans 7:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2708, H2710, H4687, H4941, H6310, H7560, H8451, G17850, G35480, G35510, G47470

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 7:12; 7:16; 8:10; 10:16)

lawful, unlawful, not lawful, lawless, lawlessness

Definition:

The term "lawful" refers to something that is permitted to be done according to a law or other requirement. The opposite of this is "unlawful," which simply means "not lawful."

- In the Bible, something was "lawful" if it was permitted by God's moral law, or by the Law of Moses and other Jewish laws. Something that was "unlawful" was "not permitted" by those laws.
- To do something "lawfully" means to do it "properly" or "in the right way."
- Many of the things that the Jewish laws considered lawful or not lawful were not in agreement with God's laws about loving others.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate "lawful" could include "permitted" or "according to God's law" or "following our laws" or "proper" or "fitting."
- The phrase "Is it lawful?" could also be translated as "Do our laws allow?" or "Is that something our laws permit?"

The terms "unlawful" and "not lawful" are used to describe actions that break a law.

- In the New Testament, the term "unlawful" is not only used to refer to breaking God's laws, but also often refers to breaking Jewish man-made laws.
- Over the years, the Jews added to the laws that God gave to them. The Jewish leaders would call something "unlawful" if it did not conform to their man-made laws.
- When Jesus and his disciples were picking grain on a Sabbath day, the Pharisees accused them of doing something "unlawful" because it was breaking the Jewish laws about not working on that day.
- When Peter stated that eating unclean foods was "unlawful" for him, he meant that if he ate those foods he would be breaking the laws God had given the Israelites about not eating certain foods.

The term "lawless" describes a person who does not obey laws or rules. When a country or group of people are in a state of "lawlessness," there is widespread disobedience, rebellion, or immorality.

- A lawless person is rebellious and does not obey God's laws.
- The apostle Paul wrote that in the last days there will be a "man of lawlessness," or a "lawless one," who will be influenced by Satan to do evil things.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term "unlawful" should be translated using a word or expression that means "not lawful" or "lawbreaking."
- Other ways to translate "unlawful" could be "not permitted" or "not according to God's law" or "not conforming to our laws."
- The expression "against the law" has the same meaning as "unlawful."
- The term "lawless" could also be translated as "rebellious" or "disobedient" or "law-defying".
- The term "lawlessness" could be translated as "not obeying any laws" or "rebellion (against God's laws)."
- The phrase "man of lawlessness" could be translated as "man who does not obey any laws" or "man who rebels against God's laws."
- It is important to keep the concept of "law" in this term, if possible.
- Note that the term "unlawful" has a different meaning from this term.

(See also: law, law, Moses, Sabbath)

Bible References:

- Matthew 7:21-23

- Matthew 12:2
- Matthew 12:4
- Matthew 12:10
- Mark 3:4
- Luke 6:2
- Acts 2:23
- Acts 10:28
- Acts 22:25
- 2 Thessalonians 2:3
- Titus 2:14
- 1 John 3:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6530, G01110, G01130, G02660, G04580, G04590, G18320, G35450

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:9; 10:17)

Levi, Levite

Definition:

Levi was Jacob's third son. He was Leah's third son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Levi" or the "Levites."
- The name Levi is similar to the Hebrew word for "join to."
- Unlike the other tribes, the tribe of Levi did not inherit a unified area of land in Canaan. Instead, they inherited various cities scattered throughout the regions belonging to the other tribes.
- The tribe of Levi was responsible for taking care of the tabernacle (and later, the temple) and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers for the Israelite people.
- In the Old Testament, it is not always clear whether the term "Levite" refers generally to a descendant of Levi or specifically to a person who served in the temple helping the priests.
- The Old Testament law prescribed that all priests were to be chosen from the tribe of Levi. The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named "Levi" were ancestors of Jesus. Their names are listed in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus' disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, priest, sacrifice, temple, Jacob, Leah, Matthew)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 8:3-5
- Acts 4:36-37
- Genesis 29:34
- John 1:19-21
- Luke 10:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3878, H3879, H3881, G30170, G30180, G30190, G30200

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 7:5; 7:9; 7:11)

life, live, living, alive

Definition:

The term "life" refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

1. Physical life

- A "life" can also refer to an individual person as in "a life was saved".
- Sometimes the word "life" refers to the experience of living as in, "his life was enjoyable."
- It can also refer to a person's lifespan, as in the expression, "the end of his life."
- The term "living" may refer to being physically alive, as in "my mother is still living." It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, "they were living in the city."
- In the Bible, the concept of "life" is often contrasted with the concept of "death."

2. Eternal life

- A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "life" can be translated as "existence" or "person" or "soul" or "being" or "experience."
- The term "live" could be translated by "dwell" or "reside" or "exist."
- The expression "end of his life" could be translated as "when he stopped living."
- The expression "spared their lives" could be translated as "allowed them to live" or "did not kill them."
- The expression "they risked their lives" could be translated as "they put themselves in danger" or "they did something that could have killed them."
- When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term "life" could be translated in the following ways: "eternal life" or "God making us alive in our spirits" or "new life by God's Spirit" or "being made alive in our inner self."
- Depending on the context, the expression "give life" could also be translated as "cause to live" or "give eternal life" or "cause to live eternally."

(See also: death, everlasting)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 1:3
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 2:7
- Genesis 7:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:2
- John 1:4
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 7:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were _living_ in the world.
- **8:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:9** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:5** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G01980, G02220, G02270, G08060, G05900

like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if

Definition:

The terms "like" and "likeness" refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

- The word "like" is also often used in a figurative expressions called a "simile" in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, "his clothes shined like the sun" and "the voice boomed like thunder." (See: Simile)
- To "be like" or "sound like" or "look like" something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
- People were created in God's "likeness," that is, in his "image." It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are "like" or "similar to" qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
- To have "the likeness of" something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.

Translation Suggestions

- In some contexts, the expression "the likeness of" could be translated as "what looked like" or "what appeared to be."
- The expression "in the likeness of his death" could be translated as "sharing in the experience of his death" or "as if experiencing his death with him."
- The expression "in the likeness of sinful flesh" could be translated as "being like a sinful human being" or to "be a human being." Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
- "In his own likeness" could also be translated as to "be like him" or "having many of the same qualities that he has."
- The expression "the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things" could be translated as "idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things."

(See also: beast, flesh, image of God, image, perish)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 1:5
- Mark 8:24
- Matthew 17:2
- Matthew 18:3
- Psalms 73:5
- Revelation 1:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1823, H8403, H8544, G15030, G15040, G25090, G25310, G25960, G36640, G36650, G36660, G36670, G36680, G36690, G36970, G48330, G51080, G56130, G56150, G56160, G56180, G56190

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:11; 1:12; 2:17; 3:2; 3:5; 3:6; 3:7; 3:8; 3:11; 3:15; 4:3; 4:7; 4:10; 5:3; 5:6; 6:19; 7:15; 7:27; 8:5; 9:21; 9:25; 10:25; 11:9; 11:12; 11:27; 11:29; 12:5; 12:7; 12:16; 12:27; 13:3; 13:17)

lion, lioness

Definition:

A lion is a large, cat-like, that has animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

- Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown.
- Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
- Lions kill other animals to eat them and can be dangerous to human beings.
- When King David was a boy, he killed lions that tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
- Samson also killed a lion, with his bare hands.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: David, leopard, Samson, sheep)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:22-23
- 1 Kings 7:29
- Proverbs 19:12
- Psalms 17:12
- Revelation 5:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0738, H0739, H0744, H3715, H3833, H3918, H7826, H7830, G30230

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 11:33)

loins, waist

Definition:

The term "loins" refers to the part of the body of an animal or person that is between the lower ribs and the hip bones, also known as the lower abdomen.

- The expression "gird up the loins" refers to preparing to work hard. It comes from the custom of tucking the bottom of one's robe into a belt around the waist in order to move with ease.
- The term "loins" is often used in the Bible to refer to the lower back part of an animal that was sacrificed.
- In the Bible, the term "loins" often refers figuratively and euphemistically to a man's reproductive organs as the source of his descendants. (See: euphemism)
- The expression "will come from your loins" could also be translated as "will be your offspring" or "will be born from your seed" or "God will cause to come from you." (See: euphemism)
- When referring to a part of the body, this could also be translated as "abdomen" or "hips" or "waist," depending on the context.

(See also: descendant, gird, children)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:13
- 2 Chronicles 6:9
- Deuteronomy 33:11
- Genesis 37:34
- Job 15:27

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2504, H3409, H3689, H4975, G37510

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 7:5; 7:10)

lord, Lord, master, sir

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "lord" generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as "master" when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as "sir" in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When "Lord" is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of "sir" or "master.")

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as "Lord God Almighty" or "Lord Yahweh" or "Yahweh our Lord."
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as "Lord Jesus" and "Lord Jesus Christ," which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term "Lord" in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has "Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh" and the New Testament text has "Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord."
- In the ULT and UST, the title "Lord" is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean "Lord." It is never used as a translation of God's name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate "Lord" as "Master" or "Ruler" or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term "Lord God" could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of "master" when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as "master."
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, "lord" could be translated with a respectful form of address such as "sir." This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as "Lord" (capitalized) in English.

(See also: God, Jesus, ruler, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Genesis 39:2
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Psalms 86:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:4
- Lamentations 2:2

- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 9:9
- Daniel 9:17-19
- Malachi 3:1
- Matthew 7:21-23
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 6:23
- Ephesians 6:9
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Colossians 3:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 2:1
- 1 Peter 1:3
- Jude 1:5
- Revelation 15:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:5** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:7** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:3** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:2** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:5** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:9** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:3** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0113, H0136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G02030, G06340, G09620, G12030, G29620

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:10; 2:3; 7:14; 7:21; 8:2; 8:8; 8:9; 8:10; 8:11; 10:16; 10:30; 12:5; 12:6; 12:14; 13:6; 13:20)

love, beloved

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love" some languages may express using different words:

The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

- Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
- When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
- In the ULT, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.

- This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
- The term can also be used in such contexts as, "They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet." This means that they "like very much" or "greatly desire" to do that.

The word "love" can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word "love" in the ULT refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, "devoted, faithful caring" or "care for unselfishly" or "love from God." Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word "love" describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means "like very much" or "care for" or "have strong affection for."
- In contexts where the word "love" is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by "strongly prefer" or "like very much" or "greatly desire."
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express "love" as an action. So for example, they might translate "love is patient, love is kind" as, "when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him."

(See also: covenant, death, sacrifice, save, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:7
- 1 John 3:2
- 1 Thessalonians 4:10
- Galatians 5:23
- Genesis 29:18
- Isaiah 56:6
- Jeremiah 2:2

  • John 3:16
  • Matthew 10:37
  • Nehemiah 9:32-34
  • Philippians 1:9
  • Song of Songs 1:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

  • **27:2** The law expert replied that God's law says, "**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself."
  • **33:8** "The thorny ground is a person who hears God's word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God."
  • **36:5** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, "This is my Son whom I **love**."
  • **39:10** "Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me."
  • **47:1** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
  • **48:1** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
  • **49:3** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
  • **49:4** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
  • **49:7** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
  • **49:9** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
  • **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

Word Data:

  • Strong's: H0157, H0158, H0159, H0160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G00250, G00260, G53600, G53610, G53620, G53630, G53650, G53670, G53680, G53690, G53770, G53810, G53820, G53830, G53880

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:9; 6:10; 10:24; 12:6; 13:1)

majesty

Definition:

The term "majesty" or "majestic" refers to greatness and splendor, often in relation to the qualities of a king.

- In the Bible, "majesty" frequently refers to the greatness of God, who is the supreme King over the universe.
- "Your Majesty" is a way of addressing a king.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as "kingly greatness" or "royal splendor."
- "Your Majesty" could be translated as something like "your Highness" or "your Excellency" or using a natural way of addressing a ruler in the target language.

(See also: king)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 1:16-18
- Daniel 4:36
- Isaiah 2:10
- Jude 1:25
- Micah 5:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1347, H1348, H1420, H1923, H1926, H1935, H7238, G31680, G31720

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:3; 8:1)

manna

Definition:

Manna was a white, grain-like food that God provided for the Israelites to eat during the 40 years of living in the wilderness after they left Egypt.

- Manna looked like white flakes which appeared each morning on the ground under the dew. It tasted sweet, like honey.
- The Israelites gathered the manna flakes every day except on the Sabbath.
- On the day before the Sabbath, God told the Israelites to gather twice the amount of manna so they wouldn't have to gather it on their day of rest.
- The word "manna" means "what is it?"
- In the Bible, manna is also referred to as "bread from heaven" and "grain from heaven."

Translation Suggestions

- Other ways to translate this term could include "thin white flakes of food" or "food from heaven."
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: bread, desert, grain, heaven, Sabbath)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 8:3
- Exodus 16:27
- Hebrews 9:3-5
- John 6:30-31
- Joshua 5:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4478, G31310

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 9:4)

mediator

Definition:

A mediator is a person who helps two or more people to resolve their disagreements or conflicts with each other. He helps them to become reconciled.

- Because people have sinned, they are God's enemies who deserve his wrath and punishment. Because of sin, the relationship between God and his people is broken.
- Jesus is the mediator between God the Father and his people, restoring that broken relationship through his death as payment for their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "mediator" could be "go-between person" or "reconciler" or "person who brings peace."
- Compare this term with how the term "priest" is translated. It is best if the term "mediator" is translated differently.

(See also: priest, reconcile)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 2:5
- Galatians 3:20
- Hebrews 8:6
- Hebrews 12:24
- Luke 12:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3887, G33120, G33160

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 8:6; 9:15; 12:24)

Melchizedek

Facts:

During the time when Abram lived, Melchizedek was the king of the city of Salem (later "Jerusalem")

- Melchizedek's name means "king of righteousness" and his title "king of Salem" means "king of peace."
- He was also called a "priest of God Most High."
- Melchizedek is first mentioned in the Bible when he served Abram bread and wine after Abram rescued his nephew Lot from powerful kings. Abram gave Melchizedek one-tenth of the plunder from his victory.
- In the New Testament, Melchizedek is described as someone who had no father or mother. He was called a priest and king who will reign forever.
- The New Testament also says that Jesus is a priest according to the priestly "order of Melchizedek." Jesus was not descended from Levi as the Israelite priests were. His priesthood is directly from God, as Melchizedek's was.
- Based on these descriptions of him in the Bible, Melchizedek was a human priest who was also chosen by God to represent or point forward to Jesus, the eternal king of peace and righteousness and our great high priest.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, everlasting, high priest, Jerusalem, Levite, priest, righteous)

Bible References:

- Genesis 14:18
- Hebrews 6:20
- Hebrews 7:17
- Psalm 110:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4442, G31980

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 5:6; 5:10; 6:20; 7:1; 7:10; 7:11; 7:15; 7:17)

mercy, merciful

Definition:

The terms "mercy" and "merciful" refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term "mercy" can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as "merciful" when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "mercy" could be translated as "kindness" or "compassion" or "pity."
- The term "merciful" could be translated as "showing pity" or "being kind to" or "forgiving."
- To "show mercy to" or "have mercy on" could be translated as "treat kindly" or "be compassionate toward."

(See also: compassion, forgive)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:3-5
- 1 Timothy 1:13
- Daniel 9:17
- Exodus 34:6
- Genesis 19:16
- Hebrews 10:28-29
- James 2:13
- Luke 6:35-36
- Matthew 9:27
- Philippians 2:25-27
- Psalms 41:4-6
- Romans 12:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.
- **19:17** He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- **20:12** The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- **27:11** Then Jesus asked the law expert, "What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?" He replied, "The one who was **merciful** to him."
- **32:11** But Jesus said to him, "No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you."
- **34:9** "But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, 'God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.'"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2551, H2603, H2604, H2616, H2617, H2623, H3722, H3727, H4627, H4819, H5503, H5504, H5505, H5506, H6014, H7349, H7355, H7356, H7359, G16530, G16550, G16560, G24330, G24360, G36280, G36290, G37410, G46980

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2:17; 4:16; 8:12; 10:28)

might, mighty, mighty works

Definition:

The terms "mighty" and "might" refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word "might" is another word for "strength." When talking about God, it can mean "power."
- The phrase "mighty men" often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David's band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called "mighty men."
- God is also referred to as the "mighty one."
- The phrase "mighty works" usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term "almighty," which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "mighty" could be translated as "powerful" or "amazing" or "very strong."
- The phrase "his might" could be translated as "his strength" or "his power."
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was "mighty in word and deed." This could be translated as "Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things" or "Moses spoke God's word powerfully and did many amazing things."
- Depending on the context, "mighty works" could be translated as "amazing things that God does" or "miracles" or "God doing things with power."
- The term "might" could also be translated as "power" or "great strength."
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in "It might rain."

(See also: Almighty, miracle, power, strength)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:22
- Genesis 6:4
- Mark 9:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0046, H0047, H0117, H0202, H0386, H0410, H0430, H0533, H0650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G14110, G14150, G14980, G24780, G24790, G29000, G29040, G31670, G31730

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 11:34)

mind, mindful, remind, reminder, likeminded

Definition:

The term "mind" refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To "have the mind of Christ" means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To "change his mind" means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

Translation Suggestions

- The term "mind" could also be translated as "thoughts" or "reasoning" or "thinking" or "understanding."
- The expression "keep in mind" could be translated as "remember" or "pay attention to this" or "be sure to know this."
- The expression "heart, soul, and mind" could also be translated as "what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about."
- The expression "call to mind" could be translated as "remember" or "think about."
- The expression "changed his mind and went" could also be translated as "decided differently and went" or "decided to go after all" or "changed his opinion and went."
- The expression "double-minded" could also be translated as "doubting" or "unable to decide" or "with conflicting thoughts."

(See also: believe, heart, soul)

Bible References:

- Luke 10:27
- Mark 6:51-52
- Matthew 21:29
- Matthew 22:37
- James 4:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3629, H3820, H3824, H5162, H7725, G12710, G13740, G33280, G35250, G35400, G35630, G49930, G55900

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 8:10; 10:16)

miracle, wonder, sign

Definition:

A "miracle" is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called "wonders" because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term "wonder" can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God's power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called "signs" because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God's acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God's acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah's time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God's miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God's power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God's power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of "miracles" or "wonders" could include "impossible things that God does" or "powerful works of God" or "amazing acts of God."
- The frequent expression "signs and wonders" could be translated as "proofs and miracles" or "miraculous works that prove God's power" or "amazing miracles that show how great God is."
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: power, prophet, apostle, sign)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 2:8-10
- Acts 4:17
- Acts 4:22
- Daniel 4:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:1
- Exodus 3:19-22
- John 2:11
- Matthew 13:58

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:8** Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **19:14** God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- **37:10** Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- **43:6** "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."

- **49:2** Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0226, H0852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H6725, H7560, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8539, H8540, G08800, G12130, G12290, G14110, G15690, G17180, G17700, G18390, G22850, G22960, G22970, G31670, G39020, G45910, G45920, G50590

(**Go back to:**)

mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock

Definition:

The terms "mock," "ridicule," and "scoff at" all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

- Mocking often involves imitating people's words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
- The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
- A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
- The term "scoff at" can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.
- A "mocker" is someone who mocks and ridicules consistently.

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 3:4
- Acts 2:12-13
- Galatians 6:6-8
- Genesis 39:13-15
- Luke 22:63-65
- Mark 10:34
- Matthew 9:23-24
- Matthew 20:19
- Matthew 27:29

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:12** Isaiah prophesied that people would spit on, **mock**, and beat the Messiah.
- **39:5** The Jewish leaders all answered the high priest, "He deserves to die!" Then they blindfolded Jesus, spit on him, hit him, and **mocked** him.
- **39:12** The soldiers whipped Jesus, and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they **mocked** him by saying, "Look, the King of the Jews!"
- **40:4** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them **mocked** Jesus, but the other said, "Do you have no fear of God?"
- **40:5** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd **mocked** Jesus. They said to him, "If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross and save yourself! Then we will believe you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1422, H2048, H2049, H2778, H2781, H3213, H3887, H3931, H3932, H3933, H3934, H3944, H3945, H4167, H4485, H4912, H5058, H5607, H6026, H6711, H7046, H7048, H7814, H7832, H8103, H8148, H8437, H8595, G15920, G17010, G17020, G17030, G23010, G26060, G34560, G55120

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 10:33; 11:36)

Moses

Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years. He was the leader of the Israelite people when they came out of Egypt, as described in the book of Exodus.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Miriam, Promised Land, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:21
- Acts 7:30
- Exodus 2:10
- Exodus 9:1
- Matthew 17:4
- Romans 5:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:12** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **12:5 Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you."
- **12:7** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters.
- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **13:7** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4872, H4873, G34750

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 3:2; 3:3; 3:5; 3:16; 7:14; 8:5; 11:23; 11:24; 12:21)

Most High

Facts:

The term "Most High" is a title for God. It refers to his greatness or authority.

- The meaning of this term is similar to the meaning of "Sovereign" or "Supreme."
- The word "high" in this title does not refer to physical height or distance. It refers to greatness.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can also be translated as "Most High God" or "Most Supreme being" or "God Most High" or "Greatest One" or "Supreme One" or "God, who is Greater than all."
- If a word like "high" is used, make sure it does not refer to being physically high or tall.

(See also: God)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:47-50
- Acts 16:16-18
- Daniel 4:17-18
- Deuteronomy 32:7-8
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Hebrews 7:1-3
- Hosea 7:16
- Lamentations 3:35
- Luke 1:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5945, G53100

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 7:1)

multiply, multiplied, multiplication

Definition:

The term "multiply" means to greatly increase in number. It can also mean to cause something to increase in amount, such as causing pain to multiply.

- God told animals and human beings to "multiply" and fill the earth. This was a command to reproduce many more of their own kind.
- Jesus made the bread and fish multiply in order to feed the 5,000 people. The amount of food kept increasing so that there was more than enough food to feed everyone.
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated as "increase" or "cause to increase" or "greatly increase in number" or "become greater in number" or "become more numerous."
- The phrase "greatly multiply your pain" could also be translated as "cause your pain to become more severe" or "cause you to experience much more pain."
- To "multiply horses" means to "greedily keep acquiring more horses" or to "get large numbers of horses."

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 8:1
- Genesis 9:7
- Genesis 22:17
- Hosea 4:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3254, H3527, H6280, H7231, H7233, H7235, H7680, G40520, G41290

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 6:14)

name

Definition:

The term "name" refers to the word by which a specific person or thing is called. In the Bible, however, the term "name" is used in several different ways to refer to several different concepts.

- In some contexts, "name" could refer to a person's reputation, as in "let us make a name for ourselves."
- The term "name" could also refer to the memory of something. For example, "cut off the names of the idols" means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking "in the name of God" meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The "name" of someone could refer to the entire person, as in "there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved." (See: metonymy)

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like "his good name" could be translated as "his good reputation."
- Doing something "in the name of" could be translated as "with the authority of" or "with the permission of" or "as the representative of" that person.
- The expression "make a name for ourselves" could be translated "cause many people to know about us" or "make people think we are very important."
- The expression "call his name" could be translated as "name him" or "give him the name."
- The expression "those who love your name" could be translated as "those who love you."
- The expression "cut off the names of idols" could be translated as "get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered" or "cause people to stop worshiping false gods" or "completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them."

(See also: call)

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:12
- 2 Timothy 2:19
- Acts 4:7
- Acts 4:12
- Acts 9:27
- Genesis 12:2
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G25640, G36860, G36870, G51220

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:4; 2:12; 6:10; 11:18; 13:15)

Noah

Facts:

Noah was a man who lived over 4,000 years ago, at the time when God sent a worldwide flood to destroy all the evil people in the world. God told Noah to build a gigantic ark in which he and his family could live while the flood waters covered the earth.

- Noah was a righteous man who obeyed God in everything.
- When God told Noah how to build the gigantic ark, Noah built it exactly the way God told him to.
- Inside the ark, Noah and his family were kept safe, and later their children and grandchildren filled the earth with people again.
- Everyone born since the time of the flood is a descendant of Noah.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: descendant, ark)

Bible References:

- Genesis 5:30-31
- Genesis 5:32
- Genesis 6:8
- Genesis 8:1
- Hebrews 11:7
- Matthew 24:37

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:2** But **Noah** found favor with God.
- **3:4 Noah** obeyed God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **3:13** Two months later God said to **Noah**, "You and your family and all the animals may leave the boat now. Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth." So **Noah** and his family came out of the boat.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5146, G35750

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 11:7)

oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Definition:

The term "oath" in the Bible refers to a formal promise, usually made in a legal or religious context, in which the person making the oath accepts some kind of accountability or punishment if he does not fulfill his promise. In the Bible, the term "swear" means to make an oath.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In modern times, one meaning of the word "swear" is to use foul or vulgar language. This is never its meaning in the Bible.
- The term "swear by" means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham's relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "an oath" could also be translated as "a pledge" or "a solemn promise."
- To "swear" could be translated as to "formally promise" or to "pledge" or to "commit to do something."
- Other ways to translate "swear by my name" could include "make a promise using my name to confirm it."
- To "swear by heaven and earth" could be translated as to, "promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it."
- Make sure the translation of "swear" or "oath" does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: Abimelech, covenant, vow)

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:23
- Genesis 24:3
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:31
- Luke 1:73
- Mark 6:26
- Matthew 5:36
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:72

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0422, H0423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G03320, G36600, G37270, G37280

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 3:11; 3:18; 4:3; 6:13; 6:16; 6:17; 7:20; 7:21; 7:28)

obey, keep

Definition:

The term "obey" means to do what has been commanded by a person or law. The term "obedient" describes someone who obeys. Sometimes a command prohibits doing something, as in "do not steal." In this case, to "obey" means not to steal. In the Bible, often the term "keep" means "to obey."

- Usually the term "obey" is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority. For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate obey could include a word or phrase that means "do what is commanded" or "follow orders" or "do what God says to do."
- The term "obedient" could be translated as "doing what was commanded" or "following orders" or "doing what God commands."

(See also: citizen, command, disobey, kingdom, law)

Bible References:

- Acts 5:32
- Acts 6:7
- Genesis 28:6-7
- James 1:25
- James 2:10
- Luke 6:47
- Matthew 7:26
- Matthew 19:20-22
- Matthew 28:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:4** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **5:6** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **5:10** "Because you (Abraham) have _obeyed_ me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family"
- **5:10** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **13:7** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H2388, H3349, H4928, H6213, H7181, H8085, H8086, H8104, G01910, G39800, G39820, G50830, G50840, G52180, G52190, G52550, G52920, G52930, G54420

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 5:8; 5:9; 11:8; 13:17)

oil

Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: olive, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 1:21
- Exodus 29:2
- Leviticus 5:11
- Leviticus 8:1-3
- Mark 6:12-13
- Matthew 25:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G16370, G34640

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:9)

on high, in the highest

Definition:

The terms "on high" and "in the highest" are expressions that usually mean "in heaven."

- Another meaning for the expression "in the highest" could be "the most honored."
- This expression could also be used literally, as in the expression "in the highest tree," which means "in the tallest tree."
- The expression "on high" could also refer to being high in the sky, such as a bird's nest that is on high. In that context it could be translated as "high in the sky" or "at the top of a tall tree."
- The word "high" could also indicate the elevated location or importance of a person or thing.
- The expression "from on high" could be translated as "from heaven."

(See also: heaven, honor)

Bible References:

- Lamentations 1:13
- Psalms 69:29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1361, H4605, H4791, H7682, G17220, G53080, G53100, G53110

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:3)

oppress, oppressed, oppression, oppressor, dominate

Definition:

The terms "oppress" and "oppression" refer to treating people harshly. An "oppressor" is a person who oppresses people.

- The term "oppression" especially refers to a situation where people of greater strength mistreat or enslave people who are under their power or rule.
- The term "oppressed" describes the people who are being harshly treated.
- Often enemy nations and their rulers were oppressors to the people of Israel.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "oppress" could be translated as "severely mistreat" or "cause to be heavily burdened" or "put under miserable bondage" or "rule harshly."
- Ways to translate "oppression" could include "heavy suppression and bondage" or "burdensome control."
- The phrase "the oppressed" could be translated as "oppressed people" or "people in terrible bondage" or "those who are treated harshly."
- The term "oppressor" could be translated as "person who oppresses" or "nation who controls and rules harshly" or "persecutor."

(See also: bind, enslave, persecute)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:17-19
- Deuteronomy 26:7
- Ecclesiastes 4:1
- Job 10:3
- Judges 2:18-19
- Nehemiah 5:14-15
- Psalms 119:134

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1790, H1792, H2541, H2555, H3238, H3905, H3906, H4642, H5065, H6031, H6125, H6184, H6206, H6216, H6217, H6231, H6233, H6234, H6693, H7429, H7533, H7701, G26160, G26690

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 11:37)

ordain, ordained, ordination, planned long ago, set up, prepared

Definition:

To ordain means to formally appoint a person for a special task or role. It also means to formally make a rule or decree.

- The term "ordain" often refers to formally appointing somebody as a priest, minister, or rabbi.
- For example, God ordained Aaron and his descendants to be priests.
- It can also mean to institute or establish something, such as a religious feast or covenant.
- Depending on the context, to "ordain" could be translated as to "assign" or to "appoint" or to "command" or to "make a rule" or to "institute."

(See also: command, covenant, decree, law, law, priest)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:31-32
- 2 Samuel 17:13-14
- Exodus 28:40-41
- Numbers 3:3
- Psalms 111:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3245, H4390, H6186, H6213, H6680, H7760, H8239, G12990, G25250, G42700, G42820

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 10:5; 11:3)

ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

Definition:

An ordinance is a public regulation or law that gives rules or instructions for people to follow. This term is related to the term "ordain."

- Sometimes an ordinance is a custom that has become well established through years of practice.
- In the Bible, an ordinance was something that God commanded the Israelites to do. Sometimes he commanded them to do it forever.
- The term "ordinance" could be translated as "public decree" or "regulation" or "law," depending on the context.

(See also: command, decree, law, ordain, statute)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 4:13-14
- Exodus 27:20-21
- Leviticus 8:31-33
- Malachi 3:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2706, H4687, H4931, H4941

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 9:1; 9:10)

Passover

Facts:

The "Passover" is the name of a religious festival that the Jews celebrate every year, to remember how God rescued their ancestors, the Israelites, from slavery in Egypt.

- The name of this festival comes from the fact that God "passed over" the houses of the Israelites and did not kill their sons when he killed the firstborn sons of the Egyptians.
- The Passover celebration includes a special meal of a perfect lamb that they have killed and roasted, as well as bread made without yeast. These foods remind them of the meal that the Israelites ate the night before they escaped from Egypt.
- God told the Israelites to eat this meal every year in order to remember and celebrate how God "passed over" their houses and how he set them free from slavery in Egypt.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "Passover" could be translated by combining the words "pass" and "over" or another combination of words that has this meaning.
- It is helpful if the name of this festival has a clear connection to the words used to explain what the angel of the Lord did in passing by the houses of the Israelites and sparing their sons.

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:7
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- 2 Kings 23:23
- Deuteronomy 16:2
- Exodus 12:26-28
- Ezra 6:21-22
- John 13:1
- Joshua 5:10-11
- Leviticus 23:4-6
- Numbers 9:3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:14** God commanded the Israelites to remember his victory over the Egyptians and their deliverance from slavery by celebrating the **Passover** every year.
- **38:1** Every year, the Jews celebrated the **Passover**. This was a celebration of how God had saved their ancestors from slavery in Egypt many centuries earlier.
- **38:4** Jesus celebrated the **Passover** with his disciples.
- **48:9** When God saw the blood, he passed over their houses and did not kill their firstborn sons. This event is called the **Passover**.
- **48:10** Jesus is our **Passover** Lamb. He was perfect and sinless and was killed at the time of the **Passover** celebration.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6453, G39570

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 11:28)

patient, patience, impatient

Definition:

The terms "patient" and "patience" refer to persevering through difficult circumstances. Often patience involves waiting.

- When people are patient with someone, it means they are loving that person and forgiving whatever faults that person has.
- The Bible teaches God's people to be patient when facing difficulties and to be patient with each other.
- Because of his mercy, God is patient with people, even though they are sinners who deserve to be punished.

(See also: endure, forgive, persevere)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 3:20
- 2 Peter 3:8-9
- Hebrews 6:11-12
- Matthew 18:28-29
- Psalms 37:7
- Revelation 2:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0750, H0753, H2342, H3811, H6960, H7114, G04200, G04630, G19330, G31140, G31150, G31160, G52780, G52810

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 6:12)

patriarch

Definition:

The term "patriarch" in the Bible refers to someone who was a founding ancestor of the Jewish people, particularly Abraham, Isaac, or Jacob.

- It also can refer to the twelve sons of Jacob who became the twelve patriarchs of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The term "patriarch" has a similar meaning to "forefather," but more specifically refers to the most well-known male ancestral leaders of a people group.

(See also: ancestor, father, forefather)

Bible References:

- Acts 2:29-31
- Acts 7:6-8
- Acts 7:9
- Ezra 3:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0001, H7218, G39660

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 7:4)

peace, peaceful, peacemakers

Definition:

The term "peace" refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is "peaceful" feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- In the Old Testament, the term "peace" often means a general sense of a person's welfare, wellness, or wholeness.
- "Peace" can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have "peaceful relations."
- To "make peace" with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A "peacemaker" is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be "at peace" with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having "peace with God."
- The greeting "grace and peace" was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term "peace" can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:1-3
- Acts 7:26
- Colossians 1:18-20
- Colossians 3:15
- Galatians 5:23
- Luke 7:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 4:39
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 10:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:6** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- **16:3** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- **21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people's sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G02690, G15140, G15150, G15160, G15170, G15180, G22720

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 7:2; 11:31; 12:11; 12:14; 13:20)

people of God

Definition:

The concept of the "people of God" in the Bible refers to people with whom God has established a covenant relationship.

- In the Old Testament, the phrase "people of God" refers to the nation of Israel. The nation of Israel was chosen by God and set apart from the other nations of the world in order to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, the phrase "people of God" refers to the "Church," meaning everyone who believes in Jesus. This includes both Jews and Gentiles. In the New Testament, sometimes this group of people is called the "sons of God" or "children of God."
- When God uses the phrase "my people," he is referring to people who have a covenant relationship with him. God's people are chosen by him, and he wants them to live in a way that is pleasing to him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "people of God" could be translated as "God's people" or "the people who worship God" or "people who serve God" or "people who belong to God."
- When God says "my people" other ways to translate it could include "the people I have chosen" or "the people who worship me" or "the people who belong to me."
- Similarly, "your people" could be translated as "the people who belong to you" or "the people you chose to belong to you."
- Also "his people" could be translated as "the people who belong to him" or "the people God chose to belong to himself."

(See also: Israel, people group)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:2
- Acts 7:34
- Acts 7:51-53
- Acts 10:36-38
- Daniel 9:24-25
- Isaiah 2:5-6
- Jeremiah 6:20-22
- Joel 3:16-17
- Micah 6:3-5
- Revelation 13:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H5971, G23160, G29920

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 4:9; 8:10; 10:30; 11:25)

people, people group

Definition:

The terms "people" and "people group" refer to some group of people that shares a common language and culture. The term "the people" often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, the term "people" can can refer to a "people group" or "family" or "relatives" or "army."
- In plural form, the term "peoples" often refers to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations, the term "nations" is also used in this way.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "people group" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "large family group" or "clan" or "ethnic group."
- A phrase such as "my people" could be translated as "my relatives" or "my fellow Israelites" or "my family" or "my people group," depending on the context.
- The expression "scatter you among the peoples" could also be translated as "cause you to go live with many different people groups" or "cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world."
- The term "the peoples" or "the people" could also be translated as "the people in the world" or "people groups," depending on the context.
- The phrase "the people of" could be translated as "the people living in" or "the people descended from" or "the family of," depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- "All the peoples of the earth" could be translated as "everyone living on earth" or "every person in the world" or "all people."
- The phrase "a people" could also be translated as "a group of people" or "certain people" or "a community of people" or "a family of people."

(See also: descendant, nation, tribe, world)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:51-53
- 1 Samuel 8:7
- Deuteronomy 28:9
- Genesis 49:16
- Ruth 1:16

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:2** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there.
- **21:2** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.

- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:3** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups**!" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0249, H0523, H0524, H0776, H1121, H1471, H3816, H5712, H5971, H5972, H6153, G10740, G10850, G12180, G14840, G25600, G29920, G37930

perfect, complete

Definition:

In the New Testament, the term "perfect" means to be mature in our Christian life. To perfect something means to work at it until it is excellent and without flaws. Old Testament sacrifices needed to be "perfect" or "complete," that is, without blemish.

- Being perfect and mature means that a Christian is obedient, not sinless.
- The term "perfect" also has the meaning of being "complete" or "whole."
- The New Testament book of James states that persevering through trials will produce completeness and maturity in the believer.
- When Christians study the Bible and obey it, they will become more spiritually perfect and mature because they will be more like Christ in their character.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as "without flaw" or "without error" or "flawless" or "without fault" or "not having any faults."

(See also: blemish)

Bible References:

- Hebrews 12:2
- James 3:2
- Matthew 5:46-48
- Psalms 19:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3632, H3634, H4359, H8003, H8503, H8537, H8549, H8552, G01990, G26750, G26760, G36470, G50460, G50470, G50480, G50500

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2:10; 5:9; 5:14; 6:1; 7:11; 7:19; 7:28; 9:9; 9:11; 10:1; 10:14; 11:40; 12:2; 12:23)

perish

Definition:

The term "perish" means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or disaster. In the New Testament, it often has the spiritual meaning of being lost or separated from the people of God.

Spiritual Meaning of "Perish:"

- People who are "perishing" are those who have refused to trust in Jesus for their salvation.
- Those who "perish" will not live eternally with God in heaven. Instead, they will live eternally in hell under God's punishment.
- Everyone will die physically, but only those who do not trust in Jesus for their salvation will perish eternally.
- When "perish" is used in a spiritual sense, make sure that your translation expresses this differently than dying physically.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include "be lost from God's people," "die eternally," "be punished in hell," or "be destroyed."
- Try to use a term or expression that does not only mean "die physically" or "cease to exist."

(See also: death, everlasting)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:23
- 2 Corinthians 2:16-17
- 2 Thessalonians 2:10
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Psalms 49:18-20
- Zechariah 9:5-7
- Zechariah 13:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0006, H0007, H0008, H1478, H1820, H1826, H5486, H5595, H6544, H8045, G05990, G06220, G06840, G08530, G13110, G27040, G48810, G53560

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:11; 11:31)

Pharaoh, king of Egypt

Facts:

In ancient times, the kings who ruled over the country of Egypt were called pharaohs.

- Altogether, over 300 pharaohs ruled Egypt for more than 2,000 years.
- These Egyptians kings were very powerful and wealthy.
- Several of these pharaohs are mentioned in the Bible.
- Often this title is used as a name rather than as a title. In these cases, it is capitalized and written as "Pharaoh."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: egypt, king)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:9-10
- Acts 7:13
- Acts 7:21
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 40:7
- Genesis 41:25

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:6** One night, the **Pharaoh**, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **8:8 Pharaoh** was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of Egypt!
- **9:2** So the **Pharaoh** who was ruling over Egypt at that time made the Israelites slaves to the Egyptians.
- **9:13** "I will send you to **Pharaoh** so that you can bring the Israelites out of their slavery in Egypt."
- **10:2** Through these plagues, God showed **Pharaoh** _ *that he is more powerful than* _**Pharaoh** and all of Egypt's gods.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4428, H4714, H6547, G53280

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 11:24)

possess, possessed, possession, dispossess

Facts:

The terms "possess" and "possession" usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of "possessing" or "taking possession of" an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to "possess" the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as "their possession." This could also be translated as "their rightful place to live."
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh's "special possession." This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "possess" could also be translated as "own" or "have" or "have charge over."
- The phrase "take possession of" could be translated as "take control of" or "occupy" or "live on," depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, "possessions" could be translated as "belongings" or "property" or "owned things" or "things they owned."
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, "my special possession" this could also be translated as "my special people" or "people who belong to me" or "my people whom I love and rule."
- The sentence, "they will become their possession" when referring to land, means "they will occupy the land" or "the land will belong to them."
- The expression, "found in his possession" could be translated as "that he was holding" or "that he had with him."
- The phrase "as your possession" could also be translated as "as something that belongs to you" or "as a place where your people will live."
- The phrase, "in his possession" could be translated as "that he owned" or "which belonged to him."

(See also: Canaan, worship, inherit)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:70
- 1 Kings 9:17-19
- Acts 2:45
- Deuteronomy 4:5-6
- Genesis 31:36-37
- Matthew 13:44

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0270, H0272, H0834, H2505, H2631, H3027, H3423, H3424, H3425, H3426, H4180, H4181, H4672, H4735, H4736, H5157, H5159, H5459, H7069, G11390, G21920, G26970, G27220, G29320, G29330, G29350, G40470, G52240, G55640

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 10:34)

power, powerful, powerfully

Definition:

The term "power" refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. "Powers" refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The "power of God" refers to God's ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "power" could also be translated as "ability" or "strength" or "energy" or "ability to do miracles" or "control."
- Possible ways to translate the term "powers" could include "powerful beings" or "controlling spirits" or "those who control others."

(See also: strength, Holy Spirit, Jesus, miracle)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:5
- Colossians 1:11-12
- Genesis 31:29
- Jeremiah 18:21
- Jude 1:25
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 1:17
- Luke 4:14
- Matthew 26:64
- Philippians 3:21
- Psalm 80:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:5** The angel explained, "The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God."
- **26:1** After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **32:15** Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you."
- **43:6** "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know."
- **44:8** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0410, H1369, H1370, H2220, H2393, H2428, H2429, H2632, H3027, H3028, H3581, H4475, H4910, H5794, H5797, H5808, H6184, H7786, H7980, H7981, H7983, H7989, H8280, H8592, H8633, G14110, G14150, G17540, G17560, G18490, G18500, G21590, G24780, G24790, G29040, G31680

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:3; 2:14; 6:5; 7:16; 11:11; 11:34)

praise, praised, praiseworthy

Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term to "praise" could also be translated as to "speak well of" or to "highly honor with words" or to "say good things about."
- The noun "praise" could be translated as "spoken honor" or "speech that honors" or "speaking good things about."

(See also: worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 1:3
- Acts 2:47
- Acts 13:48
- Daniel 3:28
- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 49:8
- James 3:9-10
- John 5:41-42
- Luke 1:46
- Luke 1:64-66
- Luke 19:37-38
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Matthew 15:29-31

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- **17:8** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- **22:7** Zechariah said, "**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people!"
- **43:13** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- **47:8** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H7121, H8416, G29800, G38530

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 13:15)

pray, prayer

Definition:

The terms "pray" and "prayer" refer to talking with God. These terms are also used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called "communing" with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as "talking to God" or "communicating with God." The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: false god, forgive, praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 3:9
- Acts 8:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 4:4
- John 17:9
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:5** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- **19:8** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, "Hear us, O Baal!"
- **21:7** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- **43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- **49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H0577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G01540, G11620, G11890, G17830, G20650, G21710, G21720, G38700, G43350, G43360

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 5:7; 13:18)

priest, priesthood

Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: Aaron, high priest, mediator, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22
- John 1:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 1:44
- Mark 2:25-26
- Matthew 8:4
- Matthew 12:4
- Micah 3:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 1:6

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:7** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"

- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.
- **19:7** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- **21:7** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G07480, G07490, G24050, G24060, G24070, G24090, G24200

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 5:6; 7:1; 7:3; 7:5; 7:11; 7:12; 7:14; 7:15; 7:17; 7:20; 7:21; 7:23; 7:24; 8:4; 9:6; 10:11; 10:21)

prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Definition:

A "prince" is the son of a king. A "princess" is a daughter of a king.

- The term "prince" is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham's wealth and importance, he was referred to as a "prince" by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term "prince" is used in the expressions "prince of Persia" and "prince of Greece," which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a "prince" in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as "the prince of this world."
- Jesus is called the "Prince of Peace" and the "Prince of Life."
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as "Lord and Christ" and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as "Prince and Savior," showing the parallel meaning of "Lord" and "Prince."

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "prince" could include, "king's son" or "ruler" or "leader" or "chieftain" or "captain."
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as "spirit ruler" or "leading angel."
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as "evil spirit ruler" or "powerful spirit leader" or "ruling spirit," depending on the context.

(See also: angel, authority, Christ, demon, lord, power, ruler, Satan, Savior, spirit)

Bible References:

- Acts 5:29-32
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 49:26
- Luke 1:52

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0001, H0117, H0324, H2831, H3548, H4502, H5057, H5081, H5139, H5257, H5387, H5633, H5993, H6579, H7261, H7333, H7786, H8269, H8282, H8323, G07470, G07580, G14130, G31750

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2:10; 12:2)

prison, prisoner, imprison

Definition:

The term "prison" refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A "prisoner" is someone who has been put in the prison.

- A person may be kept in a prison while waiting to be judged in a trial.
- The term "imprisoned" means "kept in a prison" or "kept in captivity."
- Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.

Translation Suggestions:

- Another word for "prison" is "jail."
- This term could also be translated as "dungeon" in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
- The term "prisoners" can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will. Another way to translate this meaning would be "captives."
- Other ways to translate "imprisoned" could be, "kept as a prisoner" or "kept in captivity" or "held captive."

(See also: captive)

Bible References:

- Acts 25:4
- Ephesians 4:1
- Luke 12:58
- Luke 22:33-34
- Mark 6:17
- Matthew 5:26
- Matthew 14:3
- Matthew 25:34-36

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0612, H0613, H0615, H0616, H0631, H0953, H1004, H1540, H3608, H3628, H3947, H4115, H4307, H4455, H4525, H4929, H5470, H6495, H7617, H7622, H7628, G11980, G11990, G12000, G12010, G12020, G12100, G22520, G36120, G47880, G48690, G50840, G54380, G54390

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 10:34; 11:36)

profane, profaned

Definition:

To profane something means to act in a way that defiles, pollutes, or disrespects something that is holy.

- A profane person is one who acts in a way that is unholy and dishonoring of God.
- The verb to "profane" could be translated as to "treat as unholy" or to "be irreverent toward" or to "dishonor."
- God told the Israelites that they "profaned" themselves with idols, meaning that the people were making themselves "unclean" or "dishonored" by this sin. They were also dishonoring God.
- Depending on the context, the adjective "profane" could be translated as "dishonoring" or "godless" or "unholy."

(See also: defile, holy, clean)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 2:16-18
- Ezekiel 20:9
- Malachi 1:10-12
- Matthew 12:5
- Numbers 18:30-32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2455, H2490, H2491, H5234, H8610, G09520, G09530

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 12:16)

profit, profitable, unprofitable

Definition:

In general, the terms "profit" and "profitable" refer to gaining something good through doing certain actions or behaviors.

Something is "profitable" to someone if it brings them good things or if it helps them bring about good things for other people.

- More specifically, the term "profit" often refers to money that is gained from doing business. A business is "profitable" if it gains more money than it spends.
- Actions are profitable if they bring about good things for people.
- 2 Timothy 3:16 says that all Scripture is "profitable" for correcting and training people in righteousness. This means that the Bible's teachings are helpful and useful for teaching people to live according to God's will.

The term "unprofitable" means to not be useful.

- It literally means to not profit anything or to not help someone gain anything.
- Something that is unprofitable is not worth doing because it does not give any benefit.
- This could be translated as "useless" or "worthless" or "not useful" or "unworthy" or "not beneficial" or "giving no benefit."

(See also: worthy)

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "profit" could also be translated as "benefit" or "help" or "gain."
- The term "profitable" could be translated as "useful" or "beneficial" or "helpful."
- To "profit from" something could be translated as "benefit from" or "gain money from" or "receive help from."
- In the context of a business, "profit" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "money gained" or "surplus of money" or "extra money."

Bible References:

- Job 15:3
- Proverbs 10:16
- Jeremiah 2:8
- Ezekiel 18:12-13
- John 6:63
- Mark 8:36
- Matthew 16:26
- 2 Peter 2:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1215, H3148, H3276, H3504, H4195, H4768, H5532, H7737, H7939, G01470, G02550, G05120, G08880, G08890, G08900, G12810, G25850, G27700, G27710, G34080, G42970, G42980, G48510, G55390, G56220, G56230, G56240

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 4:2; 12:10; 13:9)

promise, promised

Definition:

When used as a verb, the term "promise" refers to the action of a person saying that he will do something in such way that he obligates himself to fulfill what he has said. When used as a noun, the term "promise" refers to the thing that a person obligates himself to do.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "promise" could be translated as "commitment" or "assurance" or "guarantee."
- To "promise to do something" could be translated as "assure someone that you will do something" or "commit to doing something."

(See also: covenant, oath, vow)

Bible References:

- Galatians 3:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:9
- James 1:12
- Numbers 30:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, "I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children."Â�
- **3:16** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **4:8** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God's **promise**.
- **5:4** "Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**."
- **8:15** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob's twelve sons and their families.
- **17:14** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **50:1** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H0562, H1696, H8569, G18430, G18600, G18610, G18620, G36700, G42790

prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A "prophet" is a man who speaks God's messages to people. A woman who does this is called a "prophetess."

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A "prophecy" is the message that the prophet speaks. To "prophesy" means to speak God's messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as "the prophets."
- For example the phrase, "the law and the prophets" is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the "Old Testament."
- An older term for a prophet was "seer" or "someone who sees."
- Sometimes the term "seer" refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "prophet" could be translated as "God's spokesman" or "man who speaks for God" or "man who speaks God's messages."
- A "seer" could be translated as "person who sees visions" or "man who sees the future from God."
- The term "prophetess" could be translated as "spokeswoman for God" or "woman who speaks for God" or "woman who speaks God's messages."
- Ways to translate "prophecy" could include, "message from God" or "prophet message."
- The term "prophesy" could be translated as "speak words from God" or "tell God's message."
- The figurative expression, "law and the prophets" could also be translated as "the books of the law and of the prophets" or "everything written about God and his people, including God's laws and what his prophets preached." (See: synecdoche)
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as "false prophet (seer)" or "prophet (seer) of a false god" or "prophet of Baal," for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, false god, false prophet, fulfill, law, vision)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14-16
- Acts 3:25
- John 1:43-45
- Malachi 4:4-6
- Matthew 1:23
- Matthew 2:18
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalm 51:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:1** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God's messages.

- **19:6** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:9** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:5** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:7** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G24950, G43940, G43950, G43960, G43970, G43980, G55780

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:1; Notes; 11:32)

propitiation

Definition:

The term "propitiation" refers to a sacrifice that is made to satisfy or fulfill the justice of God and to appease his wrath.

- The offering of the sacrificial blood of Jesus Christ is the propitiation to God for mankind's sins.
- Jesus' death on the cross appeased God's wrath against sin. This provided a way for God to look on people with favor and offer them eternal life.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as "appeasement" or "causing God to forgive sins and grant favor to people."
- The word "atonement" is close in meaning to "propitiation." It is important to compare how these two terms are used.

(See also: atonement, everlasting, forgive, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:2
- 1 John 4:10
- Romans 3:25-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: G24340, G24350

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2:17)

prostitute, harlot, whored

Definition:

The terms "prostitute" and "harlot" both refer to a person who performs sexual acts for money or for religious rites. Prostitutes or harlots were usually female, but some were male.

- In the Bible, the word "prostitute" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a person who worships false gods or who practices witchcraft.
- The expression "play the harlot" means to act like a harlot by being sexually immoral. This expression is also used in the Bible to refer to a person who worships idols.
- To "prostitute oneself" to something means to be sexually immoral or when used figuratively, to be unfaithful to God by worshiping false gods.
- In ancient times, some pagan temples used male and female prostitutes as part of their rituals.
- This term could be translated by the word or phrase that is used in the project language to refer to a prostitute. Some languages may have a euphemistic term that is used for this. (See: euphemism)

(See also: adultery, false god, sexual immorality, false god)

Bible References:

- Genesis 34:31
- Genesis 38:21
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 21:31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2154, H2181, H2183, H2185, H6945, H6948, H8457, G42040

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 11:31)

prostrate, bow down, worship

Definition:

To "prostrate" oneself means to lie flat on the ground, usually in submission to a person of authority such as a king or some other powerful person. This same term can also mean to "worship," referring to the actions of honoring, praising, and obeying God.

- This term often means literally "bow down" or "prostrate oneself" to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- This term can be used both of people who worship Yahweh as the One True God and others who worship false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "worship" could be translated as "bow down to" or "honor and serve" or "honor and obey."
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as "humbly praise" or "give honor and praise."

(See also: bow, fear, sacrifice, praise, honor)

Bible References:

- Colossians 2:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 3:11-12
- Luke 4:7
- Matthew 2:2
- Matthew 2:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods."
- **14:2** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **17:6** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **25:7** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, '**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:2** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **47:1** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G13910, G14790, G21510, G23180, G23230, G23560, G30000, G35110, G43520, G43530, G45730, G45740, G45760

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:6; 9:1; 11:21)

punish, punished, punishment, unpunished

Definition:

The term "punish" means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term "punishment" refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person's punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions "go unpunished" and "leave unpunished" mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: just, repent, righteous, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:18
- 2 Thessalonians 1:9
- Acts 4:21
- Acts 7:59-60
- Genesis 4:15
- Luke 23:16
- Matthew 25:46

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:7** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them.
- **16:2** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them.
- **48:6** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person's sin, and God's **punishment** passes over him.
- **49:9** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:11** Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3027, H3256, H4148, H4941, H5221, H5414, H6031, H6064, H6213, H6485, H7999, H8011, H8199, G13490, G15560, G15570, G28490, G38110, G50970

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 10:29)

pure, purify, purification

Definition:

To be "pure" means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, "purify" and "purification" refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God's forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "purify" could be translated as "make pure" or "cleanse" or "cleanse from all contamination" or "get rid of all sin."
- A phrase such as "when the time for their purification was over" could be translated as "when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days."
- The phrase "provided purification for sins" could be translated as "provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin."
- Other ways to translate "purification" could include "cleansing" or "spiritual washing" or "becoming ritually clean."

(See also: atonement, clean, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:5
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Hebrews 9:13-15
- James 4:8
- Luke 2:22
- Revelation 14:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1253, H1305, H1865, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2212, H2398, H2403, H2561, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2892, H2893, H3795, H3800, H4795, H5343, H5462, H6337, H6884, H6942, H8562, G00480, G00490, G00530, G00540, G15060, G25110, G25120, G25130, G25140

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 9:13; 10:22)

quench, quenched, unquenchable

Definition:

The term "quench" means to put out or stop something that is demanding to be satisfied.

- This term is usually used in the context of quenching thirst and means to stop being thirsty by drinking something.
- It can also be used to refer to putting out a fire.
- Both thirst and fire are quenched with water.
- Paul uses the term "quench" in a figurative way when he instructs believers to not "quench the Holy Spirit." This means to not discourage people from allowing the Holy Spirit from produce his fruits and gifts in them. Quenching the Holy Spirit means preventing the Holy Spirit from freely manifesting his power and work in people..

(See also: fruit, gift, Holy Spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:19
- Ezekiel 20:47
- Isaiah 1:31
- Jeremiah 21:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1846, H3518, H7665, G07620, G45700

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 11:34)

Rahab

Facts:

Rahab was a woman who lived in Jericho when Israel attacked the city. She was a prostitute.

- Rahab hid the two Israelites who came to spy on Jericho before the Israelites attacked it. She helped the spies escape back to the Israelite camp.
- Rahab became a believer in Yahweh.
- She and her family came to live with the Israelites after the Israelites destroyed Jericho and spared Rahab and her family.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Israel, Jericho, prostitute)

Bible References:

- Hebrews 11:29-31
- James 2:25
- Joshua 2:21
- Joshua 6:17-19
- Matthew 1:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:1** In that city there lived a prostitute named **Rahab** who hid the spies and later helped them to escape. She did this because she believed God. They promised to protect **Rahab** and her family when the Israelites would destroy Jericho.
- **15:5** The Israelites destroyed everything in the city as God had commanded. **Rahab** and her family were the only people in the city that they did not kill. They became part of the Israelites.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7343, G44600

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 11:31)

raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,

Definition:

raise, raise up

In general, the word "raise" means to "lift up" or "make higher."

- The phrase "raise up" sometimes means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes "raise up" means to "restore" or "rebuild."
- "Raise" has a specialized meaning in the phrase "raise from the dead." It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes "raise up" means to "exalt" someone or something.

rise, arise

To "rise" or "arise" means to "go up" or "get up." The terms "risen," "rose," and "arose" express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as "he arose and went" or "he rose up and went."
- If something "arises" it means it "happens" or "begins to happen."
- Jesus predicted that he would "rise from the dead." Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, "He has risen!"

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "raise" or "raise up" could be translated as "lift up" or "make higher."
- To "raise up" could also be translated as to "cause to appear" or to "appoint" or to "bring into existence."
- To "raise up the strength of your enemies" could be translated as "cause your enemies to be very strong."
- The phrase "raise someone from the dead" could be translated as "cause someone to return from death to life" or "cause someone to come back to life."
- Depending on the context, "raise up" could also be translated as "provide" or to "appoint" or to "cause to have" or "build up" or "rebuild" or "repair."
- The phrase "arose and went" could be translated as "got up and went" or "went."
- Depending on the context, the term "arose" could also be translated as "began" or "started up" or "got up" or "stood up."

(See also: resurrection, appoint, exalt)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- 2 Samuel 7:12
- Acts 10:40
- Colossians 3:1
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 6:1
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 7:22
- Matthew 20:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.
- **41:5** "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- **43:7** "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- **44:5** "You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead."
- **44:8** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- **48:4** This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- **49:2** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2210, H2224, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6965, H6966, H6974, H7613, G03050, G03860, G03930, G04500, G10960, G13260, G14530, G15250, G18170, G18250, G18920, G19990, G48910

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 7:11; 7:15; 11:19)

rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

Definition:

The term "rebel" means to refuse to submit to someone's authority. A "rebellious" person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called "a rebel."

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term to "rebel" could also be translated as to "disobey" or to "revolt," depending on the context.
- "Rebellious" could also be translated as "continually disobedient" or "refusing to obey."
- The term "rebellion" means "refusal to obey" or "disobedience" or "law-breaking."
- The phrase "the rebellion" or "a rebellion" can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: authority, governor)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:18-19
- 1 Samuel 12:14
- 1 Timothy 1:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- Acts 21:38
- Luke 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:14** After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had **rebelled** against God were dead.
- **18:7** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel **rebelled** against Rehoboam.
- **18:9** Jeroboam **rebelled** against God and caused the people to sin.
- **18:13** Most of the people of Judah also **rebelled** against God and worshiped other gods.
- **20:7** But after a few years, the king of Judah **rebelled** against Babylon.
- **45:3** Then he (Stephen) said, "You stubborn and **rebellious** people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4775, H4776, H4777, H4779, H4780, H4784, H4805, H5327, H5627, H5637, H6586, H6588, H7846, G38930, G49550

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 3:8; 3:15; 3:16)

rebuke, reprove

Definition:

The term "rebuke" refers to correcting someone verbally, usually with sternness or force.

- The New Testament commands Christians to rebuke other believers when they are clearly disobeying God.
- The book of Proverbs instructs parents to rebuke their children when they are disobedient.
- A rebuke is typically given to prevent those who committed a wrong from further involving themselves in sin.
- This could be translated by "sternly correct" or "admonish."
- The phrase "a rebuke" could be translated by "a stern correction" or "a strong criticism."
- "Without rebuke" could be translated as "without admonishing" or "without criticism."

(See also admonish, disobey)

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:25
- Mark 1:23-26
- Mark 16:14
- Matthew 8:26-27
- Matthew 17:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1605, H1606, H2778, H2781, H3198, H4045, H4148, H8156, H8433, G16490, G16510, G19690, G20080, G36790

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 12:5)

receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance

Definition:

The term "receive" generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To "receive" can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in "he received punishment for what he did."
- There is also a special sense in which we can "receive" a person. For example, to "receive" guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To "receive the gift of the Holy Spirit" means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To "receive Jesus" means to accept God's offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person "receives his sight" means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "receive" could be translated as "accept" or "welcome" or "experience" or "be given."
- The expression "you will receive power" could be translated as "you will be given power" or "God will give you power" or "power will be given to you (by God)" or "God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you."
- The phrase "received his sight" could be translated as "was able to see" or "became able to see again" or "was healed by God so that he was able to see."

(See also: Holy Spirit, Jesus, lord, save)

Bible References:

- 1 John 5:9
- 1 Thessalonians 1:6
- 1 Thessalonians 4:1
- Acts 8:15
- Jeremiah 32:33
- Luke 9:5
- Malachi 3:10-12
- Psalms 49:14-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people's sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- **45:5** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, **receive** my spirit."
- **49:6** He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the cross, he **received** your punishment.
- **49:13** God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and **receives** him as their Master.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3557, H3947, H6901, H6902, H8254, G03080, G03240, G03530, G03540, G05680, G05880, G06180, G11830, G12090, G15230, G16530, G19260, G28650, G29830, G30280, G33350, G33360, G35490, G38580, G38800, G43270, G43550, G43560, G46870, G52640, G55620

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2:2; 2:3; 4:16; 7:5; 7:8; 7:9; 7:11; 9:15; 10:26; 10:34; 10:36; 11:8; 11:11; 11:13; 11:17; 11:19; 11:29; 11:31; 11:35; 11:36; 11:39; 12:6; 12:28)

redeem, redeemer, redemption

Definition:

The term "redeem" refers to buying back something or someone that has been previously owned or held captive. A "redeemer" is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things. For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word "ransom" also refers to this practice.
- If someone's land had been sold, a relative of that person could "redeem" or "buy back" that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full price for people's sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "redeem" could also be translated as "buy back" or "pay to free (someone)" or "ransom."
- The term "redemption" could be translated as "ransom" or "freedom payment" or "buying back."
- The words "ransom" and "redeem" have basically the same meaning, so some languages may have only one term to translate both these words. The word "ransom," however, can also mean the payment necessary to "redeem" something or someone. The term "redeem" never refers to the actual payment itself.

(See also: free, ransom)

Bible References:

- Colossians 1:13-14
- Ephesians 1:7-8
- Ephesians 5:16
- Galatians 3:13-14
- Galatians 4:5
- Luke 2:38
- Ruth 2:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H1353, H6299, H6302, H6304, H6306, H6561, H7069, G00590, G06290, G18050, G30840, G30850

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 9:12; 9:15; Notes; 11:35)

reed

Facts:

The term "reed" refers to a plant with a long stalk that grows in the water, usually along the edge of a river or stream.

- The reeds in the Nile River where Moses was hidden as a baby were also called "bulrushes." They were tall, hollow stalks growing in dense clumps in the river water.
- These fibrous plants were used in ancient Egypt for making paper, baskets, and boats.
- The stalk of the reed plant is flexible and is easily bent over by the wind.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Egypt, Moses, Nile River)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:15
- Luke 7:24
- Matthew 11:7
- Matthew 12:20
- Psalm 68:30

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0098, H0100, H0260, H5488, H6169, H7070, G25630

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 11:29)

reject, rejected, rejection

Definition:

To "reject" someone or something means to refuse to accept that person or thing.

- The term "reject" can also mean to "refuse to believe in" something.
- To reject God also means to refuse to obey him.
- When the Israelites rejected Moses' leadership, it means that they were rebelling against his authority. They did not want to obey him.
- The Israelites showed that they were rejecting God when they worshiped false gods.
- The term "push away" is the literal meaning of this word. Other languages may have a similar expression that means to reject or refuse to believe someone or something.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "reject" could also be translated by "not accept" or "stop helping" or "refuse to obey" or "stop obeying."
- In the expression "stone that the builders rejected," the term "rejected" could be translated as "refused to use" or "did not accept" or "threw away" or "got rid of as worthless."
- In the context of people who rejected God's commandments, rejected could be translated as "refused to obey" his commands or "stubbornly chose to not accept" God's laws.

(See also: command, disobey, obey, stiff-necked)

Bible References:

- Galatians 4:12-14
- Hosea 4:6-7
- Isaiah 41:9
- John 12:48-50
- Mark 7:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0947, H0959, H2186, H2310, H3988, H5006, H5034, H5186, H5203, H5307, H5541, H5800, G01140, G04830, G05500, G05790, G05800, G05930, G06830, G07200, G16090, G38680

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 10:28; 12:17; 12:25)

repent, repentance

Definition:

The terms "repent" and "repentance" refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To "repent" literally means to "change one's mind."
- In the Bible, "repent" usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God's way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "repent" can be translated with a word or phrase that means "turn back (to God)" or "turn away from sin and toward God" or "turn toward God, away from sin."
- Often the term "repentance" can be translated using the verb "repent." For example, "God has given repentance to Israel" could be translated as "God has enabled Israel to repent."
- Other ways to translate "repentance" could include "turning away from sin" or "turning to God and away from sin."

(See also: forgive, sin, turn)

Bible References:

- Acts 3:19-20
- Luke 3:3
- Luke 3:8
- Luke 5:32
- Luke 24:47
- Mark 1:14-15
- Matthew 3:3
- Matthew 3:11
- Matthew 4:17
- Romans 2:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:2** After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- **17:13** David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- **19:18** They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- **24:2** Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, "**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!"
- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins."
- **44:5** "So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5150, H5162, H5164, G02780, G33380, G33400, G33410

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 6:1; 6:6; 7:21; 12:17)

report, reported, tell, reputation

Definition:

The term to "report" means to tell people about something that happened, often giving details about that event. A "report" is what is told, and can be spoken or written.

- "Report" could also be translated as "tell" or "explain" or "tell the details of."
- The expression "Report this to no one" could be translated as "Don't talk about this with anyone" or "Don't tell anyone about this."
- Ways to translate "a report" could include "an explanation" or "a story" or "a detailed account," depending on the context.

Bible References:

- Acts 5:22-23
- John 12:38
- Luke 5:15
- Luke 8:34-35
- Matthew 28:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1681, H1696, H1697, H5046, H7725, H8034, H8052, H8085, H8088, H8089, G01890, G01910, G03120, G05180, G09870, G12250, G13100, G18340, G20360, G21630, G30040, G30560, G31400, G33770

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 13:17)

rest, rested, restless

Definition:

The term "rest" generally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. However, the term can refer to various kinds of rest besides only rest from working. For example, a person might rest from fighting, rest from speaking, or rest from moving, etc.

- An object can be said to be "resting" somewhere, which means it is "standing" or "sitting" there.
- Something that "comes to rest" somewhere has "stopped" there.
- When a person or animals rest, they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the "Sabbath" day.
- To rest an object on something means to "place" or "put" it there.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to "rest (oneself)" could also be translated as to "stop working" or to "refresh himself" or to "stop carrying burdens."
- To "rest" an object on something could be translated as to "place" or "put" or "set" that object on something.
- When Jesus said, "I will give you rest," this could also be translated as "I will cause you to stop carrying your burden" or "I will help you be at peace" or "I will empower you to relax and trust in me."
- God said, "they will not enter my rest," and this statement could be translated as "they will not experience my blessings of rest" or "they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me."
- The term "the rest" could be translated as "those that remain" or "all the other people" or "everything that is left."

(See also: remnant, Sabbath)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- Genesis 2:3
- Jeremiah 6:16-19
- Matthew 11:29
- Revelation 14:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0014, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3498, H3499, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5183, H5564, H6314, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7673, H7677, H7901, H7931, H7954, H8058, H8172, H8252, H8300, G03720, G03730, G04250, G15150, G18790, G19540, G19810, G22700, G26630, G26640, G26810, G28380, G30620, G45200

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 3 General Notes; 3:11; 3:18; 4:1; 4:3; 4:4; 4:5; 4:8; 4:10; 4:11)

resurrection

Definition:

The term "resurrection" refers to the act of becoming alive again after having died.

- To resurrect someone means to bring that person back to life again. Only God has the power to do this.
- The word "resurrection" often refers to Jesus' coming back to life after he died.
- When Jesus said, "I am the Resurrection and the Life" he meant that he is the source of resurrection, and the one who causes people to come back to life.

Translation Suggestions:

- A person's "resurrection" could be translated as his "coming back to life" or his "becoming alive again after being dead."
- The literal meaning of this word is "a rising up" or "the act of being raised (from the dead)." These would be other possible ways to translate this term.

(See also: life, death, raise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:13
- 1 Peter 3:21
- Hebrews 11:35
- John 5:28-29
- Luke 20:27
- Luke 20:36
- Matthew 22:23
- Matthew 22:30
- Philippians 3:11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and **resurrection**, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the New Covenant.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, "I am the **Resurrection** and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he dies."

Word Data:

- Strong's: G03860, G14540, G18150

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 6:2; 11:35)

return, turn back

Definition:

The term "return" means to go back or to give something back.

- To "return to" something means to start doing that activity again. To "return to" a place or person means to go back to that place or person again.
- When the Israelites returned to their worship of idols, they were starting to worship them again.
- When they returned to Yahweh, they repented and were worshiping Yahweh again.
- To return land or things that were taken or received from someone else means to give that property back to the person it belongs to.

(See also: turn)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G03440, G03600, G03900, G18770, G18800, G19940, G52900

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 7:1; 11:15)

reveal, revealed, revelation

Definition:

The term "reveal" means to cause something to be known. A "revelation" is something that has been made known.

- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul said that he received the gospel by "revelation from Jesus Christ," he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- In the New Testament book "Revelation" is about God revealed events that will happen in the end times. He revealed them to the apostle John through visions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "reveal" could include "make known" or "disclose" or "show clearly."
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate "revelation" could be "communication from God" or "things that God has revealed" or "teachings about God." It is best to keep the meaning of "reveal" in the translation.
- The phrase "where there is no revelation" could be translated as "when God is not revealing himself to people" or "when God is not speaking to people" or "among people whom God has not communicating."

(See also: good news, good news, dream, vision)

Bible References:

- Daniel 11:1-2
- Ephesians 3:5
- Galatians 1:12
- Lamentations 2:13-14
- Matthew 10:26
- Philippians 3:15
- Revelation 1:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0241, H1540, H1541, G06010, G06020, G55370

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 9:8; 9:26)

revere, revered, reverence, reverent

Definition:

The term "reverence" refers to feelings of profound, deep respect for someone or something. "Revere" someone or something is to show reverence towards that person or thing.

- Feelings of reverence can be seen in actions that honor the person who is revered.
- The fear of the Lord is an inner reverence that manifests itself in obedience to God's commandments.
- This term could also be translated as "fear and honor" or "sincere respect."

(See also: fear, honor, obey)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:15-17
- Hebrews 11:7
- Isaiah 44:17
- Psalms 5:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3372, H3373, H3374, H4172, H6342, H7812, G01270, G17880, G21250, G24120, G53990, G54010

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 11:7; 12:28)

reward, prize, deserve

Definition:

The term "reward" refers to what a person receives because of something he has done, either good or bad. To "reward" someone is to give someone something he deserves. However, this is different than the concept of "wages," which refers to payment (often money) given in exchange for work performed.

- A reward can be a good or positive thing that a person receives because he has done something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to negative things that may result from bad behavior, such as the statement "the reward of the wicked." In this context "reward" refers to the punishment or negative consequences they receive because of their sinful actions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "reward" could be translated as "payment" or "something that is deserved" or "punishment."
- To "reward" someone could be translated by to "repay" or to "punish" or to "give what is deserved."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to wages. A reward is not specifically about earning money as part of a job.

(See also: punish)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 32:6
- Isaiah 40:10
- Luke 6:35
- Mark 9:40-41
- Matthew 5:11-12
- Matthew 6:3-4
- Psalms 127:3-5
- Revelation 11:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0319, H0866, H0868, H1576, H1578, H1580, H4909, H4991, H5023, H6118, H6468, H6529, H7938, H7939, H7999, G04690, G05140, G05910, G26030, G34050, G34060, G34080

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 10 General Notes; 10:35; 11:26)

right hand

Definition:

The term "right hand" refers to the hand on the right side of a person's body. In the Bible, the term is often used figuratively to refer to other body parts on a person's right side, to the direction of a person's right, to the direction south, or to a place of honor or strength on the right side of a ruler or other important individual.

- The right hand can be used figuratively as a symbol of power, authority, or strength.
- The Bible describes Jesus as sitting "at the right hand of" God the Father as the head of the body of believers (the Church) and in control as ruler of all creation.
- A person's right hand was used to show special honor when placed on the head of someone being given a blessing (as when the patriarch Jacob blessed Joseph's son Ephraim).
- To "serve at the right hand" of someone means to be the one whose service is especially helpful and important to that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- Sometimes the term "right hand" literally refers to a person's right hand, as when Roman soldiers put a staff into Jesus' right hand to mock him. This should be translated using the term that the language uses to refer to this hand.
- Regarding figurative uses, if an expression that includes the term "right hand" does not have the same meaning in the project language, then consider whether that language has a different expression with the same meaning.
- The expression "at the right hand of" could be translated as "on the right side of" or "in the place of honor beside" or "in the position of strength" or "ready to help."
- Ways to translate "with his right hand" could include "with authority" or "using power" or "with his amazing strength."
- The figurative expression "his right hand and his mighty arm" uses two ways of emphasizing God's power and great strength. One way to translate this expression could be "his amazing strength and mighty power." (See: parallelism)
- The expression "their right hand is falsehood" could be translated as "even the most honorable thing about them is corrupted by lies" or "their place of honor is corrupted by deception" or "they use lies to make themselves powerful."

(See also: accuse, evil, honor, mighty, punish, rebel)

Bible References:

- Acts 2:33
- Colossians 3:1
- Galatians 2:9
- Genesis 48:14
- Hebrews 10:12
- Lamentations 2:3
- Matthew 25:33
- Matthew 26:64
- Psalms 44:3
- Revelation 2:1-2

Word Data:

• Strong's: H3225, H3231, H3233, G11880

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:3; 1:13; 8:1; 10:12; 12:2)

righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

Definition:

The term "righteousness" refers to God's absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God "righteous." Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called "righteous" include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus' righteousness.

The term "unrighteous" means to be sinful and morally corrupt. "Unrighteousness" refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God's teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes "the unrighteous" refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms "upright" and "uprightness" refer to acting in a way that follows God's laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is "upright" is someone who obeys God's rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as "integrity" and "righteous" have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as "integrity and uprightness." (See: parallelism)

Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term "righteous" could be translated as "perfectly good and just" or "always acting rightly."
- God's "righteousness" could also be translated as "perfect faithfulness and goodness."
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term "righteous" could also be translated as "morally good" or "just" or "living a God-pleasing life."
- The phrase "the righteous" could also be translated as "righteous people" or "God-fearing people."
- Depending on the context, "righteousness" could also be translated with a word or phrase that means "goodness" or "being perfect before God" or "acting in a right way by obeying God" or "doing perfectly good."
- The term "unrighteous" could simply be translated as "not righteous."
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include "wicked" or "immoral" or "people who rebel against God" or "sinful."
- The phrase "the unrighteous" could be translated as "unrighteous people."
- The term "unrighteousness" could be translated as "sin" or "evil thoughts and actions" or "wickedness."
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to "righteous, righteousness."
- Ways to translate "upright" could include "acting rightly" or "one who acts rightly" or "following God's laws" or "obedient to God" or "behaving in a way that is right."
- The term "uprightness" could be translated as "moral purity" or "good moral conduct" or "rightness."
- The phrase "the upright" could be translated as "people who are upright" or "upright people."

(See also: evil, faithful, good, holy, integrity, just, law, law, obey, pure, righteous, sin, unlawful)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 1:8
- Psalms 37:30
- Psalms 49:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 2:6
- Matthew 6:1
- Acts 3:13-14
- Romans 1:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- Galatians 3:7
- Colossians 3:25
- 2 Thessalonians 2:10
- 2 Timothy 3:16
- 1 Peter 3:18-20
- 1 John 1:9
- 1 John 5:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **4:8** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:2** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:1** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G00930, G00940, G04580, G13410, G13420, G13430, G13440, G13450, G13460, G21180, G37160, G37170

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:8; 1:9; 5:13; 6:10; 7:2; 10:38; 11:4; 11:7; 11:33; 12:11; 12:23)

robe, robed

Definition:

A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by a man or a woman. It is similar to a coat.

- Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
- They can be long or short.
- Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.

(See also: royal, tunic)

Bible References:

- Exodus 28:4-5
- Genesis 49:11-12
- Luke 15:22
- Luke 20:46
- Matthew 27:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0145, H0155, H0899, H1545, H2436, H2684, H3671, H3801, H3830, H3847, H4060, H4254, H4598, H5497, H5622, H6614, H7640, H7757, H7897, H8071, G17460, G20670, G24400, G47490, G40160, G55110

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:12)

rod

Definition:

The term "rod" refers to a narrow, solid, stick-like tool that was used in several different ways. It was probably at least a meter in length.

- A wooden rod was used by a shepherd to defend the sheep from other animals. It was also thrown toward a wandering sheep to bring it back to the the flock.
- In Psalm 23, King David used the terms "rod" and "staff" as metaphors to refer to God's guidance and discipline for his people.
- A shepherd's rod was also used to count the sheep as they passed under it.
- Another metaphorical expression, "rod of iron," refers to God's punishment for people who rebel against him and do evil things.
- In ancient times, measuring rods made of metal, wood, or stone were used to measure the length of a building or object.
- In the Bible, a wooden rod was also referred to as an instrument to discipline children.

(See also: staff, sheep, shepherd)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 4:21
- 1 Samuel 14:43-44
- Acts 16:23
- Exodus 27:9-10
- Revelation 11:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2415, H4294, H4731, H7626, G25630, G44630, G44640

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 9:4)

run, runner, rushed, quickly went, scattered, flows

Definition:

Literally the term "run" means "move very quickly on foot," usually at a greater speed than can be accomplished by walking.

This main meaning of "run" is also used in figurative expressions such as the following: * To "run in such a way as to win the prize" refers to persevering in doing God's will with the same perseverance as running a race in order to win. * To "run in the path of your commands" means to gladly and quickly obey God's commands. * To "run after other gods" means to persist in worshiping other gods. * "I run to you to hide me" means to quickly turn to God for refuge and safety when faced with difficult things. * Water and other liquids such as tears, blood, sweat, and rivers are said to "run." This could also be translated as "flow." The border of a country or region is said to "run along" a river or the border of a different country. This could be translated by saying that the country's border "is next to" the river or other country or by saying that the country "borders" the river or other country. * Rivers and streams can "run dry," which means that they no longer have water in them. This could be translated as "have dried up" or "have become dry." * The days of a feast can "run their course," which means they "have passed by" or "are finished" or "are over."*

(See also: false god, persevere, refuge, turn)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:18
- Galatians 2:2
- Galatians 5:7
- Philippians 2:16
- Proverbs 1:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0213, H0386, H1065, H1272, H1556, H1980, H2100, H2416, H3001, H3212, H3332, H3381, H3920, H3988, H4422, H4754, H4794, H4944, H5074, H5127, H5140, H5472, H5756, H6437, H6440, H6544, H6805, H7272, H7291, H7310, H7323, H7325, H7519, H7751, H8264, H8308, H8444, G04130, G13770, G16010, G15300, G15320, G19980, G27010, G37290, G40630, G43700, G43900, G48900, G49360, G51430, G52400, G52950, G53430

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 12:1)

Sabbath

Definition:

The term "Sabbath" refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to "keep the Sabbath holy" is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called "Sabbath day" rather than only the Sabbath.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as "resting day" or "day for resting" or "day of not working" or "God's day of rest."
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in "Sabbath Day" or "Resting Day."
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: rest)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
- Acts 13:26-27
- Exodus 31:14
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Lamentations 2:6
- Leviticus 19:3
- Luke 13:14
- Mark 2:27
- Matthew 12:2
- Nehemiah 10:32-33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:5** "Always be sure to keep the **Sabbath day** holy. That is, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to honor me."
- **26:2** Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood. On the **Sabbath**, he went to the place of worship.
- **41:3** The day after Jesus was buried was a **Sabbath** day, and the Jews were not permitted to go to the tomb on that day.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4868, H7676, H7677, G43150, G45210

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 4:9)

sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms "sacrifice" and "offering" refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

sacrifice

- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God's perfect sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin; animal sacrifices could never do that.

offering

- The word "offering" generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term "sacrifice" refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as "burnt offering" and "peace offering," indicated what kind of offering was being given.

Translation Suggestions

- The term "offering" could also be translated as "a gift to God" or "something given to God" or "something valuable that is presented to God."
- Depending on the context, the term "sacrifice" could also be translated as "something valuable given in worship" or "a special animal killed and presented to God."
- The action to "sacrifice" could be translated as to "give up something valuable" or to "kill an animal and give it to God."
- Another way to translate "present yourself as a living sacrifice" could be "as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar."

(See also: altar, burnt offering, drink offering, false god, fellowship offering, freewill offering peace offering, priest, sin offering, worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:6
- Acts 7:42
- Acts 21:25
- Genesis 4:3-5
- James 2:21-24
- Mark 1:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 5:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **5:6** "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **5:9** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:6** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:6** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could to take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:8** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0801, H0817, H0819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G02660, G03340, G10490, G14350, G14940, G23780, G23800, G36460, G43760, G54850

saint

Definition:

The term "saints" literally means "holy ones" and refers to believers in Jesus.

- Later in church history, a person known for his good works was given the title "saint," but that was not how this term was used during New Testament times.
- Believers in Jesus are saints or holy ones, not because of what they have done, but rather because of their faith in the saving work of Jesus Christ. He is the one who makes them holy.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "saints" could include "holy ones" or "holy people" or "holy believers in Jesus" or "set apart ones."
- Be careful not to use a term that refers to people of only one Christian group.

(See also: holy)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:10
- 2 Corinthians 9:12-15
- Revelation 16:6
- Revelation 20:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2623, H6918, H6922, G00400

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 6:10; 13:24)

Samson

Facts:

Samson was one of the judges, or deliverers, of Israel. He was from the tribe of Dan.

- God gave Samson superhuman strength, which he used to fight against Israel's enemies, the Philistines.
- Samson was put under a vow to never cut his hair and to never drink wine or any other fermented drink. As long as he kept this vow, God continued to give him strength.
- He finally broke his vow and allowed his hair to be cut, enabling the Philistines to capture him.
- While Samson was in captivity, God enabled him to regain his strength and gave him the opportunity to destroy the temple of the false god Dagon, along with many Philistines.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: deliver, Philistines, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- Hebrews 11:32-34
- Judges 13:25
- Judges 16:2
- Judges 16:31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8123, G45460

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 11:32)

Samuel

Facts:

Samuel was a prophet and the last judge of Israel. He anointed both Saul and David as kings over Israel.

- Samuel was born to Elkanah and Hannah in the town of Ramah.
- Hannah had been barren, so she had prayed earnestly that God would give her a son. Samuel was the answer to that prayer.
- Hannah promised that if, in answer to her desperate prayer that God would give her a male child, her request was granted, she would dedicate her son to Yahweh.
- To fulfill her promise to God, when Samuel was a young boy, Hannah sent him to live with and help Eli the priest in the temple.
- God raised up Samuel to be a great prophet.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Hannah, judge, prophet, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 1:19
- 1 Samuel 9:24
- 1 Samuel 12:17
- Acts 3:24
- Acts 13:20
- Hebrews 11:32-34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8050, G45450

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 11:32)

sanctify, sanctification

Definition:

To sanctify is to set apart or to make holy. Sanctification is the process of being made holy.

- In the Old Testament, certain people and things were sanctified, or set apart, for service to God.
- The New Testament teaches that God sanctifies people who believe in Jesus. That is, he makes them holy and sets them apart to serve him.
- Believers in Jesus are also commanded to sanctify themselves to God, to be holy in everything they do.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "sanctify" can be translated as "set apart" or "make holy" or "purify."
- When people sanctify themselves, they purify themselves and dedicate themselves to God's service. Often the word "consecrate" is used in the Bible with this meaning.
- When its meaning is "consecrate," this term could be translated as "dedicate someone (or something) to God's service."
- Depending on the context, the phrase "your sanctification" could be translated as "making you holy" or "setting you apart (for God)" or "what makes you holy."

(See also: consecrate, holy, set apart)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 4:3-6
- 2 Thessalonians 2:13
- Genesis 2:1-3
- Luke 11:2
- Matthew 6:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6942, G00370, G00380

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2:11; 9:13; 10:10; 10:14; 10:29; 13:12)

Sarah, Sarai

Facts:

- Sarah was Abraham's wife.
- Her name was originally "Sarai," but God changed it to "Sarah."
- Sarah gave birth to Isaac, the son God had promised to give her and Abraham.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Isaac)

Bible References:

- Genesis 11:30
- Genesis 11:31
- Genesis 17:15
- Genesis 25:9-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:1** So Abram's wife, **Sarai**, said to him, "Since God has not allowed me to have children and now I am too old to have children, here is my servant, Hagar. Marry her also so she can have a child for me."
- **5:4** "Your wife, **Sarai**, will have a son—he will be the son of promise."
- **5:4** God also changed **Sarai's** name to **Sarah**, which means "princess."
- **5:5** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and **Sarah** was 90, **Sarah** gave birth to Abraham's son. They named him Isaac as God had told them to do.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8283, H8297, G45640

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 11:11)

Satan, devil, evil one

Facts:

Although the devil is a spirit being that God created, he rebelled against God and became God's enemy. The devil is also called "Satan" and "the evil one."

- The devil hates God and all that God created because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God.
- Satan tempts people to rebel against God.
- God sent his Son, Jesus, to rescue people from Satan's control.
- The name "Satan" means "adversary" or "enemy."
- The word "devil" means "accuser."

Translation Suggestions:

- The word "devil" could also be translated as "the accuser" or "the evil one" or "the king of evil spirits" or "the chief evil spirit."
- "Satan" could be translated as "Opponent" or "Adversary" or some other name that shows that he is the devil.
- These terms should be translated differently from demon and evil spirit.
- Consider how these terms are translated in a local or national language.

(See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: demon, evil, kingdom of God, tempt)

Bible References:

- 1 John 3:8
- 1 Thessalonians 2:17-20
- 1 Timothy 5:15
- Acts 13:10
- Job 1:8
- Mark 8:33
- Zechariah 3:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:1** The snake who deceived Eve was **Satan**. The promise meant that the Messiah who would come would defeat **Satan** completely.
- **25:6** Then **Satan** showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- **25:8** Jesus did not give in to **Satan's** temptations, so **Satan** left him.
- **33:6** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the word of God. The path is a person who hears God's word, but does not understand it, and the **devil** takes the word from him."
- **38:7** After Judas took the bread, **Satan** entered into him.
- **48:4** God promised that one of Eve's descendants would crush **Satan's** head, and **Satan** would wound his heel. This meant that **Satan** would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of **Satan** forever.
- **49:15** God has taken you out of **Satan's** kingdom of darkness and put you into God's kingdom of light.

- **50:9** "The weeds represent the people who belong to the **evil one**. The enemy who planted the weeds represents the **devil**."
- **50:10** "When the world ends, the angels will gather together all the people who belong to the **devil** and throw them into a raging fire, where they will cry and grind their teeth in terrible suffering."
- **50:15** When Jesus returns, he will completely destroy **Satan** and his kingdom. He will throw **Satan** into hell where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7700, H7854, H8163, G11390, G11400, G11410, G11420, G12280, G41900, G45660, G45670

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2:14)

save, saved, safe, salvation

Definition:

The term "save" refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To "be safe" means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been "saved," then God, through Jesus' death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term "salvation" refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, "salvation" usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "save" could include "deliver" or "keep from harm" or "take out of harm's way" or "keep from dying."
- In the expression "whoever would save his life," the term "save" could also be translated as "preserve" or "protect."
- The term "safe" could be translated as "protected from danger" or "in a place where nothing can harm."
- The term "salvation" could also be translated using words related to "save" or "rescue," as in "God's saving people (from being punished for their sins)" or "God's rescuing his people (from their enemies)."
- "God is my salvation" could be translated as "God is the one who saves me."
- "You will draw water from the wells of salvation" could be translated as "You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you."

(See also: cross, deliver, punish, sin, Savior)

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 80:3
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 6:3-5
- Luke 2:30
- Luke 8:36-37
- Acts 4:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 2:21
- Romans 1:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 6:17
- Philippians 1:28
- 1 Timothy 1:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:8** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:2** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:5** Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you."
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:8** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H5338, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G08030, G08040, G08060, G12950, G15080, G49820, G49910, G49920, G51980

scepter

Definition:

The term "scepter" refers to an ornamental rod or staff held by a ruler, such as a king.

- Scepters were originally a branch of wood with carved decorations. Later scepters were also made of precious metals such as gold.
- The scepter was a symbol of royalty and authority and also symbolized the honor and dignity associated with a king.
- In the Old Testament, God was described as having a scepter of righteousness because God rules as king over his people.
- An Old Testament prophecy referred to the Messiah as a symbolic scepter that would come from Israel to rule over all nations.
- This could also be translated as "ruling rod" or "ruler's rod" or "king's rod."

(See also: authority, Christ, king, righteous)

Bible References:

- Amos 1:5
- Esther 4:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Hebrews 1:8
- Numbers 21:18
- Psalms 45:6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2710, H4294, H7626, H8275, G44640

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:8)

scroll

Definition:

In ancient times, a scroll was a type of book made of one long, rolled-up sheet of papyrus or leather.

- After writing on a scroll or reading from it, people rolled it up by using the rods attached to its ends.
- Scrolls were used for legal documents and scripture.
- Sometimes scrolls that were delivered by a messenger were sealed with wax. If the wax was still present when the scroll was received, then the receiver knew that no one had opened the scroll to read it or write on it since it had been sealed.
- Scrolls containing the Hebrew Scriptures were read aloud in the synagogues.

(See also: seal, synagogue, word of God)

Bible References:

- Jeremiah 29:3
- Luke 4:17
- Numbers 21:14-15
- Revelation 5:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4039, H4040, H5612, G09740, G09750

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 10:7)

sea of reeds, Sea of Reeds, Red Sea

Facts:

The "Sea of Reeds" was the name of a body of water located between Egypt and Arabia. It is now called the "Red Sea."

- The Red Sea is long and narrow. It is larger than a lake or river, but much smaller than an ocean.
- The Israelites had to cross the Red Sea when they were fleeing from Egypt. God performed a miracle and caused the waters of the sea to divide so that the people could walk across on dry land.
- The land of Canaan was north of this sea.
- This could also be translated as "Reed Sea."

(See also: Arabia**.** Canaan, Egypt)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:35-37
- Exodus 13:17-18
- Joshua 4:22-24
- Numbers 14:23-25

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:4** When the Israelites saw the Egyptian army coming, they realized they were trapped between Pharaoh's army and the **Red Sea**.
- **12:5** Then God told Moses, "Tell the people to move toward the **Red Sea**."
- **13:1** After God led the Israelites through the **Red Sea**, he led them through the wilderness to a mountain called Sinai.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3220, H5488, G20630, G22810

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 11:29)

seek, search, look for

Definition:

The term "seek" means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is "sought." This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to "attempt" or "make an effort" to do something or to ask for something.

  • To "seek" or "look for" an opportunity to do something can mean to "try to find a time" to do it.
  • To "seek Yahweh" means to "spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him."
  • To "seek protection" means to "try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger."
  • To "seek justice" means to "make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly."
  • To "seek the truth" means to "make an effort to find out what the truth is."
  • To "seek favor" means to "urgently ask for favor" or to "do things to cause someone to help you."

(See also: just, true)

Bible References:

  • 1 Chronicles 10:14
  • Acts 17:26-27
  • Hebrews 11:6
  • Luke 11:9
  • Psalms 27:8

Word Data:

  • Strong's: H0579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7836, H8446, G03270, G15670, G19340, G20520, G22120

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 8:7; 11:6; 11:14; 12:17; 13:14)

send, sent, send out

Definition:

To "send" is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To "send out" someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

- Often a person who is "sent out" has been appointed to do a specific task.
- Phrases like "send rain" or "send disaster" mean to "cause...to come." This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
- The term "send" is also used in expressions such as to "send word" or to "send a message," which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
- To "send" someone "with" something can mean to "give" that thing "to" someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
- Jesus frequently used the phrase "the one who sent me" to refer to God the Father, who "sent" him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as "the one who commissoned me."

(See also: appoint, redeem, castout)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:33-34
- Acts 8:14-17
- John 20:21-23
- Matthew 9:37-38
- Matthew 10:5
- Matthew 10:40
- Matthew 21:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0935, H1540, H1980, H2199, H2904, H3318, H3474, H3947, H4916, H4917, H5042, H5130, H5375, H5414, H5674, H6963, H7368, H7725, H7964, H7971, H7972, H7993, H8421, H8446, G07820, G03750, G06300, G06490, G06520, G06570, G10260, G10320, G15440, G15990, G18210, G33330, G33430, G39360, G39920, G43110, G43410, G43690, G48420, G48820

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:14)

servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

Definition:

A "servant" or "slave" refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. A servant was under his master's control. In the Bible, "servant" and "slave" are mostly interchangable terms. The term "serve" generally means to do work for someone, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his "owner" or "master." Some masters treated their slaves cruelly. Other masters treated their slaves well, like a valued member of the household. The term "slavery" means the state of being a slave.
- A person could be a slave temporarily, for instance while working to repay a debt to his owner.
- The words "young man" or "young woman" often mean "servant" or "slave." This meaning will be discerned from context. One indicator of this situation is if the possessive is used, eg. "her young women" could be translated as "her servants" or "her slaves."
- The term "enslave" means "to cause to be a slave" (usually by force).
- The New Testament speaks of human beings as "slaves of sin" until Jesus frees them from its control and power. When a person receives new life in Christ, he stops being a slave to sin and becomes a slave to righteousness.

Translation Suggestions

- The term "serve" can also be translated as "minister to" or "work for" or "take care of" or "obey," depending on the context.
- The term "enslave" could be translated as "cause to not be free" or "force to serve others" or "put under the control of others."
- The phrase "enslaved to" or "in bondage to" could be translated as "forced to be a slave of" or "forced to serve" or "under the control of."
- To "serve God" can be translated as to "worship and obey God" or to "do the work that God has commanded."
- In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often called his "servants."
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his "servants."
- To "serve tables" means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to "distribute food."
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means "care for" or "serve food to" or "provide food for." When Jesus told the disciples to "serve" the fish to the people, this could be translated as, "distribute" or "hand out" or "give."
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to "serve" the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they "serve" the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus' sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their "service" to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as "serving" or "obeying" or "devotion to."
- Often, when a person referred to himself as "your servant" he was showing respect to the person addressed. That person may have had higher social status, or the speaker may be showing humility. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.

(See also: bondage, works, obey, house, lord)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:13
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Genesis 25:23
- Deuteronomy 24:7
- Jeremiah 30:8-9
- Matthew 4:10-11
- Matthew 6:24
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- Mark 8:7-10
- Mark 9:33-35
- Luke 4:8
- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 12:47-48
- Luke 22:26-27
- Acts 4:29-31
- Acts 6:2-4
- Acts 10:7-8
- Galatians 4:3
- Galatians 4:24-25
- Colossians 1:7-8
- Colossians 3:22-25
- 2 Timothy 2:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:1** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **8:4** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **9:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt."
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **29:3** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **35:6** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **47:4** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **50:4** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

Word Data:

- (Servant) Strong's: H0519, H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G12490, G14010, G14020, G23240, G34070, G34110, G36100, G38160, G49830, G52570
- (Serve) H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G12470, G12480, G13980, G14020, G14380, G19830, G20640, G22120, G23230, G29990, G30000, G30090, G43370, G43420, G47540, G50870, G52560
- (Enslave) H3533, G26150

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2:15; 3:5; 8:5; 9:6; 9:9; 9:14; 10:2; 12:28; 13:10)

sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication

Definition:

The term "sexual immorality" refers to sexual activity that takes place outside the marriage relationship of a man and a woman. This is against God's plan. Older English Bible versions call this "fornication."

- This term can refer to any kind of sexual activity that is against God's will, including homosexual acts and pornography.
- One type of sexual immorality is adultery, which is sexual activity specifically between a married person and someone who is not that person's spouse.
- Another type of sexual immorality is "prostitution," which involves being paid to have sex with someone.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to Israel's unfaithfulness to God when they worshiped false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "sexual immorality" could be translated as "immorality" as long as the correct meaning of the term is understood.
- Other ways to translate this term could include "wrong sexual acts" or "sex outside of marriage."
- This term should be translated in a different way from the term "adultery."
- The translation of this term's figurative uses should retain the literal term if possible since there is a common comparison in the Bible between unfaithfulness to God and unfaithfulness in the sexual relationship.

(See also: adultery, false god, prostitute, faithful)

Bible References:

- Acts 15:20
- Acts 21:25-26
- Colossians 3:5-8
- Ephesians 5:3
- Genesis 38:24-26
- Hosea 4:13-14
- Matthew 5:31-32
- Matthew 19:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2181, H8457, G16080, G42020, G42030

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 12:16; 13:4)

shadow, overshadow, shade

Definition:

The word "shadow" literally refers to the darkness that is caused by an object blocking the light. It also has several figurative meanings.

- The "shadow of death" means that death is present or near, just as a shadow indicates the presence of its object.
- Many times in the Bible, the life of a human being is compared to a shadow, which does not last very long and has no substance.
- Sometimes "shadow" is used as another word for "darkness."
- The Bible talks about being hidden or protected in the shadow of God's wings or hands. This is a picture of being protected and hidden from danger. Other ways to translate "shadow" in these contexts could include "shade" or "safety" or "protection."
- It is best to translate "shadow" literally using the local term that is used to refer to an actual shadow.

(See also: darkness, light)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:9
- Genesis 19:8
- Isaiah 30:2
- Jeremiah 6:4
- Psalms 17:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2927, H6738, H6751, H6752, H6754, H6757, G06440, G19820, G26830, G46390

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 8:5; 10:1)

shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

Definition:

The term "shame" refers to the painful feeling of being disgraced or humiliated that a person feels when they do something that others consider dishonorable or improper.

- Something that is "shameful" is "improper" or "dishonorable."
- The term "ashamed" describes how a person feels when he has done something improper or dishonorable.
- The term "humiliate" means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced, usually publicly. The act of shaming someone is called "humiliation."
- To "reproach" someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person's character or behavior.
- The phrase "put to shame" means to defeat people or expose their actions so that they feel ashamed of themselves. The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- The term "disgraceful" can be used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it. When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame. For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- When God humbles someone, it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- Saying that a person is "above reproach" or "beyond reproach" or "without reproach" means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.

Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate "disgrace" could include "shame" or "dishonor."
- Ways to translate "disgraceful" could include "shameful" or "dishonoring."
- To "humiliate" could also be translated as to "shame" or to "cause to feel shame" or to "embarrass."
- Depending on the context, ways to translate "humiliation" could include "shame" or "degrading" or "disgrace."
- The word "reproach" could also be translated as "accusation" or "shame" or "disgrace."
- To "reproach" could also be translated as to "rebuke" or to "accuse" or to "criticize," depending on the context.

(See also: dishonor, accuse, rebuke, false god, humble, Isaiah, worship)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 3:15-17
- 2 Kings 2:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 8:38
- Mark 12:4-5
- 1 Timothy 3:7
- Genesis 34:7
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 2:1-2
- Psalms 22:6
- Deuteronomy 21:14
- Ezra 9:5

• Proverbs 25:7-8
• Psalms 6:8-10
• Psalms 123:3
• 1 Timothy 5:7-8
• 1 Timothy 6:13-14
• Jeremiah 15:15-16
• Job 16:9-10
• Proverbs 18:3

Word Data:

• Strong's: H0937, H0954, H0955, H1317, H1322, H1421, H1442, H1984, H2490, H2616, H2617, H2659, H2778, H2781, H2865, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H3971, H5007, H5034, H5039, H6030, H6031, H6172, H6256, H7022, H7034, H7036, H7043, H7511, H7817, H8103, H8213, H8216, H8217, H8589, G01520, G01530, G04100, G04220, G04230, G08080, G08180, G08190, G08210, G17880, G17910, G18700, G26170, G30590, G36790, G36800, G36810, G38560, G50140, G51950, G51960, G54840

shepherd, herder, pastor

Definition:

A "shepherd" is a person who takes care of sheep. In the Old Testament, this word can also refer to a "herder" who takes care of other kinds of domestic livestock such as goats or cattle.

- As a verb, the term "shepherd" means to lead sheep (or other livestock) to places with good food and water, protect them from wild animals, keep them from getting lost and other duties necessary to keep livestock alive and healthy.
- In the Bible, this term is often used figuratively to refer to taking care of the needs of people (not only animals), both physical and spiritual.
- In the Old Testament, God was called the "shepherd" of his people because he took care of them. In the New Testament, Jesus called himself the "good shepherd," and in other places Jesus is called the "great shepherd" of the Church.
- The term "shepherd" is also used in the New Testament to refer to a person who is a spiritual leader over other believers. The word translated as "pastor" is the same word that is translated as "shepherd." Elders and overseers are also called shepherds.

Translation Suggestions

- The noun "shepherd" can be translated as "person who takes care of sheep" or "sheep tender" or "sheep caregiver."
- When referring to someone who cares for livestock other than sheep, the term can be translated as "herder," "tender of livestock" or "person who takes care of livestock."
- When used as a verb, the term "shepherd" could be translated as "take care of sheep" or "watch over sheep."
- In some contexts, the term "shepherd" could be translated as "leader" or "guide" or "caregiver."
- When used figuratively, the noun "shepherd" could be translated in different ways, including "spiritual shepherd" or "spiritual leader" or "one who is like a shepherd" or "one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep" or "one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep" or "one who takes care of God's sheep."
- When used figuratively, the verb "shepherd" could be translated as to "take care of" or to "spiritually nourish" or to "guide and teach" or to "lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep)."

(See also: sheep, livestock, pastor)

Bible References:

- Genesis 13:7
- Genesis 49:24
- Luke 2:9
- Mark 6:34
- Mark 14:26-27
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 9:36
- Matthew 25:32
- Matthew 26:31

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:11** Moses became a **shepherd** in the wilderness far away from Egypt.to

- **17:2** David was a **shepherd** from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- **23:6** That night, there were some **shepherds** in a nearby field guarding their flocks.
- **23:8** The **shepherds** soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them.
- **30:3** To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a **shepherd**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6629, H7462, H7469, H7473, G07500, G41650, G41660

(**Go back to:**)

sign, proof, reminder

Definition:

The term "sign" usually refers an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- In the Bible, signs are sometimes given in connection to a promise or covenant that God has made:
    - The book of Genesis describes the rainbow God created in the sky as a sign (or reminder) to himself that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
    - In the book of Genesis, God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign (or indicator) of the fact that he had made his covenant with them.

- Signs can reveal or point to something:
    - The book of Luke describes that an angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
    - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.

- Signs can prove that something is true:
    - The book of Exodus describes the plagues that destroyed Egypt as signs that showed who Yahweh was and proved that he was greater than Pharaoh and the Egyptian gods.
    - The book of Acts describes the miracles performed by the prophets and apostles as signs that proved they were speaking God's message.
    - The book of John describes the miracles that Jesus performed as signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- The frequent expression "signs and wonders" could be translated as "proofs and miracles" or "miraculous works that prove God's power" or "amazing miracles that show how great God is."
- Depending on its context, "sign" could also be translated as "signal" or "symbol" or "mark" or "evidence" or "proof" or "gesture."
- To "make signs with the hands" could also be translated as "motion with the hands" or "gesture with the hands" or "make gestures."
- In some languages, there may be one word for a "sign" that proves something and a different word for a "sign" that is a miracle.

(See also: miracle, apostle, Christ, covenant, circumcise)

Bible References:

- Acts 2:18-19
- Exodus 4:8-9
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Genesis 1:14
- Genesis 9:12
- John 2:18
- Luke 2:12
- Mark 8:12
- Psalms 89:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0226, H0852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, G03640, G08800, G12130, G12290, G17180, G17300, G17320, G17700, G39020, G41020, G45910, G45920, G49530, G49730, G52800

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2:4)

sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term "sin" refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God's will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don't know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God's will are called "sinful."
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a "sinful nature," a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A "sinner" is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word "sinners" was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn't keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term "sinner" was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "sin" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "disobedience to God" or "going against God's will" or "evil behavior and thoughts" or "wrongdoing."
- To "sin" could also be translated as to "disobey God" or to "do wrong."
- Depending on the context "sinful" could be translated as "full of wrongdoing" or "wicked" or "immoral" or "evil" or "rebelling against God."
- Depending on the context the term "sinner" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "person who sins" or "person who does wrong things" or "person who disobeys God" or "person who disobeys the law."
- The term "sinners" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "very sinful people" or "people considered to be very sinful" or "immoral people."
- Ways to translate "tax collectors and sinners" could include "people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people" or "very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors."
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don't see or know about.
- The term "sin" should be general, and different from the terms for "wickedness" and "evil."

(See also: disobey, evil, flesh, tax collector)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:1-3
- 1 John 1:10
- 1 John 2:2
- 2 Samuel 7:12-14
- Acts 3:19
- Daniel 9:24
- Genesis 4:7
- Hebrews 12:2
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 4:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31

• Romans 6:23
• Romans 8:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:1** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:1** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinners** who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:8** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0817, H0819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G02640, G02650, G02660, G02680, G03610, G37810, G39000, G42580

slaughter, slaughtered

Definition:

The term "slaughter" refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it. The act of slaughtering is also called "slaughter."

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter in which 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies because of disobedience to God.
- "Weapons of slaughter" could be translated as "weapons for killing."
- The expression "the slaughter was very great" could be translated as "a large number were killed" or "the number of deaths was very great" or "a terribly high number of people died."
- Other ways to translate "slaughter" could include "kill" or "slay" or "killing."

(See also: angel, cow, disobey, Ezekiel, servant, slay)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Hebrews 7:1
- Isaiah 34:2
- Jeremiah 25:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2027, H2028, H2076, H2491, H2873, H2874, H2878, H4046, H4293, H4347, H4660, H5221, H6993, H7524, H7819, H7821, G28710, G49670, G49690

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 7:1)

son

Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their "son" for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An "adopted son" is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- The phrase "son of" can be used to identify a person's father, mother, or an ancestor from some previous generation. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- The "sons of Israel" are usually the Israelite nation (after Genesis).
- Using "son of" to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, "Azariah son of Zadok" and "Azariah son of Nathan" in 1 Kings 4, and "Azariah son of Amaziah" in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.
- The phrase "son of" can be used to associate the person with whatever person or concept comes next. The meaning is then greatly determined by context. It can be positive (eg. 2 Kings 2:16: "sons of ability"), negative (eg. 2 Samuel 7:10: "sons of wickedness"), denote membership in a group, express contempt by not naming the person (eg. "you sons of Zeruiah"), etc.

Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate "son" by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term "Son of God," the project language's common term for "son" should be used.
- Sometimes "sons" can be translated as "children," when both males and females are being referred to. For example, "sons of God" could be translated as "children of God" since this expression also includes girls and women.

(See also: descendant, ancestor, Son of God, sons of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:2
- 1 Thessalonians 5:5
- Galatians 4:7
- Hosea 11:1
- Isaiah 9:6
- Matthew 3:17
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 8:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:8** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **4:9** God said, "I will give you a **son** from your own body."
- **5:5** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's **son**.
- **5:8** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, "Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me."

- **9:7** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:6** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **18:1** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:4** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?" they said.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G38160, G50430, G52070

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2 General Notes; 2:6; 2:10; 7:5; 11:21; 11:22; 11:24; 12:5; 12:6; 12:7; 12:8)

Son of God, the Son

Facts:

The term "Son of God" refers to Jesus, the Word of God, who came into the world as a human being. He is also often referred to as "the Son."

- The Son of God has the same nature as God the Father, and is fully God.
- God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit are all of one essence.
- Unlike human sons, the Son of God has always existed.
- In the beginning, the Son of God was active in creating the world, along with the Father and the Holy Spirit.

Because Jesus is God's Son, he loves and obeys his Father, and his Father loves him.

Translation Suggestions:

- For the term "Son of God," it is best to translate "Son" with the same word the language would naturally use to refer to a human son.
- Make sure the word used to translate "son" fits with the word used to translate "father" and that these words are the most natural ones used to express a true father-son relationship in the project language.
- Using a capital letter to begin "Son" may help show that this is talking about God.
- The phrase "the Son" is a shortened form of "the Son of God," especially when it occurs in the same context as "the Father."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Christ, ancestor, God, God the Father, Holy Spirit, Jesus, son, sons of God)

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:10
- Acts 9:20
- Colossians 1:17
- Galatians 2:20
- Hebrews 4:14
- John 3:18
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 11:27
- Revelation 2:18
- Romans 8:29

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:5** The angel explained, "The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the **Son of God**."
- **24:9** God had told John, "The Holy Spirit will come down and rest on someone you baptize. That person is **the Son of God**."
- **31:8** The disciples were amazed. They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "Truly, you are **the Son of God**."
- **37:5** Martha answered, "Yes, Master! I believe you are the Messiah, the **Son of God**."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, **the Son**, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **46:6** Right away, Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the **Son of God**!"

• **49:9** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only **Son** so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.

Word Data:

• Strong's: H0426, H0430, H1121, H1247, G23160, G52070

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:2; 1:8; 3:6; 4:14; 5:5; 5:8; 6:6; 7:3; 7:28; 10:29)

sons of God, children of God

Definition:

The term "sons of God" is a figurative expression that has several possible meanings.

- In the New Testament, the term "sons of God" refers to all believers in Jesus and is often translated as "children of God" since it includes both males and females.
- This use of the term speaks of a relationship with God that is like the relationship between a human son and his father, with all the privileges associated with being sons.
- Some people interpret the term "sons of God" that appears in Genesis 6 to mean fallen angels—evil spirits or demons. Others think it may refer to powerful political rulers or to the descendants of Seth.
- The title "Son of God" is a different term: it refers to Jesus, who is God's only Son.

Translation Suggestions:

- When "sons of God" refers to believers in Jesus, it could be translated as "children of God."
- In Genesis 6:2 and 4 ways to translate "sons of God" could include "angels," "spirit beings," "supernatural creatures," or "demons."
- Also see the link for "son."

(See also: angel, demon, son, Son of God, ruler, spirit)

Bible References:

- Genesis 6:2
- Genesis 6:4
- Job 1:6
- Romans 8:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H1121, G52070, G50430

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 12:5)

soul, self, person

Definition:

The term "soul" can either refer generally to the non-physical part of a person or refer specifically to a person's awareness of themselves as a person distinct from others.

- In the Bible, the terms "soul" and "spirit" may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- In contrast to the body, the "soul" can be spoken of as the part of a person that "relates to God."
- The word "soul" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, "the soul who sins" means "the person who sins" and "my soul is tired" means "I am tired."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "soul" could also be translated as "inner self" or "inner person."
- In some contexts, "my soul" could be translated as "I" or "me."
- Usually the phrase "the soul" can be translated as "the person" or "he" or "him," depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for the concepts "soul" and "spirit."
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase "dividing soul and spirit" could mean "deeply discerning or exposing the inner person."

(See also: spirit)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:8
- Acts 2:27-28
- Acts 2:41
- Genesis 49:6
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- James 1:21
- Jeremiah 6:16-19
- Jonah 2:7-8
- Luke 1:47
- Matthew 22:37
- Psalms 19:7
- Revelation 20:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5082, H5315, H5397, G55900

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 4:12; 6:19; 10:38; 10:39; 12:3; 13:17)

spirit, wind, breath

Definition:

The term "spirit" refers to the non-physical part of a person which cannot be seen. In biblical times, the concept of a person's spirit was closely related to the concept of a person's breath. The term can also refer to wind, that is, the movement of air in the natural world.

- The term "spirit" can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, such as an evil spirit.
- In general, the term "spiritual" describes things in the non-physical world.
- The term "spirit of" can also mean "having the characteristics of," such as in "spirit of wisdom" or "in the spirit of Elijah." Sometimes the Bible applies this term in the context of a person's attitude or emotional state, such as "spirit of fear" and "spirit of jealousy."
- Jesus said that God is a spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate "spirit" might include "non-physical being" or "inside part" or "inner being."
- In some contexts, the term "spirit" could be translated as "evil spirit" or "evil spirit being."
- Sometimes the term "spirit" is used to express the feelings of a person, as in "my spirit was grieved in my inmost being." This could also be translated as "I felt grieved in my spirit" or "I felt deeply grieved."
- The phrase "spirit of" could be translated as "character of" or "influence of" or "attitude of" or "thinking (that is) characterized by."
- Depending on the context, "spiritual" could be translated as "non-physical" or "from the Holy Spirit" or "God's" or "part of the non-physical world."
- The phrase "spiritual maturity" could be translated as "godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit."
- The term "spiritual gift" could be translated as "special ability that the Holy Spirit gives."
- Sometimes this term can be translated as "wind" when referring to the simple movement of air or "breath" when referring to air movement caused by living beings.

(See also: soul, Holy Spirit, demon, breath)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:5
- 1 John 4:3
- 1 Thessalonians 5:23
- Acts 5:9
- Colossians 1:9
- Ephesians 4:23
- Genesis 7:21-22
- Genesis 8:1
- Isaiah 4:4
- Mark 1:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 1:27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:3** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:7** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:5** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:7** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G41510, G41520, G41530, G53260, G54270

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:7; 1:14; 4:12; 12:9; 12:23)

staff, clubs

Definition:

A staff is a long wooden stick or rod, often used as a walking stick.

- When Jacob was old, he used a staff to help him walk.
- God turned Moses' staff into a snake to show his power to Pharaoh.
- Shepherds also used a staff to help guide their sheep, or to rescue the sheep when they fell or wandered.
- The shepherd's staff had a hook on the end, so it differed from the shepherd's rod, which was straight and was used to kill wild animals that were trying to attack the sheep.

(See also: Pharaoh, power, sheep, shepherd)

Bible References:

- Exodus 4:1-3
- Exodus 7:9
- Luke 9:3
- Mark 6:7-9
- Matthew 10:8-10
- Matthew 27:29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4132, H4294, H4731, H4938, H6086, H6418, H7626, G25630, G35860, G44640

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 11:21)

stone, stoning

Definition:

A stone is a small rock. To "stone" someone is to throw stones and larger rocks at that person with the intention of killing him. A "stoning" is an event in which someone was stoned.

- In ancient times, stoning was a common method of executing people as punishment for crimes they had committed.
- God commanded the Israelite leaders to stone people for certain sins, such as adultery.
- In the New Testament, Jesus forgave a woman caught in adultery and stopped people from stoning her.
- Stephen, who was the first person in the Bible to be killed for testifying about Jesus, was stoned to death.
- In the city of Lystra, the apostle Paul was stoned, but he did not die from his wounds.

(See also: adultery, commit, crime, death, Lystra, testimony)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:57-58
- Acts 7:59-60
- Acts 14:5
- Acts 14:19-20
- John 8:4-6
- Luke 13:34
- Luke 20:6
- Matthew 23:37-39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0068, H0069, H0810, H1382, H1496, H1530, H2106, H2672, H2687, H2789, H4676, H4678, H5553, H5601, H5619, H6344, H6443, H6697, H6864, H6872, H7275, H7671, H8068, G26420, G29910, G30340, G30350, G30360, G30370, G40740, G43480, G55860

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 11:37; 12:20)

strength, strengthen, strong

Facts:

The term "strength" refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To "strengthen" someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- "Strength" can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has "strength of will" if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his "strength" because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being "strengthened," people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term "strengthen" can be translated as "cause to be strong" or "make more powerful."
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase "strengthen your brothers" could also be translated as "encourage your brothers" or "help your brothers to persevere."
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
    - "puts strength on me like a belt" means "causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist."
    - "in quietness and trust will be your strength" means "acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong."
    - "will renew their strength" means "will become stronger again."
    - "by my strength and by my wisdom I acted" means "I have done all this because I am so strong and wise."
    - "strengthen the wall" means "reinforce the wall" or "rebuild the wall."
    - "I will strengthen you" means "I will cause you to be strong"
    - "in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength" means "Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us."
    - "the rock of your strength" means "the faithful one who makes you strong"
    - "with the saving strength of his right hand" means "he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand."
    - "of little strength" means "not very strong" or "weak."
    - "with all my strength" means "using my best efforts" or "strongly and completely."

(See also: faithful, persevere, right hand, save)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 2:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 21:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0193, H0202, H0353, H0360, H0386, H0410, H0553, H0556, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8632, H8633,

G04610, G09500, G14110, G14120, G17430, G17650, G18400, G19910, G24790, G24800, G29010, G29040, G36190, G37560, G45990, G47320, G47330, G47410

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 6:18; 9:17)

subject, be subject to, subjection

Facts:

A person is the "subject" of another person if the second person rules over the first. To "be subject to" is to "obey" or to "submit to the authority of."

- The phrase "put in subjection to" refers to causing people to be under the authority of a leader or ruler.
- To "subject someone to something" means to cause that person to experience something negative, such as punishment.
- Sometimes the term "subject" is used to refer to being the topic or focus of something, such as in, "you will be the subject of ridicule."
- The phrase "be subject to" means the same as "be submissive to" or "submit to."

(See also: submit)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 2:14-16
- 1 Kings 4:6
- 1 Peter 2:18-20
- Hebrews 2:5
- Proverbs 12:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H3533, H3665, H4522, H5647, H5927, G03500, G13790, G13960, G17770, G36630, G52920, G52930

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2:5; 2:8)

submit, submission, in submission

Definition:

To "submit" usually means to voluntarily place oneself under the authority of a person or government.

- The Bible tells believers in Jesus to submit to God and other authorities in their lives.
- The instruction to "submit to one another" means to humbly accept correction and to focus on the needs of others rather than on our own needs.
- To "live in submission to" means to put oneself under the authority of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- The command "submit to" could be translated as "put yourself under the authority of" or "follow the leadership of" or "humbly honor and respect"
- The term "submission" could be translated as "obedience" or "the following of authority."
- The phrase "live in submission to" could be translated as "be obedient to" or "put oneself under the authority of."
- The phrase "be in submission" could be translated as "humbly accept authority."

(See also: subject)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 14:34-36
- 1 Peter 3:1
- Hebrews 13:15-17
- Luke 10:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3584, G52260, G52930

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 12:9; 13:17)

suffer, suffering

Definition:

The terms "suffer" and "suffering" refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional, such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- The phrase "suffer me" means "bear with me" or "hear me out" or "listen patiently."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "suffer" can be translated as "feel pain" or "endure difficulty" or "experience hardships" or "go through difficult and painful experiences."
- Depending on the context, "suffering" could be translated as "extremely difficult circumstances" or "severe hardships" or "experiencing hardship" or "time of painful experiences."
- The phrase "suffer thirst" could be translated as "experience thirst" or "suffer with thirst."
- To "suffer violence" could also be translated as "undergo violence" or "be harmed by violent acts."

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14-16
- 2 Thessalonians 1:3-5
- 2 Timothy 1:8
- Acts 7:11-13
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 6:6-8
- Matthew 16:21
- Psalms 22:24
- Revelation 1:9
- Romans 5:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:13** God said, "I have seen the **suffering** of my people."
- **38:12** Jesus prayed three times, "My Father, if it is possible, please let me not have to drink this cup of **suffering**."
- **42:3** He (Jesus) reminded them that the prophets said the Messiah would **suffer** and be killed, but would rise again on the third day.
- **42:7** He (Jesus) said, "It was written long ago that the Messiah would **suffer**, die, and rise from the dead on the third day."
- **44:5** "Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would **suffer** and die."
- **46:4** God said, "I have chosen him (Saul) to declare my name to the unsaved. I will show him how much he must **suffer** for my sake."
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more **suffering**, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0943, H1741, H1934, H4531, H5142, H5375, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6041, H6064, H6090, H6770, H6869, H6887, H7661, G00910, G09410, G09710, G22100, G23460, G23470, G25520, G25530, G25610, G38040, G39580, G43100, G47780, G47770, G48410, G50040

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2:9; 2:10; 2:18; 5:8; 9:26; 10:32; 11:25; 13:12)

sword, swordsmen

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: Metaphor)
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), tongue, word of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 12:2
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Luke 2:33-35
- Luke 21:24
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55
- Revelation 1:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0019, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G31620, G45010

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 4:12; 11:34; 11:37)

tabernacle

Definition:

The tabernacle was a special tent-like structure where the Israelites worshiped God during the 40 years they traveled around in the desert.

- God had given the Israelites detailed instructions for building this large tent, which had two rooms and was surrounded by an enclosed courtyard.
- Each time the Israelites moved to a different place in the desert to live, the priests would take the tabernacle apart and carry it to their next campsite. Then they would set it up again in the center of their new camp.
- The tabernacle was constructed of wood frames hung with curtains made of cloth, goat hair, and animal skins. The courtyard surrounding it was enclosed with more curtains.
- The two sections of the tabernacle were the Holy Place (where the altar for burning incense was located) and the Most Holy Place (where the ark of the covenant was kept).
- The courtyard of the tabernacle had an altar for burning animal sacrifices and a special washbasin for ritual cleansing.
- The Israelites stopped using the tabernacle when the temple was built in Jerusalem by Solomon.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word "tabernacle" means "dwelling place." Other ways to translate it could include, "sacred tent" or "tent where God was" or "God's tent."
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of "temple."

(See also: altar, altar of incense, ark of the covenant, temple, tent of meeting)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:30
- 2 Chronicles 1:2-5
- Acts 7:43
- Acts 7:45
- Exodus 38:21
- Joshua 22:19-20
- Leviticus 10:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0168, H4908, H5520, H5521, H5522, H7900, G46330, G46340, G46360, G46380

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 8:2; 8:5; 9:2; 9:3; 9:6; 9:8; 9:11; 9:21; 13:10)

teach, teaching, untaught

Definition:

To "teach" someone is to tell him something he doesn't already know. It can also mean to "provide information" in general, with no reference to the person who is learning. Usually the information is given in a formal or systematic way. A person's "teaching" is or his "teachings" are what he has taught.

- A "teacher" is someone who teaches. The past action of "teach" is "taught."
- When Jesus was teaching, he was explaining things about God and his kingdom.
- Jesus' disciples called him "Teacher" as a respectful form of address for someone who taught people about God.
- The information that is being taught can be shown or spoken.
- The term "doctrine" refers to a set of teachings from God about himself as well as God's instructions about how to live. This could also be translated as "teachings from God" or "what God teaches us."
- The phrase "what you have been taught" could also be translated as "what these people have taught you" or "what God has taught you," depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate "teach" could include "tell" or "explain" or "instruct."
- Often this term can be translated as "teaching people about God."

(See also: instruct, teacher, word of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:3
- Acts 2:40-42
- John 7:14
- Luke 4:31
- Matthew 4:23
- Psalms 32:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0502, H2094, H2449, H3045, H3046, H3256, H3384, H3925, H3948, H7919, H8150, G13170, G13210, G13220, G20850, G26050, G27270, G31000, G23120, G25670, G38110, G49940

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 5:12; 6:2; 8:11)

teacher, Teacher

Definition:

A teacher is a person who gives other people new information. Teachers help others to obtain and use both knowledge and skills.

> • In the Bible, the word "teacher" is used in a special sense to refer to someone who teaches about God.
> • People who learn from a teacher are called "students" or "disciples."
> • In some Bible translations, this term is capitalized ("Teacher") when it is used as a title for Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

> • The usual word for a teacher can be used to translate this term, unless that word is only used for a school teacher.
> • Some cultures may have a special title that is used for religious teachers, such as "Sir" or "Rabbi" or "Preacher."

(See also: disciple, preach)

Bible References:

> • Ecclesiastes 1:12-15
> • Ephesians 4:11-13
> • Galatians 6:6-8
> • Habakkuk 2:18
> • James 3:2
> • John 1:37-39
> • Luke 6:40
> • Matthew 12:38-40

Examples from the Bible stories:

> • **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "**Teacher**, what must I do to inherit eternal life?"
> • **28:1** One day a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, "Good **Teacher**, what must I do to have eternal life?"
> • **37:2** After the two days had passed, Jesus said to his disciples, "Let's go back to Judea." "But **Teacher**," the disciples answered, "Just a short time ago the people there wanted to kill you!"
> • **38:14** Judas came to Jesus and said, "Greetings, **Teacher**," and kissed him.
> • **49:3** Jesus was also a great **teacher**, and he spoke with authority because he is the Son of God.

Word Data:

> • Strong's: H3384, H3925, G13200, G25670, G35470, G55720

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 5:12)

tempt, temptation

Definition:

To tempt someone is to try to get that person to do something wrong.

- A temptation is something that causes a person to want to do something wrong.
- People are tempted by their own sinful nature and by other people.
- Satan also tempts people to disobey God and to sin against God by doing wrong things.
- Satan tempted Jesus and tried to get him to do something wrong, but Jesus resisted all of Satan's temptations and never sinned.
- Someone who is "tempting God" is not trying to get him to do something wrong, but rather, is continuing in stubborn disobedience of him to the point that God must respond by punishing him. This is also called "testing God."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "tempt" can be translated as "try to cause to sin" or "entice" or "cause a desire to sin."
- Ways to translate "temptations" could include, "things that tempt" or "things that entice someone to sin" or "things that cause desire to do something wrong."
- To "tempt God" could be translated as to "put God to the test" or to "test God" or to "try God's patience" or to "cause God to have to punish" or to "stubbornly keep disobeying God."

(See also: disobey, Satan, sin, test)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 3:4-5
- Hebrews 4:15
- James 1:13
- Luke 4:2
- Luke 11:4
- Matthew 26:41

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:1** Then Satan came to Jesus and **tempted** him to sin.
- **25:8** Jesus did not give in to Satan's **temptations**, so Satan left him.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to pray that they would not enter into **temptation**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0974, H4531, H5254, G05510, G15980, G39850, G39860, G39870

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2:18; 4:15; 11:37)

tent, tentmakers

Definition:

A tent is a portable shelter made of sturdy fabric that is draped over a structure of poles and attached to them.

- Tents can be small, with just enough space for a few people to sleep in, or they can be very large, with space for an entire family to sleep, cook, and live in.
- For many people, tents are used as permanent dwelling places. For example, during most of the time that Abraham's family lived in the land of Canaan, they dwelled in large tents constucted from sturdy cloth made of goat hair.
- The Israelites also lived in tents during their forty-year wanderings through the desert of Sinai.
- The tabernacle building was a kind of very large tent, with thick walls made of cloth curtains.
- When the apostle Paul traveled to different cities to share the gospel, he supported himself by making tents.
- The term "tents" is sometimes used figuratively to refer generally to where people live. This could also be translated as "homes" or "dwellings" or "houses" or even "bodies." (See: synecdoche)

(See also: Abraham, Canaan, curtain, Paul, Sinai, tabernacle, tent of meeting)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:10
- Daniel 11:45
- Exodus 16:18
- Genesis 12:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0167, H0168, H2583, H3407, H6898

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 11:9)

tenth, tithe

Definition:

The terms "tenth" and "tithe" refer to "ten percent" or "one-out-of-ten portion" of one's money, crops, livestock, or other possessions, which is given to God.

- In the Old Testament, God instructed the Israelites to set aside a tenth of their belongings to give as an offering of thanksgiving to him.
- This offering was used to support the Levite tribe of Israel who served the Israelites as priests and caretakers of the tabernacle and later, the temple.
- In the New Testament, God does not require giving a tithe, but instead he instructs believers to generously and cheerfully help people in need and support the work of Christian ministry.
- This could also be translated as "one-tenth" or "one out of ten."

(See also: believe, Israel, Levite, livestock, Melchizedek, minister, sacrifice, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- Genesis 14:19-20
- Genesis 28:20-22
- Hebrews 7:4-6
- Isaiah 6:13
- Luke 11:42
- Luke 18:11-12
- Matthew 23:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4643, H6237, H6241, G05860, G11810, G11830

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 7:2; 7:4; 7:5; 7:6; 7:8; 7:9)

test, tested, testing, testing in the fire

Definition:

The term "test" refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person's strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people's sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To "put to the test" can mean, "challenge something or someone to prove its value."
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to "test" could also be translated as, to "challenge" or to "cause to experience difficulties" or to "prove."
- Ways to translate "a test" could be, "a challenge" or "a difficult experience."
- To "put to the test" could be translated as to "test" or to "set up a challenge" or to "force to prove oneself."
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as "trying to force God to prove his love."
- In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term "test" can mean "tempt."

(See also: tempt)

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:1
- 1 Thessalonians 5:21
- Acts 15:10
- Genesis 22:1
- Isaiah 7:13
- James 1:12
- Lamentations 3:40-43
- Malachi 3:10
- Philippians 1:10
- Psalm 26:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5254, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G12420, G12630, G13030, G13820, G19570, G31400, G31410, G31420, G31430, G39840, G43030, G44510, G48280, G60200

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 3:8; 3:9; 11:17)

testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence

Definition:

When a person gives "testimony" he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To "testify" is to give "testimony."

- In some places in the Old Testament, "Testimony" refers specifically to the tablets of stone on which Yahweh wrote his ten commandments. From that use it came to refer to God's law more broadly.
- Often a person "testifies" about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives "false testimony" does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term "testimony" refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus' followers testified about the events of Jesus' life, death, and resurrection.

The term "witness" refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term "eyewitness" emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To "witness" something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness "gives witness" or "bears witness." This has the same meaning as "testify."
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a "false witness." He is said to "give false witness" or to "bear false witness."
- The expression "be a witness between" means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "testify" or "give testimony" could also be translated as "tell the facts" or "tell what was seen or heard" or "tell from personal experience" or "give evidence" or "tell what happened."
- Ways to translate "testimony" could include, "report of what happened" or "statement of what is true" or "evidence" or "what has been said" or "prophecy."
- Ways to translate "Testimony" could include, "the stone slabs on which I wrote my commands" or "God's law" or "God's commands" or "the record of the agreement between Yahweh and Israel."
- The phrase, "as a testimony to them" could be translated as to "show them what is true" or to "prove to them what is true."
- The phrase, "as a testimony against them" could be translated as "which will show them their sin" or "exposing their hypocrisy" or "which will prove that they are wrong."
- To "give false testimony" could be translated as "say false things about" or "state things that are not true."
- The term "witness" or "eyewitness" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "person seeing it" or "the one who saw it happen" or "those who saw and heard (those things)."
- Something that is "a witness" could be translated as "guarantee" or "sign of our promise" or "something that testifies that this is true."
- The phrase "you will be my witnesses" could also be translated as "you will tell other people about me" or "you will teach people the truth that I taught you" or "you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach."
- To "witness to" could be translated as to "tell what was seen" or to "testify" or to "state what happened."
- To "witness" something could be translated as to "see something" or to "experience something happen."

(See also: ark of the covenant, guilt, judge, prophet, true)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 6:3
- Matthew 26:60
- Mark 1:44
- John 1:7
- John 3:33
- Acts 4:32-33
- Acts 7:44
- Acts 13:31
- Romans 1:9
- 1 Thessalonians 2:10-12
- 1 Timothy 5:19-20
- 2 Timothy 1:8
- 2 Peter 1:16-18
- 1 John 5:6-8
- 3 John 1:12
- Revelation 12:11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:2** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- **43:7** "We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G02670, G12630, G19570, G26490, G31400, G31410, G31420, G31430, G31440, G43030, G48280, G49010, G55750, G55760, G55770, G60200

(**Go back to:**)

thorn, thorn bush, thistle

Facts:

Thorn bushes and thistles are plants that have prickly branches or flowers. These plants do not produce fruit or anything else that is useful.

- A "thorn" is a hard, sharp growth on the branch or stem of a plant. A "thornbush" is a type of small tree or shrub that has many thorns on its branches.
- A "thistle" is a plant with prickly stems and leaves. Often the flowers are purple.
- Thorn and thistle plants multiply quickly and can cause nearby plants or crops to not be able to grow. This is a picture of how sin keeps a person from producing good spiritual fruit.
- A crown made of twisted thorn branches was placed on Jesus' head before he was crucified.
- If possible, these terms should be translated by the names of two different plants or bushes that are known in the language area.

(See also: crown, fruit, spirit)

Bible References:

- Hebrews 6:7-8
- Matthew 13:7
- Matthew 13:22
- Numbers 33:55

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0329, H1863, H2312, H2336, H4534, H5285, H5518, H5544, H6791, H6796, H6975, H7063, H7898, G01730, G01740, G46470, G51460

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 6:8)

throne, enthroned

Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a ruler sits when he decides important matters and listens to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a ruler has.
- The word "throne" can also be used to refer to the ruler, his reign, or his power.
- In the Bible, God was often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus was described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God's throne. One way to translate this could be, "where God reigns as king."

(See also: authority, power, king, reign)

Bible References:

- Colossians 1:15-17
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 1:32
- Luke 22:30
- Matthew 5:34
- Matthew 19:28
- Revelation 1:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3427, H3676, H3678, H3764, H7675, G09680, G23620

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:8; 4:16; 8:1; 12:2)

time, untimely, date

Facts:

In the Bible the term "time" was often used figuratively to refer to a specific season or period of time when certain events took place. It has a meaning similar to "age" or "epoch" or "season."

- "Time" can mean "occasion" in a phrase like "third time." The phrase "many times" can mean "on many occasions."
- Depending on the context, the term "time" could be translated as, "season" or "time period" or "moment" or "event" or "occurrence."
- The phrase "times and seasons" is a figurative expression which states the same idea twice. This could also be translated as "certain events happening in certain time periods." (See: doublet)

(See also: age, tribulation)

Bible References:

- Acts 1:7
- Daniel 12:1-2
- Mark 11:11
- Matthew 8:29
- Psalms 68:28-29
- Revelation 14:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0116, H0227, H0310, H1697, H1755, H2165, H2166, H2233, H2465, H3027, H3117, H3118, H3119, H3259, H3427, H3967, H4150, H4279, H4489, H4557, H5331, H5703, H5732, H5750, H5769, H6235, H6256, H6440, H6471, H6635, H6924, H7105, H7138, H7223, H7272, H7281, H7637, H7651, H7655, H7659, H7674, H7992, H8027, H8032, H8138, H8145, H8462, H8543, G07440, G05300, G10740, G12080, G14410, G15970, G16260, G19090, G20340, G21190, G21210, G22350, G22500, G25400, G34610, G35680, G37640, G38190, G39560, G39990, G41780, G41810, G41830, G42180, G42870, G43400, G44550, G51190, G51510, G53050, G55500, G55510, G56100

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:13; 4:7; 4:16; 5:12; 9:9; 9:10; 11:11; 11:15; 11:32)

Timothy

Facts:

Timothy was a young man from Lystra. He later joined Paul on several missionary trips and helped shepherd new communities of believers.

- Timothy's father was a Greek, but both his grandmother Lois and his mother Eunice were Jews and believers in Christ.
- The elders and Paul formally appointed Timothy for the ministry by placing their hands on him and praying for him.
- Two books in the New Testament (I Timothy and 2 Timothy) are letters written by Paul that provide guidance to Timothy as a young leader of local churches.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: appoint, believe, church, Greek, minister)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 3:2
- 1 Timothy 1:2
- Acts 16:3
- Colossians 1:1
- Philemon 1:1
- Philippians 1:1
- Philippians 2:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: G50950

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 13:23)

to minister, ministry

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "ministry" refers to serving others by teaching them about God and caring for their spiritual needs.

- In the Old Testament, the priests would "minister" to God in the temple by offering sacrifices to him.
- Their "ministry" also included taking care of the temple and offering prayers to God on behalf of the people.
- The job of "ministering" to people can include serving them spiritually by teaching them about God.
- It can also refer to serving people in physical ways, such as caring for the sick and providing food for the poor.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of ministering to people, to "minister" could also be translated as to "serve" or to "care for" or to "meet the needs of."
- When referring to ministering in the temple, the term "minister" could be translated as "serve God in the temple" or "offer sacrifices to God for the people."
- In the context of ministering to God, this could be translated as to "serve" or to "work for God."
- The phrase "ministered to" could also be translated as "took care of" or "provided for" or "helped."

(See also: serve, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 20:23-26
- Acts 6:4
- Acts 21:17-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6399, H8120, H8334, H8335, G12470, G12480, G12490, G20230, G20380, G24180, G30080, G30090, G30100, G30110, G39300, G52560, G52570, G55240

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:7; 1:14; 6:10; 8:2; 8:6; 9:21; 10:11)

transgress, transgression

Definition:

The term "transgress" means to cross a line or to violate a boundary. The term is often used figuratively, meaning to break a command, rule, or moral code.

- This term is very similar to the word "trespass," but is generally used more often to describe violations against God than against other people.
- To "transgress" can also be described as to "cross a line," that is, to go beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.

Translation Suggestions:

- To "trangress" could be translated as to "sin" or to "disobey" or to "rebel."
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean "sin" or "transgress" or "trespass," it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance.

(See: parallelism)

(See also: disobey, sin, trespass, iniquity)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 4:6
- Daniel 9:24-25
- Galatians 3:19-20
- Galatians 6:1-2
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Psalm 32:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0898, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G04580, G04590, G38450, G38470, G38480, G39280

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2:2; 9:15)

tremble, stagger, shake

Definition:

The term "tremble" means to quiver or to shake slightly and repeatedly, usually from fear or distress. The term can also be used figuratively, meaning "to be very afraid."

- Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to "tremble." It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.
- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as "be afraid" or "fear God" or "shake," depending on the context.

(See also: earth, fear, Lord)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 7:15
- 2 Samuel 22:44-46
- Acts 16:29-31
- Jeremiah 5:22
- Luke 8:47

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1674, H2111, H2112, H2151, H2342, H2648, H2729, H2730, H2731, H5128, H5568, H6342, H6426, H6427, H7264, H7268, H7269, H7322, H7460, H7461, H7481, H7493, H7578, H8078, H8653, G17900, G51410, G51560, G54250

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 12:21)

tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: clan, nation, people group, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:19
- 2 Kings 17:16-18
- Genesis 25:16
- Genesis 49:17
- Luke 2:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0523, H4294, H7625, H7626, G14290, G54430

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 7:13; 7:14)

tribulation, distresses, trouble

Definition:

The term "tribulation" refers to a time of hardship, suffering, and distress.

- It is explained in the New Testament that Christians will endure times of persecution and other kinds of tribulation because many people in this world are opposed to Jesus' teachings.
- The term "tribulation" could also be translated as "time of great suffering" or "deep distress" or "severe difficulties."

(See also: earth, teach, wrath)

Bible References:

- Mark 4:17
- Mark 13:19
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Matthew 24:9
- Matthew 24:29
- Romans 2:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6869, G23470, G44230

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 10:33)

trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity

Definition:

A "trouble" is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To "trouble" someone means to "bother" that person or to cause him distress. To be "troubled" means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of "trouble" also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

Translation Suggestions

- The term "trouble" or "troubles" could also be translated as "danger" or "painful things that happen" or "persecution" or "difficult experiences" or "distress."
- The term "troubled" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "undergoing distress" or "feeling terrible distress" or "worried" or "anxious" or "distressed" or "terrified" or "disturbed."
- "Don't trouble her" could also be translated as "don't bother her" or "don't criticize her."
- The phrase "day of trouble" or "times of trouble" could also be translated as "when you experience distress" or "when difficult things happen to you" or "when God causes distressing things to happen."
- Ways to translate "make trouble" or "bring trouble" could include "cause distressing things to happen" or "cause difficulties" or "make them experience very difficult things."

(See also: afflict, persecute)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:19
- Luke 24:38
- Matthew 24:6
- Matthew 26:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0926, H0927, H1204, H1607, H1644, H1804, H2000, H4103, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7489, H8513, G03870, G16130, G17760, G23460, G23470, G23500, G23600, G28730, G36360, G39260, G39300, G39860, G44230, G46600, G50150, G51820

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 12:15)

true, truth

Definition:

The term "truth" refers to facts, events, and statements that correspond with reality. True facts describe the universe as it really exists. True events are events that actually happened. True statements are statements that are not false according the real world.

- "True" things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- "Truth" means understandings, beliefs, facts, or statements that are true.
- To say that a prophecy "came true" or "will come true" mean that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- In the Bible the concept of "truth" includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God's truth in the words that he spoke.
- The Bible is truth. It teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term "true" could also be translated by "real" or "factual" or "correct" or "right" or "certain" or "genuine."
- Ways to translate the term "truth" could include "what is true" or "fact" or "certainty" or "principle."
- The expression "come true" could also be translated as "actually happen" or "be fulfilled" or "happen as predicted."
- The expression "tell the truth" or "speak the truth" could also be translated as "say what is true" or "tell what really happened" or "say things that are reliable."
- To "accept the truth" could be translated as "believe what is true about God."
- In an expression such as "worship God in spirit and in truth," the expression "in truth" could also be translated by "faithfully obeying what God has taught us."

(See also: believe, faithful, fulfill, obey, prophet, understand)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:6-8
- 1 John 1:5-7
- 1 John 2:8
- 3 John 1:8
- Acts 26:24-26
- Colossians 1:6
- Genesis 47:29-31
- James 1:18
- James 3:14
- James 5:19
- Jeremiah 4:2
- John 1:9
- John 1:16-18
- John 1:51
- John 3:31-33
- Joshua 7:19-21
- Lamentations 5:19-22
- Matthew 8:10
- Matthew 12:17
- Psalm 26:1-3

• Revelation 1:19-20
• Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

• **2:4** The snake responded to the woman, "That is not **true**! You will not die."
• **14:6** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is _true_ that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
• **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the _true_ God.
• **31:8** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
• **39:10** "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

Word Data:

• Strong's: H0199, H0389, H0403, H0529, H0530, H0543, H0544, H0551, H0571, H0935, H3321, H3330, H6237, H6656, H6965, H7187, H7189, G02250, G02260, G02270, G02280, G02300, G11030, G33030, G34830, G36890, G41030, G41370

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 8:2; 9:24; 10:22; 10:26)

trumpet, trumpeters

Definition:

The term "trumpet" refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel's public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: angel, assembly, earth, horn, Israel, wrath)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:7-8
- 2 Kings 9:13
- Exodus 19:12-13
- Hebrews 12:19
- Matthew 6:2
- Matthew 24:31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2689, H2690, H3104, H7782, H8619, H8643, G45360, G45370, G45380

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 12:19)

trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

Definition:

To "trust" something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called "trust." A "trustworthy" person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of "trustworthiness."

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To "trust in" Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A "trustworthy saying" refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "trust" could include "believe" or "have faith" or "have confidence" or "depend on."
- The phrase "put your trust in" is very similar in meaning to "trust in."
- The term "trustworthy" could be translated as "dependable" or "reliable" or "can always be trusted."

(See also: believe, confidence, faith, faithful, true)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:22-24
- 1 Timothy 4:9
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:13
- Psalm 31:5
- Titus 3:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **14:15** Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **17:2** David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **34:6** Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0539, H0982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G16790, G38720, G39820, G40060, G41000, G42760

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2:13)

turn, turn away, turn back, return

Definition:

To "turn" means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term "turn" can also mean "turn around" to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To "turn back" or "turn away" means to "go back" or "go away" or "cause to go away."
- To "turn away from" can mean to "stop" doing something or to reject someone.
- To "turn toward" someone means to look directly at that person.
- To "turn and leave" or "turn his back to leave" means to "go away."
- To "turn back to" means to "start doing something again."
- To "turn away from" means to "stop doing something."
- To "turn aside" means to change direction, it often means to either stop doing right and start doing evil or the opposite.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "turn" can be translated as "change direction" or "go" or "move."
- In some contexts, "turn" could be translated as "cause" (someone) to do something. To "turn (someone) away from" could be translated as "cause (someone) to go away" or "cause (someone) to stop."
- The phrase "turn away from God" could be translated as "stop worshiping God."
- The phrase "turn back to God" could be translated as "start worshiping God again."
- When enemies "turn back," it means they "retreat." To "turn back the enemy" means to "cause the enemy to retreat."
- Used figuratively, when Israel "turned to" false gods, they "started to worship" them. When they "turned away" from idols, they "stopped worshiping" them.
- When God "turned away from" his rebellious people, he "stopped protecting" or "stopped helping" them.
- The phrase "turn the hearts of the fathers to their children" could be translated as "cause fathers to care for their children again."
- The expression "turn my honor into shame" could be translated as "cause my honor to become shame" or "dishonor me so that I am shamed" or "shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me."
- "I will turn your cities into ruin" could be translated as "I will cause your cities to be destroyed" or "I will cause enemies to destroy your cities."
- The phrase "turn into" could be translated as "become." When Moses' rod "turned into" a snake, it "became" a snake. It could also be translated as "changed into."

(See also: false god, leprosy, worship)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:2
- Acts 7:42
- Acts 11:21
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 1:17
- Malachi 4:6
- Revelation 11:6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0541, H2015, H2017, H2186, H2559, H3943, H4672, H4740, H4878, H5186, H5253, H5414, H5437, H5472, H5493, H5528, H5627, H5753, H6437, H7227, H7725, H7734, H7750, H7760, H7847, H8159, H8447, G03440, G03870, G04020, G06540, G06650, G08680, G12940, G15780, G16120, G16240, G19940, G31790, G33130, G33290, G33440, G33460, G47620, G51570, G52900

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 12:25)

understand, understanding, thinking

Definition:

The term "understand" means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term "understanding" can refer to "knowledge" or "wisdom" or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term "understand" could be translated by "know" or "believe" or "comprehend" or "know what (something) means."
- Often the term "understanding" can be translated by "knowledge" or "wisdom" or "insight."

(See also: believe, know, wise)

Bible References:

- Job 34:16-17
- Luke 2:47
- Luke 8:10
- Matthew 13:12
- Matthew 13:14
- Proverbs 3:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0995, H0998, H0999, H1847, H2940, H3045, H3820, H3824, H4486, H7200, H7919, H7922, H7924, H8085, H8394, G00500, G01450, G01910, G08010, G10970, G11080, G12710, G19210, G19220, G19870, G19900, G26570, G35390, G35630, G49070, G49080, G49200, G54240, G54280, G54290

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 11:3)

voice

Definition:

The term "voice" refers to audible sound that a person makes when speaking or communicating. In the Bible, the term can be used figuratively to refer to the concepts of sound, communication, and/or obedience.

Translation Suggestions

- The expression "to hear someone's voice" can mean either "to hear someone speaking" or "to heed what someone says."
- The Bible describes God as "speaking" and having a "voice," even though God doesn't have a physical body in the same way a human being does.
- The term "voice" sometimes implies the presence of a person, as in this statement: "A voice is heard in the desert saying, 'Prepare the way of the Lord.'" This could be translated as "A person is heard calling out in the desert...." (See: synecdoche)
- However, sometimes the word "voice" is used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the heavens have a "voice" that reaches the whole earth. This means that the objects in the sky communicate something to human beings about God the Creator. (See: metaphor)

(See also: call, proclaim, splendor.)

Bible References:

- John 5:36-38
- Luke 1:42
- Luke 9:35
- Matthew 3:17
- Matthew 12:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G29060, G54560

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 3:7; 3:15; 4:7; 12:19; 12:26)

watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware

Definition:

The term "watch" means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A "watchman" was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to "watch your life and doctrine closely" means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To "watch out" is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To "watch" or "keep watch" means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to "be ready."
- To "keep watch over" or "keep close watch" can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating "watch" could include "pay close attention to" or "be diligent" or "be very careful" or "be on guard."
- Other words for "watchman" are "sentry" or "guard."

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:6
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 8:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0821, H2370, H4929, H4931, H5027, H5341, H6486, H6822, H6836, H6974, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G00690, G09910, G11270, G14920, G23340, G28920, G35250, G37080, G39060, G43370, G46480, G50830, G54380

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 13:17)

water, deep

Definition:

In addition to its primary meaning, "water" also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term "waters" refers to bodies of water or many sources of water. It can also be a general reference for a large amount of water.
- A figurative use of "waters" refers to great distress, difficulties, and suffering. For example, God promises that when we "go through the waters" he will be with us.
- The phrase "many waters" emphasizes how great the difficulties are.
- To "water" livestock and other animals means to "provide water for" them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- The "deep" refers to a deep body of water, such as the watery depths at the beginning of creation or bodies of water that extend deep under the earth's surface such as oceans, seas, etc.
- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as the spring or fountain of "living waters" for his people. This means he is the source of spiritual power and refreshment.
- In the New Testament, Jesus used the phrase "living water" to refer to the Holy Spirit working in a person to transform and bring new life.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase, "draw water" could be translated as "pull water up from a well with a bucket."
- "Streams of living water will flow from them" could be translated as "the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them them like streams of water." Instead of "blessings" the term "gifts" or "fruits" or "godly character" could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase "living water" could be translated as "water that gives life" or "lifegiving water." In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term "waters" or "many waters" could be translated as "great suffering (that surrounds you like water)" or "overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)" or "large amounts of water."

(See also: life, spirit, Holy Spirit, power)

Bible References:

- Acts 8:36-38
- Exodus 14:21
- John 4:10
- John 4:14
- John 4:15
- Matthew 14:28-30

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2222, H4325, H4529, H4857, H7301, H7783, H8248, H8415, G05040, G42150, G42220, G52020, G52040

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 9:19; 10:22)

will of God

Definition:

The "will of God" refers to God's desires and plans.

- God's will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
- It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
- The term to "will" means to "determine" or to "desire."

Translation Suggestions:

- The "will of God" could also be translated as "what God desires" or "what God has planned" or "God's purpose" or "what is pleasing to God."

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:15-17
- 1 Thessalonians 4:3-6
- Colossians 4:12-14
- Ephesians 1:1-2
- John 5:30-32
- Mark 3:33-35
- Matthew 6:8-10
- Psalms 103:21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6310, H6634, H7522, G10120, G10130, G23070, G23080, G23090, G25960

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 2:4; 10:7; 10:9; 10:36; 13:21)

word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "word of God" refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called "the Word of God."

- The term "scriptures" means "writings." It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God's message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms "word of Yahweh" and "word of the Lord" often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply "the word" or "my word" or "your word" (when talking about God's word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called "the Word" and "the Word of God." These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term "word of truth" is another way of referring to "God's word," which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

- God's word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
- This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "the message of Yahweh" or "God's message" or "the teachings from God."
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say "God's words" or "the words of Yahweh."
- The expression "the word of Yahweh came" is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words."
- The term "scripture" or "scriptures" could be translated as "the writings" or "the written message from God." This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term "word."
- When "word" occurs alone and it refers to God's word, it could be translated as "the message" or "God's word" or "the teachings." Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.
- When the Bible refers to Jesus as "the Word," this term could be translated as "the Message" or "the Truth."
- "Word of truth" could be translated as "God's true message" or "God's word, which is true."
- It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: prophet, true, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:1
- 1 Kings 13:1
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 8:11
- John 5:39
- Acts 6:2
- Acts 12:24
- Romans 1:2
- 2 Corinthians 6:7

• Ephesians 1:13
• 2 Timothy 3:16
• James 1:18
• James 2:8-9

Examples from the Bible stories:

• **25:7** In **God's word** he commands his people, "Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him."
• **33:6** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the **word of God**."
• **42:3** Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
• **42:7** Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**.
• **45:10** Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
• **48:12** But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
• **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

• Strong's: H0561, H0565, H1697, H3068, G30560, G44870

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 4:12; 6:5; 13:7)

work, works, deeds

Definition:

The term "work" refers generally either to the action of expending effort in order to accomplish something, or to the result of that action. The term "works" refers generally to actions as a whole (that is, things that have been done or that need to be done).

- In the Bible, these terms are commonly used both in reference to God and humans.
- When used in reference to God, the term "work" in the Bible often refers to God's action of creating the universe or saving his people (either from enemies, from sin, or both).
- God's works refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place.
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "works" could be "deeds" or "actions" or "things that are done."
- God's "works" or "deeds" or the "work of his hands" could also be translated as "miracles" or "mighty acts" or "things that God does."
- The expression "the work of God" could be translated as "the things that God is doing" or "the miracles God does" or "everything that God has accomplished."
- The term "work" can just be the singular of "works" as in "every good work" or "every good deed."
- When work is done for God or others, it can be translated as "service" or "ministry."

(See also: fruit, Holy Spirit, miracle)

Bible References:

- 1 John 3:12
- Acts 2:8-11
- Daniel 4:37
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Galatians 2:15-16
- James 2:17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 2:7
- Romans 3:28
- Titus 3:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4399, H4566, H4567, H4611, H4659, H5949, G20410

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:10; 3:9; 4:3; 4:4; 4:10; 6:1; 6:10; 9:14; 10:24)

world, worldly

Definition:

The term "world" usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term "worldly" describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

- In its most general sense, the term "world" refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
- In many contexts, "world" actually means "people in the world."
- Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
- The apostles also used "world" to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
- People and things characterized by these values are said to be "worldly."

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "world" could also be translated as "universe" or "people of this world" or "corrupt things in the world" or "evil attitudes of people in the world."
- The phrase "all the world" often means "many people" and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, "all the world came to Egypt" could be translated as "many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt" or "people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there."
- Another way to translate "all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census" would be "many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went…"
- Depending on the context, the term "worldly" could be translated as "evil" or "sinful" or "selfish" or "ungodly" or "corrupt" or "influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world."
- The phrase "saying these things in the world" can be translated as "saying these things to the people of the world."
- In other contexts, "in the world" could also be translated as "living among the people of the world" or "living among ungodly people."

(See also: corrupt, heaven, Rome, godly)

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:15
- 1 John 4:5
- 1 John 5:5
- John 1:29
- Matthew 13:36-39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0776, H2309, H2465, H5769, H8398, G10930, G28860, G28890, G36250

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:6; 2:5; 4:3; 9:26; 10:5; 11:7; 11:38)

worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless

Definition:

The term "worthy" describes someone or something that deserves respect or honor. To "have worth" means to be valuable or important. The term "worthless" means to not have any value.

- Being worthy is related to being valuable or having importance
- To be "unworthy" means to not be deserving of any special notice.
- To not feel worthy means to feel less important than someone else or to not feel deserving of being treated with honor or kindness.
- The term "unworthy" and the term "worthless" have related, but different meanings. To be "unworthy" means to not be deserving of any honor or recognition. To be "worthless" means to not have any purpose or value.

Translation Suggestions:

- "Worthy" could be translated as "deserving" or "important" or "valuable."
- The word "worth" could be translated as "value" or "importance."
- The phrase to "have worth" could also be translated as to "be valuable" or to "be important."
- The phrase "is worth more than" could be translated as "is more valuable than."
- Depending on the context, the term, "unworthy" could also be translated as "unimportant" or "dishonorable" or "undeserving."
- The term "worthless" could be translated as "with no value" or "with no purpose" or "worth nothing."

(See also: honor)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 22:4
- 2 Thessalonians 1:11-12
- Acts 13:25
- Acts 25:25-27
- Acts 26:31
- Colossians 1:9-10
- Jeremiah 8:19
- Mark 1:7
- Matthew 3:10-12
- Philippians 1:25-27

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0117, H0639, H1929, H3644, H4242, H4373, H4392, H4592, H4941, H6994, H7386, H7939, G00960, G05140, G05150, G05160, G24250, G26610, G27350

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 3:3; 11:38)

wrath, fury

Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. The Bible describes both people and God as experiencing intense anger. When speaking about God's "wrath," make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage (which might be true of a human person).

- In the Bible, "wrath" often refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- God's wrath is just and holy. When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful human rage.

(See also: judge, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Timothy 2:8-10
- Luke 3:7
- Luke 21:23
- Matthew 3:7
- Revelation 14:10
- Romans 1:18
- Romans 5:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0639, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2740, H3707, H3708, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7265, H7267, G23720, G37090, G39490, G39500

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 3:11; 4:3)

year

Definition:

When used literally, the term "year" in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

- A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into twelve months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
- In both calendar systems a year has twelve months. But an extra thirteenth month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is eleven days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
- In the Bible, the term "year" is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, "the year of Yahweh" or "in the year of drought" or "the favorable year of the Lord." In these contexts, "year" could be translated as "time" or "season" or "time period."

(See also: month)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:31
- Acts 19:8-10
- Daniel 8:1
- Exodus 12:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H7620, H7657, H8140, H8141, G17630, G20940

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 1:12; 3:10; 3:17; 9:7; 9:25; 10:1; 10:3)

zeal, zealous

Definition:

The terms "zeal" and "zealous" refer to being strongly devoted to supporting a person or idea.

- Zeal includes having strong desire and actions that promote a good cause. It is often used to describe someone who faithfully obeys God and teaches others to do that too.
- Being zealous includes putting intense effort into doing something and continuing to persevere in that effort.
- The "zeal of the Lord" or the "zeal of Yahweh" refers to God's strong, persistent actions to bless his people or to see justice done.

Translation Suggestions:

- To "be zealous" could also be translated by, "be strongly diligent" or "make an intense effort."
- The term "zeal" could also be translated as "energetic devotion" or "eager determination" or "righteous enthusiasm."
- The phrase, "zeal for your house" could be translated, "strongly honoring your temple" or "fervent desire to take care of your house."

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:31
- 1 Kings 19:9-10
- Acts 22:3
- Galatians 4:17
- Isaiah 63:15
- John 2:17-19
- Philippians 3:6
- Romans 10:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7065, H7068, G22050, G22060, G22070, G60410

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 10:27)

Zion, Mount Zion

Definition:

Originally, the term "Zion" or "Mount Zion" referred to a stronghold or fortress that King David captured from the Jebusites. Both these terms became other ways of referring to Jerusalem.

- Mount Zion and Mount Moriah were two of the hills that the city of Jerusalem was located on. Later, "Zion" and "Mount Zion" became used as general terms to refer to both of these mountains and to the city of Jerusalem. Sometimes they also referred to the temple that was located in Jerusalem. (See: metonymy)
- David named Zion, or Jerusalem, the "City of David." This is different from David's hometown, Bethlehem, which was also called the City of David.
- The term "Zion" is used in other figurative ways, to refer to Israel or to God's spiritual kingdom or to the new, heavenly Jerusalem that God will create.

(See also: Abraham, David, Jerusalem, Bethlehem, Jebusites)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:5
- Amos 1:2
- Jeremiah 51:35
- Psalm 76:1-3
- Romans 11:26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6726

(**Go back to:** Hebrews 12:22)

Contributors

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community
Aaron Fenlason
Abner Bauman
Adam Van Goor
Alan Bird
Alan Borkenhagen
Alfred Van Dellen
Alice Wright
Allen Bair
Allyson Presswood Nance
Amanda Adams
Andrew Belcher
Andrew Johnson
Andrew Rice
Angelo Palo
Anita Moreau
April Linton
Aurora Lee
Barbara Summers
Barbara White
Becky Hancock
Beryl Carpenter
Bethany Fenlason
Betty Forbes
Bianca Elliott
Bill Cleveland
Bill Pruett
Bob Britting
Bram van den Heuvel
Brian Metzger
Bruce Bridges
Bruce Collier
Bruce Smith
Caleb Worgess
Carlyle Kilmore
Carol Pace
Carol Heim
Caroline Crawford
Caroline Fleming
Caroline S Wong
Carol Lee
Carol Moyer
Carolyn Lafferty
Catherine C Newton
Charese Jackson
Charlotte Gibson
Charlotte Hobbs

Cheryl A Chojnacki
Cheryl Stieben
Cheryl Warren
Christian Berry
Christine Harrison
Clairmene Pascal
Connie Bryan
Connie Goss
Craig Balden
Craig Lins
Craig Scott
Cynthia J Puckett
Dale Hahs
Dale Masser
Daniel Lauk
Daniel Summers
Darlene M Hopkins
Darlene Silas
David Boerschlein
David F Withee
David Glover
David J Forbes
David Mullen
David N Hanley
David Sandlin
David Shortess
David Smith
David Whisler
Debbie Nispel
Debbie Piper
Deborah Bartow
Deborah Bush
Deborah Miniard
Dennis Jackson
Dianne Forrest
Donna Borkenhagen
Donna Mullis
Douglas Hayes
Drew Curley
Ed Davis
Edgar Navera
Edward Kosky
Edward Quigley
Elaine VanRegenmorter
Elizabeth Nataly Silvestre Herbas
Ellen Lee
Emeline Thermidor
Emily Lee
Esther Roman
Esther Trew
Esther Zirk
Ethel Lynn Baker
Evangeline Puen
Evelyn Wildgust
Fletcher Coleman

Freda Dibble
Gail Spell
Gary Greer
Gary Shogren
Gay Ellen Stulp
Gene Gossman
George Arlyn Briggs
Gerald L. Naughton
Glen Tallent
Grace Balwit
Grace Bird
Greg Stoffregen
Gretchen Stencil
Hallie Miller
Harry Harriss
Heather Hicks
Helen Morse
Hendrik deVries
Henry Bult
Henry Whitney
Hilary O'Sullivan
Ibrahim Audu
Ines Gipson
Irene J Dodson
Jackie Jones
Jacqueline Bartley
James Giddens
James Pedersen
James Pohlig
James Roe
Janet O'Herron
Janice Connor
Jaqueline Rotruck
Jeanette Friesen
Jeff Graf
Jeff Kennedy
Jeff Martin
Jennifer Cunneen
Jenny Thomas
Jerry Lund
Jessica Lauk
Jim Frederick
Jim Lee
Jimmy Warren
Jim Rotruck
Jim Swartzentruber
Jody Garcia
Joe Chater
Joel Bryan
Joey Howell
John Anderson
John Geddis
John D Rogers
John Hutchins
John Luton

John Pace
John P Tornifolio
Jolene Valeu
Jon Haahr
Joseph Fithian
Joseph Greene
Joseph Wharton
Joshua Berkowitz
Joshua Calhoun
Joshua Rister
Josh Wondra
Joy Anderson
Joyce Jacobs
Joyce Pedersen
JT Crowder
Judi Brodeen
Judith Cline
Judith C Yon
Julia N Bult
Patty Li
Julie Susanto
Kahar Barat
Kannahi Sellers
Kara Anderson
Karen Davie
Karen Dreesen
Karen Fabean
Karen Riecks
Karen Smith
Karen Turner
Kathleen Glover
Kathryn Hendrix
Kathy Mentink
Katrina Geurink
Kay Myers
Kelly Strong
Ken Haugh
Kim Puterbaugh
Kristin Butts Page
Kristin Rinne
Kwesi Opoku-debrah
Langston Spell
Larry Sallee
Lawrence Lipe
Lee Sipe
Leonard Smith
Lester Harper
Lia Hadley
Linda Buckman
Linda Dale Barton
Linda Havemeier
Linda Homer
Linda Lee Sebastien
Linn Peterson
Liz Dakota

Lloyd Box
Luis Keelin
Madeline Kilmore
Maggie D Paul
Marc Nelson
Mardi Welo
Margo Hoffman
Marilyn Cook
Marjean Swann
Marjorie Francis
Mark Albertini
Mark Chapman
Mark Thomas
Marselene Norton
Mary Jane Davis
Mary Jean Stout
Mary Landon
Mary Scarborough
Megan Kidwell
Melissa Roe
Merton Dibble
Meseret Abraham-Zemede
Michael Bush
Michael Connor
Michael Francis
Michael Geurink
Mike Tisdell
Mickey White
Miel Horrilleno
Monique Greer
Morgan Mellette
Morris Anderson
Nancy C. Naughton
Nancy Neu
Nancy VanCott
Neal Snook
Nicholas Scovil
Nick Dettman
Nils Friberg
Noah Crabtree
Pamela B Johnston
Pamela Nungesser
Pamela Roberts
Pam Gullifer
Pat Ankney
Pat Giddens
Patricia Brougher
Patricia Carson
Patricia Cleveland
Patricia Foster
Patricia Middlebrooks
Paul Mellema
Paula Carlson
Paula Oestreich
Paul Holloway

Paul Nungesser
Peggy Anderson
Peggyrose Swartzentruber
Peter Polloni
Phillip Harms
Phyllis Mortensen
Priscilla Enggren
Rachel Agheyisi
Rachel Ropp
Raif Turner
Ray Puen
Reina Y Mora
Rene Bahrenfuss
Renee Triplett
Rhonda Bartels
Richard Beatty
Richard Moreau
Richard Rutter
Richard Stevens
Rick Keaton
Robby Little
Robert W Johnson
Rochelle Hook
Rodney White
Rolaine Franz
Ronald D Hook
Rosario Baria
Roxann Carey
Roxanne Pittard
Ruben Michael Garay
Russell Isham
Russ Perry
Ruth Calo
Ruth E Withee
Ruth Montgomery
Ryan Blizek
Sam Todd
Samuel Njuguna
Sandy Anderson
Sandy Blanes
Sara Giesmann
Sara Van Cott (Barnes)
Sharon Johnson
Sharon Peterson
Sharon Shortess
Shelly Harms
Sherie Nelson
Sherman Sebastien
Sherry Mosher
Stacey Swanson
Steve Gibbs
Steve Mercier
Susan Langohr
Susan Quigley
Susan Snook

Suzanne Richards
Sylvia Thomas
Sze Suze Lau
Tabitha Price
Tammy L Enns
Tammy White
Teresa Everett-Leone
Teresa Linn
Terri Collins
Theresa Baker
Thomas Jopling
Thomas Nickell
Thomas Warren
Tim Coleman
Tim Ingram
Tim Linn
Tim Lovestrand
Tim Mentink
Tom Penry
Tom William Warren
Toni Shuma
Tracie Pogue
Tricia Coffman
Vicki Ivester
Victoria G DeKraker
Victor M Prieto
Vivian Kamph
Vivian Richardson
Ward Pyles
Warren Blaisdell
Wayne Homer
Wendy Coleman
Wendy Colon
Wilbur Zirk
Wil Gipson
William Carson
William Cline
William Dickerson
William Smitherman
William Wilder
Yvonne Tallent

unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors

Nicholas Alsop
Scott Bayer
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Matt Carlton
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Dan Dennison
Jamie Duguid
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D.Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Michael Francis
Laura Glassel, MA in Bible Translation
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages

Jesse Harris
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
John Huffman
D. Allen Hutchison, MA in Old Testament, MA in New Testament
Jack Messarra
Gene Mullen
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Kristy Nickell
Tom Nickell
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Dean Ropp
Joel D. Ruark, M.A.Th., Th.M., Ph.D. in Old Testament, University of Stellenbosch
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Doug Smith, M.T.S., M.Div., Th.M., Midwestern Baptist Theological Seminary
Leonard Smith
Suzanna Smith
Tim Span
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Maria Tijerina
David Trombold, M. Div.
Aaron Valdizan, M.Div., Th.M. in Old Testament, The Masters Seminary
James Vigen
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Angela Westmoreland, M.A. in Theological Studies (Biblical Language track)
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Benjamin Wright, MA Applied Linguistics, Dallas International University
Grant Ailie, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors

Nicholas Alsop
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Matt Carlton
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Michael Francis
Laura Glassel, MA in Bible Translation
Kailey Gregory
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
John Huffman
D. Allen Hutchison, MA in Old Testament, MA in New Testament
Robert Hunt

Demsin Lachin
Jack Messarra
Gene Mullen
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Kristy Nickell
Tom Nickell
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Dean Ropp
Joel D. Ruark, M.A.Th., Th.M., Ph.D. in Old Testament, University of Stellenbosch
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Christopher Smith, M.A.T.S. Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary, Ph.D. Boston College
Leonard Smith
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
David Trombold, M. Div.
James Vigen
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Angela Westmoreland, M.A. in Theological Studies (Biblical Language track)
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Benjamin Wright, MA Applied Linguistics, Dallas International University
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics, MA in Theology, BA in Biblical Studies
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Ben Jore, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics
Bev Staley
Carol Brinneman
Jody Garcia
Kara Anderson
Kim Puterbaugh
Lizz Carlton
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors

Andrew Belcher
David Book
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Lizz Carlton

Jan Zanutto
Matthew Latham
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Richard Joki
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community
Jesse Griffin (BA Biblical Studies, Liberty University; MA Biblical Languages, Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary)
Perry Oakes (BA Biblical Studies, Taylor University; MA Theology, Fuller Seminary; MA Linguistics, University of Texas at Arlington; PhD Old Testament, Southwestern Baptist Theological Seminary)
Larry Sallee (Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary)
Joel D. Ruark (M.A.Th. Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary; Th.M. Stellenbosch University; Ph.D. Candidate in Old Testament Studies, Stellenbosch University)